Download From: AghaLibrary.com

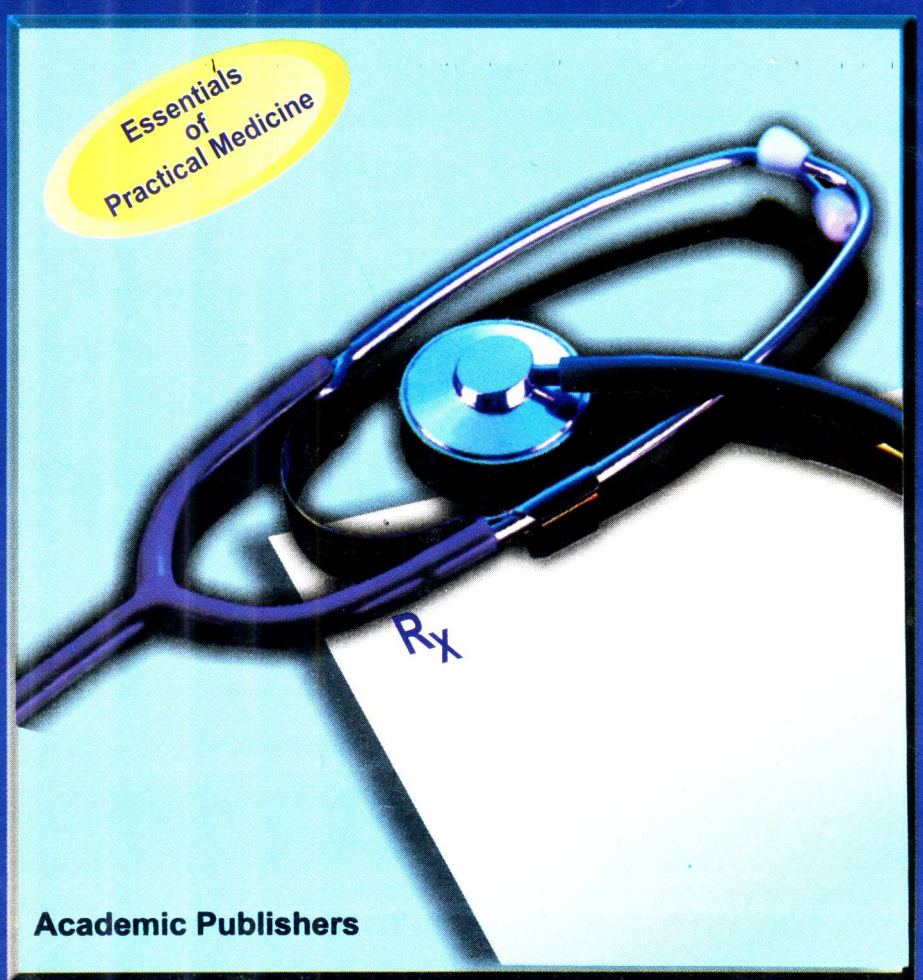
5 th Edition

Bedside Clinics in Medicine

Part II

X-ray ECG Charts Drugs Emergency Specimens Procedures & Instruments

Arup Kumar Kundu



Download From: AghaLibrary.com

by-Dr. Nigam Rashmi Dharfor more free pdf,mcq,ebookjoin free whatsapp medico grp 009778828444

"Do not waste the hours of daylight in listening to that which you may read by night. But when you have seen, read. And when you can, read the original descriptions of the masters who, with crude methods of study, saw so clearly.

To study medicine without books is to sail an uncharted sea, while to study medicine only from books is not to go to sea at all."

Sir William Osier (18491919)
Professor of Medicine, Oxford, UK

Download From: AghaLibrary.com

QfyooAsby/Jm

Bedside Clinics in Medicine, Part I

Sixth Edition

Highly practical and informative handbook with expanded coverage on 'clinical methods in medicine' in questions and answers for MBBS/MD students with oral and practical orientation, which deals with : Model long, short and spot cases with differential diagnosis, relevant investigations and management with stress on core topics

Published by :

KSP Udyog, 64 College Street, Kolkata-700 073, India
e-mail : kshovanp@yahoo.com

MCQs in Internal Medicine

Third Edition

An indispensable revision tool for mastery in medicine with almost 2200 systematically arranged questions with single-choice answer covering major aspects of internal medicine, specially for UG students. It forms the foundation for success in different PG entrance examinations

Published by :

Paras Medical Publisher, Hyderabad-500 095, India
e-mail : parasmedpub@hotmail.com

Pearls in Medicine for Students

First Edition

A treasure island in medicine for medical students, which consists of short description of facts frequently encountered at the bedside. A quick-reference ready-reckoner handbook to increase the core knowledge during early years of medical training

Published by :

Jaypee Brothers Medical Publishers, New Delhi-110 002, India
e-mail : jaypee@jaypeebrothers.com

Author: Fellow/Member of

- **Indian College of Physicians (Ind)**
- **New York Academy of Sciences (USA)**
- **International Advisory Panel of "Kumar & Clark's" Textbook, 'Clinical Medicine', 7th Edition (Edinburgh)**
- **Association of Physicians of India (API)**
- **Indian Rheumatology Association (IRA)**
- **Indian Medical Association (IMA)**

Download From: AghaLibrary.com

BEDSIDE CLINICS IN MEDICINE

PART II

FIFTH EDITION

Instruments with Procedures, Specimens, X-ray, ECG, Charts, Drugs & Emergency Medicine

Arup Kumar Kundu MD FICP MNAS
Professor
Department of Medicine
&
In-charge, Division of Rheumatology
R. G. Kar Medical College, Kolkata
West Bengal, India

Author of:

Bedside Clinics in Medicine, Part I
MCQs in Internal Medicine
Pearls in Medicine for Students
Chapter in API Textbook of Medicine, 8th Edition
Chapter in Postgraduate Medicine, 2009
Chapters in 'Rheumatology : Principles and Practice', 2010
Chapter in Medicine Update, 2010
&
Section on Online Appendix of "Kumar & Clark's" Textbook, 'Clinical Medicine', 6th & 7th Edition

ACADEMIC PUBLISHERS
5A, Bhawani Dutta Lane
Kolkata 700 073, India
e-mail : info@acabooks.net
website : www.acabooks.net

Download From: AghaLibrary.com

Published by :

Kaustuv Paul
For KSP Udyog
64 College Street, Kolkata-700 073
Regd. Office : Flat No. S2W4, Bidhan Nibas
4 Bidhan Sishu Sarani, Kolkata-700 054, India
e-mail : kshovanp@yahoo.com

Distributed by :

Academic Publishers
5A, Bhawani Dutta Lane, Kolkata-700 073, India

BEDSIDE CLINICS IN MEDICINE, PART II

Copyright © 2010, Dr. Arup Kumar Kundu

First Edition : January 1999
Second Edition : September 2000
Third Edition : April 2003
Fourth Edition : August 2006
Fifth Edition : August 2010

ISBN : 978-93-80599-22-9

All rights reserved. This book is protected by Copyright Act. No part of this publication in general may be reproduced or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or any information storage and retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the author and the publisher. Breach of this condition is liable for legal action. In case of any dispute, all legal matters are to be settled under Kolkata Jurisdiction only

Typesetting, processing and printing done by :

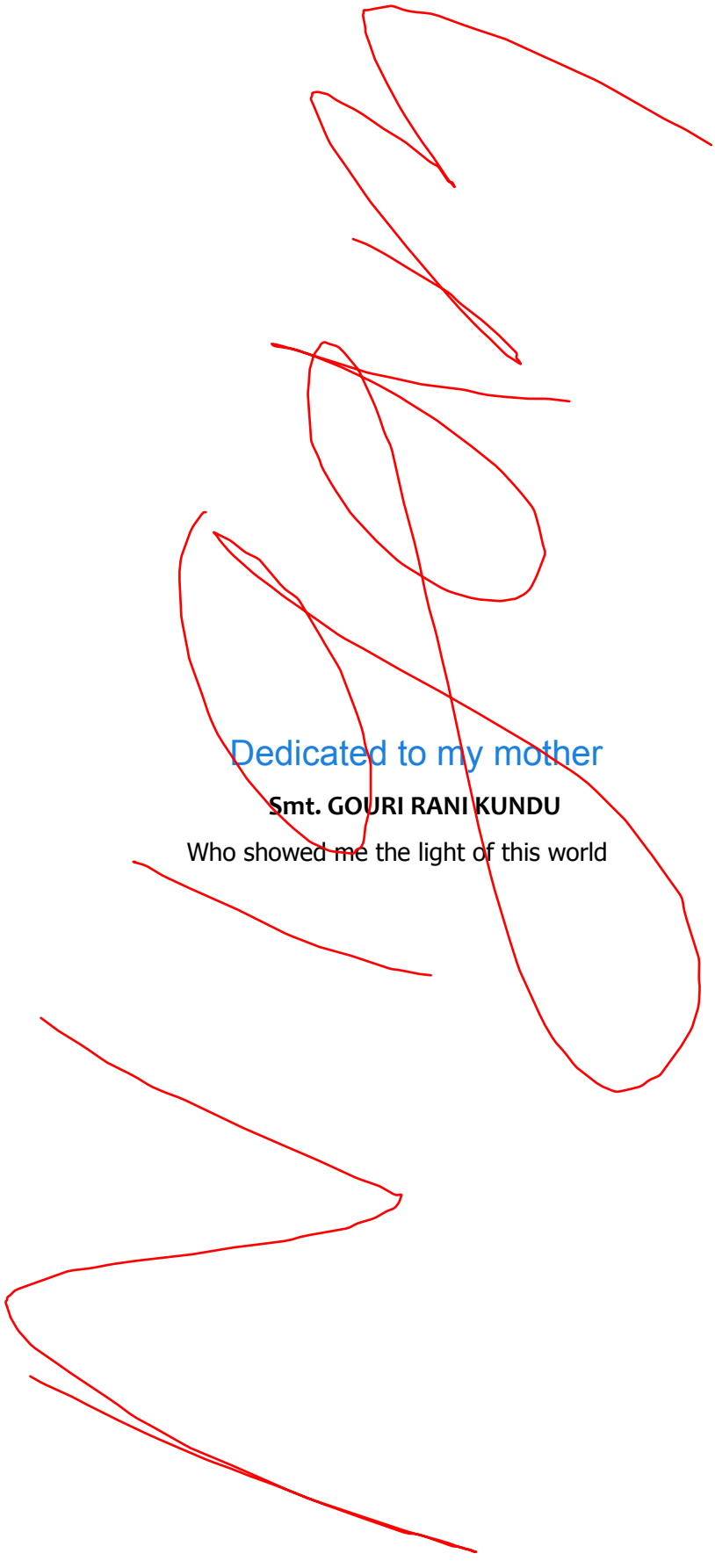
Abhinaba Mudrani, 77/1 Simla Street, Kolkata-700 006, India

Cover design and colour processing done by :

Cosmos Graphics, 71/1A Patuatola Lane, Kolkata-700 009, India

Price : Rs. 325.00

Download From: AghaLibrary.com



Dedicated to my mother

Smt. GOURI RANI KUNDU

Who showed me the light of this world

Download From: AghaLibrary.com

A few personal communications with Giants of Medicine

in

From : (Regarding an error in renal clearance test)

Dr. John Macleod
13 Merchiston Avenue
Edinburgh, Scotland, EH 10 4PJ

13/7/83

Dear Dr. Kundu,

. It was good of you to take the trouble to write to me about the 13th edition of Davidson.

Thank you for your kind comments.

You are of course, correct about the typographical error on page 428. It should have been C = U x V / P; the printer omitted the division sign. This is now being adjusted.

Again many thanks for writing.

With best wishes,

Yours sincerely

Sd/ **John Macleod**

(**2**)

From : (Regarding errors in serum-ascites albumin gradient)

Kurt J. Isselbacher, M.D.
Director, Massachusets General Hospital Cancer Center, Boston
Mallinckrodt Professor of Medicine, Harvard Medical School
Editior : Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 13th Edition

February 23, 1998

Dear Dr. Kundu,

I must commend you for your astute and thorough reading of the Harrison's textbook and in addition, thank you for pointing out two obvious typographical errors. In fact, this was already done in the second printing of the 14th edition.....

Again, many thanks for your thoughtfulness in bringing these two typographical errors to our attention.

Sincerely,

Sd/ **Kurt J. Isselbacher**

(3)

From : (Regarding erythema nodosum, & pulmonary stenosis)

Keith A A Fox
Duke of Edinburgh, Professor of Cardiology and Head of Department
Cardiovascular Research Unit, The University of Edinburgh
Hugh Robson Building, George Square, Edinburgh EH8 9XF

5th December 1995

Dear Dr. Kundu,

Re : Davidson's Principles and Practice of Medicine : 17th Edition 1995

On behalf of Editors of this textbook I have been asked to respond to you in view of the fact that this chapter was written by Dr. Boon and myself.

In response to your first question we have obtained source material which indicates erythema nodosum is a manifestation of acute rheumatic fever.

In conjunction with pulmonary stenosis, the only reason why the thrill may be best palpated in expiration is because of the fact that the heart moves closer to the anterior chest wall. We entirely agree that the velocity of blood flow across the pulmonary valve is increased in inspiration and this is demonstrated using echo Doppler techniques. However, for the reasons mentioned above palpation of thrill may be more obvious in held expiration when the heart and vessels are closer to the chest wall. I hope that these comments help to clarify the situation.

Yours sincerely

Sd/ **Keith A A Fox**
Professor of Cardiology

(4)

From: (Regarding contribution in "Kumar & Clark's" textbook on Medicine)

Ellen Green
Senior Commissioning Editor
Elsevier, 1 -3 Baxter's Place
Leith Walk, Edinburgh EH1 3AF

23/6/2005

Dear Dr. Kundu

Firstly, **on behalf of Kumar & Clark,** I would like to thank you for your contributions to the Online Appendix for **Clinical Medicine 6e** ..... I hope you are pleased with the book..... Kind regards.

Sd/ **Ellen Green**

Download From: AghaLibrary.com

(5)

From: (Regarding some clinical methods & apex beat localisation)

Dr. J G Douglas
Chest Clinic, Clinic C
Aberdeen Royal Infirmary, Foresterhill
Aberdeen AB25 2ZN

2nd November 2005

Dear Dr. Kundu

ReJ: MacLeod's Clinical Examination, 11th Edition

Thank you very much for your recent e-mail..... 1 am an editor of this edition... I am responsible for writing much of the Respiratory Chapter and was most interested in your comments. In response:

Examining for Tracheal Shift..... Clearly this technique could also be performed with the patient standing or sitting.

Technique of Percussion - I entirely agree with your comment that to obtain the loudest percussion note ideally the other fingers, apart from the middle finger, should not touch the skin surface. Figure 4.19 is ambiguous and I will make a note of this for the next (12th) edition.

... **Vocal Resonance**..... However I agree that as written in the first paragraph of page 143 there is some confusion..... Again I will make a note to clarify this for the next (12th) edition.

Aegophony (page 144)..... However I agree that it's position is a little confusing and again I will make a note of this when redrafting the next (12th) edition.

Examination Sequence (page 97..... palpation of apex beat) - I entirely agree with you that the second half of the statement under the 3rd arrow: "If you cannot feel it, ask the patient to roll on to their left side" is incorrect and references the wrong figure! I will make sure this is removed at the next reprint.

We are enormously grateful to you for your attention to detail in pointing out these points.

With best wishes. Yours sincerely,

Sd/ **J G Douglas**

(**6**)

From : (A compliment from Chief Editor of Harrison's book)

Dennis L. Kasper, M.D.
William Ellery Channing Professor of Medicine and
Professor of microbiology and Molecular genetics
Harvard Medical School
Director, Channing Laboratory
Brigham and Women's Hospital, Boton, MA 02115
Editor : Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 16th edition.

7/10/2006

Dear Dr. Kundu,

..... I very much appreciate your interest in contributing to Harrison's. I have looked up your publications on PubMed, and I can see that you are active and productive in your field..... and I wish you all the best in your ongoing studies and clinical practice.

Best regards,

Sd/ Dennis Kasper

(7)

From : (Regarding some queries on clinical medicine)

Laurence Hunter,
Senior Commissioning Editor, Elsevier

11/9/2008

Dear Dr. Kundu,

ReJ: Hutchison's Clinical Methods, 22 Ed

Once again I am most grateful to you for taking the trouble to contact us with queries about the content of this textbook. I shall pass on to the Editors the comments and ask them to take full account of these in the revision of the book.

Thank you once again for your interest in our publishing programme.

With all good wishes.

Sd/ Laurence Hunter

Preface to the First Edition

With the advancement of time, the subject of medicine is expanding astonishingly. It seems difficult for the undergraduate students to cope up with the mammoth subject. This compelled me to write a book dealing with model cases oriented to oral and practical examinations with special stress on elinical methods — the 'Bedside Clinics in Medicine, Part I'.

As radiology, electrocardiography, urine examination, instrumental procedures, emergency medical management and drugs are integral part of diagnosis and treatment, I feel obligated to my students to write a new book which deals with those subjects. I have tried to cover the subjects thoroughly to give a vivid idea on radiology, ECG etc., and to assist the students in economic and selective reading prior to final examination. Though basically meant for the undergraduates, the postgraduates and the practicing physicians will also be benefitted if they pry into it.

Bedside Clinics in Medicine, Part II would not have been completed had it not been for the patient understanding of our family, especially my wife Mrs. Bijoya Kundu who helped me throughout the making of this book, my parents, my daughter Ushasi and son Abhishek, who were deprived of their father's company for long long hours and days.

Finally, I am, really thankful to Mr. Kaustuv Paul of Crest Publishers for keeping me under constant pressure to write this new monograph, Mr. Kajal Saha for laying out the computerized drawings, and to the staff of Abhinaba Mudrani who have helped me in every step to complete the work. I also express my thanks to Dr. Sunetra Mukherjee, PGT in Radiodiagnosis and Dr. Sujoy Ghosh, PGT in General Medicine for providing me with X-ray plates. Healthy suggestions and constructive criticisms regarding the book will be highly appreciated and duly acknowledged.

In conclusion, I can not forget the constant encouragement given by my beloved students. I am greatly indebted to all of them.

Date : 1st January, 1999

Arup Kumar Kundu

"Trimurti"
BG-87, Sector-II, Salt Lake City,
Kolkata-700 091, India.

Preface to the Fifth Edition

I am delighted to write the preface of the fifth edition of Bedside Clinics in Medicine, Part II which has now received a total new-look. The overwhelming responses by eminent clinicians, hardcore academicians and encouraging reviews by different peer-reviewed journals have made me more enthusiastic to rewrite the book with updated clinical materials and data, while maintaining the style of presentation unaltered.

To write a book single-handedly is a challenging task, and I am fully aware of it. As radiology, electrocardiography, instrumental procedures, specimens, data analysis, different drugs and emergency medicine (that is to say the 'Table-works') are integral part of diagnosis and treatment, I felt obligated to my students to rebuild the book with current and comprehensive medicine. I clearly emphasize that this book is a companion to the text book and a reference manual to the undergraduates. I do expect and hope that the combination of clinical information, therapeutics and laboratory medicine is useful not only to undergraduates and postgraduates but residents and practicing physicians will also be highly benefited if they read the book thoroughly.

This monograph is a clear, concise as well as comprehensive reference to a busy clinican in need of immediate medical information.

To develop their practical recognition skills on some must know areas on the subject of medicine, the students are advised to read this manual in between lines. I expect that the book will help the students to face oral and practical examinations in a different way.

I wish to acknowledge Mr. Kaustuv Paul of KSP Udyog for publishing, Mr. Bimal Dhur and Mr. Dipankar Dhur of Academic Publishers for distributing, and Mr. Amar Nandy for printing the book with great personal care. Finally, a very special note of thanks should be delivered to my parents, wife Bijoya, daughter Ushasi and son Abhishek, and my beloved students for being enduring source of light, unfailing support and constant inspiration.

I welcome healthy suggestions, constructive criticisms and critical appraisal of the book from thoughtful readers through e-mail (arup kundu@hotmail.com).

Date : 15th August, 2010

Arup Kumar Kundu
"Trimurti"
BG-87, Sector-II, Salt Lake City,
Kolkata-700 091, India.
e-mail : arup kundu@hotmail.com

In their esteemed opinion about the book.....

- **"Your book is an excellent replicative educational medium for exam-going students. Congratulations.....**

» **"..... I am proud of you as you are a THINKER. May your tribe increase. Many students make you their role model. God will bless you always....." —Prof. B. M. Hegde, Ex-Professor & Dean of Medicine, Kasturba Medical College, Mangalore (Ex-Vice-Chancellor, MAHE University, Manipal).**

"... Dr. Kundu has brought out a book based on bedside clinics on 26 model long cases and 74 short and spot cases oriented to clinical and oral examinations with special stress on clinical methods.....He discusses the history, diagnosis, signs, differential diagnosis and management in the form of questions and answers. The answers are given in detail. ..... There is an exhaustive coverage of the subject and Dr. Kundu has to be congratulated for bringing out such a wealth of knowledge. This is not a text book but it contains a lot of information which the students are expected to know at the end of the clinical training.The book is very helpful to the students of clinical medicine while revising the subject before examination. Dr. Kundu has discussed the various questions which student may encounter during the examination and he has done it admirably". —Book review in Journal of the Association of Physicians of India (JAPI) by Dr. P. S. Shankar, Dean, K. J. Somiya Medical College, Mumbai.

".....Examinees who wish to anticipate routine questions and to avoid long embarrassing silences would do well to read these pages..... important points have received appropriate emphasis.....The text is closely written and the amount of information provided is truely gross. Every line and word has to be remembered....." —Book review (Part I) in Journal of the Indian Medical Association (JIMA).

"The monograph on Bedside Clinics in Medicine is very well written, studded with your long experience as clinical teacher. Such monograph was a long felt neerd. You have really done an excellent job. The monograph will be very well received not only by undergraduate and postgraduate students but by clinical teachers as well." —Dr. A. P. Jain, Professor & Head, Department of Medicine, M. G. Institute of Medical Sciences, Sevagram, Maharashtra.

"I highly appreciate the efforts, hard work and sincerity in bringing up this publication in a beautifully designed manner with rich clinical material inside". —Dr. S. B. Agarwal, Professor & Head, Department of Medicine, B. J. Medical College and Civil Hospital, Ahmedabad, Gujarat.

".....It is a poetry on Clinical Medicine." —Final year MBBS student, N.R.S. Medical College, Kolkata.

"..... I congratulate you for bringing out this book..... " —Dr. P. K. Rathor, P. G. trainee, M. K. C. G. Medical College, Berhampur, Orissa.

"....The book is good and very useful to undergraduates & postgraduates in Medicine ..... I shall continue to recommend your book.....congratulation to the author for his concentrated effort." — Prof. (Capt.) G. Nagaiah, Professor & Head, Department of Medicine, Thanjavur Medical College & Hospitals, Tamilnadu.

"..... I have gone through this book and found it most suitable for the students. 1 will definitely recommend this book to the students....." — Prof. (Dr.) D.K. Hazra, Director, Professor & Head, Department of Medicine, S.N. Medical College, Agra, Uttar Pradesh.

"..... Bedside Clinics in Medicine by Dr. Arup Kumar Kundu is a good book for undergraduate medical students. It is helpful for preparing for final MBBS Examination. Students can guess as what type of questions may be asked in the practicals..... " — Dr. B.T. Tukol, Professor of Medicine, K.M.C, Hubli, Karnataka.

".....is an excellent book for junior students in Medicine. This book, very simply written in a concised and rational manner will greatly help the undergraduate students to establish the foundation of Clinical Medicine with ease and confidence." —**Dr. P. C. Bhattacharyya, Ex-Professor of Medicine, Gauhati Medical College, Assam.**

".....it is just excellent. It is an ideal companion for both undergraduates and postgraduates during exam time....." —**Dr. Neelakantan V. and Dr. N. Parvathi Sulochana, Sundarapuram, Coimbatore, Tamilnadu.**

"The second revised edition of Bedside Clinics in Medicine contains information at one place which postgraduates in Medicine aspire to assimilate in order to learn art and science of Medicine. Really an excellent job by Dr. Arup Kundu". —**Dr. A. P. Jain, Professor** & **Head, Department of Medicine, M. G. Institute of Medical Sciences, Sevagram, Maharashtra.**

".....It is so nice that all clinical problems are completed in so small a volume.....". —**Dr. K. Gandhi, Assistant Professor of Medicine, Thanjavur Medical College, Tamilnadu.**

".....This is not a book but something more than that. This is self-explanative and could be one of the best books in the field of Clinical Medicine required for our students. The book is indispensable for not only undergraduates and postgraduate students but also for teachers and practitioners in Medicine as well. This book is a living Clinical Tutor". —**Dr. Kiranmoy Mitra, Ex-Assoc. Professor & Head, Department of Medicine, Burdwan Medical College and Hospital, West Bengal.**

"Your fascinating presentation of long cases and short cases in Medicine has attended our presence towards your book....." —**R. Ravishankar and S. Gupta, Final year MBBS students, Thanjavur Medical College, Tamilnadu.**

"In keeping with the expanding horizon of medical sciences and the gallant gallops of a plethora of newly emerging methodologies, Dr. Arup. K. Kundu has very meticulously and ingenuously architectured his master creation Bedside Clinics in Medicine, Parts I and II. A purist pedagogue, a massive mentor, and an exemplary exponent engrossed with an expansive professional expertise and competency, he has probed deeply into several cases along with history, diagnosis and management invariably in an easy-to-understand question-answer form. This lucidity, sometimes in a literary, and mostly in a highly scientific manners, has made this work an invaluable medical contribution-cum-anthology for undergraduate and postgraduate students. Moreover a beginner may find it a crutch to have a naive rendezvous into this area of medicine. The diagnostic procedures and methodologies are nicely delineated. This book will be a constant concise companion for all, students and teachers alike, in different Indian Universities and Medical Colleges as this treasure will elicit the clinical spirit of approach from a modest conventional way to highly sophisticated method." —**Prof. (Dr.) C. R. Maity, Ex-Dean, Faculty of Medicine, Burdwan University; Principal, Burdwan Medical College, Burdwan, West Bengal (Ex-Director of Medical Education, WBMES, Government of West Bengal).**

"I happened to go through your book Bedside Clinics in Medicine ..... It was nice and quite interesting.....I can recommend the book to my students as a ready reckoner....." —**Dr. V. Venugopal, Professor of Medicine, Perundurai Medical College, Tamilnadu.**

"The book Bedside Clinics in Medicine, Part I and II is comprehensive with wide coverage of all systems and attractively produced..... it is informative and beneficial not only to the UGs/PGs, but also to the physicians." —**Col. A. S. Kasthuri, Professor and Head, Department of Medicine, AFMC, Pune, Maharashtra.**

".....I found that there is a wealth of information in the book which is difficult to get from other books.....you must have gone through several journals and the whole of encyclopedia of medicine.....Congratulation?." —**Dr. K. Ramachandran, Visiting Professor of Radiology, MG University School of Medicine, Gandhi Nagar, Kottayam, Kerala.**

"……I have been an ardent reader of both of your textbooks on clinical medicine, since the first day of my ward duty. To be very honest I have learnt more from your books than from…… " —Dr. Saif Omar, Internee, Katihar Medical College, Katihar, Bihar.

"…… many congratulations for writing an ultimate manuscript in medicine……" —Dr. Kamaalchand M, P.G. trainee in Pediatrics, JNMC, Aligarh Muslim University, Aligarh, Uttar Pradesh.

"…… Bedside Clinics in Medicine, Part 1 & Part II is a Treasure Island" for students of Medicine both undergraduates & postgraduates……The book has in fact satisfied the need of a long awaited reference book for examinee being complete by itself in all respects…. recommend this book strongly for students of medicine……" —Prof. (Dr.) P. R. Nath Barbhuiya (Retd.), Professor & Head, Department of Medicine, Silchar Medical College & Hospital, Assam.

"…… Bedside Clinics in Medicine, Part I, which is highly informative, well-written with latest additions …… " —Dr. N. S. Neki, Associate Professor of Medicine, Government Medical College, Amritsar, Punjab.

"…… the joy of reading the book is so overwhelming that, by far, medicine has never seemed so pleasurable. It definitely provides so much of knowledge and information, that everytime I close the book after reading it, I do so with an extreme sense of happiness and confidence of knowing so much……It is unequivocal opinion that the book is outstanding and entirely removes the need to study multiple books in clinical medicine……For my final year exams …… the questions that were asked during discussion were entirely based upon the facts given in your book. I just had to quote them to be appreciated by the examiners. I wish to explain my gratitude as a student of medicine for your valuable contribution which is unfathomable ……" —Dr. Keerthana Karumbaiah K, Internee, Bangalore Medical College, Bangalore, Karnataka.

"…… this 'made easy', if assimilated properly by the students, will help to learn many aspects of medicine……The chapters on radiological diagnosis and ECG interpretations will certainly help all concerned. Emergency tackling of different cases also, will help the young professionals……The book is likely to be well accepted and the second edition of the book supports that expectation."—Book review (Part II) in Journal of the Indian Medical Association (JIMA).

"…… its really the eighth wonder in the world. Looking back, recollecting my MD days, I repeat my words……I owe you my MD."—Dr. Pradeep Kumar Shenoy C, Ex-clinical fellow and registrar. Department of Rheumatology, Manipal Hospital, Bangalore.

".....I am very happy to inform you that I have got selected for MD……. I owe my success to your book, and your in time valuable suggestion and advice. You have been my behind the scene teacher and educator and inspiration……"—Dr. Bhushan Madke, student of Indira Gandhi Govt. Medical College, Nagpur, Maharashtra.

"….You have donated breath to me……"—Jagroop Singh, student of Guru Gobind Singh Medical College, Faridkot, Punjab.

"……I feel it is a very good book and very informative……"—Dr. George K. Chako (MD, PhD), PDH Hospital Group, Mumbai, Maharashtra.

"I am a final year medical student. I read your book on bedside clinical examination……. The book is really wonderful. Hats of sir…… "—J. Mahammad Sadiq, Government Medical College, Salem, Tamilnadu.

"….I am highly impressed with clarity and concept of your book. The book is not only helpful for clinical exams but also for theory. The book is really a wonderful book……"—Ramchandra Chaudhary, student of S.R.T.R Medical College, Ambajogai, Maharashtra.

"Sir, its really great whatever you write, I have read your book in final year to clear exam, that helped very much to pass final prof..... "—Dr. Amit Sharma, (DM cardiology student), and passed MD (medicine) from KGMC, Lucknow, Uttar Pradesh.

"Bedside Clinics in Medicine by Dr. Arup Kundu is really nice to crash all the viva Q-A in your clinical viva.....also it helps to clear basics.....It teaches you how to think medicine" —in http://medcosmosbaroda.blogspot.com/2008_09_01 archive.html

A website in Vietnam, recommended this book as only clinical medicine book from Asia— www.ykhoavn.net/modules.php?name=Forums&file=viewtopic&p=7035-43k

Website in China (Weifang Medical University, Shandong, China) recommends this book for their students— www.xmail.net/wfmustudents/medicalbooks.htm

www.rxpgonline.com

- **"Medicine viva—by kundu; this comes in 2 volumes and is a must read stuff...."**
- **"Kundu is great for Symptomatology and specific exam cases... "**
- **"....go through a good clinical 'exam/cases book like Hutchinson and Kundu...."**
- **"Some important things you should know before entering clinics is given in Mcleods, Kundu clinical medicine. I think you can get these books and start off...."**
- **"....It is wonderful for all category of students whether average or brilliant one. It teaches you the basic medicine...."**

mciforchina. blogspot.com / 2008/ 08/ m-c-i-screening-test-books-syllabus. html-85k....recommended Bedside Clinics in Medicine, Part I & II for MCI screening test books for students passed lyiBBS from aborad.

www.medicalgeek.com (which book for clinical medicine?)

- **"....Arup Kumar Kundu—notes on all major, minor cases for exam...."**
- **"For clinical exam I read everything from Kundu part 1 and 2....never touched...even Dr. Arup Kumar Kundu was our external examiner....."**
- **"I would go for Kundu"**
- **"....for cases, Indian book—By Dr. Kundu....."**
- **"....you must buy Kundu..... "**

"..... I m using Kundu.....all case wise clinical study is very fine..... I really like it...." in www.cafemedico.com

"..... also Arup Kundu if you want to dash answers in ward round cases. I would recommend Kundu as a must buy over and above one basic book like Hunter... " — www.aippg.net

"..... Favorite Medical Books: Guyton's Physiology & Kundu's Medicine_____ " in www.doctorshangout.ning.com/profile/DrMansi

"....Favorite medical books: Harrison's principle's of internal medicine, Kundu, de Gruchy, John Patten...." in www.doctorshangout.com/profile/PEUISHSUGATHAN

"I would like to meet : Harrison, Hutchison, Davidson, Kundu_____" in www.doctorshangout.com / profile /RAJESHARAHANT.

"I am a 4th year student at IMTU Dar Es Salaam Tanzania. I have seen one of book titled Bedside clinics in medicine. How can I get my copies....."—hance Mdunye, IMTU, Dar Es Salaam, Tanzania.

"....It is a well known fact among medical professionals, that your book on bedside medicine has proved to be a holy gift to the generations of medical students in this part of the world...."—Apildev Neupane, final year medical student at Institute of Medicine, Kathmandu, Nepal.

..... and many others from every nook and corner of the country.

by-
Dr. Nigam Rashmi Dhar

CONTENTS

CHAPTER I : INSTRUMENTS AND PROCEDURES 1-63

Ryle's tube....1
Tracheostomy tube.... 4
Simple rubber catheter....6
Bone marrow aspiration needle....9
Liver biopsy needle.... 12
Lumbar puncture needle....15
I.V fluid bottle and infusion set....22
Syringe (5 ml/50 ml).... 28
Scalp vein set.... 31
Insulin syringe.... 32
Three-way cannula....35
Oral rehydration salt....36
The stethoscope....39
Sphygmomanometer.... 40
Clinical thermometer.... 45
Tuning fork....46
Hammer.... 48
Pin....48
Cotton.... 49
Measuring tape.... 49
Tongue depressor.... 50
Torch.... 51
Plain glass test tube....51
Condom....52
Airway tube.... 53
Intracath.... 53
Metered dose inhaler....54
Spacehaler.... 55
Proctoscope....56
Ambu bag.... 57
Endotracheal tube....57
Renal biopsy....58
Paracentesis abdominis....60
Thoracentesis.... 61
Pericardiocentesis....~.... 62

CHAPTER II : PATHOLOGY SPECIMENS 64-74

Lung.....! 64
Kidney.....67
Nervous system..... 70
Cardiovascular system..... 70
Intestine.....72
Liver.....73

CHAPTER III : RADIOLOGY 75-114

X-RAY CHEST..... 75
Preface..... 75
Consolidation of the lung.....`.....80
Pleural effusion..... 80
Pneumothorax..... 82
Hydropneumothorax.....83
Emphysema.....83
Bronchiectasis.....84
Lung abscess..... 85
Homogeneous opacity of one hemithorax..... 87
Collapse of the lung..... 88
Fibrosis of the lung..... 88
Tuberculous infiltrations..... 89
Miliary mottlings..... 91
Mediastinal widening..... 92
Pulmonary oedema..... 94
Thoracic neoplasm..... 95
X-RAY CHEST-HEART..... 96
Mitral stenosis.....96
Pericardial effusion..... 98
Enlarged cardiac shadow..... 99
STRAIGHT X-RAY OF THE ABDOMEN..... 100
Gas under the diaphragm.....100
BARIUM STUDY..... 101
Duodenal ulcer..... 102
Gastric ulcer..... 102
Oesophageal carcinoma..... 103
Cardiospasm..... 104
Pyloric stenosis.....105

X-RAY OF SKULL..... 106
Multiple myeloma..... 106
Thalassaemia..... 108
Miscellaneous skull X-rays..... 108
X-RAY OF HANDS..... 109
Scurvy..... 109
Rickets.....HO
Miscellaneous hand X-rays..... Ill
A SYNOPSIS OF CT SCAN.....112

CHAPTER IV : ELECTROCARDIOGRAPHY 115-149

INTRODUCTION AND BASIC PRINCIPLES.....115
DETERMINATION OF AXIS..... 116
ROTATION AND LIE.....118
DIFFERENT WAVES, COMPLEXES AND INTERVALS.....119
HYPERTROPHY PATTERNS..... 126
Atrial hypertrophy.....126
Left ventricular hypertrophy..... 126
Right ventricular hypertrophy..... 126
Chronic cor pulmonale..... 127
Acute cor pulmonale.....128
MYOCARDIAL ISCHAEMIA AND INFARCTION.....128
Angina pectoris.....128
Acute myocardial infarction..... 129
DISORDERS OF RHYTHM..... 130
Sinus arrhythmia..... 131
Sinus tachycardia..... 131
Sinus bradycardia.....131
Supraventricular premature beats.....132
Paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia.....132
Atrial fibrillation.....133
Atrial flutter..... 134
Ventricular premature beats..... 134
Ventricular tachycardia..... 135
Ventricular fibrillation..... 136
Ventricular flutter.....136
INTRAVENTRICULAR CONDUCTION DEFECTS.....137
Right bundle branch block (RBBB).....138
Left bundle branch block (LBBB)..... 138
Bifascicular block.....139
Trifascicular block.....140

ATRIOVENTRICULAR (AV) CONDUCTION DEFECTS..... 140
First degree heart block.....140
Second degree heart block.....141
Complete heart block..... 142
HEART BLOCK.....143
MISCELLANEOUS..,.....143
W-P-W syndrome.....143
Sick sinus syndrome..... 144
Hypothermia.....144
Electrical alternans.....145
Digitalis toxicity.....145
Quinidine toxicity..... 146
Hyperkalaemia.....146
Hypokalaemia..... 147
Dextrocardia.....147
Pericarditis.....148
Myocarditis.....148
Myxoedema..... 149
Athlete's heart..... 149
Cerebral diseases.....149
Pacemaker complex.....149

CHAPTER V : EMERGENCY MEDICINE 150-201

EVALUATION AND MANAGEMENT OF COMA..... 150
HEPATIC PRE-COMA/COMA.....153
COMA IN A DIABETIC..... 154
Hypoglycaemia.....155
Diabetic ketoacidosis..... 155
Hyperosmolar non-ketotic coma.....156
Lactic acidosis..... 157
EVALUATION AND MANAGEMENT OF SUDDEN RESPIRATORY DISTRESS.....157
Acute left ventricular failure..... 158
Acute severe asthma..... 159
Acute pulmonary thromboembolism.....160
Anaphylaxis..... 161
Hysterical hyperventilation..... 161
CONGESTIVE CARDIAC FAILURE..... 161
REFRACTORY HEART FAILURE..... 162

EVALUATION AND MANAGEMENT OF ACUTE CHEST PAIN..... 163
Angina pectoris..... 164
Acute myocardial infarction .... :..... 164
Musculoskeletal disorders..... 167
Acute dry pleurisy.....167
Acute dry pericarditis..... 167
Herpes zoster.....167
Diffuse oesophageal spasm 167
Cardiac neurosis.....167
Unstable angina..... 167
DRUG THERAPY IN HYPERTENSIVE EMERGENCIES..... 168
UNCONSCIOUS PATIENT WITH BRADYCARDIA..... 170
Stokes-Admas syndrome.....170
Sick sinus syndrome..... 171
Myxoedema coma..... 171
Hypothermia..... 172
MANAGEMENT OF A PATIENT OF HYPERPYREXIA..... 172
Benign tertian malaria..... 173
Malignant malaria..... 173
Cerebral malaria.....174
Heat stroke..... 175
PATIENT WITH FEVER, UNCONSCIOUSNESS AND NECK RIGIDITY..... 175
Pyogenic meningitis..... .....;.....176
Tuberculous meningitis.....177
Viral meningits.....177
Meningoencephalitis.....177
Typhoid meningism..... 178
RAISED INTRACRANIAL TENSION..... 178
CEREBROVASCULAR ACCIDENTS (CVA)..... 179
Cerebral thrombosis..... 179
Cerebral embolism..... 179
Cerebral haemorrhage.....179
Subarachnoid haemorrhage.....*180*
Hypertensive encephalopathy..... 180
CONVULSIONS.....180
Febrile convulsion..... 180
Status epilepticus..... 180
ACUTE ATTACK OF MIGRAINE..... 181
ACUTE GLOMERULONEPHRITIS..... 182

ACUTE PYELONEPHRITIS (UTI).....182
INTRACTABLE HICCOUGH.....183
HAEMATEMESIS/MELAENA.....184
DYSENTERY.....185
Acute amoebic dysentery.....185
Acute bacillary dysentery.....185
AMOEBIC LIVER ABSCESS.....186
ACUTE VIRAL HEPATITIS.....187
ENTERIC FEVER.....187
ACUTE PANCREATITIS.....188
CHOLERA WITH SEVERE DEHYDRATION.....189
HAEMOPTYSIS.....190
SEVERE ANAEMIA.....191
CARDIAC ARREST (CPR).....*.....194
PAROXYSMAL ATRIAL TACHYCARDIA (PAT).....195
ACUTE RHEUMATIC FEVER.....196
TETANUS.....197
ORGANOPHOSPHORUS POISONING.....198
SNAKE BITE.....v.....198
DOG BITE.....200
SCORPION BITE.....200

CHAPTER VI : DRUGS 202-228

Drugs on autonomic nervous system 202
Drugs used in bronchial asthma/airways obstruction.....204
Drugs used in systemic hypertension.....205
Diuretics.....208
Anti-anginal drugs.....209
Antiarrhythmic drugs.....211
Analgesics, antipyretics and anti-inflammatory drugs.....213
Antihistaminics and anti-5HT drugs.....215
Sedatives and antipsychotic drugs.....216
Antiepileptic drugs.....218
Anti-parkinsonian drugs.....220
Antituberculous drugs.....221
Antileprosy drugs.....223
Drugs for kala-azar.....224
Antimalarial drugs.....*.....225
Lipid lowering agents.....227

CHAPTER VII : CHARTS 229-306

CHARTS ON HAEMATOLOGY..... 229-244

Preface..... 229

Iron def iciency anaemia..... 231

Megaloblastic anaemia..... 232

Acute leukaemia..... 234

Chronic myeloid leukaemia..... 235

Pancytopenia..... 237

Agranulocytosis..... 238

Tropical eosinophilia..... 240

Thalassaemia..... 241

Thrombocytopenia •..... 243

CHARTS ON GLUCOSE TOLERANCE TEST (GTT)..... 245-252

Preface..... 245

Normal GTT..... 246

Impaired *GTT/IFG*..... 247

Ranal glycosuria..... 248

Alimentary glycosuria..... 249

Diabetic curve..... 251

CHARTS ON STOOL/FAECES..... 252-258

Preface..... 252

Acute amoebic dysentery..... 253

Acute bacillary dysentery..... 254

Giardiasis..... 256

Occult blood in stool..... 256

CHARTS ON URINE..... 258-270

Preface..... 258

Acute glomerulonephritis..... 260

Nephrotic syndrome..... 262

Chronic glomerulonephritis or chronic kidney disease..... 263

Urinary tract infection..... 266

Diabetic ketoacidosis..... 269

CHARTS ON CSF..... 270-280

Preface..... 270

Acute pyogenic meningitis..... 271

Tuberculous meningitis..... 273

Acute viral meningitis..... 275

Meningism..... 276

Subarachnoid haemorrhage..... 277

Xanthochromia..... 279

CHARTS ON TEMPERATURE.....281-298
Preface.....281
Quotidian temperature.....282
Tertian temperature.....283
Continued temperature.....285
Remittent temperature.....288
Step-ladder pattern pyrexia.....290
Temperature chart on measles.....292
Temperature chart on varicella infection.....294
Temperature chart on lobar pneumonia.....296
Temperature chart on dengue.....297
CHARTS ON LIVER FUNCTION TESTS.....299-306
Preface.....299
Acute viral hepatitis.....300
Unconjugated hyperbilirubinaemia 301
Cirrhosis of liver.....302
Cholestasis.....303
Chronic hepatitis.....305

APPENDIX 307-318

FEW VALUABLE INFORMATIONS.....307
INCUBATION PERIOD OF SOME IMPORTANT INFECTIONS.....309
THERAPEUTIC AND TOXIC BLOOD LEVELS OF COMMONLY USED DRUGS.....309
HAEMATOLOGICAL DATA AND APPROXIMATE CONVERSION CHART.....310
SERUM BIOCHEMICAL VALUES.....311
YOUR ORAL TABLE AND DISTRIBUTION OF MARKS.....312
INDEX.....313

by-
Dr. Nigam Rashmi Dhar
for more free pdf,mcq,ebook
join free whatsapp medico grp
009778828444

CHAPTER I : INSTRUMENTS AND PROCEDURES

RYLE'S TUBE

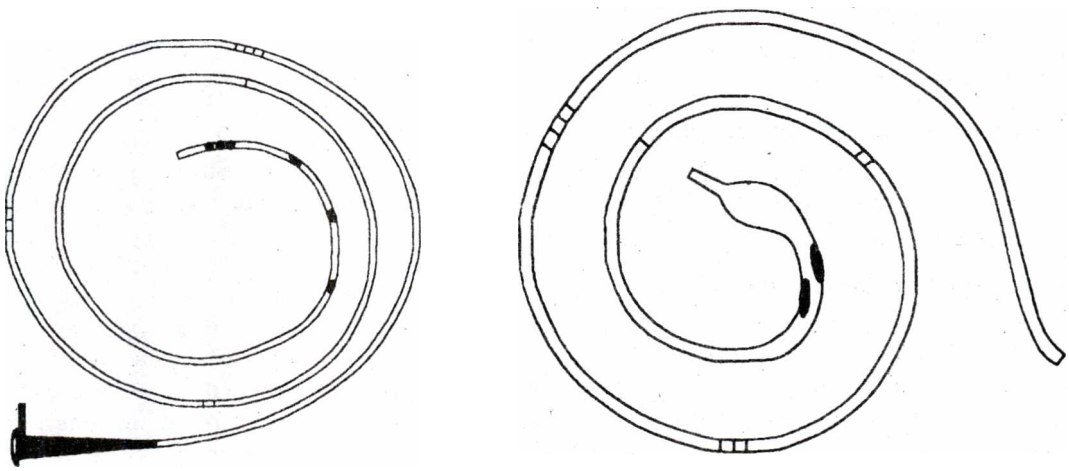


Fig. 1.1 : Ryle's tube (polythene and rubber) showing markings

Description :

It is a fine bore flexible red rubber or polythene (transparent) tube with external circumference of 8 mm and length 90 cm. The blind bulbous tip contains a lead shot inside the tube to facilitate passage of the tube into the oesophagus (it is heavy and thus it is easier for the patient to swallow the tip). The lower end of the tube is perforated by a number of side holes at different levels to allow easy suction of gastro-duodenal contents. There are four circular markings in the body of the tube as mentioned below :

a) First mark (single circular mark)—Placed at a distance of 40 cm from the tip and indicates the distance from upper central incisor teeth to cardiac orifice of stomach.

b) Second mark (two circular marks)—Indicates the distance between upper central incisor teeth and body of stomach (50 cm).

c) Third mark (three circular marks)—Indicates the distance between upper central incisor teeth and pylorus (57 cm).

d) Fourth mark (four circular marks)—Indicates the distance between upper central incisor teeth and first part of duodenum (65 cm). *It means the tube has reached duodenum when the fourth mark is seen at the teeth.*

The base (open end) is usually plugged by a conical plastic cap, and is used to fit with the nozzle of a syringe to push or to draw materials from the stomach. Ryle's tube is usually sterilised by keeping in boiling water for 30 minutes or by gamma ray irradiation.

The tip is made blunt to avoid trauma during introduction. If the perforations near the lower end are placed at same level, the tube may be easily torn during manipulation and if blocked {with openings at same level) by food debris or sticking to the mucosal surface of stomach, it would hamper suction of gastro-duodenal contents. Ryle's tube is available in different sizes (tube with smaller diameter is used in children). Instead of lead shot, polythene tube usually contains 3 radio-opaque metal balls.

How to be sure that the tip has reached the stomach ?

It is confirmed by the following methods—

1. Apply a 50 ml syringe at the open end of Ryle's tube. Inject air into the tube by pushing the

piston with a single rapid thrust and simultaneously auscultate over the epigastrium. A gurgling sound confirms the position of the tube in the stomach.

2. Aspirate the gastric contents; the contents come out freely if the tube is in the stomach. Acidic nature of the gastric contents may be confirmed by litmus paper test.
3. Fluoroscopy or straight X-ray of the abdomen shows the exact position of the tip of the tube as the tip contains lead shot or radio-opaque material.

* If the tube is passed falsely into the respiratory tract,

a) Patient complains of a choking sensation.
b) Violent cough appears and persists for long time.
c) Yield of aspiration becomes nil.

In this situation, take out the tube immediately and try to reintroduce it cautiously.

Why this nasogastric tube is named after 'Ryle' ?

So far too many varieties of nasogastric tubes have been discovered but the tube designed by the physician, John Alfred Ryle (1889-1950) of Guy's Hospital Medical School is the most acceptable and commonly used type.

How the Ryle's tube is introduced ?

The patient is first explained about the procedure in order to obtain maximum co-operation. Ask the patient to lie flat in bed with extended neck. Remove the dentures, if present. In the nose, a more patent nostril is selected and properly cleansed, and lubricated with lignocaine jelly (2%). Lubricate the tip of the sterilised tube with liquid paraffin or glycerine, and introduce the tip through one nostril (manually, mould the lower end of the tube a bit curved for easy passage through nasopharynx). As the tube reaches the oropharynx, the patient may start coughing once or twice and may even try to throw the tube by pulling it with his hands. Reassure the patient and ask him to swallow the tube, and to facilitate swallowing, one or two teaspoonfull of water may be poured into the mouth. With patience, the tube will gradually pass into the stomach. Be sure that the tube is in the stomach and not within the trachea (see above). Take care in case of a comatosed patient, where the protective cough reflex is lost and the tube may be introduced within the trachea without any alarming sign.

Lastly, the base (open end) of the tube is kept adhered with the forehead by a leucoplast and the open end is usually plugged (except in intestinal obstruction where the open end is kept open to allow continuous drainage). In a restless patient, hands should be tied.

Conventionally, the tube should not be kept for more than 48 hours. After 48 hours, the tube should be smeared daily with some antiseptic solution by withdrawing it only for 2 inches (the part lying within the nose), and then reintroducing it.

* Do not force the passage of Ryle's tube, if persistent resistance is felt.

** In repeated failure, try a smaller gauge tube.

Different uses :

(A) Diagnostic—

1. Fractional test meal—Virtually obsolete now-a-days.
2. To confirm upper G. I. haemorrhage.
3. To isolate AFB from gastric juice in a child who is suffering from pulmonary tuberculosis (children usually swallow their sputum), or the patient who can not expectorate sputum; searching for malignant cells in gastric carcinoma.
4. For forensic purpose—Detection of cause of death in a suspected case of poisoning by subsequent chemical analysis of gastric aspiration (barbiturate, organophosphorus, copper sulphate, alcohol etc).
5. To aspirate duodenal secretions for analysis of,
   a) Pancreatic function,
   b) Detection of typhoid carriers, and
   c) Detection of Giardia lamblia infestation.
6. To diagnose gastric outlet obstruction (gastic aspirate will exceed 200 ml after overnight fasting).

(B) Therapeutic—

1. **Nasogastric feeding (see the next question).**
2. **Nasogastric suction in,**
   a) **Acute intestinal obstruction,**
   b) **Bowel rest in acute pancreatitis, Crohn's disease and intestinal fistula,**
   c) **Acute dilatation of stomach,**
   d) **Acute abdomen,**
   e) **Post-operative, and**
   f) **G.I. tract haemorrhage or perforation (paralytic ileus).**
3. **Gastric wash or lavage done in,**
   a) **Pyloric stenosis,**
   b) **Non-corrosive poisoning, drug overdose, and**
   c) **Severe hiccough (by ice-cold water or sodi-bicarbonate solution).**
4. **Medication in comatose patient.**
5. **If can be used as a tourniquet.**

*** Gastric lavage is contraindicated in a) Corrosive poisoning (Ryle's tube may perforate the oesophagus in acid or alkali poisoning), and b) Kerosine oil, paraffin or petrolium poisoning (gastric lavage increases the chance of development of lipoid pneumonia).**

**** The two main indications for use of Ryle's tube are a) aspiration of gastric contents, and b) nutritional supplementation of the patient.**

***** Left lateral position of the patient facilitates the recovery of gastric juices.**

****** Insert a cuffed endotracheal tube before performing gastric lavage in unconscious patients.**

Indications for Ryle's tube feeding :

1. **Unconscious patients (CVA, hepatic encephalopathy, diabetic ketoacidosis, cerebral malaria, encephalitis, meningitis, head injury).**
2. **Inability to swallow, e.g., after facio-maxillary injury or surgery, bulbar palsy.**
3. **Patients who are reluctant to take food orally, e.g., severe anorexia, anorexia nervosa etc.**
4. **Neurogenic dysphagia, nasal regurgitation in polymyositis or dermatomyositis.**
5. **In patients with burns.**

N.B. : Previously used intragastric milk drip in acute exacerbation of chronic duodenal ulcer is not practised now as milk may increase gastric acid secretion and release of gastrin, stimulated by direct effect of milk protein and calcium.

Complications of nasogastric intubation :

1. **Rhinitis and pharyngitis; ulceration in oesophagus may develop.**
2. **If the tube enters into trachea, aspiration pneumonia and even death may result.**
3. Blockage of the tube.
4. **If the tube is kept in situ for a prolonged period (e.g., in bulbar palsy), it is often difficult to take out the tube (the Ryle's tube may be coiled spontaneously inside the lumen of stomach).**
5. **Perforation of pharynx or oesophagus (chance increased in presence of oesophageal disease).**
6. **Chance of respiratory tract infection in prolonged intubation (thus, chest physiotherapy is necessary).**

Hypochlorhydria and hyperchlorhydria :

(A) Hypochlorhydria or achlorhydria—

1. **Aged persons > 60 years.**
2. **Pernicious anaemia.**
3. **Gastric malignancy.**
4. **After proton pump inhibitor therapy.**

(B) Hyperchlorhydria—

1. **Zollinger-Ellison syndrome.**
2. **Systemic mastocytosis.**
3. **Hyperparathyroidism.**
4. **G-cell hyperplasia.**

N.B. : Read corrosive poisoning, drug overdose, haematemesis in details.

TRACHEOSTOMY TUBE

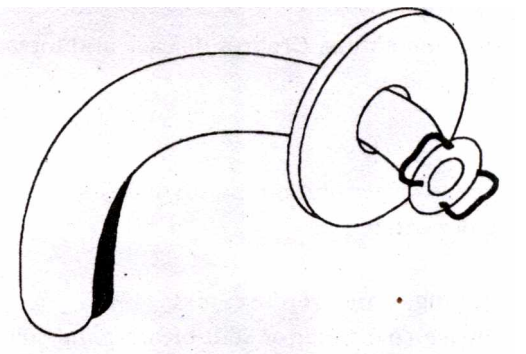


Fig. 1.2 : Fuller's bivalved tracheostomy tube

Available varieties :

(A) Metallic variety—

- **a) Fuller's bivalved tube.**
- **b) Parker's angled tube.**
- **c) Durham's Lobster tail tube.**

(B) Rubber (synthetic) variety—

- **a) Ordinary rubber tube.**
- **b) Portex tube.**
- **c) Morrant Baker cuffed rubber tube.**

Description of Fuller's tracheostomy tube :

It is the commonly used type. It consists of one outer and one inner tube.

Outer tube—The curved tube is split distally into two thin blades which can be easily approximated. As the blades have spring-like action, it acts as a tracheal dilator. Proximally, the outer tube contains a rounded shield bearing an opening on each side through which threads can pass and is fastened to the back of the neck to fix the tube.

Inner tube—It is a tube with an opening and made for air passage. At its proximal end, there are two rings for easy handling.

What is tracheostomy ?

Tracheostomy' is an operation for temporary relief of a patient who is suffering from acute upper airway obstruction. It is aimed at making an opening into the trachea in order to by-pass the upper airway obstruction and introducing a tube into that opening through the incision given in the neck.

Tracheotomy' is a simple incision given temporarily on trachea in an attempt to expose the tracheal lumen for the treatment of tumour or stenosis.

Function of tracheostomy :

The tracheostomy serves the following purposes—

1. **It by-passes the upper respiratory obstruction.**
2. **It reduces the dead space and thus improves efficiency of respiration.**
3. **It diminishes airway resistance, i.e., strain of respiration is reduced.**
4. **It helps in removing the excess bronchial secretions.**
5. **Insertion of a cuffed tracheostomy tube helps in application of positive-pressure ventilation.**

Common indications for 'emergency' tracheostomy :

1. **Laryngeal diphtheria (pseudomembrane obstructs the larynx).**
2. **Impacted foreign body in the larynx.**

3. **Acute laryngeal oedema (oedema glottis resulting from anaphylaxis or inhalation of irritant gases) with cyanosis.**
4. **Tetany (in case of laryngysmus stridulus) or tetanus (laryngeal spasm).**
5. **Acute bulbar palsy (poliomyelitis, G.B. syndrome, rabies, myasthenic crisis).**
6. **Ludwig's angina.**
7. **Spasm of vocal cord (tabetic laryngeal crisis) in tabes dorsalis (not seen now-a-days).**

Common indications for 'planned' or 'elective' tracheostomy :

1. **As a preliminary step in different operations in larynx.**
2. **To relieve obstruction in a case of laryngeal carcinoma.**
3. **In respiratory failure (paralysis of intercostal muscles) i.e., for long-term ventilation, this is aimed to reduce the dead space. Apart from this, intermittent positive-pressure ventilation may be applied through a cuffed endotracheal tube inserted via a tracheostomy, in patients suffering from respiratory paralysis with or without bulbar palsy (particularly when the respiratory paralysis is likely to last for more than 2-3 days).**
4. **Bronchial lavage.**
5. **Incompetent larynx with aspiration.**

Different types of tracheostomy :

It depends on the position of isthmus of the thyroid gland.

A. **High tracheostomy—Opening done above the isthmus (it has the risk of injuring cricoid cartilage, followed by stenosis).**
B. **Median tracheostomy—Opening done at the level of the isthmus (choice in acute emergencies).**
C. **Low tracheostomy—Opening done below the isthmus (some physicians prefer this method).**

Common bedside features of laryngeal obstruction :

The patient presents with,

1. **Restlessness with hyperactive accessory muscles of respiration.**
2. **Dyspnoea and even orthopnoea.**
3. **Cough (croupy cough is seen in diphtheria).**
4. **Stridor.**
5. **Central cyanosis.**
6. **Intercostal suction.**
7. **Signs of exhaustion.**

How the tube is introduced ?

The two tubes are seperated. Press the two cusps (blades) of the outer tube and try to appose them, and now introduce it with its concavity directed downwards. The blades will open up and will act as a tracheal dilator. Tie the outer tube round the neck with a thread. Then introduce the inner tube through the outer one and place a piece of wet sterile gauze over the opening of the tube.

The advantages of double tubing are—

a) **When the inner tube is taken out for cleaning, the outer tube serves the purpose.**
b) **Bivalved outer tube helps to avoid the use of an extra tracheal dilator.**

Precautions taken during the period of intubation :

1. **Metallic tube is kept for a short period, usually not more than 24 hours to avoid necrosis of trachea which may lately give rise to tracheal stenosis. This should be replaced by rubber tracheostomy tube.**
2. **The rubber tube may be kept up to a desired period.**
3. **Precautions are taken so that the tube remains patent. Intermittent suction may serve the purpose.**
4. **Strict asepsis is maintained. A sterile gauze piece soaked in 1 : 1000 acriflavine solution or povidone-iodine solution is commonly used over the opening of the tube.**

5. **Systemic broad-spectrum antibiotic is used to prevent respiratory tract infection, as and when necessary. Good nursing care with strict asepsis is maintained.**

* **The inner tube should be removed every four hours for cleaning purpose. The excess of secretions should be removed (by suction) with a soft rubber catheter. Mucolytic aerosols or humidifiers are often used to liquefy the viscid secretions.**

** **Once the patient can sleep for a night with the tube plugged, it is then possible to remove the tracheostomy tube.**

*** **The tracheostomy tube is sterilised by immersing in concentrated lysol solution.**

Post-operative complications :

1. **Bronchopneumonia.**
2. **Mediastinal emphysema.**
3. **Mediastinitis (i.e., mediastinal infection).**
4. **Pneumothorax.**
5. **Necrosis of anterior tracheal wall.**
6. **Blockage of the tracheostomy tube (in improper toileting).**
7. **Tracheal stenosis or collapse of the tracheal rings.**
8. **Tracheo-oesophageal fistula.**
9. **Erosion of innominate artery.**
10. **Difficulty in decannulation ('decannulation' is the method by which tubes of progressively smaller diameter are introduced in order to adapt the patient to breathe through the normal airway, as the patient often forgets to breathe normally when tracheostomy tube remains for a longer period).**

N.B. : Read steps of tracheostomy operation from standard ENT text book. Read diphtheria and bulbar palsy in details.

SIMPLE RUBBER CATHETER



Fig. 1.3 : Simple rubber catheter

Description :

1. **Simple tube made of India-rubber or latex-rubber.**
2. **There is a channel throughout the whole length of the tube.**
3. **Blunt and rounded tip with perforation (eye); the other end is open.**
4. **Number of size (available in different sizes) is printed on the catheter.**

* **The catheter is sterilised by keeping in boiling water for 30 minutes or by gamma ray irradiation.**

** **Catheters made of 'latex' make it biologically inert as far as possible. 'Silicone' catheters are preferred when required to be kept for a longer time.**

Different uses :

1. **To relieve retention of urine.**
2. **To differentiate retention of urine from anuria.**
3. **As a tourniquet (to produce haemostasis or to make the veins prominent).**
4. **As an oxygen tube, i.e., used as a nasal catheter.**
5. **In infants, it may be used as a feeding tube.**
6. **Used prior to cystography (to introduce dye in the urinary bladder).**
7. **For bladder wash (by acriflavine or silver nitrate solution).**

8. As a drainage tube.
9. To obtain urine specimen in an unconscious patient.
10. To differentiate pelvic lump from bladder swelling.
11. **Before or during delivery (Child birth).**

* Simple rubber cathater is used for catheterisation 'just once' only.

Mention common medical causes of catheterisation :

Temporary catheterisation is done as an emergency measure to relieve pain induced by acute retention of urine. This is usually achieved by using simple rubber catheter or Gibbon's catheter.

A self-retaining catheter (e.g., Foley's catheter) is used with intention to retain the catheter for few days. They are basically used in patients with benign hypertrophy of prostate (BHP) who are unfit for prostatectomy, neurogenic bladder and in patients who are mostly bed-bound (e.g., hemiplegia or paraplegia). A 'haematuria catheter' is a three-way catheter (used in haematuria) with an extra channel for irrigation. The 'medical causes' are :

1. Coma or unconsciousness due to any cause e.g., CVA *(hemiplegia),* diabetic ketoacidosis, encephalitis, hepatic coma, cerebral malaria.
2. Meningitis (tuberculous commonly).
3. Compressive myelopathy (caries spine), acute transverse myelitis, spinal injury, anterior spinal artery thrombosis, i.e., in *paraplegia.*
4. Poisoning—Opium, dhatura, organophosphorus or drug overdose (sedatives).
5. Snake bite (specially Viperidae group).
6. Sometimes, catheterisation is done in acute nephritis, nephrotic syndrome, renal failure and patients in Intensive Therapeutic Unit (ITU) to measure the actual urinary output.

* Common surgical indications are BHP, vesical calculus, bladder injury and carcinoma of prostate.

How to catheterise the urinary bladder ?

Maintenance of strict asepsis is very important.

1. The procedure should be explained to the patient. The catheter is sterilised properly (or already done by manufacturers). The physician should follow strict antiseptic and aseptic measures—hand washing by soap and spirit, and wearing sterile mask, gown and gloves. The local part of the patient is cleaned meticulously by any antiseptic solution.
2. The tip of the catheter is lubricated by liquid paraffin and introduced per urethra; 2% lignocaine jelly may be used to reduce pain during introduction.
3. Oulflow of urine confirms proper introduction while evacuation of the bladder is done gradually.
4. The free end of the catheter should not touch the urine contained in the kidney-tray as contaminated urine from the container may be sucked into the bladder by negative intravesical pressure after evacuation.
5. The catheter is taken out after evacuation is over or may be kept for some time by proper adhesion on the thigh by leucoplast; if repeated or prolonged catheterisation is necessary, a self-retaining catheter (e.g., Foley's catheter) should replace simple rubber catheter.

* For self-retaining catheters in adults, it is better to choose the 'medium size' (neither too large nor too fine). A 14 Charriere catheter is a good first choice in an adult (catheters are sized using the system invented by Charriere).

Risk of rapid evacuation of the bladder :

Rapid evacuation may be dangerous due to development of,

1. Reflex shock.
2. Haematuria as a result of rupture of engorged and dilated sub mucous veins of the bladder.
3. Reflex anuria (rare).

Initial steps to relieve acute retention of urir\e

1. Reassurance.
2. Alternate application of hot and cold over the hypogastrium.

p. Produce the sound of a running tap (to initiate childhood reflex).

4. Apply hot hip bath.
5. Inj. carbachol — 2 ml, I.M may be given to initiate the reflex; parasympathetic stimulation enhances evacuation of urine.
6. Lastly, try catheterisation.

Differentiation between retention of urine and anuria :

(A) Clinically : On inspection hypogastrium looks distended in retendtion of urine. Now percussion of the hypogastrium is done from above downwards where retention will produce a dull note and in anuria, normal tympanitic note of abdomen is elicited. Moreover, application of pressure over hypogastric swelling produces desire for micturition in retention of urine.

(B) By catheterisation : In anuria, no urine comes out after introduction of a simple rubber catheter; urine comes out after catheterisation in a case of retention of urine.

Complications of catheterisation :

1. Urinary tract infection (commonest); catheter fever.
2. Catheter trauma and bleeding.
3. Haematuria after sudden evacuation.
4. Shock (reflex) - rare.
5. False passage (rare).
6. Blockage of the lumen of catheter leading to retention of urine.
7. Long-tern catheterisiation may be associated with urethral ulceration, stricture formation or formation of vesical calculus.

* An indwelling catheter invariably leads to urinary tract infection within days or weeks. This can be minimised by regular bladder wash done by saline or dilute chlorhexidine solution, and changing the catheter after few days.

Common causes of anuria :

(A) Pre-renal:

1. Shock, sepsis (septicaemia), haemorrhage (massive).
2. Dehydration due to any cause (e.g., acute gastroenteritis).
3. Crush syndrome.
4. Burn (extensive).
5. Intravascular haemolysis, mismatched blood transfusion.
6. Congestive cardiac failure.
7. Acute pancreatitis.

(B) Renal:

1. Acute glomerulonephritis, rapidly progressive glomerulonephritis (RPGN).
2. Acute renal failure.
3. Acute papillary necrosis (diabetes, phenacetin-induced, sickle cell disease).
4. Diffuse cortical necrosis.
5. Complete renal arterial and venous obstruction.
6. Chronic renal failure (produces anuria terminally).

(C) Post-renal :

1. Reflex anuria (calculus in one ureter may produce reflex obstruction of the other ureter).
2. Ligation of the ureters (accidental) or bilateral ureteric obstruction by clots, stones or crystals.
3. Ureteric obstruction due to retroperitoneal fibrosis or malignant infiltrations around the ureters.

No urine comes out after catheterisation : reasons behind :

In this situation, one should think of :

1. False passage.
2. Eye of the catheter remaining above the urine level in the bladder — a little withdrawal of the catheter brings out urine.

3. **Catheter Is blocked.**
4. **Dealing with anuria instead of retention of urine.**

*** An oxygen tube may be used as a rubber catheter though it is very thin. Don't confuse a simple rubber catheter with the Ryle's tube (Ryle's tube is longer and has lead shot or metal balls at the tip).**

**** S *elf-retaining catheters* (Foley's, Malecot's) are usually encountered in surgery practical examination.**

BONE MARROW ASPIRATION NEEDLE

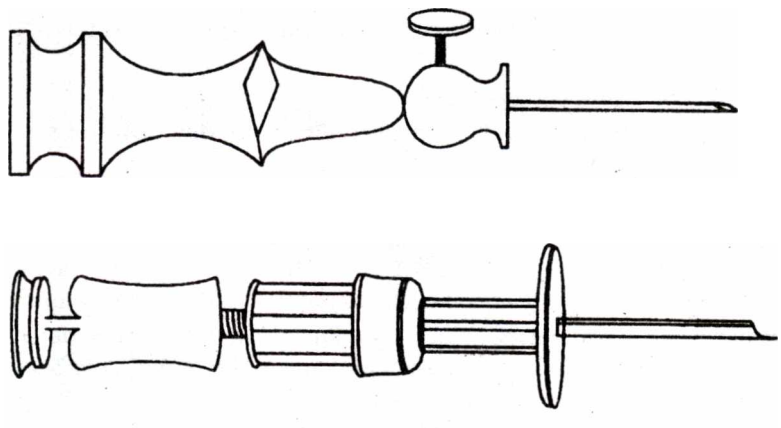


Fig. 1.4 : Sternal puncture needle (Salah and Klima's variety)

Use :

It is used for bone marrow aspiration. Often it is loosely termed as sternal puncture (S.P.) needle.

Description :

The needle consists of three parts—

1. **The needle proper—It is a stout wide bore needle (length is 5 cm); the needle is shortly bevelled at one end, and the base of the stylet or the nozzle of a syringe fits in the other broad end.**
2. **The stylet—It keeps the needle patent during introduction. When kept inside the needle proper, it helps to know whether the tip of the needle has entered into the marrow cavity or not. The base of the stylet contains a small projection for better fixation with the needle proper.**
3. **The adjustable guard—The adjustable screw guard prevents over-penetration of the needle. The plane or flat surface of the guard should look down to the chest wall of the patient.**

The S.P. needle is made of steel. There are two types :

(1) Salah (commonly used) and (2) Klima. The two varieties differ in the design, specially in the type of the guard. Klima's variety contains an adjustable guard on the stem of the needle proper; it has a central screw (not projected from the side like Salah's variety). The needle is sterilised by immersing in concentrated lysol solution.

N.B. : Bone marrow biopsy is of two types :

a) **Aspiration biopsy (by Salah's or Klima's needle), and**
b) **Trephine biopsy (by Jamshidi's needle).**

Sites of puncture :

1. **Body of the sternum—2nd or 3rd piece of body on either side of midline (manubrium stemae is less cellular).**
2. **Posterior iliac crest.**
3. **Upper part of the medial surface of tibia, just below the tibial tuberosity.**
4. **Spinous process of lumbar vertebrae.**
5. **Ribs (rarely used).**
6. **Any site of bone infiltration or tumour (in disease).**



Billious secretion, accumulated in the stomach in acute pancreatitis, is coming out through Ryle's tube and collected in a bag



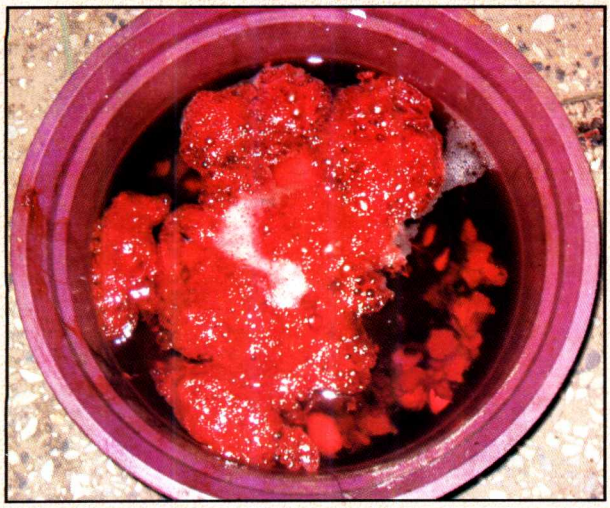
Blood drawn from right antecubital vein; a glove has been used here as a touriniquet



Orange-yellow coloured urine collected in urosac in a patient of caries spine who is on rifampicin



Heart failure and shock from valvular heart disease are managed in the indoor with dobutamine drip (with the help of **'syringe pump'** kept on drip stand shelf) and multi-channel **monitor** (rests on meat-safe); the patient responded well



Massive haemoptysis in a patient of bronchogenic carcinoma; air bubbles (froth) are seen mixed with blood



A patient recovering from **lightning injury**



A patient suffering from fibrocalculous pancreatic disease (FCPD) is trying to manage abdominal pain by drawing folded legs over the abdomen - **decubitus** of chronic pancreatitis; she had type 1 diabetes mellitus



Profuse saliva is seen in a sputum-bowl in a patient of suicidal acid ingestion; she had ptyalism or sialorrhoea



Waste disposal in hospitals are done by red (gauze, cotton, IV set, blood bags, saline bottles, catheters), blue (sharp objects like needles, razors, and syringes), and black buckets (common disposals like earthen pots, waste food material, papers); yellow bucket (not in picture) is used for disposal of placenta and other tissues



White slough in tongue with haemorrhagic spots and erythema (sore tongue) are seen in accidental acid ingestion



Cellular debris present in **urine** is collected in the urosac in a patient of severe urinary tract infection (UTI)



A patient of acute leukaemia is undergoing **bone marrow aspiration** from posterior iliac crest

5. The guard is adjusted at a distance which is equal to the depth of the skin and the subcutaneous tissue (varies with the build of the patient) plus 0.5 cm extra length (this is the thickness of cortex of the sternum). The stylet is now put within the needle, and by boring or drilling movement the needle is pushed through the skin vertically down (the needle is held at right angles to the bone) till the medulla is reached.
6. As soon as the bone marrow as reached, the stylet is removed and a metal syringe is attached to the needle. Now as the marrow is aspirated, the patient complains of excruciating suction pain; 0.2 ml of bone marrow is sucked out gently. The needle with the metal syringe is then removed as a whole. The aspirated marrow is dropped immediately over the properly cleaned slides to prepare films.
7. The puncture site is sealed with tincture benzoin and the patient is advised to take rest for at least 30 minutes. Pulse and BP are monitored half hourly for 4 hours, and analgesics may be given to relieve pain.
8. Usually 6 pairs of glass slides are given in the tray. Remove the blood or fluid part from the slide by tilting the slide, or by means of blotting paper or pipette. Marrow films (marrow is granular) are now prepared like blood films (or two slides containing marrow material are apposed and slided over). After drying, the slides are stained (usually with Leishman's stain).

* Aspiration of more than 0.2 ml of material will unnecessarily dilute the marrow (as blood comes) and reduce the concentration of marrow cells.

** If no marrow is obtainable from a site, a different site may be chosen.

(B) Iliac crest puncture—

Safest: the patient lies in prone position on a pillow placed beneath the pelvis.

(C) Lumbar spinous process puncture—

Easy procedure. Patient sits or adopts lateral decubitus position. The needle is introduced perpendicularly and a bit lateral to the midline.

How to recognise that marrow material is present on the slide ?

As the marrow is granular, the surface of the film will appear uneven.

How to be sure that marrow cavity has reached ?

This is diagnosed by,

1. Sudden loss of resistance.
2. The needle remains in vertical position without any support.
3. The tip of the stylet is smeared with red granular marrow material when removed from the needle.
4. Reintroduction of the stylet will produce pain.
5. Suction by the syringe produces severe and intense pain (most reliable proof), and is due to irritation of pain carrying nerve fibres surrounding the marrow cells.

Complications of bone marrow aspiration :

1. Over-penetration (if posterior table of sternum is penetrated, aorta and its branches and other vital mediastinal structures may be damaged)—cardiac tamponade and pneumothorax may develop.
2. Haemorrhage (haematoma) and bone pain.
3. Shock.
4. Infection (osteomyelitis).
5. Sudden death due to accidental injury to vital organs.

Causes of dry tap :

Failure to obtain marrow may be due to,

1. Faulty technique.
2. Myelosclerosis/myelofibrosis (marrow replaced by fibrous tissue).
3. Marrow aplasia or hypoplasia (marrow replaced by fat).
4. Gross marrow hyperplasia—May be seen in leukaemia.
5. Carcinomatous infiltration of the bone marrow (tightly packed with infiltrates).

* These cases actually demand trephine biopsy.

** 'Bloody tap' is the bone marrow which is greatly diluted with blood.

Examination of the bone marrow film :

Following are examined under the microscope—

(A) The cellularity of the marrow.

(B) Type and activity of erythropoiesis.

(C) The number and type of :
- a) Developing WBC.
- b) Megakaryocytes.
- c) Plasma cell.

D) Myeloid-erythroid ratio (M:E).

(E) Presence of :
- a) Parasites or any organism.
- b) Foreign body; tumour cells or any abnormal cell.
- c) Fatty and fibrous tissue.
- d) Iron (content).

* Normal M:E = 3:1 or 4:1

Composition of normal bone marrow :

The normal bone marrow is composed of haemopoietic cells (nucleated cells 20000-1 lae/mm^3}, blood vessels, reticulum, fatty tissue and nerves.

Criteria for ideal site in bone marrow puncture :

1. Superficial bone (i.e., easy accessibility).
2. Not close to any vital structure.
3. Thin cortex with more cancellous tissue.

* Trephine biopsy needle is used where aspiration of bone marrow is "unsuccessful (myelofibrosis, myelosclerosis) or unhelpful (malignant infiltration) or in diagnosis and assessment of osteomalacia/ hyperparathyroid bone disease. Jamshicli-Swain biopsy needle has a distal cutting edge. The posterior iliac crest is preferred for performing trephine biopsy.

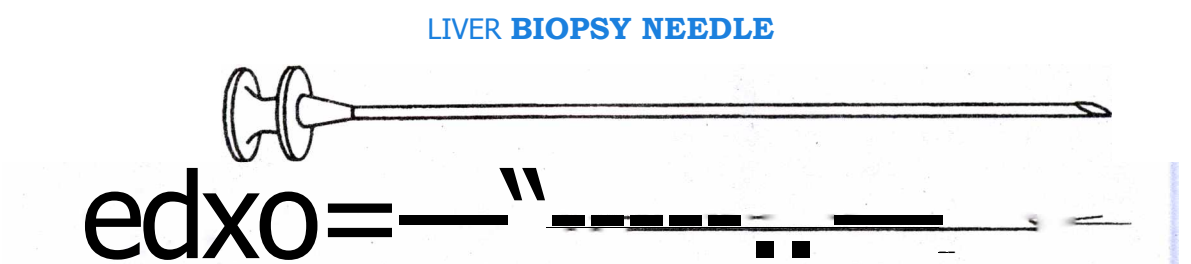


Fig. 1.5 : Liver biopsy needle (the solid stylet; and outer hollow needle with inner split needle within)

Types :

There are three types of needle used for biopsy of liver.

1. Vim-Silverman's biopsy needle (commonly used; it is a cutting needle)—See Fig. 1.5 above.
2. Menghini's aspiration biopsy needle (fragmentation of liver tissue is better, low cost, quicker).
3. Sheathed Trucut' needle (modified Vim-Silverman's needle).

Description :

Vim-Silverman needle has three parts—

1. Outer-hollow needle—It guides the inner split needle.
2. Inner split needle—It brings out the liver tissue.
3. Solid stylet—It keeps the needle patent during introduction.

Indications of liver biopsy :

1. Cirrhosis of liver (commonest).
2. Carcinoma of liver (primary or secondary).

3. Chronic hepatitis.
4. Portal hypertension of any aetiology.
5. Alcoholic liver disease, drug-induced hepatitis or cholestasis of uncertain origin.
6. Storage and metabolic disorders, e.g., glycogen storage disease, haemochromatosis, amyloidosis.
7. Infective or granulomatous diseases e.g., tuberculosis, brucellosis, leptospirosis, amoebiasis, sarcoidosis.
8. Lymphoma (operative liver biopsy for staging), myeloid metaplasia.
9. Unexplained hepatomegaly or elevation of liver enzymes; pyrexia of unknown origin.
10. Post-hepatic transplantation.

Contraindications of liver biopsy :

(A) Absolute contraindications are—

1. Abnormal blood clotting mechanism (thrombocytopenia, haemophilia).
2. Suspected hydatid cyst of liver (may precipitate anaphylactic reaction after puncture of the cyst).
3. Passive venous congestion of liver (i.e., in the presence of congestive cardiac failure).
4. Subphrenic abscess (right).
5. Right-sided empyema thoracis or pleural effusion; septic cholangitis.
6. Haemangioma of liver.
7. Dilated biliary channels (may lead to biliary peritonitis).

(B) Relative contraindications are—

1. Massive ascites.
2. Severe and protracted jaundice.
3. Severe obstructive airway disease.
4. Non-cooperative patient.

N.B. : Liver biopsy should not be performed if the platelet count goes below 80000/mm^3 and bilirubin above 20 mg/dl. In massive and tense ascites, specimen of liver tissue may not be obtained (as liver is displaced medially, it impedes penetration by the biopsy needle, or the biopsy material may be lost in ascitic fluid) or may lead to continuous oozing of fluid.

Prerequisites for liver biopsy :

1. *Prothrombin time should not be more than 3 seconds prolonged over control values (if control prothrombin time is 16 seconds, then patient's value should not be > 19 seconds to have a safe liver biopsy).*
2. Try to rule out hydatid cyst of liver, subphrenic abscess, empyema thoracis or haemangioma of liver by prior ultrasonography. Take the H/O any bleeding tendency before attempting liver biopsy.
3. Rule out protracted deep jaundice.
4. Patient's blood group should be known; arrange for blood transfusion to combat any post-operative bleeding.

If prothrombin time is high, try to normalise it by giving 10 mg of inj. vitamin K daily by I.M route for consecutive 3 days before performing liver biopsy. Sedation before biopsy is not routinely advocated because it may interfere with patient's cooperation.

How the liver biopsy tray is prepared ?

1. Spirit, iodine, sterile gown, mask and gloves for antiseptic purpose.
2. 2% lignocaine solution as local anaesthetic.
3. Sterile liver biopsy needle.
4. 2 ml glass syringe with needle for local anaesthesia.
5. Sterile gauze and cotton.
6. Specimen containers (empty vials) with preservative solution (formol-saline).
7. Benzoin solution.

Procedure of performing liver biopsy :

1. Patient lies flat near the edge of the bed as far as possible. One pillow under the head and one under the patient's lower part of thorax may be placed for the purpose of expansion of thoracic cage.
2. The physician should wear the sterile gown. Standing on the right side of the patient, the physician cleans the local part by antiseptic solution.
3. Idealy, the biopsy site is 2 to 3 ICS below the upper border of liver dullness, which should be assessed beforehand. Local anaesthetic solution is usually infiltrated at the 8th or 9th ICS in the midaxillary line (skin, subcutaneous tissue and parietal pleura are infiltrated).
4. The outer hollow needle with the solid stylet is introduced through the 8th or 9th ICS in the midaxillary line at the end of expiration or with the patient breathing quietly (it is not always possible for the patient to hold the respiration) till is felt to enter the liver. The direction of the needle is slightly posterior and cranial to avoid the injury of gall bladder.
5. Now ask the patient to hold breath for few seconds (ask the patient to practice holding of breath before the procedure is started). Remove the stylet quickly and introduce the inner split needle through the outer needle. The outer hollow needle in advanced completely, and the outer needle plus the inner split needle is rotated as a whole through 360° (as Vim-Silverman's needle is a cutting needle).
6. The whole needle is now withdrawn. The puncture site is sealed with tincture benzoin.
7. The biopsy tissue captured by the inner split needle is kept in the preservative solution of biopsy container for histological examination.
8. After-care—Rest in bed for 24 hours is essential. Observe the pulse, BP and respiratory rate every one hour for next 24 hours. The patient is advised to lie on right lateral position for first 4 hours. Give analgesics, sedatives, antibiotics whenever indicated.

How to be sure that needle has gone within the liver ?

After introduction of the outer needle with the stylet, take off your hand from the needle, and ask the patient to breathe in and out very slowly. If the needle is within the liver, it starts moving with respiration.

'Dry' liver biopsy or causes of failure :

1. Faulty technique.
2. Very tough hepatic tissue (e.g., cirrhosis of liver).
3. Tense ascites.
4. Emphysema.

Complications of liver biopsy :

1. Haemorrhage—Intraperitoneal or intrathoracic (haemothorax). Bleeding is due to perforation of distented portal or hepatic veins, or aberrant intercostal arteries.
2. Biliary peritonitis (due to trauma in gall bladder).
3. Shock or precipitation of hepatic coma.
4. Perihepatitis and/or pleurisy (patient may complain of severe pain in the right hypochondrium and right shoulder, and hepatic/pleural rub may appear).
5. Haemobilia—Bleeding from damaged hepatic vessel into bile duct.
6. Intrahepatic arteriovenous fistula.
7. Intrahepatic haematoma.
8. Transient bacteraemia, septicaemia.
9. Anaphylaxis (if hydatid cyst is punctured).
10. Small pneumothorax (right), puncture of intra-abdominal viscera.

* Now-a-days, USG or CT-guided biopsy reduces the rate of complications. Actually, if the performer is skillful and the patient is carefully selected, the rate of complications are less.

Ideal biopsy tissue :

It is surprising that a small biopsy tissue is the representative of changes in the whole liver. The biopsy tissue should be 1-4 cm long and should weigh 10-50 mg.

What is trans-jugular liver biopsy ?

When the patient suffers from massive ascites, coagulation disorder, small liver (from cirrhosis

commonly) or is really uncooperative, a special Trucut needle is inserted to perform the biopsy through a catheter which is already placed in the hepatic vein, via the jugular vein. The extra advantage of this method is the measurement of the wedged hepatic venous pressure.

* Liver biopsy is done by 4 methods : 1. Percutaneous (by Vim-Silverman's needle) 2. Trans-jugular 3. Laparoscopy 4. Laparotomy (if done for some other reason).

** The modem 'biopty gun' (Biopter) is a modified Trucut needle. If ascites is present, first go for paracentesis abdominis and then do the liver biopsy.

*** 'phe "Trucut' needle is less injurious to Vim-Silverman needle, and is disposable. The Trucut' needle (may be called as **tissue biopsy needle)** may be used for taking biopsy from liver, kidney, pleura. It has a trocar and canula, and the trocar is longer than the canula. It is also a cutting'needle; the cutting needle comprises a 10 cm pointed needle with a 2 cm notch close to the tip, enclosed by a cutting sleeve of 2 mm diameter. Menghini's needle is less injurious than others, so far the complications are concerned; and the success rate is approximately 75%. The success rate of Vim-Silverman's needle is high (approximately 95%).

**** Lj_{ver} biopsy needle may be used in *pleural biopsy* in the absence of Abram's or Cope's pleural biopsy needle. The needle is sterilised by immersing the seperated parts in concentrated lysol solution.

******* Fine needle aspiration cytology (FNAC)** is less reliable than excisional biopsy. The technique usually obtains only a suspension of cells from within a mass. Cytology from unexplained mass of lymph nodes, thyroid, breast, bone, or pleura/liver/abdomen (USG or CT-guided) is examined by a skilled histopathologist. Though not full-proof, FNAC is very often the investigation of choice in early malignancy where the primary investigations do not yield any result.

LUMBAR PUNCTURE NEEDLE

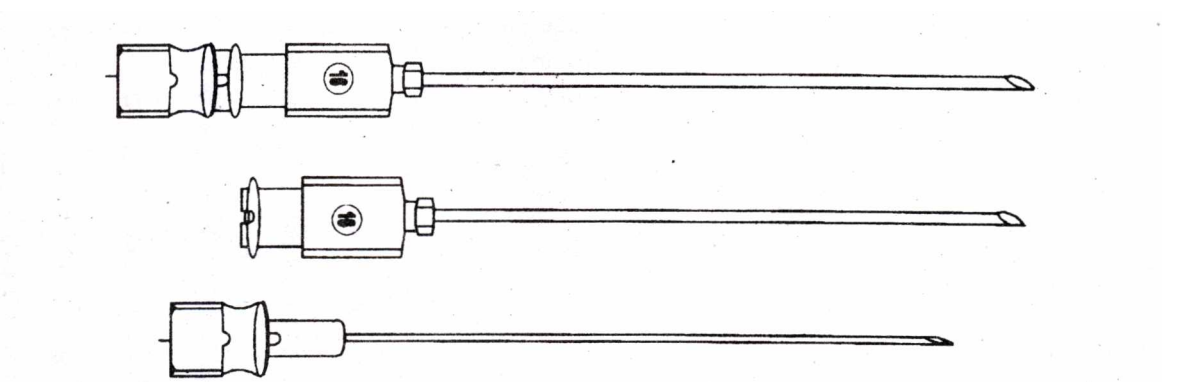


Fig. 1.6 : Lumbar puncture needle (the complete set, the needle proper and the stylet presented sequentially)

Description :

This is a slender malleable narrow-bore needle and consists of two parts like—

1. The needle proper—It is made of platinum-irridium or German alloy, and gives the needle its malleability (now-a-days, malleable steel is being used). The needle is round, slender, cannulated with a shortly bevelled tip and the usual length is 8 cm. The base of the needle fits with the knob (or projection) of the stylet and thus locks the stylet with the needle proper. The hole in the base allows the nozzle of a syringe for intrathecal injection.
2. The stylet—It maintains the patency of the needle i.e., prevents blockage of the needle proper. The knob (or projection) present at its base fits well with the groove present at the base of the needle proper. The length of the stylet should be such that if should not protrude through the bevelled cutting edge of the needle proper.

* The needle is sterilised by immersing the separated parts in concentrated lysol solution or by gamma ray irradiation. The needle is made malleable for finer adjustment during manipulation.

Download From: AghaLibrary.com

*What is lumbar **puncture** (L.P.) ?*

It is a manoeuvre by which a temporary artificial communication is made with the CSF pathway and *the* exterior (at lumbar region).

Indications of lumbar puncture :

(A) Diagnostic purpose—

a) Meningitis.
b) Subarachnoid haemorrhage.
c) Encephalitis.
d) Meningism.
e) Unexplained coma—Where the diagnosis can not be reached by other investigations.
f) G.B. syndrome (albumino-cytological dissociation) or multiple sclerosis (isolated rise in gamma-globulin).
g) Staging of lymphomas.
h) Miscellaneous : PUO, unexplained dementia, neurosyphilis, sarcoidosis, Behcet's syndrome, or neoplastic involvement of the central nervous system.
i) Queckenstedt's test for diagnosis of spinal subarachnoid block.
j) CT myelography (done in a suspected case of compressive myelopathy to diagnose the level of spinal block), cisternography or pneumoencephalography (done to demonstrate cerebral atrophy; obsolete now.)

N.B. : L.P is done cautiously in a suspected case of spinal subarachnoid block (Froin's syndrome) as it may aggravate the neurodeficit.

(B) Therapeutic purpose—

a) Intrathecal administration of drugs e.g., methotrexate in acute lymphoblastic leukaemia (previously streptomycin was administered in tuberculous meningitis).
b) Spinal anaesthesia, specially in operation of lower adbomen, lower limbs dr in perineal surgery.
c) To relieve intracranial tension in hydrocephalus (risky and not used commonly) or benign intracranial hypertension.

N.B. : While using a drug intrathecally, at first withdraw equal amount of CSF by L.P. needle and then push the drug slowly in strict asepsis.

* L.P. is not done routinely in CVA (cerebrovascular accidents) patients except in case of subarachnoid haemorrhage; L.P. should be avoided in infants, if possible.

Contraindications of lumbar puncture :

1. ***Papilloedema** or any otherfeature of high rise of intracranial tension (may precipitate cerebellar pressure cone syndrome*—so, *ophthalmoscopy is a must* before performing lumbar puncture).
2. Local sepsis or bed sore (may lead to meningitis, arachnoiditis).
3. Gross bony deformity in lumbar region or any congenital lesion like meningocele.
4. Restless patient/non-cooperative patient/very low general condition/bleeding diathesis/suspected spinal cord compression, suspected posterior fossa tumour.

What is 'cerebellar pressure cone syndrome' or 'cerebellar coning' ?

It is the tentorial herniation or tonsillar herniation leading to sudden death due to compression of vital centres (i.e., as a result of descent of cerebellar tonsil). The syndrome develops if lumbar puncture is done in the presence of raised intracranial tension (e.g., brain tumour). The patient suddenly becomes drowsy, with positive neck stiffness and dilaled pupil; Cheyne-Stokes respiration/irregular slow respiration -» decorticate posturing -> bilateral Babinski's sign -> apnoea -»bradycardia coma and death may supervene.

How the lumbar puncture tray is prepared ?

1. Spirit, iodine, sterile gown and gloves for antiseptic purpose.
2. 2% lignocaine solution as local anaesthetic.
3. Sterile L.P. needle with stylet.

Download From: AghaLibrary.com

4. Sterile plain glass test tubes (three).
5. 2 ml glass syringe with needle for local anaesthesia.
6. Sterile gauze and gauze-holding forcep.
7. Benzoin solution with cotton.
8. Leucoplast.

How the lumbar puncture is performed ?

1. The patient is first explained the procedure to obtain full cooperation. Lumbar puncture is best done when the patient is kept in one lateral position (right or left) at the edge of the bed with the knees drawn-up against the abdomen and head flexed (actually an assistant helps in approximating the chin of the patient with his knees). The flexion posture helps in increasing the interspinous space on which the success of L.P depends. L.P may be done in sitting posture of the patient (e.g., in lumbar spondylosis).
2. *The puncture is usually done between L_3 and L_4 interspace,* $^1/_2$" on either side of the midline **(puncture site**—-join the highest points of iliac crests by a line and it will pass through L_4 spine; puncture the space just above this line). The spinal cord ends at the lower border of L_1 vertebra and thus there is no risk of injuring the cord. A space above or below may also be used in a desperate situation.
3. The physician washes his/her hands and wears gloves. Then the puncture site is properly cleansed with spirit-iodine-spirit from centre-outwards and above-downwards. The site is now infiltrated with 2% lignocaine solution.
4. Reconfirm the puncture site. Keeping the bevelled end upwards, the L.P. needle with the stylet in position, it is introduced a bit obliquely in upwards and forwards direction (oblique introduction will not cause any injury to the theca) by cork-screw movement. The ligamentum flavum is pierced and the destination of spinal subarachnoid space is indicated by sudden loss of resistance (penetration of the dura matter), and is actually confirmed by CSF coming out drop by drop when the stylet is withdrawn (the needle passes through the skin, interspinous ligament, ligamentum flavum, the dura and the arachnoid matter). If CSF does not come out. slightly rotate the needle or introduce it inwards slightly. If the CSF still fails to come, withdraw the needle and introduce it again.
5. The rate of flow of CSF is noted and is collected in three sterile test tubes each containing minimally 10 drops to maximally 2 ml.
6. The stylet is reinserted and the L.P. needle is withdrawn. The site is now sealed with tincture benzoin solution and leucoplast.

* Manometric study may be done prior to collection of CSF. The CSF pressure rises and falls with respiration and heart beat, and rises on coughing.

Management of post-lumbar puncture period :

1. The patient is kept in bed for next 8-24 hours under observation.
2. Plenty of water to drink (to prevent post-lumbar puncture headache).
3. *Foot end of the bed is raised* with no pillow below the head (to prevent post-lumbar puncture headache).

Complications of lumbar puncture :

1. Traumatic puncture (trauma to vessel, nerve, intervertebral disc).
2. Post-lumbar puncture headache or low-tension headache.
3. 'Coning' or cerebellar pressure cone syndrome.
4. Breaking of the needle.
5. Introduction of infection (meningitis, arachnoiditis).
6. Bleeding (due to puncture of para-vertebral venous plexus).
7. Low backache.
8. Aggravation of root pain and signs of cord compression (in the presence of spinal cord tumour).

Download From: AghaLibrary.com

What is post-lumbar puncture headache ?

This usually occurs In patients where L.P Is done with normal intracranial tension. Headache (bifrontal and/or occipital) appears after few hours, stays for few hours to few days, and is enhanced on assuming sitting or standing posture. It is due to low intracranial tension produced as a result of :

a) Withdrawal of CSF, and

b) Continuous leakage of CSF through the puncture site in the theca.

Low tension exerts traction on the meningeal blood vessels (pain-sensitive) and results in headache. The headache (usually a dull-ache) may be avoided by adopting these preventive measures:

1. Using a narrow-bore L.P. needle.
2. Not withdrawing over 10 ml CSF.
3. Oblique introduction of the needle (transverse introduction 'divides' or tears' the fibres of dura and ligamentum flavum but oblique introduction 'seperates' the fibres, and thus chance of CSF leakage is less if the needle is introduced obliquely).
4. Slow withdrawal of CSF.
5. The patient is kept lying in bed for 8-24 hours with foot end of the bed raised. Putting the patient in prone position may relieve headache.

[6. Treatment of headache is done by drinking large amount of water and application of NSAID].

* Prolonged headache is recently being treated by 'autologous intrathecal blood patch' i.e., by injecting 20 ml of the patient's venous blood into the CSF.

How much CSF should be withdrawn at a time ?

1. For diagnostic purpose—Usually 5-8 ml.
2. For therapeutic purpose—Usually 10-20 ml (the amount of drug in volume should be measured first and then the same amount of CSF is withdrawn; now the drug is pushed into the subarachnoid space after fitting a syringe with the L.P. needle).

Thick-bore needle—advantage and disadvantage :

(A) Advantage—Helps in drawing thick purulent material in pyogenic meningitis.

(B) Disadvantage—Post-L.P. headache and cerebellar pressure cone syndrome may develop as large amount of CSF may be withdrawn.

What is a dry tap ?

CSF does not come out through the L.P needle in :

1. Faulty technique (needle not in subarachnoid space), incorrect position of the patient or needle blockage. If the needle is blocked, insert the stylet again to dislodge any dural flap, if present.
2. Spinal subarachnoid block.
3. Presence of very thick pus.
4. Lumbar subarachnoid space filled up with neoplastic tissue or obliterated by adhesive arachnoiditis.
5. Obstruction near foramen magnum as a result of basal meningitis.
6. Lipoma or dermoid (may be present in a case of spina bifida).

What is Queckenstedt's test ?

This test detects the patency of CSF pathway. It is done along with the lumbar puncture. Rise of CSF pressure is noted which is normally > 40 mm of CSF or H_20, after the compression of internal jugular vein *(negative test).* If the rate of flow of CSF is not increased after either jugular venous compression, the test is declared positive (CSF pressure is usually detected by a spinal manometer). *A positive test* is obtained after complete spinal block (partial block gives negative result). Spinal block may result from arachnoiditis, meningioma or neurofibroma.

If CSF pressure rises after compression of one internal jugular vein but not with the other, it is known as positive Tobey-Ayer test and is found in lateral sinus thrombosis.

* Compression of internal jugular vein results in congestion of cerebral veins and the rise in venous pressure leads to increased pressure in CSF.

Other uses of L.P. needle :

1. Cisternal puncture (used during myelography to delineate the upper limit of spinal subarachnoid block).
2. Splenoportal venography (to diagnose portal hypertension).
3. Paracentesis thoracis or paracentesis abdominis.

CSF dynamics and other details :

CSF is formed by the choroid plexus of lateral (major source), 3rd and 4th ventricles. CSF circulation : choroid plexus of lateral ventricles — Foramen of Monro — Third ventricle — Aqueduct of Sylvius — Fourth ventricle in the medulla — Foremen of Magendie and Luschka — Cisterna magna and cistema pontis — Subarachnoid space. CSF is absorbed by arachnoid villi.

Normal CSF values :

(A) Amount or volume : 100-150 ml (approximately 130 ml in adults). Daily formation of CSF is 1500 ml.

(B) Pressure :

a) 60-150 mm of CSF (lying position), and

b) 150-250 mm of CSF (sitting position)

* *Roughly, the CSFJlow (pressure) is equivalent to 1 drop/second on lumbar puncture*

(C) Colour : Crystal clear or colourless

(D) P^H and specific gravity : 7.31-7.34 and 1007 respectively

(E) Biochemical :

(a) Protein : 20-40 mg%

(b) Sugar : 40-80 mg% (usually 1/2 to 2/3rd of the random blood sugar concentration)

(c) Chloride : 720-750 mg%

(F) Cells : 0-5 cells/mm^3 and all are mononuclear cells (70% lymphocytes and 30% monocytes)

(G) Bacteriological : Sterile

(H) Oligoclonal bands: Negative

** The CSF IgG index (normal value is < 0.65) is the ratio of IgG to albumin in the CSF divided by the same ratio in the serum; though the total CSF protein is usually normal or slightly elevated, the CSF IgG index is increased in multiple sclerosis, where the abnormal CSF IgG may be oligoclonal.

*** CSF ammonia (normal : 25-80 Hg/dl) may be increased in hepatic encephalopathy.

Table 1 : Differentiation between traumatic and non-traumatic haemorrhage

Test	Traumatic	Non-traumatic
1. CSF collected serially in 3 test tubes	**1. First tube is bright red and the next two tubes are faintly red**	**1. Uniformly red**
2. Supernatent fluid after centrifugation or on prolonged standing	**2. Clear**	**2. Yellowish or xanthochromic**
3. Shape of the RBC	**3. Normal**	**3. Crenated**
4. Coagulation of blood	**4. Occurs**	**4. Does not occur**

How the examination of CSF is done ?

(A) Physical : Pressure, colour, fibrin clot.

(B) Biochemical : Protein, sugar, chloride concentration.

(C) Cytological : Number and types of cells are analysed (whether polymorphonuclear or lymphocytic pleocytosis present, or not).

(D) Bacteriological including staining and culture.

(E) Serological : VDRL, Kahn test, Wassermann reaction may be helpful in neurosyphilis.

(F) Special : Lange's colloidal gold curve reaction (positive reaction indicates high globulin content of

CSF) Is positive in tabes dorsalis (tabetic curve), GPI (paretic curve) and meningitis (meningitic curve). Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) for detection of DNA sequence of different bacteria or M. tuberculosis is done. Adenosine deaminase activity (ADA) is determined to rule out tuberculous meningitis.

Can an I.V. needle serve the purpose of lumbar puncture ?

Yes (in dire emergency, in the absence of L.P. needle). Now-a-days very slender, highly malleable disposable L.P. needle is available which are used by anaesthetists in spinal anaesthesia.

While performing L.P., how do you identify or suspect different diseases ?

1. Difficulty in flexing the neck of the patient at the beginning (i.e., presence of neck stiffness)—Meningitis, meningism, subarachnoid haemorrhage, cerebral malaria or meningoencephalitis.
2. Unconscious patient—Meningoencephalitis, cerebral malaria, meningitis, meningism, subarachnoid haemorrhage.
3. CSF coming out at a flow rate of > 1 drop/second (opening pressure)—See the causes of increased intracranial tension in the section on 'Charts on CSF'. Low CSF pressure is found in bad needle placement, partial spinal block, severe dehydration and after repeated lumbar puncture.
4. Appearance or colour of CSF—■„
   a) Clear—Normal, tuberculous and viral meningitis, meningism.
   b) Turbid—Pyogenic meningitis (due to high leucocyte count), rarely in carcinomatous meningitis and subarachnoid haemorrhage.
   c) Straw-coloured—Tuberculous meningitis.
   d) Haemorrhagic—Subarachnoid haemorrhage, trauma, extensive cerebral haemorrhage, haemorrhagic encephalitis, bleeding diathesis.
   e) Xanthochromia—See the section dealing with 'charts' on 'Xanthochromia'.
5. Coagulum on standing—
   a) Cobweb coagulum (forms after few hours)—Tuberculous meningitis (most important cause), acute anterior poliomyelitis and neurosyphilis.
   b) Big coagulum (forms immediately or shortly after withdrawal)—Spinal subarachnoid block, G.B. syndrome.
6. Manometry—Queckenstedt's test is positive in complete spinal subarachnoid block.

Examinaton of CSF in different diseases :

(A) Pyogenic meningitis :

Pressure —High (++)
Colour—Turbid
Total cells—Increased +++ (200-5000/mm^3); predominantly polymorphonuclear pleocytosis
Protein—Increased (++)
Sugar—Low (—)
Chloride—A bit reduced
Gram's stain—Gram -ve diplococci, or Gram +ve cocci in pairs

(B) Tuberculous meningitis :

Pressure—High (++)
Colour—Clear
On standing—Formation of cobweb coagulum
Total cells—Increased ++ (200-500/mm^3); predominantly lymphocytic pleocytosis
Protein—Increased (++)
Sugar—Low (-)
Chloride—Low (—) (may be due to prolonged vomiting)
Ordinary culture shows no growth (sterile)

* *Cobweb coagulum* indicates presence of mild to moderate rise of protein along with fibrinogen in CSF

(C) Viral meningitis :

Pressure—High (++)

Colour—Clear

Total cells—Increased + (approximately 150-200/mm^3); predominantly lymphocytic pleocytosis (may be mixed pleocytosis for first 36 hours)

Protein—Increased (+) or normal

Sugar—Normal

Chloride—Normal

Ordinary culture is sterile

(D) Carcinomatous meningitis :

Pressure—High (++)

Colour—Clear or haemorrhagic

Total cells—Plenty (T lymphocytes), malignant cells +

Protein—Increased (+)

Sugar—Normal

Chloride—N ormal

(E) Subarachnoid haemorrhage :

Pressure—High (++)

Colour—Blood-stained, turbid or xanthochromia

Total cells— Plenty; RBC +++, few are crenated

Protein—Raised (protein from blood is added to CSF)

Sugar—Normal

Chloride—Normal •

On centrifugation—Supematent fluid is yellow

Culture—No growth (sterile)

(F) Meningism :

Pressure—High (++)

Colour—Clear

Total cells— 0-5 cells/mm^3 (all mononuclear cells)

Protein, sugar and chloride—Within normal limit

Gram's stain—Nothing could be detected

Culture—Sterile •

(G) Xanthochromia :

Pressure—Very low or nil

Colour—Xanthochromic (yellowish)

On standing—Formation of big coagulum

Total cells— 0-5 cells/mm^3 (all mononuclear cells)

Protein—Increased (++)

Sugar—Normal

Chloride—Normal

Queckenstedt's test—Positive (i.e., no rise in CSF pressure on compression of internal jugular vein).

Culture—sterile

* This is a chart of complete spinal subarachnoid block with albumino-cytological dissociation

N.B. : Lumbar puncture is a very important bedside diagnostic tool though now-a-days radiodiagnosis (e.g., CT scan) is gaining importance over this age-old practice.

I. V. FLUID BOTTLE AND INFUSION SET

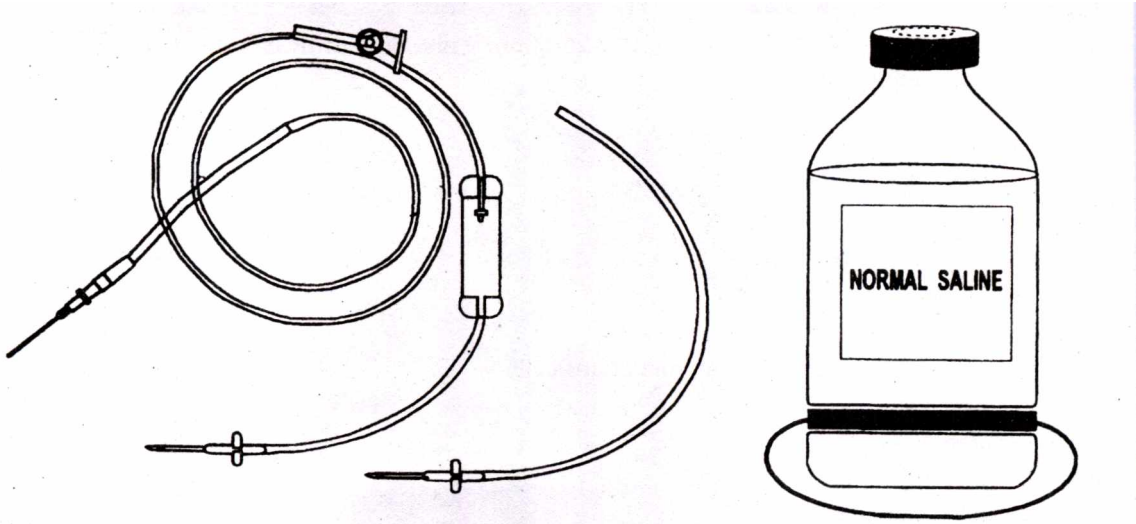


Fig. 1.7 : Drip tube, airway tube and the I.V fluid bottle

Description :

(A) Bottle : 540 ml; made of glass or plastic. The glass bottle has a rubber stopper in the mouth with two openings (one for air entry and the other for fluid outlet). Plastic bottle has now replaced glass bottle.

(B) Infusion set :

a) One long plastic tube (drip tube) with two needles on two sides—One enters into the bottle and the other enters into the patient's vein. A small part of the plastic tube (near the patient's vein) is replaced by a rubber tube to inject drugs by shot-push. In the middle of the tube, there is a small plastic container (Murphy's chamber) to measure the flow of the running fluid. The rate of flow of the fluid is controlled by an adjustable valve attached to the set.

b) A small plastic tube with a needle for air entry in the bottle (airway tube).

* *Blood transfusion* set contains a 'strainer' (to filter clots) in the Murphy's chamber.

What is Murphy's chamber ?

It is a plastic or glass chamber attached to the infusion set to regulate the flow of fluid. It has two ends: through the inlet fluid enters into the chamber (via a glass tube), and through the outlet fluid leaves the chamber. For proper flow of fluid, a fluid level should be maintained in the chamber; if the chamber is fully occupied by fluid, it has to be reset.

What is a micro-drip set ?

It is the same variety of l.V set but contains a small calibered lumen in the Murphy's chamber. In ordinary l.V set, 15 drops of fluid make 1ml but in microdrip set 60 (micro) drops constitute 1ml of fluid. The microdrip set is used when very small and accurate quantity (e.g., microgram dose) of a drug is used in l.V route e.g., dopamine, dobutamine, nitroglycerine etc.

How to set-up a drip ?

Indications :

1. Replacement of fluids (crystalloids, blood products, different electrolyte solutions).
2. To establish an external route for administering l.V medication or nutrition.

* **Crystalloids** i.e., solutions containing solutes that can pass a semipermeable membrane —> rapidly expand both intravascular and extravascular compartments; examples are dextrose, normal saline. Ringer's lactate solution, mannitol. **Colloids** i.e., solutions containing large molecules which do not pass semipermeable membrances -» expand the intravascular space more efficiently; examples are albumin, dextran, haemaccel, blood and hetastarch.

Choice of site :

Most convenient sites for peripheral cannulation are veins over the forearm, wrist or elbow. Selection of left side allows the comfortable mobility as well as different activities of right arm. If veins of the upper extremity is not available, veins of ankle or feet are used. Other sites of cannulation are subclavian or jugular vein.

Precautions :

1. In patients with renal failure, there is a chance of fluid overload.
2. In patients with heart failure, problems may be alleviated by prior administration of a diuretic.
3. Proper asepsis is required to start a drip in patients who are immunocompromised or having valvular heart disease.
4. Always choose a vein with adequate calibre to maintain a smooth flow.

Procedure :

1. All the clothes are removed from the site of puncture and a tourniquet is applied proximally to make the vein distended and prominent. The puncture site is cleared with spirit properly.
2. Keeping the needle parallel to the vein chosen and with the bevelled edge facing upwards, the vein is pierced; by moving the needle, it is continued for a distance within the lumen of the vein. Now, the tourniquet is released and let the fluid from the bottle flow within the vein through the l.V infusion set. The adjustable valve attached with the l.V set controls the rate of flow of the fluid. The needle is fixed to the skin with adhesive tape (leucoplast) and the limb may be splinted with a wooden piece.
3. Follow-up : Look for any sign of inflammation (redness, thrombophlebitis, brawny induration) at the puncture site. A set should not be continued for more than 2-3 days and should be replaced.

N.B. ; If no veins are visible after intensive search for intravenous infusion of fluids, a venesection or **'cut-down'** procedure may be employed in ankle, antecubital fossa or wrist in a desperate situation. Always change the puncture site (i.e., reintroduce in other site) with the appearance of first sign of inflammation (i.e., thrombophlebitis). If continued, pyrexia may complicate the situation. Many a time, inflammation at the venepuncture site of a drip is responsible for unexplained fever.

How to change the bottle / discontinue infusion :

To change the bottle, the adjustable valve attached with the l.V infusion set is locked to prevent entry of air in the tube distal do it. Now, the empty infusion bottle is replaced by a new one.

To discontinue infusion, the adjustable valve is locked; the l.V needle is removed and a sterile dressing is applied over the puncture site.

Content of bottles ;

1. Normal saline or isotonic saline (0.9%).
2. Glucose or dextrose solution (5%, 10%. 20%, 25%, 50%).
3. Dextrose-saline solution.
4. Sodium lactate solution.
5. Hypertonic saline (3% or 5%).
6. Ringer's lactate solution.
7. Darrow's solution.
8. Mannitol (5%, 10%, 20%).
9. Haemaccel.
10. Low molecular weight dextran.

* Now-a-days, multiple electrolyte solutions (e.g., electrolyte R, electrolyte M etc.) are available and contains dextrose, sodium, potassium, calcium etc in varying combination. Some are useful in maintaining daily requirements of water and electrolytes, and others for replacement of fluid loss.

Use of different parenteral fluids :

(I) Normal saline :

Its osmotic pressure is equal to that of plasma and this is why it is known as isotonic saline. The

fluid is also isotonic with the intracellular compartment of RBC and thus, called 'normal' saline; 0.9 gm of NaCl is dissolved in 100 ml of water (0.9%). Now-a-days, it is available in 100 ml, 250 ml, 500 ml, 1000 ml and 2000 ml plastic containers.

Uses :

1. To correct salt-water depletion (e.g., diarrhoea and vomiting).
2. To correct dehydration and hypovolaemia.
3. Acts as a vehicle for l.V. drug administration (e.g., iron-sucrose infusion).
4. To maintain the fluid balance parenterally when oral intake is not possible.
5. In treating alkalosis.

(II) Glucose or dextrose solution :

It is available in different concentration (usually 5%, 10% and 25%).

Uses :

1. Acts as a vehicle for l.V. drug administration.
2. To provide adequate calories to the body; to correct pure H_aO deficit.
3. Hypoglycaemic coma (high concentration is used).
4. As fluid and nutrient replenisher.
5. As a mild osmotic diuretic (10%).
6. 50% solution may reduce cerebral oedema.

(III) Dextrose-normal saline solution (DNS) :

Usually available as 5% glucose plus 0.9% (normal) saline.

Uses :

1. In patients who need additional fluid with minimal sodium intake.
2. As an initial hydrating solution to establish normal renal function.
3. In the presence of metabolic alkalosis (e.g., repeated gastric suction)—Fluid loss with loss of Cl" is compensated.

(IV) Sodium lactate solution :

It is available in two strength,

a) Molar sodium lactate solution, and

b) 1/6th Molar lactate solution.

Sodium ion of sodium lactate combines with HCo" (coming from lactate) and forms $NaHCo_3$, and the blood becomes alkaline.

Uses :

1. Metabolic acidosis e.g., diabetic ketoacidosis.
2. To treat hyperkalaemia (alkalosis reduces the level of serum potassium level).

(V) Hypertonic saline (3% or 5%) :

Prepared by dissolving 3 gm or 5 gm of Nacl in 100 ml of water. The osmotic pressure of hypertonic saline is higher than that of plasma.

Uses :

1. Severe hyponatraemia.
2. Syndrome of inappropriate ADH secretion (SIADH).

(VI) Ringer's lactate solution :

Uses :

1. Fluid of choice in treating cholera.
2. Bums, severe infections, peritonitis, multiple fractures.
3. Replacing deficit of extracellular fluid (ECF) due to decreased water intake or increased excretion of water.
4. Deficiency of Nacl and K^+ with acidosis.

* Electrolytes concentration in Ringer's lactate is almost the same as that of plasma.

(VII) Darrow's solution :

Uses :

1. Treatment of hypokalaemia.
2. In the management of diabetic ketoacidosis.

(VIII) Mannitol (usually 20% solution is used; available in 100, 350 and 500 ml bottle) **:**

Uses :

1. To reduce increased intracranial tension due to any cause.
2. To expedite the urinary excretion of toxic metabolites.
3. Treatment of acute renal failure.
4. To reduce intraocular tension (when other drugs fail).

(IX) Haemaccel (polygeline) :

Uses :

1. Shock or peripheral circulatory failure.
2. To raise the BP in hypotension.
3. Priming of heart-lung machine and artificial kidney.
4. As a plasma expander while performing paracentesis abdominis in cirrhosis of liver.

(X) Low molecular weight (average 40000) dextran :

Uses :

1. Shock.
2. Foetal distress syndrome.
3. Prevention of peritoneal adhesions.
4. As a plasma expander.

Advantages and disadvantages of parenteral (l.V) fluid therapy :

(A) Advantages :

1. Rapid correction of deficit.
2. All types of fluid can be given.

(B) Disadvantages (complications) :

1. Thrombophlebitis.
2. Extravasation with local cellulitis (swelling and oedema); needle blockage.
3. Haematoma formation.
4. Pyrogen reaction with fever.
5. Overloading with injudicious administration, resulting in heart failure (development of pulmonary oedema) and/or renal failure.
6. Chance of transmission of infection, if proper asepsis is not maintained.
7. Air embolism.

Table 2 : Composition of plasma and different l.V. fluids (mmol/L)

Different fluids	Na	K	Cl	Lactate
Plasma	136-145	3.5-5.0	98-106	–
Isotonic saline	153	—	153	—
Ringer's lactate	130	4	110	28
1/$_6$th Molar lactate	167	—	—	167
Darrow's solution	124	36	104	56

* Normal plasma $HC0_3$ level is 22-26 meq/1.

15 drops make 1 ml of fluid.

Normal plasma osmolality is 280-300 mosmol/kg of water.

Approximate **composition of plasma** (mmol/litre) : Na-141, K-4, Ca-2.5, Mg-2, C1-I00, $HC0_3$-25, $P0_4/S0_4$-1, and protein/acid is 25 = 300 (approx); Na and Cl are main ions in extracellular fluid, and K and $P0_4$ are those of the intracellular fluid.

Approximately 50-60% of body weight is 'total body water'. p^H of blood varies between 7.38 and 7.44 (average 7.40).

** l.V infusion set may also be used to remove ascitic and pleural fluid. It may be used temporarily in water-seal drainage to treat a case of spontaneous pneumothorax.

*** For calculation of rate of fluid infusion, read 'Cholera with severe dehydration' in 'Emergency medicine' section. l.V fluid is 'infused' while blood is 'transfused'.

Causes of metabolic acidosis

1. Diabetic ketoacidosis.
2. Renal failure.
3. Severe diarrhoea.
4. Starvation.
5. Lactic acidosis.
6. Poisoning by methyl alcohol, salicylates.
7. Hypoaldosteronism.
8. Renal tubular acidosis.

Causes of metabolic alkalosis :

1. Severe vomiting or vigorous gastric aspiration.
2. Cushing's syndrome.
3. Primary hyperaldosteronism.
4. Severe hypokalaemia.
5. Milk-alkali syndrome.
6. Diuretics (frusemide, thiazides).

Causes of respiratory acidosis :

1. Depression of respiratory centre by disease or drugs.
2. Central sleep apnoea.
3. Sudden failure of ventilation (e.g., myasthenic crisis).
4. Chronic bronchitis, emphysema.

Causes of respiratory alkalosis :

1. Pneumonia, bronchial asthma, acute pulmonary oedema, high altitude (due to hypoxia).
2. Exercise.
3. Anxiety, fever, salicylate overdose (due to stimulation of respiratory centre).
4. Hysterical hyperventilation.

* Disorders	p^H (7.40)	Primary defect	Compensatory effect
Metabolic acidosis	Low	Low HCo_3	Low $PaCo_2$
Metabolic alkalosis	High	High HCo_3	High $PaCo_2$
Respiratory acidosis	Low	High $PaCo_2$	High HCo_3
Respiratory alkalosis	High	Low PaCo.,	Low HCo„

What is anion gap in 'metabolic acidosis' ?

It is the 'unmeasured anions' and are calculated by subtracting the sum of plasma bicarbonate and chloride concentrations (i.e., the measured anions) from plasma concentration of sodium (i.e., the measured cations).

Anion gap = Na^+ - (HCO_g~ + CL)

The normal anion gap is 10-12 mmol/l; most of the anion gap is due to negative charges on plasma proteins (mainly albumin), and phosphate, sulphate and organic acid anions to a lesser degree. When acid anions e.g., acetoacetic acid or lactic acid accumulate in ECF, it results in high-anion gap acidosis.

(A) Increased anion gap :

1. **Diabetic ketoacidosis (or ketoacidosis from alcoholism and starvation).**
2. **Acute and chronic renal failure.**
3. **Lactic acidosis.**
4. **Ingestion of toxins or drugs (salicylate, carbenicillin, ethelene glycol, methanol).**

(B) Normal anion gap (hyperchloraemic acidosis) ;

1. **Diarrhoea.**
2. **Intestinal fistula.**
3. **Ureterosigmoidostomy.**
4. **Renal tubular acidosis.**
5. **Hypoaldosteronism.**
6. **Ingestion of toxins or drugs (ammonium chloride, cholestyramine).**

Causes of hyponatraemia :

1. Severe diarrhoea, vomiting, peritonitis, burns, excess of diuretics, uncontrolled diabetes mellitus, CRF (all producing 'volume depletion', i.e., loss of both Na^+ and water).
2. Congestive cardiac failure, SIADH (syndrome of inappropriate ADH secretion), cirrhosis of liver, nephrotic syndrome, acute and chronic renal failure.
3. Adrenocortical failure, hypothyroidism, hypopituitarism, psychogenic polydipsia.

Causes of hypematraemia :

1. Diabetes insipidus, diabetes mellitus (when water loss is more).
2. Cushing's syndrome.
3. Primary hyperaldosteronism.
4. Infusion of hypertonic saline.

Causes of hypokalaemia:

1. Diaminished dietary intake (e.g., starvation).
2. Vomiting, diarrhoea, intestinal fistula.
3. Diuretics (e.g., loop diuretics).
4. Metabolic alkalosis.
5. Aldosteronism (primary or secondary).
6. After administration of insulin..
7. Diabetic ketoacidosis.
8. Hypokalaemic periodic paralysis.

Cause of hyperkalaemia:

1. Renal failure (acute or chronic).
2. Addison's disease, hypoaldosteronism.
3. Metabolic acidosis.
4. Tissue damage e.g., internal bleeding or muscle crush.
5. Potassium-sparing diuretic e.g., spironolactone, triamterene, amiloride, or use of ACE-inhibitors like enalapril or lisinopril.

Indications of 'blood transfusion' in medical ward :

One unit of whole blood contains approximately 500 ml of blood (i.e., nearly 2 bottles in India).

1. Restoration of volume of circulating blood : Acute haemorrhage e.g., haematemesis, melaena, haemoptysis, epistaxis, haematuria, menorrhagia.
2. Severe anaemia due to any cause : Aplastic anaemia, anaemia of chronic renal failure, thalassaemia, disseminated malignancy, hookworm infestation, severe iron deficiency anaemia. AIDS.
3. Granulocyte transfusion : Severe neutropenia, neonatal sepsis, progressive fungal infection, chronic granulomatous disease.
4. Platelet transfusion : Severe thrombocytopenia or platelet dysfunction.
5. Exchange transfusion : Haemolytic disease of newborn, thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura, severe falciparum malaria, poisoning (e.g., methaemoglobinaemia or arsine-induced haemolysis).
6. Fresh blood transfusion : In coagulation disorders e.g., haemophilia or thrombocytopenia (e.g., idiopathic or immune thrombocytopenic purpura or ITP); viperidae group of snake bite.

'Total parenteral nutrition (l'PN) **therapy'** through subclavian vein is required in 'specialized nutrition support' (where oral therapy may be harmful or may not be possible) delivered in extensive small bowel disease, intestinal fistula, prolonged hyperemesis gravidarum, severe intra-abdominal sepsis, acute pancreatitis, inflammatory bowel disease, severe cachexia (e.g., cancer, AIDS), in patients on ventilation or any critical illness. This is usually done in an ITU (Intensive Therapeutic Unit) setting. For a central venous TPN regimen, a pre-mixed (contains L-amino acids, lipids, glucose with vitamins, electrolytes and trace elements) 3-litre bag is infused over 24 hours with close monitoring.

SYRINGE (5 ML/50 ML)

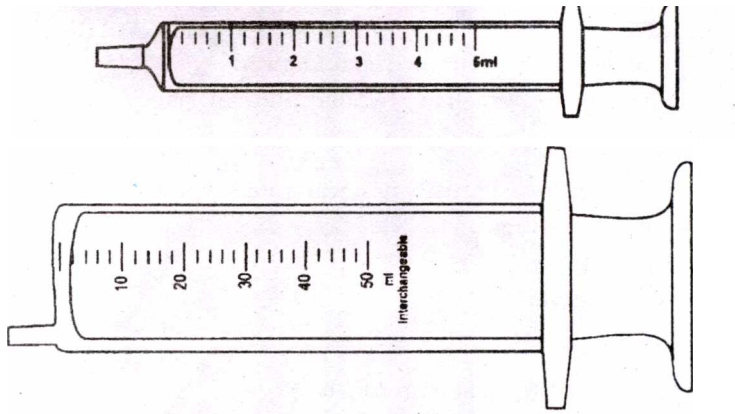


Fig. 1.8 : 5 and 50 ml syringes

Description :

A syringe has two parts,

a) Air-tight piston, and

b) Cylinder with a nozzle at one end for fitting tightly with the base of a needle, scalp vein set or adaptor. The cylinder possesses markings on its outer surface indicating the volume of the drug to be delivered.

The syringe is usually made of glass. Disposable plastic syringe is for single use. This.type of syringes (5ml) are often called 'hypodermic' syringe.

Sterilisation :

1. Keeping (heating) in boiling water minimally for 30 minutes, seperating the piston and cylinder (before putting in water, loosely wrap the piston and cylinder with sterile gauze).
2. Autoclaving.
3. Gamma ray irradiation.
4. Ethelene oxide.

Different uses :

(A) 5 ml syringe—

a) Collection of venous blood samples for laboratory analysis, aspiration from cyst/abscess, for myelography /I VP etc.

b) Parenteral administration of drugs by different routes like I.M (inj. tetanus toxoid), l.V (antibiotics), subcutaneous (terbutaline, adrenaline, erythropoietin), intracutaneous (drug sensitivity, Mantoux test), intra-arterial (arteriogram), intra-articular (corticosteroid), intrathecal (methotrexate in ALL), intrapleural (for pleurodesis) and intraperitoneal (anti-metabolites).

(B) 50 ml syringe—

a) Ryle's tube feeding; gastric aspiration in intestinal obstruction, pyloric stenosis, haematemesis or poisoning.

b) Aspiration of pleural and pericardial fluid, paracentesis abdominis.

c) l.V aminophylline injection.

d) . Aspiration of amoebic liver abscess.

e) Gastric wash by ice-cold saline in intractable hiccough.

* The 'all glass' syringe is known as B.D. syringe (B and D stand for the manufacturer, Beckton and Dickinson). B.D. syringe is available as 2 ml . 5 ml, 10 ml, 20 ml, 50 ml and 100 ml syringes.

** Venous blood collection—After adopting proper aseptic and antiseptic measures, venous blood sample is usually drawn from anticubital fossa after applying a venous tourniquet proximal to the chosen site.

The operator should wear double gloves as a protection against 'high risk' cases e.g., infection with hepatitis B or C, HIV. For femoral vein puncture (lies at the mid-inguinal point medial to femoral artery) *i.e., femoral tap,* insert the needle vertically just medial to femoral artery.

Disadvantages of I.M. injection :

1. Painful.
2. There may be abscess formation.
3. Injury to the nerve may occur.
4. Muscle haematoma in coagulopathy (haemophilia) or prolonged bleeding (ITP).
5. Fibrous nodule formation at the injection site.
6. Anaphylaxis.
7. Transmission of some dreadful infection like hepatitis B rarely (in contamination).

What is record syringe ?

Here, the cylinder (i.e., the body of the syringe) is made of glass while the piston and the long tapering nozzle are built of metal. Various sizes e.g., 2 ml, 5 ml, 10 ml and 20 ml syringes are available. Autoclaving is not possible as it is partly glass and partly metallic (the syringe may be damaged by autoclaving), and thus sterilisation is done by boiling. It can be used for I.M injections and bone marrow aspiration (as the piston can be locked in the body satisfactorily, the suction of the bone marrow can be well maintained).

What is anaphylaxis ?

This is an example of immediate hypersensitivity reaction (IgE-mediated). It is a group of severe reactions which occur in rapid succession in a sensitised person if an antigen is injected e.g., penicillin or sting of an insect, or rarely produced by ingested food in a highly sensitive individual.

Features :

Bronchospasm (wheeze), laryngeal oedema with severe dyspnoea, stridor and cyanosis, and feeling of impending doom; there is fall in BP (anaphylactic shock) and the patient may be unconscious. Swelling of the tongue, anorexia, nausea and vomiting, abdominal pain and diarrhoea may be present. Intense itching, urticaria and angioneurotic oedema (usually around the lips and eyes) may be seen.

Treatment :

It is a potentially fatal condition and if not treated promptly, it possess a threat to life.

1. Patient lies down with head-down position. Prevent further contact with the allergen.
2. Ensure airway patency and start O_a inhalation at the rate of 4-6 litres/min. Maintain an l.V line.
3. *Adrenaline—It remains the cornerstone of therapy;* 0.3-1.0 ml of 1:1000 adrenaline is injected subcutaneously or l.V; may be repeated.
4. Corticosteroids — Hydrocortisone 100-300 mg or dexamethasone 4-8 mg, l.V, to be given immediately and every 4-6 hourly.
5. Antihistaminics — Inj. diphenhydramine 25-50 mg, l.V given for adult and 10-25 mg for children may shorten the duration of anaphylactic reaction. Inj. chlorpeniramine 10-20 mg l.V may be given.
6. Inhaled beta agonist (slabutamol or terbutaline) may be used in bronchospasm; inj. aminophylline may be used as a second line drug.
7. Treatment of shock—Raise the foot end of the bed; start dopamine infusion. Use volume expanders (colloid solutions e.g., dextran is preferable).
8. Assisted ventilation (IPPV) or emergency tracheostomy may be done, if laryngeal oedema is severe.
9. Miscellaneous—Intravenous isoprenaline, salbutamol or terbutaline may be given.

How and where aminophylline injection is given ?

Aminophylline is commonly given in acute exacerbation of bronchial asthma. It may be given in severe bronchospasm due to any cause (e.g., anaphylaxis, acute exacerbation of COPD).

It is also known as theophylline with ethylenediamine. Usually one ampoule of inj. aminophylline contains 250 mg of the drug (in 10 ml). A loading dose of 6 mg/kg is started, followed by an infusion of 1.0 mg/kg/hour for the next 12 hours and thereafter 0.8 mg/kg/hour is maintained. In non-smokers, maintenance dose is less and in patients receiving theophylline, the loading dose will be 0.5 mg /kg. Aminophylline is mixed in the bottle of normal saline or 5% dextrose for infusion. The drug is given slowly in 1 . V route. Common side effects are nausea, vomiting, anorexia, seizures and cardiac arrhythmias.

At present, use of nebuliser has replaced administration of l.V aminophylline in acute severe asthma and COPD.

How do you diagnose amoebic liver abscess at the bedside ?

Pre-disposing factors — young adult males, consumption of alcohol, malnutrition.

Clinical features—

1. H/O amoebic dysentery is present in only 10%) cases. Onset is usualy subacute, rarely acute.
2. The patient looks ill, toxic and prostrated with a peculiar sallowness of the skin. There may be fever with chill, rigor and profuse sweating; temperature rarely exceeds 40°C; presence of emaciation.
3. Dull and aching pain or sensation of heaviness over right hypochondrium is present. Pain increases with deep inspiration and coughing. Patient tends to turn on the left side. Pain may be referred to the right shoulder. Later on, abdominal pain becomes sharp and stabbing.
4. Intercostal tenderness (important bedside clue to diagnosis). Local oedema may be present.
5. Enlarged, soft, tender liver. A bulge may be seen in the epigastrium.
6. Jaundice is unusual.
7. Spleen is not palpable. The lower zone of right lung may show features of consolidation, pleurisy (pleural rub) or pleural effusion.

* The most common site of amoebic liver abscess is in the right lobe of liver, often postero-superiorly and is usually single. The patient may present with PUO.

Indications of expiration in amoebic liver abscess :

The needle aspirates the characteristic 'anchovy-sauce' or 'chocolate' pus, which chiefly consists of liquefied nectrotic liver tissue. The pus is odourless, bacteriologically sterile, may contain few RBCs and occasional WBCs. The trophozoites of E. histolytica are usually absent in freshly aspirated pus but may appear in the escaping pus 4-5 days after initial aspiration. The indications for aspiration are :

1. Lack of response to 3-5-days of metronidazole treatment (i.e., failure to conservative therapy).
2. Very large abscess (> 10 cm in diameter) with or without threat of imminent rupture.
3. Abscess in the left lobe likely to rupture into the pericardium.
4. To rule out pyogenic abscess, specially with multiple lesions.

* Aspiration is usually done under USG or CT guidance.

Needle : description and uses :

The B.D. needle has a bevelled end, body and shoulder. The needles are available in different sizes, e.g., No. 20, i.e., it is 1/20 inch in thickness. The higher the number, the thinner is the needle. Now-a-days, disposable needles are available which are thrown away after single use.

Different uses : For I.M injection (No. 22-24), for collection of blood and l.V infusion (No. 18-20), for collection of blood from a donor (No. 16), and for aspiration of thick fluid from different body cavities (No. 12-14).

Sterilisation is done by boiling the needle for 30 minutes or by autoclaving.

What is venesection ?

When the veins are collapsed and venepuncture is difficult, usually the saphenous vein over the ankle is exposed to the exterior for maintenance of l.V infusion by making a small incision, and is known as venesection or 'cut-down'.

Arterial blood sampling : where and how done ?

It is done to assess the acid-base status in respiratory, renal, cardiac or hepatic failure (e.g., the

blood gas analysis); also done in drug overdose/intoxication (e.g., in aspirin poisoning or diabetic ketoacidosis). Radial artery of non-dominant hand, femoral or brachial artery is chosen for puncture. Prior to sampling, the laboratory should be informed not to delay unnecessarily. Expel the air bubbles from the 'pre-heparinised' syringe. After proper asepsis, draw the arterial blood and place the 'sample' on ice during transit to the laboratory. Haematoma formation (due to inadequate pressure haemostasis) is not uncommon.

SCALP VEIN SET

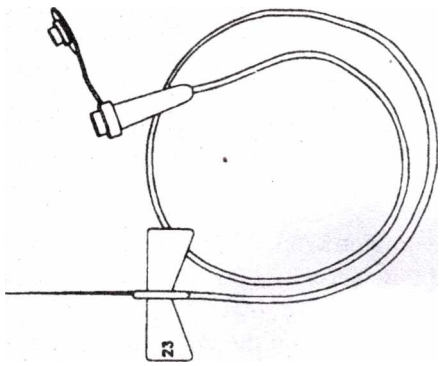


Fig. 1.9 : Scalp vein set (size 23)

Description :

1. A polythene tube—At one end, there is a fine needle (of different size) attached and the other end is open (wider and with a cap) where the nozzle of syringe or l.V set is fitted.
2. Two polythene flaps present on either side of the polythene tube near the needle—for fixation purpose by leucoplast.

* The polythene tube is relatively long to be used as a heparinised channel (see below) and so much so to make the scalp vein set flexible.

Different uses :

1. It is specially used in neonates, infants and small children where the calibre of the vein is small—can be used for parenteral fluid infusion and blood transfusion as well.
2. In adults—For the purpose of fluid infusion or blood transfusion specially when the patient is in shock or collapsed (needle of common l.V infusion set may be large in relation to a collapsed vein and thus, in that situation it may not be possible to place a big needle within the vein).
3. It may be used temporarily (making 'butterfly') for l.V medication administered by shot-push (e.g., in pyogenic meningitis, SBE, septicaemia), by introducing diluted heparin (0.5 ml) within the polythene tube of the scalp vein set with the cap kept closed (i.e., acting as a 'heparinised channel'). The heparinised scalp vein set may be kept in the antecubital vein for few days for the . purpose.of repeated infusion. Intracath has replaced the use of heparinised scalp vein set.

Why the 'scalp vein set' is named so ?

In the pediatrics ward, scalp veins may be used upto the age of 4 or 5 years for l.V infusion. Usually branches of temporal vein, posterior auricular vein and veins of the forehead are commonly used as they are constant in location and large in size. The head of the child is fixed; the local skin is shaved. Putting the bevelled end upwards and maintaining the direction towards the the heart, the needle is fixed at an angle of 30° (from the skin surface) with adhesive plaster. Previously, scalp veins were the preferred site fpr l.V infusion in the pediatrics ward because it would avoid restriction of movement of limbs. Now-a-days, pediatricians do not prefer to use the scalp veins as a recipient channel.

N.B. : Read 'dehydration' with patient's assessment and fluid replacement in details.

INSULIN SYRINGE

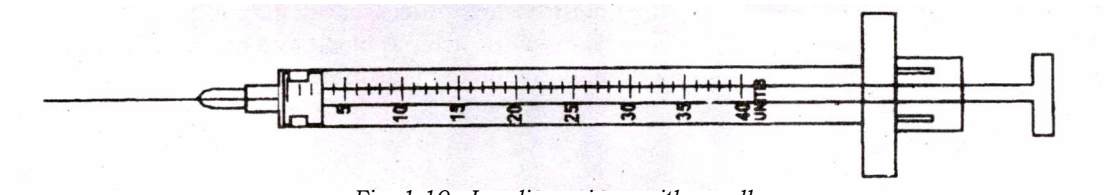


Fig. 1.10 : Insulin syringe with needle

Description :

This is a syringe with capacity of 1 ml. The cylinder has markings on its outer surface indicating the amount of insulin in units, present distal to the piston. Insulin syringe resembles tuberculin syringe though the piston is white in colour (not blue).

Insulin is available in India as 40 units/ml or 80 units/ml commonly, or 100 units/ml as available in abroad and thus, 1 ml is graduated into 40, 80 or 100 units.

Different uses :

1. To inject insulin in the subcutaneous (S.C) route in diabetic patients.
2. In neonates, insulin syringe may serve the purpose of a 'hypodermic syringe' for giving injections by I.M or S.C route.
3. Sometimes it is used to give a test-dose on the forearm before administering a drug (e.g., test of hypersensitivity reaction before giving injection penicillin).

* A **'tuberculin syringe'** (1ml syringe with a **blue** pistion; used for Mantoux test) may also be used in neonates for giving injection by I.M or S.C route. *Mantoux test* is a type IV or delayed type of hypersensitivity reaction to tuberculoprotein. 1 tuberculin unit (TU) is equal to 0.00002 mg International Standard PPD (purified protein derivative). Usually 1 TU is injected (0.1 ml PPD) intradermally on volar aspect of the forearm (junction of mid and upper third). The result is read after 72 hours (3rd day). If the skin 'induration' (thickening) across the transverse axis is < 10 mm, the test is negative and if > 10 mm, it is regarded as positive. The amount of erythema (redness) present is not important. A positive test is presumptive evidence of current (active) or prior (old) mycobacterial infection; the larger the diameter of induration (e.g., > 20 mm), the greater the support for a positive diagnosis. A negative test rules out the possibility of tuberculosis for practical purposes. But in a child below 3 years (non BCG-vaccinated), a positive test is commonly associated with active progressive disease. It should also be remembered that the Mantoux test may be negative in fulminant, miliary and meningeal tuberculosis, tuberculosis with low general condition, measles, lymphoma, sarcoidosis, leukaemia and in immunosuppression (steroid therapy, AIDS etc); technical error (S.C. injection instead of intradermal) may give rise to negative result.

The WHO advocates a PPD tuberculin known as PPD-RT-23 with Tween 80. In AIDS, an induration of 5 mm or more signifies a positive Mantoux test.

Different uses of insulin :

1. Diabetes mellitus—
   a) All type 1 DM patients.
   b) Diabetic ketoacidosis.
   c) Diabetes with pregnancy, labour and delivery.
   d) In periods of stress e.g., acute infection, major surgery, acute myocardial infarction, any acute medical illness, stroke, acute injury, or while on glucocorticoid treatment.
   e) In type 2 DM—Secondary failure of oral hypoglycaemic agents; or inadequate control with presence of complications like painful peripheral neuropathy/retinopathy; renal failure, hepatic failure or respiratory failure.
   f) Pre-renal transplantation diabetic patients.
2. Hyperkalaemia.
3. Insulin test or Hollander's test (not used now-a-days)—To know the completeness of vagotomy in a duodenal ulcer patient. Increase in 20 meq/1 of acidity above the basal level after injection of insulin indicates incomplete vagotomy (insulin-induced hypoglycaemia stimulates the neurogenic phase of acid secretion in stomach in the presence of intact vagus nerve).

Who first used insulin ?

On 23rd January 1922, Banting and Best first used pancreatic extract on a severely diabetic patient named Leonard Thompson. Banting received The Nobel Prize along with another physician JJR Macleod in the year 1923 for the discovery of insulin.

Table 3 : Available insulin preparations

Preparations	Time of action		
	Onset	Peak	Duration
Short-acting			
Lispro	5 min	0.5-1.5 h	3-4 h
Aspart	5 min	0.5-1.5 h	3-4 h
Glulisine	5 min	0.5-1.5 h	3-4 h
Regular	30 min	2-3 h	4-6 h
Intermediate-acting			
NPH (isophane insulin)	1-3 h	3-8 h	7-14 h
Lente	1-3 h	3-8 h	7-14 h
Long-acting			
Glargine	1-4 h	None	24 h
Ultralente	4-6 h	10-18 h	16-24 h
Detemir	1-4 h	2-12 h	12-20 h
Mixtures			
70/30, 50/50, 75/25	30 min	7-12 h	10-16 h

* Values (time of action) are highly variable among individuals. Even in an individual, values vary depending on the site and depth of injection, skin temperature and exercise.

** *Insulin combinations :* 70/30 (70% NPH, 30% regular); 50/50 (50% NPH, 50% regular), and 75/25 (75% protamine lispro, 25% lispro), 70/30 (70% protamine aspart, 30% aspart) and 50/50 (50% protamine lispro, 50% lispro) are different combinations used in clinical practice.

Insulin analogues :

These insulin preparations are generated by modifying (i.e., changing the amino acid sequence by recombinant DNA technology) human insulin, and are useful in patients having repeated attacks of hypoglycaemia or show hyperglycaemia during some parts of the day while on regular insulin therapy. Among the five insulin analogues, three are short-acting or rapid-acting (lispro, aspart, and glulisine) and two are long-acting (glargine and detemir) preparations.

Insulin secretagogues and sensitisers :

Insulin secretagogues : sulphonylureas and non-sulphonylureas (repaglinide and nateglinide).

Insulin sensitisers : metformin and glitazones (rosiglitazone, pioglitazone).

Incretin mimetics : a) GLP-1 analogues—exenatide and liraglutide b) DPP-4 inhibitors—sitagliptin and vildagliptin.

* GLP-1 = glucagon like peptide 1, DPP-4 = dipeptidyl peptidase 4

Main types of therapeutic insulins :

1. Species	Bovine
	Porcine
	Human
2. Purity	Conventional
	Single peak
	Highly purified
3. Duration of action	Short-acting
	Intermediate-acting
	Long-acting

* Bovine insulin is more immunogenic, i.e., in relation to immunogenicity (antigenicity), Bovine > Porcine > Human insulin. Animal preparations (bovine or porcine) are no longer used.

Goals of insulin therapy :

1. Alleviation of primary glycosuric symptoms.
   •vention of ketoacidosis and hyperosmolar coma; brings back the lost lean body mass.
3. Improvement in physical performance as well as sense of well being.
4 Diminution in foeto-maternal morbidity, foetal malformations.
5. Reduction in recurrent infections.
6. Delay, prevent or arrestation of micro- and macrovascular complications.

Uses of soluble or regular insulin :

1. *In emergencies, it is the insulin of choice,* i.e., ketoacidosis, infection, surgery, pregnancy, trauma.
2. To supplement depot insulin effects, if necessary.
3. Patients requiring >150 units of insulin/day.
4. Patients not controlled properly with depot insulins.

Different insulin regimens :

1. Conventional insulin therapy.
2. Multiple subcutaneous injections (MSI).
• 3. Continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion (CSII).

How to administer.insulin ?

Patient's education regarding insulin administration is important in treating diabetes mellitus.

1. Preferably, asepsis is maintained. Required dose of insulin is drawn into the syringe through a hypodermic needle.
2. A small, fine-bore hypodermic needle is now attached to the nozzle (or already attached) of the insulin syringe.
3. Preferable sites of injection are : abdomen, arm, thigh, buttock, back. The site is properly cleansed with spirit.
4. Now, a fold of skin and subcutaneous tissue is pinched-up by left thumb and index finger, and the hypodermic needle is introduced in the skinfold by right hand, from the top into the subcutaneous tissue. Insulin is injected and the needle is taken out with care (insulin leakage should be avoided).
5. Injection site is now covered and lightly pressed by a piece of cotton (rubbing should be avoided).

* The rotation of injection site shofild also be taught to the patient. Repeated injections in one site predispose to lipohypertrophy. Insulin injections are to be given deep subcutaneously. The sites have to be rotated so that a second injection does not fall within 1-2 cm of the previous injection site within 1 month of time.

Alternative methods of insulin delivery system :

I. Jet injectors,
II. ^ert devices.
III._ Insulin infusion pumps—
. * , a) 'Open' loop — Continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion (CSII).
b) 'Closed' loop (Biostator) — Artificial pancreas.
IV. Nasal, oral, rectal insulin—Not effective in practice at present.
V. Pancreas transplantation—Whole pancreas, segmental pancreas, islet transplant.

* Microprocessor based implantable pumps are now available which are more acceptable than CSII.
** 'Open' loop can be used by S.C, l.V or intraperitoneal route.

Define brittle diabetes and insulin resistance :

(A) Brittle diabetes—*A* small proportion of Type 1 DM patients (1-2 % of diabetic patients in practice) are unstable and difficult to control, and referred to brittle diabetes. Actually, brittle diabetic is a patient

whose life is constantly disrupted by episodes of hypoglycaemia and hyperglycaemia, whatever the cause may be and thus, it is difficult to manage.

(B). Insulin resistance—

a) Old view : when > 200 units of insulin/day are required to control hyperglycaemia and to prevent ketoacidosis, it is said that insulin resistance exists.

b) Modern view : Daily intake of > 1.5 units of insulin /kg of body weight, which is about twice the usual level necessary for full insulin replacement therapy (considering newer insulins).

* Daily insulin production in a normal healthy non-obese adult is 25 units.

Complications of insulin therapy :

1. Hypoglycaemia (commonest).
2. Lipodystrophy—Lipoatrophy and lipohypertrophy (fatty lumps).
3. Insulin resistance.
4. Allergy—Local, and rarely generalised.
5. Insulin oedema (rare but troublesome).
6. Sepsis.

N.B. : Read newer insulins from standard pharmacology or medicine text books.

THREE-WAY CANNULA

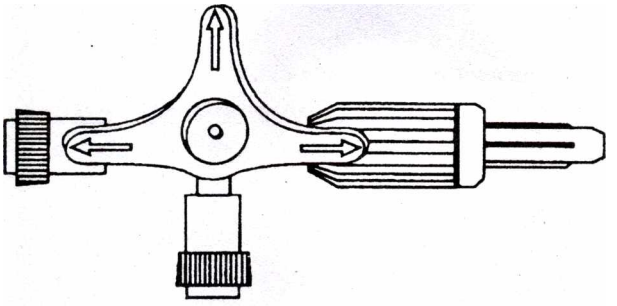


Fig. 1.11 : Three-way cannula (adaptor)

Description:

It is a T-shaped instrument with two inlets and one outlet. By adjustment, the outlet may be connected with either of the inlets.

Different Uses :

1. To aspirate fluid from pleural, peritoneal or pericardial sac (fluid is withdrawn through one inlet by connecting a syringe with the cannula and by adjusting the screw, fluid in the syringe may be pushed into the kidney-tray via the outlet).
2. Through one inlet, I.V fluid may be given (by an I.V set) and the other inlet may be used for medications or monitoring central venous pressure (CVP).

ORAL REHYDRATION SALT (ORS)



Fig. 1.12 : Electrolyte sachet

Presentation :

The ORS is wrapped in an aluminium foil-packet or in a paper-packet.

Indications for use :

To replace the fluid and electrolyte loss commonly as a result of vomiting and/or diarrhoea (i.e., acute gastroenteritis, cholera) — the 'oral rehydration therapy'.

Composition :

As suggested by WHO, the 'universal formula' is :

Ingredients	**Composition in g/litre of water**
Nacl (table salt)	3.5
$NaHCo_3$ (baking soda)	2.5
or trisodium citrate dehydrate	2.9
Kcl	1.5
Glucose	20.0

Concentration in meq/1 :

Na^+ 90, K^+ 20, Cl" 80, HCo_3~ or citrate 30, glucose 110 and osmolality 310

Method of preparation and application :

The content of the packet is dissolved in one litre of drinking water which is already boiled and then cooled, and should be used within 24 hours. It should be taken frequently as directed by the physician (depends on degree of dehydration).

Approximately, 50 ml /kg of body weight of ORS is given in first 4 hours in mild dehydration and 100 ml/kg of body weight is given similarly in moderate dehydration. Severe dehydration needs l.V fluid therapy.

Advantages of use of ORS :

1. Reduces the cost of treatment (i.e., economical).
2. Easily administered at home (can be used easily by non-trained person).
3. It can be prepared easily at home by simple ingredients like sugar and common salt.
4. Practically, there is very little chance of fluid overload.

Disadvantages of use of ORS :

There are very few disadvantages of oral rehydration therapy like :

1. Unconscious patient (requires l.V access).
2. Severe dehydration (needs l.V fluid therapy).
3. Chance of fluid overload in CCF, chronic renal failure and in infants.

4. The taste may not be accepted by all (few ORS are added with rice flour and used in cholera, are really of very bad taste).
5. Patient may be reluctant to take it in the presence of incessant vomiting.

Principle of action of ORS :

Use of ORS is based on the observation that oral glucose (2%) enhances the intestinal absorption of salt and water (ATP-dependent pump for Na^+ absorption, i.e., glucose-facilitated Na^+ transport), even in the presence of diarrhoea.

Glucose may be replaced by sucrose (40 g of sucrose must be added as sucrose is broken down to equal amount of glucose and fructose). Cereals and other starchy foods (rice flour) may also replace glucose (starch is broken down into glucose and amino acids which facilitate Na^+ absorption).

* Fluids from cooked cereals e.g., rice water may be used in tropics.

Osmolality of blood, urine, stool and CSF :

Blood (plasma)	280-300	mosmol/kg of water
Urine	400-750	mosmol/kg of water
Stool	290	mosmol/kg of water
CSF	292-297	mosmol/kg of water

* *Osmolality of plasma* (mosmol/kg) = 2 [Na^+(mmol/L) + K^+(mmol/L)] + glucose (mmol/L) + BUN (mmol/L). Glucose and BUN are converted to mmol/L by dividing concentration in mg/dl by 18 and 2.8 respectively. Osmolality can also be measured by osmometry.

Diarrhoea and dysentery :

Diarrhoea : It is defined as an increase in daily stool weight over 200 g but in a general sense, frequent passage of liquid or unformed stool is known as diarrhoea. It is divided into *acute* (lasting less than 2 weeks—mainly the infective causes e.g., Rota virus, E.coli, and soon after dietary indiscretions), *persistent* (2-4 weeks) and *chronic* (lasting more than 4 weeks—chronic enteric infections e.g., salmonellosis, giardiasis, hookworm disease, amoebic colitis; pancreatic insufficiency, coeliac disease, pellagra, Addison's disease, malabsorption syndrome, inflammatory bowel disease e.g., ulcerative Colitis and Crohn's disease, intestinal tuberculosis, irritable bowel syndrome, diverticulitis, autonomic neuropathy, lactase deficiency, thyrotoxicosis or laxative abuse) types.

'Hyperdefecation' is characteristic of thyrotoxicosis. Frequent passage of small volume of formed stool is often associated with anorectal disorders (e.g., proctitis) or irritable bowel syndrome is known as 'pseudodiarrhoea'. Involuntary discharge of rectal contents is known as rectal incontinence, and is due to neuromuscular disorders or anorectal sphincteric disturbance.

Dysentery : Characterised by diarrhoea with blood and mucus in the stool as a result of acute inflammation of large gut, and clinically manifested by colicky abdominal pain, pyrexia and tenesmus (basically of two types—amoebic and bacillary).

Table 4 ; Differentiation between small bowel and large bowel diarrhoea

	Features	Small bowel diarrhoea	Large bowel diarrhoea
1.	Volume	Large	Small
2.	Frequency	Less	More
3.	Character	Soup-like, greasy	Mucinous, jelly-like
4.	Colour	Light	Dark
5.	Odour	Very offensive	Offensive
6.	Nature	Watery	Mucoid
7.	Site of pain	Mid-abdomen (colicky and intermittent)	Lower abdomen (gripping and continuous)
8.	Tenesmus	Absent	Present
9.	Blood and WBC within stool	Rare	Common
10.	Common pathogenic organisms	Vibrio cholerae, E. coli. Rota or Norwalk virus, Campylobacter	E. histolytica, Shigella

What are the endocrine causes of diarrhoea ?

1. Diabetes mellitus.
2. Hyperthyroidism.
3. Hypoparathyroidism.
4. Zollinger-Ellison syndrome.
5. Adrenal insufficiency
6. Carcinoid syndrome.
7. Villous adenoma.
8. Non-(5 cell pancreatic tumour.

Common offenders in traveller's diarrhoea ?

(A) Bacterial : enterotoxigenic E. coli, campylobacter jejuni, salmonella, shigella, enteroaggregative E. coli; yersinia enterocolitica, aeromonas spp. and plesiomonas shigelloides are rare causes.

(B) Viral : account for minority of illness.

(C) Parasitic : E.hystolytica, Giardia lamblia and Cryptosporidia spp.

Acute infective diarrhoea in children :

The common causes are—

1. Virus—Rota virus (30-40%), Norwalk virus
2. Bacterial—
   a) E. coli — enterotoxigenic strain (30-40%)
   b) V. cholerae (El Tor biotype)
   c) Salmonella
   d) Shigella
   e) Campylobacter jejuni
   f) Clostridium difficile
3. Parasites—Giardia lamblia, Entamoeba histolytica, Plasmodium falciparum (Algid malaria)
4. Fungi—Candida albicans

N.B. : V. cholerae and E. coli do not invade intestinal mucosa. Diarrhoea is an important determining factor leading to malnutrition in children. Breast feeding should continue along with oral rehydration therapy in infantile diarrhoea.

Chronic diarrhoea in children :

1. Cow's milk allergy.
2. Coeliac disease.
3. Chronic pancreatitis.
4. Cystic fibrosis.
5. Secondary to PEM, or viral/bacterial enteritis, worm infestations.
6. Intestinal stasis.
7. Liver diseases.

How ORS can be prepared at home ?

(A) Two teaspoonfuls of cane sugar + a pinch of table salt + a glass of water, or

(B) 6-8 level teaspoonfuls of cane sugar (i.e., 40 g of sucrose) + one level teaspoonful of common salt (i.e., 5 g of Nacl) ± few drops of lemon + 1 litre of potable water.

* 20 g of glucose is equivalent to 40 g of cane sugar (sucrose), is equivalent to 50 g of rice flour (puffed rice powder).

Can a green coconut (water) replace ORS ?

Previously it was said by some workers in this field that oral administration of 200 ml of green coconut water (GCW) for each litre of fecal loss would serve to maintain K^+-balance in cholera patients with prolonged diarrhoea. It is known that K^+ content of GCW is highland Na^+ and glucose contents are low in comparison to ORS. Though GCW is a readily available, cheap, sterile refreshing drink (an average size GCW contains about 300 ml of fluid) it can never replace ORS because it is not a true replica of ORS.

THE STETHOSCOPE

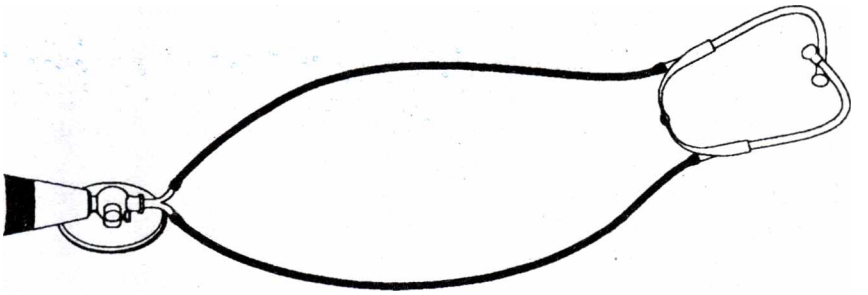


Fig. 1.13 : The stethoscope

Description:

It has four parts such as 1. Chest piece, 2. Connecting tube, 3. Head piece, and 4. Ear piece.

(A) Chest piece—Usually with a diaphragm and a bell; only one operates at a time. There is a valve that allows switching from diaphragm to bell and vice versa.

a) THE DIAPHRAGM : It should be stiff and smooth to damp out low-frequency sounds, and *unmask high-frequency sounds.* The thin plastic disc (usually having 4 cm diameter) is kept in position tightly by a metallic ring. The cardiac sounds best heard by diaphragm are, 1. All the diastolic and systolic murmurs due to different valvular lesion except mitral and tricuspid stenosis (MS/TS), 2. S_1 and S_2, and 3. Ejection click, pericardial knock, opening snap etc.

b) THE BELL : *Low-frequency sounds are best heard* by the bell. The bell (diameter of 2.5 cm) should be *placed lightly* on the site of auscultation (just enough to prevent room-noise leak) as firm pressure will tighten the underlying skin as a taut diaphragm (in that situation, low-frequency sounds will damp out and only high-frequency sounds are heard). The sounds best heard by the bell are, 1. Low-pitched murmur of MS and TS, 2. S_3or S_4, 3. Foetal heart sounds, and 4. Venous hum.

(B) Connecting tube—A single or double tube connects the head piece with the chest piece via a metallic connector attached to the chest piece. A length of 12 inches (30 cm) is sufficient. A tall physician may add additional 3 or 4 inches.

Long tubing attenuates high-frequency sounds. Very narrow tubes carry low-frequency sounds better, and high-frequency sounds are better carried by wider tubing.

(C) Head piece—The two metal tubes of the head piece are attached together by a metallic U-connector.

(D) Ear piece—The two metal tubes of the head piece end in two plastic ear pieces. Larger ear pieces are ideal as they prevent air leak. The usual stethoscope head piece is designed in such a way that the ear pieces point slightly anteriorly to be in the same line with the external auditory canal.

* One should not replace the torn diaphragm with a small piece of X-ray plate because the X-ray plate is neither thin nor stiff.

Criteria for a good stethoscope :

1. For high-frequency sounds—Smooth, thin and stiff diaphragm.
2. For low-frequency sounds—Shallow bell with a large diameter.
3. Double tubing (more efficient for high-frequencies) with a metal clip which binds the tubes together.
4. Ear pieces should be largest possible one; soft and made of rubbery material.
5. Length and internal circumferential diameter of the connecting tubes should not cross 12 inches and 4-6 mm respectively; the inner lining of the tubes should be made smooth by 'vinyl tubing'.
6. There should be option for rotation of the metal head pieces so that ear pieces can be placed in the most comfortable position.
7. An extra pediatric-sized diaphragm and bell attached.

Who invented the stethoscope ?

The French physician R.T.H. Laennec (1816). He died at the age of 46 years (1781-1826).

Different uses :

Though stethos means 'chest', and skopio means 'to examine', the modern stethoscope is used to auscultate various parts of the body, such as :

1. Cardiovascular system—Heart sounds, murmur, opening snap, ejection click, pericardial knock, pericardial rub etc.
2. Respiratory system—Breath sound, vocal resonance, crepitations, rhonchi, pleural rub, pneumothorax click etc.
3. Abdomen—Normal peristaltic sounds, renal artery bruit, venous hum, succussion splash and ausculto-percussion in pyloric stenosis, hepatic and splenic rub, uterine souffle and foetal heart sounds.
4. Head—Bruit from cerebral arteriovenous malformation may be heard over cranium or closed eyes; bruit of Paget's disease.
5. Neck—Carotid bruit, cervical venous hum, thyroid bruit, conducted murmur of AS.
6. Extremities—Pistol shot sound, Duroziez's murmur, demonstration of Hill's sign.
7. Measurement of blood pressure.
8. Miscellaneous—Subcutaneous emphysema, demonstration of parietal oedema.

* Worldwide, stethoscope symbolises a doctor. Stethoscope manufactured by renowned companies are Littman, Harvey, Sprague, Leatham etc. Besides the conventional variety, electronic and magnetic stethoscopes are also available.

** Except the sounds best heard by the bell, all other sounds mentioned above are best auscultated by the diaphragm of stethoscope.

SPHYGMOMANOMETER

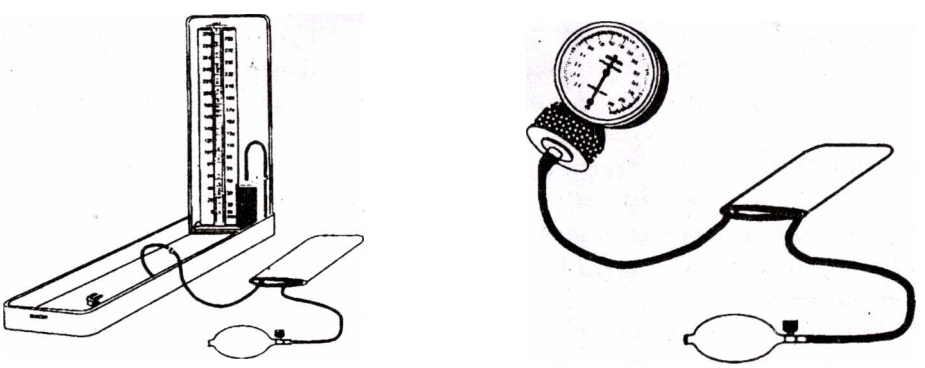


Fig. 1.14 : Sphygmomanometer (mercury column and aneroid type)

Different uses :

They are :

1. To measure the BP.
2. Confirmation of,
   a) Pulsus paradoxus.
   b) Pulsus alternans.
   c) Water-hammer pulse.
3. To demonstrate postural hypotension.
4. To demonstrate Hill's sign in aortic regurgitation.
5. Hess' capillary fragility test.
6. To assess the respiratory reserve (blow through the tube and observe the rise in mercury column).
7. In latent tetany (Trousseau's sign).
8. *To draw* venous blood.

9. As a rotating tourniquet in LVF.
10. To draw blood during blood donation.

* Read 'Bedside Clinics in Medicine, Part I' for further details.

** Sphygmomanometer was discovered by Riva Rocci (Italy) in 1896.

Types :

There are two common types—

a) Mercury column type, and

b) Aneroid type or spring dial type (less accurate).

* Digital (electronic) BP instruments are used by lay people at home.

What is SP, DP, PP and MP ?

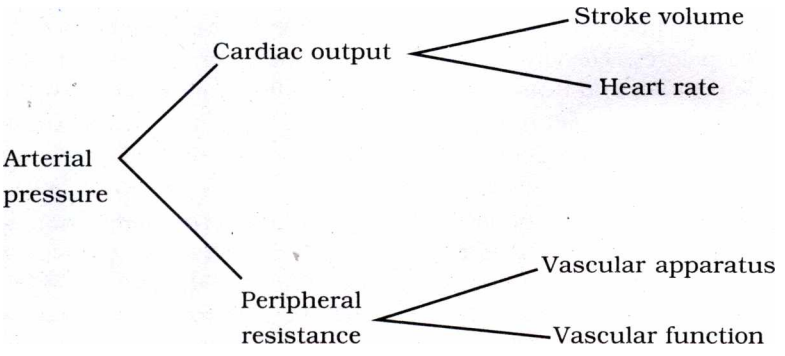
Systolic pressure (SP) reflects the cardiac output.

Diastolic pressure (DP) reflects the peripheral resistance.

Pulse pressure (PP) = SP minus DP; normal PP is 30-60 mm of Hg.

Mean pressue (MP) = DP + $^{1}/_{3}$rd of PP; normal MP is approximately 100 mm of Hg.

* Determinants of arterial pressure :



** Diastolic pressure is the most important among all. SP reflects the cardiac activity over and above the peripheral resistance (i.e., indicates the constant load against which heart has to work) and thus, DP is a better guide to assess the haemodynamics in the body.

How to define blood pressure (BP) ?

It is the lateral pressure exerted by the column of blood on the vessel walls while flowing through it.

What is the normal BP ?

It depends on age and sex of the individual, and also on many other parameters like build, exercise, posture, sleep, excitement etc. High BP or **hypertension** is defined arbitrarily by the values which outrange the normal limits of BP as defined by British Hypertension Society or JNC-VII. According to majority of definitions, upper limit of normal BP is 140/90 mm of Hg (lying).

Table 5 : Blood pressure classification

Category	Systolic, mm of Hg	Diastolic, mm of Hg
Normal	< 120	and < 80
Pre-hypertension	120-139	or 80-89
Stage 1 hypertension	140-159	or 90-99
Stage 2 hypertension	> 160	or > 100
Isolated systolic hypertension (ISH)	> 140	and < 90

* Major changes proposed in JNC-VII (2003) guidelines are :

1. In persons > 50 yrs, systolic BP >140 mm of Hg is a much more important cardiovascular risk factor than diastolic BP.

2. A new group called '*pre-hypertension*' with systolic BP of 120-139 mm of Hg and diastolic BP of 80-89 mm of Hg, who needs lifestyle modifications to prevent cardiovascular disease.
3. Most hypertensives should achieve the goal of BP < 140 / 90 mm of Hg, whereas BP <130 /80 mm of Hg should be the target of diabetics and patients with chronic renal disease.
4. Thiazide type diuretics should be used in all unless otherwise contraindicated.

** JNC-VII (2003) stands for American Joint National Committee on high blood pressure. JNC-VIII will come out in the year 2010.

Ideal measurement of sphygmomanometer cuff:

(A) Length : Should not be less than 10 inches.

(B) Width
a) Adults—5 inches.
b) Young children—3 inches.
c) Infants—1 inch.

* Width of 8 inches cuff should be used in legs (thigh) to avoid falsely elevated BP. If an adult-sized cuff is used in a child, it will falsely record low BP and if an infant-sized cuff is used in an adult, it with falsely record high BP. Obese adults require wider cuff for arms (6 inches).

How do you measure the BP ?

Steps :

1. The patient should lie flat on his back (SP may rise after sitting or standing) and should take rest for at least 15 minutes before recording of BP (BP should be recorded with the patient taking rest in a comfortable position and thus, casual recording should always be avoided).
2. Wrap the appropriate cuff firmly and uniformly over the arm in such a way that the lower border of the cuff remains at least 1 inch above the elbow joint. The arm should be kept in extended position at the heart level.
3. Keep the BP instrument (or spring dial) at the level of patient's heart. The midportion of the rubber bag present within the cuff should lie over the brachial artery. Raise the pressure upto 200 mm of Hg or till the radial pulse disappears. Now start deflating, and the point of reappearance of radial pulse indicates SP by 'palpatory method'. Place the diaphragm of sthethoscope over the brachial artery, a little below the cuff ('auscultatory method'). The cuff is inflated again and the mercury column is raised to 20 mm of Hg above the SP which was recorded by palpatory method, and then deflated slowly (2 mm of Hg/second). The BP is usually measured to the nearest 2 mm of Hg.
4. During release of pressure (deflation), following variations of sounds are heard **('Korotkoff sounds',** after their discoverer). Phase I—Sudden appearance of tapping sound (indicates SP); Phase II— Murmur-like sound replaces the tapping sound; Phase III—Gong sound replaces murmur; Phase IV—Loud sound suddenly becomes muffled; Phase V—Absence of all sounds (indicates DP).

N.B. : Previouly DP was recorded by phase IV but now-a-days phase V (just disappearance of sounds) is taken granted for measuring DP (interobserver variations are minimum and more closely corresponds to directly measurred DP while recording phase V). Few countries record the BP as $^{150}/_{96\ 90}$ mm of Hg where the SP is 150, Phase IV-DP is 96 and phase V-DP is recorded as 90 mm of Hg.

5. For recording of BP in legs, wrap the larger cuff in the thigh and place the stethoscope over the popliteal artery in the popliteal fossa while the patient lies in prone position.

N.B. : *Normally the SP in the lower limb is upto 20 mm of Hg higher than the SP in the upper limb, but DP remains the same.* Recording of lower limb BP is important in coarctation of aorta or occlusive disease of aorta (low), and aortic incompetence (high). BP should always be measured in both upper and lower limbs, and in supine and erect posture. In SI units, BP is recorded in Kilopascal (kPa) and 1 kPa = 7.5 mm of Hg (approximately).

* Where Korotkoff sounds remain audible in spite of complete deflation of the cuff (e.g., aortic incompetence, arteriovenous fistula, pregnancy), phase IV should be used for measurement of DP.

Checklists for ideal BP measurement:

1. The patient should be 'relaxed'.
2. Arm placed at heart level. Tight clothing should be removed from the arm.

3. Correct size of bladder cuff without any leak.
4. Sphygmomanometer should be placed upright; aneroid type calibrated at regular interval.
5. Confirm systolic BP by palpation of radial artery; slow deflation.
6. Avoid parallax error (eye should be kept at the same level as sphygmomanometer).
7. Record two measurements at each visit.

Does any variation exist in BP of two upper extremities ?

Normally there may be a difference of 10 mm of Hg observed between right and left upper limb pressure. One must think of few special situations (like thoracic inlet syndrome, aneurysm of the aorta, pre-subclavian coarctation, supravalvular AS, Takayasu's disease, atherosclerosis of aorta) in the presence of significant pressure difference.

What is auscultatory gap or silent gap ?

Sometimes the initial sounds (which record SP) may disappear (after initial appearance) for some period just to reappear at a lower level, and this is auscultatory gap. If a physician is not careful, he may falsely record low SP (if he misses the initial sounds and starts recording after the gap). It is why, the mercury column should be raised upto 200 mm of Hg or more at the initial part of recording to minimise errors.

Clinical importance—Observed in certain patients with systemic hypertension.

Mechanisms — 1. Venous distension.
2. Diminished flow velocity in arteries.

Causes of systolic and diastolic hypertension :

(A) Systolic hypertension—Atherosclerosis, aortic incompetence, complete heart block etc.

(B) Diastolic hypertension—Essential hypertension, parenchymal renal disease, Cushing's syndrome, pheochromocytoma, eclampsia etc.

(C) Divergent BP (high SP and low DP) e.g., 180/30 mm of Hg is seen in atherosclerosis, aortic incompetence.

Causes of secondary hypertension :

Systemic hypertension is of two types : Essential and secondary. The secondary causes are :

I. Vascular :
   a) Coarctation of aorta.
   b) Non-specific aorto-arteritis.

II. Renal :
   a) Acute and chronic glomerulonephritis.
   b) Diabetic nephropathy.
   c) Polycystic kidney disease.
   d) Renal artery stenosis.
   e) Chronic pyelonephritis.
   f) Renal involvement from collagen vascular diseases (e.g., SLE).
   g) Chronic renal failure.

III. Endocrine :
   a) Cushing's syndrome.
   b) Pheochromocytoma.
   c) Conn's syndrome.
   d) Acromegaly.
   e) Hyperparathyroidism.
   f) Myxoedema.
   g) Congenital adrenal hyperplasia.

IV. Drugs ;
   Oral contraceptive pills, corticosteroid, carbenexolone, oestrogens, sympathomimetic amines,

V. Miscellaneous : Eclampsia, obstructive sleep apnoea, alcohol, obesity and porphyria.

N.B. : Essential or idiopathic hypertension comprises 80-90% cases of hypertension and rest are secondary hypertension. Secondary hypertension is a consequence of specific disease or abnormality (so, though severe diastolic hypertension may occur, they are often treatable).

What is postural hypotension ?

Fall of 20 mm of Hg or more in SP, or 10 mm of Hg or more in DP in upright posture is postural hypotension. If the patient complains of symptoms like light-headedness, dizziness, extreme weakness, blurring of vision or syncope, even a lesser degree of fall in BP may be considered as significant. First measure the BP iri lying down position and then record BP **after standing for at least 3 minute.** 'Postural drop' in BP is important bedside clue in syncope, and diabetes mellitus with autonomic neuropathy.

Where the BP instrument may be used as a pneumatic tourniquet ?

1. Emergency control of bleeding where other methods are not available.
2. To produce a bloodless field of operation.

What is 'white coat' hypertension ?

Few patients (20%; especially women) show dramatic elevation of BP when measurements are carried out by a doctor in the chamber, outdoor or indoor. Thus, often it is called as office or clinic hypertension. Contrary to previous beliefs, it may be associated with target organ damage (LVH, carotid atherosclerosis). It is an important well-known cause of refractory hypertension. It has been observed that BP recordings by a senior consultant physician is higher than recording by a junior doctor, which is again higher than the BP recorded by a nursing staff. Accurate diagnosis requires twentyfour hours ambulatory monitoring of BP.

Pseudo hypertension :

In old age, there is false recording of high BP as a result of stiff and non-compliant vessels (Osier's sign). Actually, the true intra-arterial BP is lower than the BP measured by sphygmomanometer.

Labile hypertension :

The patients having high BP for sometimes, but not always, are known as labile hypertensives.

Paroxysmal hypertension :

This (sudden shooting of BP) is classically seen in certain patients of pheochromocytoma, and is also known as episodic hypertension. This is diagnosed by repeated recordings.

Transient hypertension :

In conditions like acute glomerulonephritis, pregnancy, acute myocardial infarction or CVA, systemic hypertension may be seen for a brief period of time and may be due to stress-induced or associated with a disorder having transient phase of hypertension.

Hypertensive urgency and emergency :

Hypertensive urgency : High BP without any target organ damage and thus reduction of BP can be done gradually within 24 hours. *Hypertensive emergency :* Markedly high BP with target organ damage and needs immediate control of BP in order to prevent further target organ damage.

Isolated systolic hypertension (ISH) :

When the SP is > 140 mm of Hg and DP remains < 90 mm of Hg, it is said that ISH is present and is commonly found in old age.

Refractory hypertension :

The patients whose BP, inspite of full compliance, can not be reduced to 140/90 mm of Hg, and who are on triple drug regimen (includes a diuretic in maximal doses) are considered to be refractory or resistant: Think of—

1. Non-compliance with drug therapy (commonest).
2. Inadequate treatment.
3. Failure to recognise secondary hypertension e.g., pheochromocytoma, renal artery stenosis etc.

Target organ damage (complications) in systemic hypertension :

(A) Heart and vessels—Cardiac enlargement, LVF, angina pectoris, acute myocardial infarction, arteriosclerosis, dissecting aneurysm, peripheral vascular disease.

(B) Cerebrovascular—Cerebral haemorrhage, cerebral thrombosis, hypertensive encephalopathy and subarachnoid haemorrhage.

(C) Renal—Impaired renal function, proteinuria, CRF, ARF.

(D) Eye—Hypertensive retinopathy, retinal haemorrhage and exudate, papilloedema (malignant hypertension), central retinal vein thrombosis, sudden blindness.

(E) Nose—Epistaxis.

Classification of 'hypertensive retinopathy' :

It is divided into 4 grades (Keith-Wagener-Barker classification) :

- Grade I: Thickening of arterial wall, increased tortuosity and narrowing of arteriole though red blood column is seen; AV ratio is 1 : 2 (normal AV ratio is 3 : 4).
- Grade II : Grade I plus AV nipping and reduction of arterial calibre in comparison to vein. 'Copper wire'-like arteries seen without any visible red blood column; AV ratio is 1 : 3.
- Grade III : Grade II pluse flame-shaped haemorrhages and cotton-wool exudates. 'Silver wire' arteries seen without any visible blood column; AV ratio is 1 : 4.
- Grade IV : Grade III plus papilloedema. 'Fibrous cord'-like arteries seen without any visible blood column (malignant hypertension).

* From minute to minute, BP varies with emotion, exercise, respiration, tobacco or alcohol consumption, temperature, pain etc.

** In atrial fibrillation, multiple BP recording with averaging is advisable.

*** Blunting of the day-night BP pattern (i.e., nighttime BP is 10-20% lower than daytime BP) is seen in sleep apnoea and autonomic neuropathy.

**** R_{eal} malignant and accelerated hypertension from 'Bedside clinics in Medicine, Part I'.

CLINICAL THERMOMETER



Description :

1. A glass tube with markings (graduations); usually 11 cm long.
2. Constricted terminal part containing mercury with the other end sealed.
3. Small lumen inside with constriction at the neck.
4. Cross-section of the body of glass tube is triangular.
5. Indication of normal temperature (98.6°F or 37°C) by an arrow-mark.

* Previously Fahrenheit scale (F) was used in the thermometer. Now-a-days, temperature is recorded in Centigrade scale (C). The formula of conversion of temperature is,

$$\frac{C}{5} \quad \frac{F-32}{9}$$

** The kink inside the clinical thermometer prevents the return of mercury column when the thermometer is taken out of body. The triangular cross section (i.e., prism-like) magnifies the thin *mercury* line into a wider strip to help in easy reading.

*** Recently, a tympanic membrane thermometer (i.e., electronic thermometer placed in the ear) is used for fast and accurate recording of core temperature.

**** Lower-oesophageal temperature closely reflect the core temperature.

Temperature range graduated in the thermometer :

It is 94°F to 108°F in Fahrenheit scale, and 35°C to 42°C in Centigrade scale.

***Procedure of recording temperature :* -**

The thermometer should be washed properly with soap-water or any antiseptic solution. In hospitals, it is usually immersed in antiseptic solution. Clean with tap water before using it. Always shake the thermometer before use so that the mercury level comes below the arrow-mark. Before taking oral temperature, the patient should not consume anything hot or cold. Before keeping the thermometer inside the oral cavity, warn the patient not to bite it but to hold it by the lips when the mercury bulb is placed under the tongue.

Clean the axilla of sweat before putting the thermometer there. In infants, the temperature may be taken in groin with thigh flexed over the abdomen. The patient should not bath before recording axillary temperature.

After recording the temperature (thermometer is kept at least for two minutes), shake the thermometer again to send the mercury column beyond normal temperature. Now record the temperature in a white paper with date and time.

Clinical thermometer—which type of thermometer it is ?

It is a *maximum thermometer.* Higher temperature once attained, does not return to normal spontaneously. Clinical thermometer does not reflect the minimum temperature.

Thermometer used for weather report are made of ether or alcohol (instead of mercury) and reflects the minimum temperature. They are minimum thermometer.

What is habitual hyperthermia ?

In some persons, the normal temperature is above 98.6°F and is often in the range of 99°F to 100.5°F. Though rare, these patients run from physician to physician to allay their anxiety. The diagnosis can be made firmly after a certain period of close observation of the pateint.

What is malignant hyperthermia ?

In this inherited disorder, the temperature shoots from 102.2°F to 107.6°F in response to certain anaesthetics like halothane, methoxyflurane, cyclopropane or by muscle relaxants like succinylcholine. The high temperature results from muscular contraction. The situation is tackled by cooled ice, 100% 0_2, fluids and diuretics (to reduce myoglobinuria and hyperkalaemia), $NaHCo_3$ (to combat metabolic acidosis), and dantrolene sodium.

Neuroleptic malignant syndrone (NMS) is probably a variant of malignant hyperthermia and is usually associated with use of neuroleptic drugs e.g., phenothiazines, butyrophenones or haloperidol. NMS is characterised by hyperthermia, altered sensorium, muscular rigidity and autonomic dysfunction (pallor, tachycardia, sweating, labile BP). The mortality rate is high. Similar treatment as adopted in malignant hyperthermia is advocated here.

* Vide the section on Abnormal temperature' in 'Bedside Clinics in Medicine, Part I' for further reading.

TUNING FORK

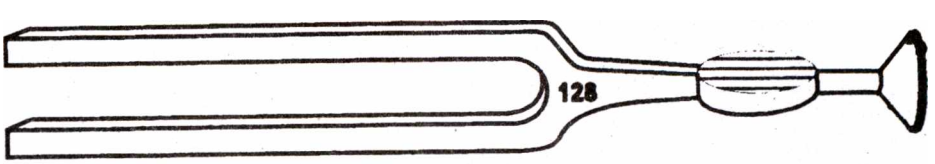


Fig. 1.16 : Tuning fork (frequency 128 cycles/second)

Description :

This Y-shaped instrument has two limbs, a common stem and a disc-like base. Tuning fork produces vibration with constant frequency like 128, 256 or 512 cycles/second. The frequency is written on the instrument where the two limbs join. The tuning fork is made of steel.

Different uses :

Classically the tuning fork' is used for two purposes—

1. Testing of vibration sense (128 or 256 cycles/sec.).
2. Testing of hearing and quality of deafness (256 or 512 cycles/sec.).

Test for vibration sense :

Vide the section on 'Charcot joint' in 'Bedside Clinics in Medicine, Part I'.

Causes of loss of vibration sense :

1. Old age (physiological; even the ankle jerk may be lost in patients over 70 years).
2. Peripheral neuropathy (loss of vibration sense is an early feature in diabetes mellitus) or radiculopathy (prolapse^ intervertebral disc).
3. Lesion in the posterior column (e.g., compressive or non-compressive myelopathy; classically tabes dorsalis).
4. Cortical lesion (e.g., lesion in the parietal lobe).

* Vibration sense is carried through posterior column; in diseases affecting posterior column, patient complains of ataxia (sensory ataxia). In syringomyelia and multiple sclerosis, vibration sense may be affected alone.

Tests for hearing :

There are two 'tuning fork tests' which differentiate the quality of deafness.

(A) Rinne's test :

A vibrating tuning fork is placed by the side of the ear to be tested. Mask hearing in the other ear by giving pressure of tragus on external acoustic meatus. Ask the patient to raise his finger when he can no longer hear any sound. After receiving the signal, the base of the fork is placed on the mastoid process and ask him again whether he can hear any sound. If he says 'no' to your question, the Rinne's test is positive and if says 'yes', the test becomes negative.

Interpretation—In persons with normal hearing, the air conduction (AC) is always greater than bone conduction (BC), i.e., AC > BC, that is to say Rinne's test is positive. If BC > AC, Rinne's test is said to be negative. So Rinne's test is positive in normal persons and in nerve type (sensorineural) deafness, and the test becomes negative in conductive deafness. It is to be remembered that in sensorineural deafness, AC > BC though both are less than normal.

(B) Weber's test :

A vibrating tuning fork is placed on the centre of the vertex in the middle line. A normal individual hears the sound equally on both sides.

In sensorineural deafness, the sound is better heard in the normal or healthy ear, i.e., localisation is on the normal side. But in conductive deafness, the localisation is on the affected or abnormal side.

The explanation goes like this : In sensorineural deafness, both AC and BC are reduced whereas in conductive deafness, only AC is reduced but BC is relatively increased (as ambient noise is excluded).

Interpretation—'Lateralised' or not.

Causes of deafness :

Deafness is of two types :

(A) Conductive deafness — As a result of impacted wax, damage to tympanic membrane, otosclerosis, eustachian tube blockage, CSOM etc.

(B) Sensorineural deafness — Due to damage of cochlear nerve and organ of Corti, Meniere's disease, acoustic neuroma, fracture of petrous part of temporal bone, pontine lesion etc.

* In clinical practice, deafness is further investigated by audiometry (pure-tone) and brainstem evoked potentials in order to come to a definite aetiological diagnosis.

How to differentiate between organic and hysterical loss of vibration sense ?

Place the tuning fork on either side of forehead in turn. As the frontal bone is acting as a single unit, the sensation of vibration is perceived/not perceived on both sides even by the patients having organic lesion. Hysterical patients say that they can not feel the vibration on the side of 'sensory loss'.

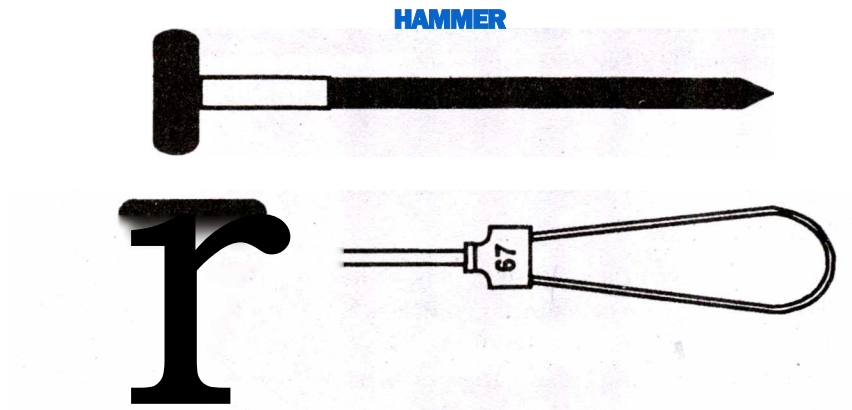


Fig. 1.17 : Hammer (rounded and conical variety)

Synonyms :

Percussion hammer, patellar hammer or tendon hammer.

Why the name patellar hammer ?

Knee jerk was the first tendon reflex to become a regular part of the neurological examination, and this is why it is also known as patellar hammer.

Parts of a hammer :

1. Rounded or conical striking end made of rubber.
2. Shaft (plastic) with a blunt tip for elicitation of different superficial reflexes (abdominal, cremasteric, plantar response). The blunt tip present within the metallic shaft is seen after unscrewing two parts of the shaft.

What is an ideal hammer ?

A hammer with a firm and flexible shaft (made of plastic) is an ideal one.

Different uses :

For elicitation of—

1. Deep reflexes or jerks (percuss the stretched tendon concerned).
2. Chvostek's sign (tap the facial nerve in front of the ear) - twitching of facial muscles are seen in tetany.
3. Fasciculation (strike a big muscle).
4. Myotonia (strike the thenar eminence of palm).
5. Superficial reflexes (use the shaft with blunt tip).
6. While percussing the chest, hammer may be used as 'percussing finger'.

N.B. : Read all superficial (specially plantar response) and deep reflexes in details.



Fig. 1.18 : Pin

Different uses :

1. Testing of pain sensation (e.g., peripheral neuropathy).
2. Testing of crude touch sensation—By the pinhead (specially in leprosy).
3. Blanching reaction in telangiectasia (with special reference to spider naevi) —The pinhead is used.
4. Confrontation perimetry—With special reference to a large pin having red or white-head (hatpin).
5. Elicitation of plantar response may be carried out by a blunt pin (in a desperate situation).

N.B. : Read *leprosy* in details.

COTTON

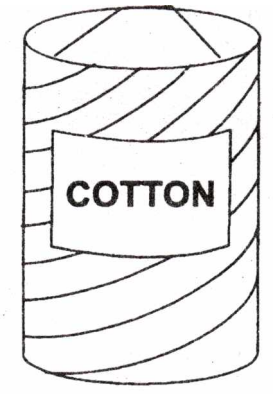


Fig. 1.19 : Cotton packet

Different uses :

1. Haemostasis; wiping secretions; as a dressing material; to cleanse the local part before l.V or I.M injection when soaked in methylated spirit.
2. *Touch sensation*—When a small piece of cotton wool is twisted into a fine hair, it can be used for testing of fine touch sensation and the blunt end may be applied for crude touch sensation (with special reference to leprosy and sensory function testing in clinical neurology).
3. *Corneal reflex.*
4. Test of olfactory nerve—Test objects (e.g., oil of peppermint) are soaked in cotton and presented to the patient.
5. Gag reflex is done by a piece of cotton wrapped in a broom-stick.
6. For preparation of throat swab, conjunctival swab or rectal swab.
7. Cortical sensation—One point localisation and sensory extinction.

N.B. : Read *leprosy* and *comeal reflex* in details.

MEASURING TAPE

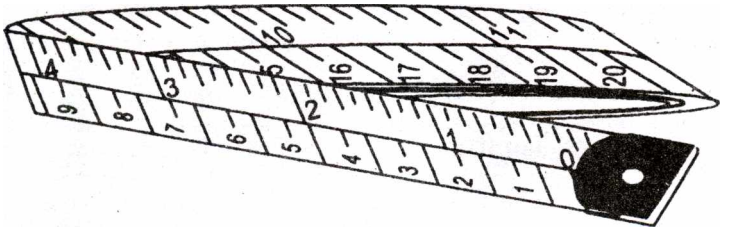


Fig. 1.20 : Measuring tape

Different uses in clinical medicine :

It helps in the measurement of—

1. Abdominal girth in ascites (serial measurement is important).
2. Thyroid enlargement (at the most prominent part of the swelling in neck).
3. Expansion of the chest (specially in emphysema).
4. Head circumference (specially in hydrocephalus).
5. Assessment of nutrition (helpful in obesity and malnutrition).
6. To assess body mass index (BMI) and waist-hip ratio in obesity.
7. Height (e.g., cretinism, Marfan's syndrome).
8. To confirm wasting or hypertrophy of muscles.

TONGUE DEPRESSOR

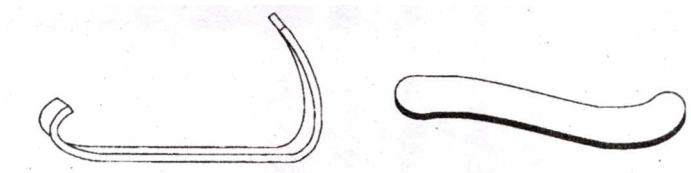


Fig. 1.21 : Tongue depressor (L-shaped and straight variety)

Synonym :

Spatula; spatula is straight but tongue depressor is L-shaped i.e., having an angulation with a holding part (hold by the physician) and a broader depressor part (part that depresses the tongue).

Which part of the tongue is pressed ?

Usually the anterior 2/3rd of the tongue is pressed. Never touch the posterior 1 /3rd (gag reflex may occur) of the tongue.

Different uses :

1. Examination of the throat and oral cavity (teeth, gum, cheek, tongue, fauces and tonsils, palate, oropharynx).
2. 'Spatula test' in tetanus.
3. Detection of posterior nasal bleeding.
4. Removal of foreign body (e.g., fish bone) from the tonsils, throat or posterior part of the tongue.
5. Elicitation of gag reflex.
6. Indirect laryngoscopy.
7. It helps to open the mouth for oral toilet or suction in a comatose patient; oral surgery.

N.B. : Detection of caries teeth, gingivitis, candidial infection in buccal mucosa and tongue, patch tonsil, diphtheritic patch, aphthous ulcer, movement of palate as a part of IXth and Xth cranial nerve examination, spatula test in tetanus, Koplik's spot in measles and palatal ulcer in SLE are subjects of interest in general medicine.

Causes of 'patch tonsil' :

Patch or membrance seen over tonsils in situations like :

1. Acute follicular tonsillitis.
2. Faucal diphtheria.
3. Thrush or candidial infection.
4. Agranulocytosis.
5. Acute lymphoblastic leukaemia.
6. Vincent's angina (spirochaetes and fusiform bacilli).
7. Infectious mononucleosis.
8. Milk curd (in neonates and infants).

Table 6 : Differentiation between acute follicular tonsillitis and faucal diphtheria

	Features	Tonsillitis	Diphtheria
1.	Onset	Sudden	Gradual
2.	Limitation of 'patch'	Only to enlarged tonsils	Tonsils and neighbouring structures like palate, pillars of the fauces may be involved
3.	Toxicity	Little	More toxic than tonsillitis
4.	Membrane or patch	The membrane or patch is yellowish and not adherent, and *can be easily seperated without any bleeding surface*	Greyish and adherent, and *can not be easily seperated. It leaves a bleeding surface after seperation*
5.	Trismus	May be present	Absent
6.	Cervical lymphade-nopathy	+	++
7.	Rise of temperature	100°F-104°F	99°F-100°F

Causes of lock-jaw or trismus :

Trismus develops due to sustained spasm of masseter muscles and is seen in :

1. Tetanus 2. Impacted wisdom teeth 3. Peritonsillar abscess, dental abscess, Ludwig's angina 4. Acute follicular tonsillitis 5. Temporo-mandibular arthritis 6. Drug-induced dyskinesia (metoclopramide, phenothiazines) 7. Tetany, strychnine poisoning 8. Parotitis, mumps 9. Hydrophidae group of snake bite 10. Hysteria.

What is 'spatula test' ?

In health, touching the posterior pharyngeal wall by spatula produces reflex opening of mouth. In tetanus, paradoxically mouth closes in such a way that the spatula can not be taken out easily. Thus, spatula test is positive in tetanus.

N.B. : Read tetanus, diphtheria, measles and bulbar palsy in details.

TORCH

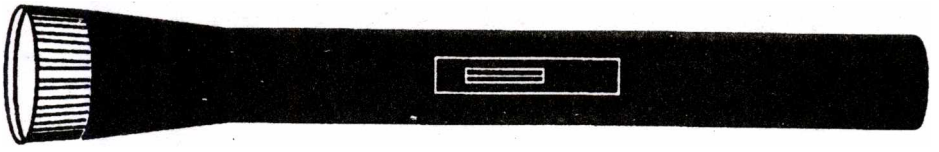


Fig. 1.22 : Pencil torch

Different uses :

1. *Pupillary reaction*—Light reflex (bilateral fixed and dilated pupil often helps in declaring 'deatfy).
2. Test of perception of light (PL) and projection of rays (PR).
3. Examination of pupil, oral cavity and throat, external ear, nose; anus, rectum and vagina.
4. Testing of photophobia (specially in meningitis).
5. Often epigastric pulsation is better seen when a torch is lighted tangentially over the epigastrium; in congenital hypertrophic pyloric stenosis, a torch is focused over the abdomen from right side of the body for better demonstration of slow peristaltic waves while the examiner looks from the baby's left side.
6. Transillumination test in hydrocele.

N.B. : Read pupillary changes in details.

PLAIN GLASS TEST TUBE

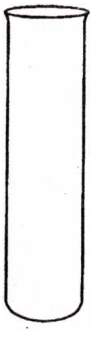


Fig. 1.23 : Plain glass test tube

Different uses :

1. For the collection of blood sample for,
   a) Grouping and cross-matching.
   b) Serum electrolytes.

c) Serum urea, creatinine, sugar, uric acid, and
d) Liver function tests.

2. For the collection of urine sample for routine examination (R/E) and culture-sensitivity (C/S) test.
3. For the collection of gastric juice sample for analysis/detection of AFB in a suspected case of pulmonary tuberculosis (specially in children who can not expectorate sputum, and often swallow it).
4. For the collection and analysis of CSF for physical, biochemical, cytological and bacteriological examination.
5. Sputum collection for Gram's staining, detection of AFB and malignant cells, RBC etc.
6. For the collection of pleural fluid, pericardial fluid, ascitic fluid and drained pus from liver abscess for the purpose of physical, biochemical, cytological and bacteriological examination.
7. Two test tubes containing cold (5°- 10°C) and hot (37°-45°C) water for assessment of temperature sensation in clinical neurology.
8. For the collection of throat swab, rectal swab, high vaginal swab, conjunctival swab or wound pus material (a sterile test tube with a'cotton swab stick is used).

* The test tube should be sterilised where it is used for bacteriological examination e.g., in 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 and 8.

** Throat swab examination is necessary in acute tonsillitis, diphtheria and acute rheumatic fever.

CONDOM

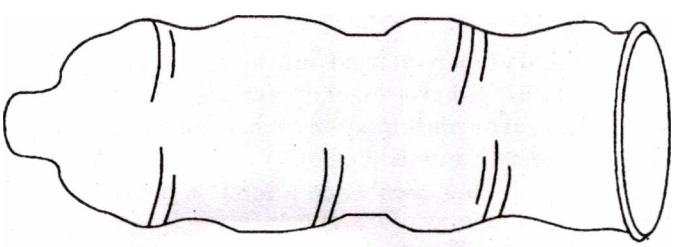


Fig. 1.24 : Condom

Description :

Usually it is of two kinds, i.e., latex (most widely used) and skin-type. The Indian condom is usually 17.5 cm long and 4.4-5.4 cm wide. Latex condoms are preferable as HIV has been shown to leak through natural skin-type condoms.

Different uses :

1. Most widely used barrier contraceptive device for males.
2. Prevents sexually transmitted diseases (STD) with special reference to AIDS, hepatitis B infection, gonorrhoea, syphilis, non-gonococcal urethritis and genital herpes.
3. Often it is used for 'condom catheterisation' (prevents soiling of bed and bed-sore formation, and as the catheter is not introduced per urethra, there is less chance of development of UTI).

* Condoms are easily available, safe, cheap, disposable and having no side effects. Globally, condom is now promoted (specially, in clients of commercial sex-workers) to prevent transmission of HIV infection.

How condom catheterisation is done ?

Make a small nick at the tip of the condom and through it, a Malecot's or Foley's catheter is passed in such a way that the flower of Malecot's catheter rests on the nick. Now the condom is put around the penis with the help of adhesive tapes. Condom catheterisation is valuable in (a) incontinence of urine, and (b) in comatose patients where the urinary output is to be measured.

N.B. : Read AIDS in details.

AIRWAY TUBE

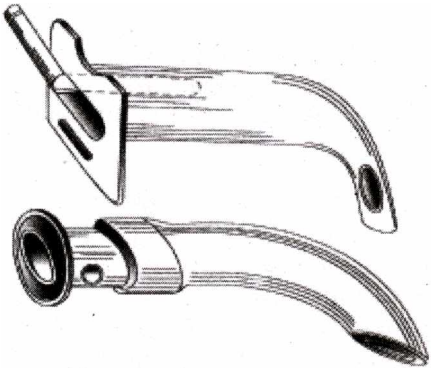


Fig. 1.25 : Airway tube (metal and rubber)

Available varieties :

The slightly curved tube is made either of :

a) Metal, or

b) Rubber.

They help entry of air into the air-passages. This instrument is also known as 'mouth gag'.

Different uses :

1. Unconscious patients.
2. Patients under anaesthesia.
3. During an episode of convulsions (e.g., epilepsy).

It is inserted into the mouth :

a) To prevent the tongue from falling back (the curvature of the tube is so made that it draws the tongue forwards),

b) To assist suction,

c) To prevent the endotracheal tube being bitten by the teeth during anaesthesia, and

d) To prevent the tongue bite (e.g., convulsions).

Multiple openings are present at the inner end, so that some of the openings may remain open when others are blocked by mucus plugs. Keeping the tube in boiling water for 30 minutes or autoclaving sterilises the instrument.

VENFLOW OR INTRACATH

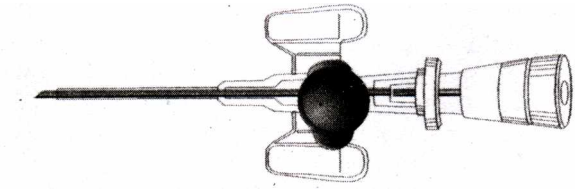


Fig. 1.26 : Intracath

Description :

It has two parts :

1. Inner — metallic stylet or needle (for proper guiding into the vein).
2. Outer — polythene cannula or sheath.

Uses :

This type of indwelling venous catheter (also known as angiocatheter) is required when the intravenous access is needed for a longer period (e.g., 24-72 hrs).

Procedure of introduction :

After puncturing a long vein, the whole of the intracath is gently introduced into the vein. The inner metallic needle is now withdrawn cautiously, keeping the outer polythene cannula within the vein. The polythene cannula is now ready to be connected with a venous line.

Advantages of 'intracath' over scalp vein set:

The intracath,

1. Can be kept within the vein for a longer time in comparison to scalp vein set,
2. Minimum chance of counterpuncture of the vein (scalp vein set often faces this hazard),
3. It produces less thrombophlebitis, and
4. There is no question of heparinisation of the channel.

N.B. : Intravenous line access are preliminary step in the management of dehydration, peripheral circulatory failure, cardiac arrest, shock and unconscious patient. The l.V access is done by (i) simple l.V needle, or (ii) scalp vein set, or (iii) intracath.

METERED DOSE INHALER (MDI)

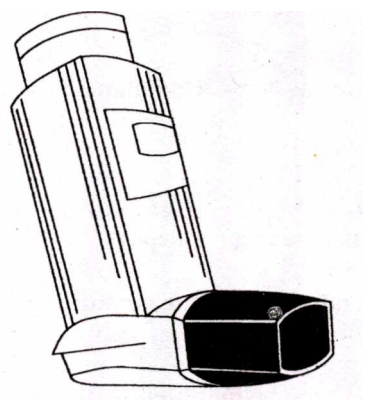


Fig. 1.27 : Metered dose inhaler

What is MDI ?

For the past two to three decades, inhaled medicines are commonly used for bronchial asthma or chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) patients. These medicines are breathed directly into the lungs, where they are really needed. The devices used to deliver the medicine to the lung are known as 'inhalers'. Inhalers can be of many types e.g.,

a) Spray inhaler (also called metered dose inhaler).
b) Powder inhaler (also called rotahaler).
c) Nebulisers (for giving higher doses).

The inhalers deliver drugs like p_2-agonist (salbutamol, terbutaline, salmeterol, formoterol), corticosteroids (beclomethasone, budesonide, fluticasone), anticholinergics (ipratropium bromide) or mast cell stabiliser (sodium chromoglycate) in *aerosoljorm* which is the preferred mode of treatment for obstructive airway disease.

Description :

This is a L-shaped tube made of plastic and consists of mouth piece, and a tube which holds the canister of medicines to be inhaled. The mouth piece have a cover (cap).

Method of use :

1. Take off the cap of the mouth piece. Shake the canister 5-6 times.
2. Breathe out through the mouth, till the end of normal respiration.

3. Place the aerosol nozzle (mouth piece) between the lips. Start to breathe in, press the canister and keep breathing in steadily and deeply.
4. Remove the inhaler from the mouth. Hold the breathe for 10 seconds cr as long as one find it comfortable. Now breathe out.
5. After 1-2 minutes, get ready to breathe in for the second puff, i*f necessary.
6. Lastly, rinse the mouth with plane water.

* As the device delivers a measured (fixed) dose of medicine, the instrument is called metered dose inhaler. In spite of good technique, only 15% of the contents are inhaled and rest 85% are deposited on the wall of the pharynx, and ultimately swallowed by the patient.

Advantages and disadvantages :

(A) Advantages—
1. Rapid onset of action.
2. Very small dose of the drug is necessary to have desired effect.
3. Very little medicine is allowed to reach other parts of the body, i.e., chances of side effects tend to be minimum.

(B) Disadvantages —
1. The major limitation of the mode of administration is that training and skills are required to coordinate actuation of drug from MDI.
2. Pharyngeal infection (e.g., candidosis with inhaled corticosteroids) if the device in not properly cleaned at a regular interval.

What is a rotahaler ?

Powder inhalers are devices that deliver a measured dose of medicine in a *powdered form.* The transparent rotahaler breaks a capsule (rotacap) in the powdered form and the patient inhales the powder in the aerosol form through the mouth piece of rotahaler.

***What is* a nebuliser ?**

Nebulisers are used for giving higher doses of medication at times when breathing becomes very difficult. This is a machine that transforms the medicine (salbutamol, beclomethasone, ipratropium bromide) into a *Jlne mist,* which can be breathed in by normal breathing, via a facemask or a mouth piece. The nebuliser chamber is connected to the nebuliser and oxygen mask on either side, so that nebulised drug would be inhaled along with oxygen. Nebulisers are used in hospitals or nursing homes, for the management of acute severe asthma or acute exacerbation of COPD patients.

SPACEHALER

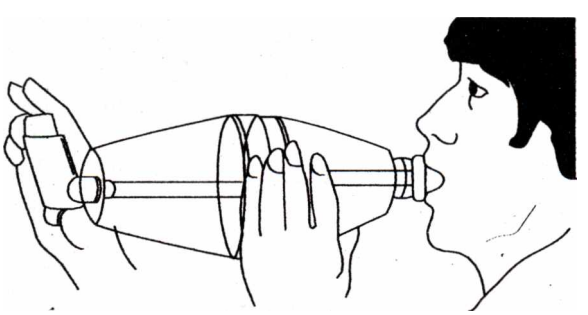


Fig. 1.28 : Spacehaler

Description :

This device consists of two smooth plastic cylinders (one fits into the other producing a 'space'). At one end there is a mouth piece through which the patient inhales the medicine and at the opposite end the metured dose inhaler (MDI) is placed through an inlet. It is also known as 'volumatic' or 'spacer'.

Method of use :

Assemble the spacehaler by pushing the notch of one half into the slot of the other half of cylinder. After shaking the MDI well, fit it into the spacehaler. Rest of the steps are similar to the use of MDI.

* Spacehalers are designed »to reduce velocity of the particles so that less drug is deposited in the mouth.

Advantages and disadvantages :

(A) Advantages —

1. It makes the spray inhaler (MDI) easier to use and added to its effectiveness. The drug delivered from the MDI is not misused or lost because it is kept within a 'space'.
2. Strict coordination of the patient (i.e., aerosol activation and inhalation) is not required as the patient breathes in the cylinder.
3. Chances of development of oral candidosis with inhaled corticosteroid is reduced.
4. Low cost; portable; no electricity required (in comparison to nebuliser).
5. Useful in children and in the elderly.
6. Less drug is deposited in the mouth in comparison to MDI.

(B) Disadvantages —

The device is big to carry in person.

PROCTOSCOPE (ANAL SPECULUM)

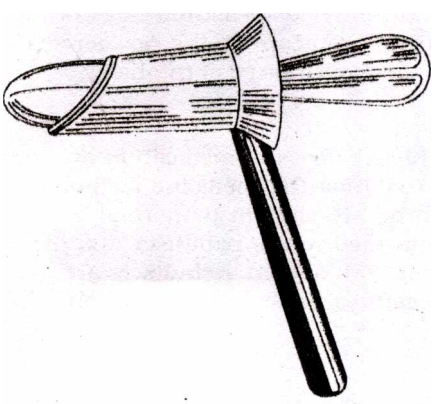


Fig. 1.29 : Proctoscope

Description :

This is a 3-inch long instrument, and has two parts :

a) A cannula — One end is sharp and the other end is wide.

b) Obturator — The blunt end of the obturator (trocar) fits well into the sharp end of the cannula.

Plus

It needs a source of light (i.e., torch)

Different uses :

1. To visualise the anal canal for examination of fissure, internal haemorrhoids (piles), ulcer, growth, polyp etc.
2. For injecting sclerosing agents (5% phenol in almond oil or 3% sodium morrhuate) in the sub-mucous coat of the rectum and the anal canal through the mass of piles.
3. As a primary investigation of ano-rectal discomfort or pain.

Procedure of introduction :

1. The patient is usually placed in the left lateral position (preferred with right leg flexed and left leg extended, or in the 'knee-elbow' position. Inspection outside the anus and digital rectal examination are performed to exclude any painful condition.

2. The lubricated proctoscope is now pushed upwards and forwards towards the umbilicus until the anal canal in passed; the instrument is then directed posteriorly (towards the sacral hollow) to enter into the rectum proper.
3. The obturator is withdrawn and the lower rectum is visulazied with the help of a torch when the light is thrown through the cannula. Now the cannula is gradually withdrawn, and the rectum and the anal canal are visualized for any pathology.

Exciting factors to have internal piles :

1. Straining at defecation (e.g., constipation).
2. Pregnancy, uterine tumours.
3. Portal hypertension e.g., cirrhosis of liver.
4. Persistent straining at urination (e.g., benign hypertrophy of prostate).
5. Carcinoma of the rectum.

Indications of rectal biopsy in clinical practice :

Rectal biopsy is done through sigmoidoscope or colonoscope in—

1. Carcinoma of the rectum.
2. Hirschsprung's disease.
3. Amyloidosis.
4. Schistosomiasis.
5. Ulcerative colitis.
6. Intestinal amoebiasis (rare).

AMBU BAG

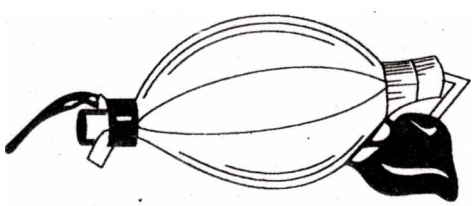


Fig. 1.30 : Ambu bag

Description :

The mnemonic AMBU stands for 'Ambulatory Manual Breathing Unit'.

Air enters into the patient's lungs through a tracheostomy or endotracheal tube after squeezing the bag. When the pressure is released, the bag inflates 'automatically' (the elastic recoil of the chest results air to leave the lungs). This apparatus serves the purpose of mouth to mouth respiration.

ENDOTRACHEAL TUBE

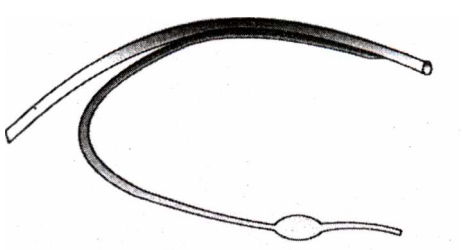


Fig. 1.31 : Endotracheal tube with cuff

Description :

As the name implies, the tube is introduced within the trachea through laryngeal opening via mouth. The tube may be of portex (polyethylene) or rubber-made. Portex variety is less irritant and can be kept for a longer period.

The endotracheal tube may be cuffed or uncuffed. The 'cuffed endotracheal tube' have a small balloon at the upper end and indicates tension in the cuff. A small tubing along the body of the tube helps in inflation of the cuff. The balloon should always be inflated with air (never with water). The size of the tubes indicate their internal diameter and usually it is 7.5 mm for females and 7.5-8 mm for males. Cuffed tubes are preferred as they keep the tube in position.

Procedure of endotracheal intubation :

It is an emergency procedure when an endotracheal tube passes from oral cavity into the trachea for providing adequate ventilation in patients with respiratory failure.

Indications :

1. Respiratory failure as a result of COPD, massive pneumonia or respiratory muscle paralysis, in an attempt to give positive pressure ventilation.
2. To carry out artificial respiration in a patient of cardio-respiratory arrest.
3. Respiratory difficulty in an unconscious patient—clear the airway and prevent aspiration.
4. During general anaesthesia.
5. Severe angio-oedema of larynx in anaphylaxis.
6. Respiratory depression in poisoning like morphine, diazepam.

Procedure:

Pre-anaesthetic medication and anaesthesia are not required. The patient is positioned supine with neck hyperextended and chin in the midline.

a) Oral intubation : First, the oral cavity is cleared of secretions. The oropharynx, nasopharynx and vocal cords are visualised with the help of a laryngoscope; the endotracheal tube of appropriate size is then passed through the vocal cords and positioned in the trachea. Now the chest is auscultated for breath sound (to confirm the air entry on both sides). If breath sounds are equal on both the sides, the cuffed endotracheal tube is then inflated with an aim to keep the tube in position, and to prevent aspiration.

b) Transnasal intubation : Nose as an entry point may be used in a more conscious patient. Presence of nasal polyp and deviated nasal septum make the passage of the tube difficult. Instillation of 1% ephedrine drops in the nostrils helps in easy passage of the tube through the nasal cavity. After entering the oropharynx, the procedure is the same as 'oral intubation' (i.e., a laryngoscope helps in visualisation of vocal cords and the passage of the tube within the trachea). This approach is suitable for long term ventilation.

N.B. : Before introduction, the cuff should be deflated first. Rubber tube is kept for 24 hours whereas the portex tube may be kept upto 7 days.

Contraindications of endotracheal intubation :

1. Trauma/injury/carcinoma present in the upper respiratory tract.
2. Laryngospasm.

Complications :

1. Obstruction — As a result of blockage by secretions, kinking or compression.
2. Intubation of either bronchus may lead to collapse of the lung (corrected by withdrawing the tube above the carina).
3. Tracheal dilatation as a result of overdistension by the cuff — infection — stenosis.
4. Trauma to the upper respiratory tract and vocal cords.
5. Mucosal oedema and ulceration of trachea.
6. Aspiration during attempted intubation.
7. Dislodgement of teeth.
8. Increased intracranial tension.

RENAL BIOPSY

Indications :

1. Nephrotic syndrome (specially in adults).
2. Persistent proteinuria.
3. Persistent haematuria after urological investigations.

4. Acute and chronic renal failure (specially if unexplained).
5. Systemic diseases with renal involvement e.g., diabetes mellitus, SLE, amyloidosis, Henoch-Schonlein purpura.
6. Transplanted kidney for acute allograft rejection.
7. Thin glomerular basement membrane (GBM) disease.
8. Sometimes in rapidly progressive glomerulonephritis (RPGN).

Contraindications :

1. Non-cooperative patient.
2. Severe bleeding diathesis.
3. End-stage renal disease (ESRD).
4. Severe uncontrolled disease.
5. Patients having solitary functioning kidney.
6. Perinephric abscess, hydronephrosis or polycystic kidney disease.
7. Severe uncontrolled hypertension during the procedure.
8. Pre- and post-haemodialysis (as heparin is used during dialysis).

A must before biopsy :

1. Normal coagulation profile.
2. A full explanation of events is given to the patient.
3. Consent.
4. A specialized centre with arrangement for ultrasonic control.
5. Normal or near-normal blood pressure.
6. An IVP or renogram is performed to confirm that both kidneys are functioning.

Procedure of performing renal biopsy (transcutaneous) :

1. Position of the patient : prone with arms abducted, with a hard pillow placed under the abdomen so that the loins are slightly raised.
2. Pre-medication by oral or slow l.V injection of 10 mg diazepam.
3. The kidney is localized by USG and the biopsy site is marked with a pen.
4. Strict asepsis (by sterile mask, gloves, gown and drapes) is maintained; clean the area with antiseptic solution and inject local anaesthetic (2% lignocaine solution) along the biopsy track.
5. A small nick is made over the selected site of puncture. Instruct the patient to hold the breath and the Trucut needle' (refer to the section on 'Liver biopsy needle') is introduced through the small nick. When the needle is within the muscles, its movements are limited but as soon as it enters the kidney, its outer end sways in a wide arc with respiratory movements. Confirm this repeatedly and satisfy that the needle has reached kidney tissue.
6. The stylet is now removed and the prong is introduced through the outer coat into the renal parenchyma. A resistance to further movement is felt at this moment. The needle is advanced further over prongs so that it traps the kidney tissue incised by the prongs (the patient holds his breath during biopsy). The whole assembly is now rotated through 360° and the needle is taken out with prongs very rapidly with the trapped biopsy specimen. The biopsy tissue is sent to experienced pathologist to be examined by conventional staining, electron microscopy, and by immunoperoxidase or immunofluorescence.
7. After-care : A pressure dressing is applied over the biopsy site and the patient is placed on his ba,ck in bed for 24 hours (helps haemostasis). The patient is asked to drink plenty of fluids to prevent clot colic. The pulse, BP and respiration are checked regularly. Ask the patient to report any untoward symptom or haematuria. The patient is discharged on the next day with an advice to avoid heavy lifting or gardening for next 2 weeks.

Complications :

1. Microscopic haematuria (20%).
2. Profuse haematuria.
3. Pain in loins, sometimes referred to shoulder.
4. Perirenal haematoma, retroperitoneal haemorrhage.
5. Bowel perforation, acute pancreatitis.
6. Arteriovenous aneurysm formation.

PARACENTESIS ABDOMINIS
(ASCITIC TAPPING)

Indications :

Actually they are divided into diagnostic and therapeutic indications. As a whole, they are :

1. *Diagnostic* paracentesis (e.g., cirrhosis, tuberculous or malignant ascites).
2. Severe abdominal discomfort or cardio-respiratory embarrassment.
3. Refractory to medical therapy.
4. Danger of strangulation of umbilical hernia, if present.
5. Paracentesis may allow better abdominal examination, needle biopsy of liver, scanning or ultra-sonography.

* 2, 3, 4 and 5 are *therapeutic* indications.

Contraindications :

1. Cirrhosis of liver in hepatic pre-coma.
2. Bleeding diathesis.
3. Acute abdomen.
4. Pregnancy.

Procedure of ascitic tapping :

1. At first, urinary bladder should be emptied. The patient lies supine or semi-reclined with a back-rest. He/she is reassured and explained the procedure.
2. Under strict aseptic precautions, an l.V needle (large bore) is introduced at any one of the sites mentioned below :
   a) Midway between symphysis pubis and umbilicus (bladder must be evacuated), or
   b) Junction of lateral 1 /3rd and medial 2/3rd of the right or left spino-umbilical line.
3. The needle is connected with a rubber tubing which drains the ascitic fluid slowly into a collecting bag or bottle. In one sitting, usually 1-2 litres of fluid may be drained over 4-6 hours. In case of cirrhosis of liver, large volume paracentesis may be done by 3-5 litre of fluid aspirated in single sitting with 6-8 g/litre of salt-free albumin infusion. Diagnostic aspiration requires 20-50 ml ascitic fluid approximately.
4. After the paracentisis, the puncture site is sealed with tincture benzoin.

* Usually pre-anaesthetic medication and local anaesthesia are not required. In a restless patient, the skin and the subcutaneous tissue may be infiltrated with 2% lignocaine.

** In a small collection of peritoneal fluid, paracentesis may be tried in sitting posture of the patient.

*** An abdominal binder may be placed, and fastened slowly and steadily as fluid starts coming out.

**** Protein loss is replaced by salt-free albumin to avoid hazardous reduction in plasma volume.

***** To maintain the homeostasis, specially in cirrhosis of liver, it is better to run albumin, blood, normal saline, 5% dextrose, dextran or haemaccel during paracentesis abdominis.

Causes of dry tap :

Failure to obtain ascitic fluid on attempted aspiration may be due to,

1. Needle blockade by omental patch.
2. Perforation of a viscus.
3. Presence of very little fluid which could not be targeted blindly.

After-care needed :

The patient is monitored for next 24-48 hours for development of any complication.

Complications :

1. Sudden cardio-respiratory distress or shock (if appears during the paracentesis, immediately stop tapping the fluid).
2. Introduction of infection (peritonitis).
3. Precipitation of hepatic coma (the compressed porto-caval shunts open up and nitrogenous materials reach the brain by-passing the liver).

4. Perforation of hollow viseus (bladder or bowel).
5. Protein depletion (5 litre of ascitic fluid may contain 50-100 g of protein).
6. Constant oozing of fluid (specially in tense ascites or malignant ascites).

N.B. : **Peritoneal biopsy** is done with Cope's needle in a suspected case of tuberculous or malignant ascites, or ascites of uncertain origin.

PARACENTESIS THORACIS
(PLEURAL FLUID TAPPING/THORACENTESIS)

Indications :

1. Diagnostic — For physical, biochemical, cytological and bacteriological study of pleural fluid to come to a definitive diagnosis. Approximately, 20-50 ml of fluid should be aspirated.
2. Therapeutic — If there is,
   (i) Respiratory distress,
   (ii) Massive collection,
   (iii) Rapid collection, and
   (iv) Suspected secondary infection of effusion.

* Instillation of drugs (cytotoxics, tetracycline) are done in malignant pleural effusion.

Contraindications :

1. Coagulation disorder, plalelet abnormality.
2. Patient with severe cough or hiccough.

Procedure of thoracentesis :

1. The total procedure is explained to the patient to make him/her comfortable and relaxed.
2. The patient remains semi-reclined with a back-rest, or preferably sitting and leaning forward position with arms folded before him/her and kept over a cardiac table.
3. The site of aspiration may be :
   a) 6th intercostal space (ICS) in the midaxillary line,
   b) 7th ICS in the posterior axillary line, or
   c) 8th ICS in the scapular line.
   d) Loculated or encysted effusion — area of maximum dullness is the site of puncture (may require USG-guidance for actual localisation).
4. The local part is prepared under strict aseptic condition by spirit, iodine or ether. The site of aspiration is infiltrated from the skin upto parietal pleura through subcutaneous tissue with 2% lignocaine solution. The pleural aspiration needle (may be an l.V needle) is inserted right angle to the skin, just above the upper border of the lower rib (nerves and intercostal vessels traverse along the lower border of the rib) to avoid injury to vessels and nerves, till the parietal pleura is punctured with a 'give away' sensation (pleural puncture may be associated with bouts of cough). The needle is then attached to a three-way cannula (adaptor), and the cannula is in turn connected with a 50 ml syringe. Application of suction in the syringe draws pleural fluid into the syringe which is pushed into a kidney-tray via the outlet of three-way cannula by adjusting its screw.
5. Fluid should be aspirated slowly and as much as possible until it is harmful for the patient (therapeutic aspiration). Few clinicians advocate not to aspirate more than 1 litre of pleural fluid on the first occasion because of the risk of the development of acute pulmonary oedema. Repeat aspiration may be done after 3-4 days, after a check X-ray chest to note the amount of fluid remained/collected or amount of expansion of the passively collapsed lung.
6. If the patient complains of cough, respiratory distress, tightness in the chest or becomes severely restless, the aspiration must be abandoned immediately.
7. The puncture site is sealed with tincture benzoin when the paracentesis is over. The patient should be monitored for next 24-28 hours for development of any complication.

Complications :

1. Pleural shock (as a result of vagal inhibition).
2. Empyema thoroacis.
3. Hydropneumothorax (iatrogenic).
4. Acute pulmonary oedema (non-cardiogenic) - if the fluid is aspirated very rapidly; unilateral.
5. Air embolism.
6. Injury to intercostal vessels and nerves.
7. Haemothorax.
8. Cardio-respiratory embarrassment with circulatory collapse.
9. Subcutaneous emphysema.
10. Late complication (rare) - Intercostal artery aneurysm.

Causes of *dry tap* :

Failure to obtain pleural fluid on attempted aspiration may be due to,

1. Empyema thoracis having very thick pus.
2. Encysted pleural effusion (needs USG- or CT-guided aspiration).
3. Interlobar or subpulmonic effusion (needs CT-guided aspiration).
4. A case of thickened pleura, tumour of pleura or massive consolidation of lung rather than pleural effusion (X-ray picture and clinical features may be misleading/simulating).

N.B. : **Pleural biopsy** is done by Abram's or Cope's needle. If planned, it should be done at the first chance of pleural aspiration. Common **indications** are pleural malignancy, lymphoma, tuberculosis and pleural effusion of unknown aetiology. Abram's needle is a punch biopsy needle which is introduced through the skin after making a small incision by a scalpel, while position of the patient remaining the same as thoracentesis. After removing the stylet, let the pleural fluid come out; the parietal pleura is punched and the needle is lastly withdrawn with a slight rotational movement. The small piece of parietal pleura (the biopsy specimen) is collected from the notch of the needle.

PERICARDIOCENTESIS
(PERICARDIAL ASPIRATION)

Indications :

Removal of fluid from pericardial sac is indicated in,

1. Diagnostic aspiration (physical, biochemical, cytological and bacteriological study; culture of the fluid) of unexplained pericardial effusion—about 20-50 ml fluid is removed.
2. Therapeutic aspiration (as much as possible) — If there is,
   (i) Cardio-respiratory embarrassment (in cardiac tamponade),
   (ii) Rapid accumulation of fluid,
   (iii) Massive collection of fluid, and
   (iv) Rarely, in rheumatic effusion — if not cleared within 4 weeks.

Procedure of pericardiocentesis :

1. The patient reclines comfortably at 45° with a back-rest. The total procedure is explained to the patient to get his/her full co-operation, and to make him/her comfortable and relaxed.
2. The site of aspiration may be any one of the four :
   a) Epigastric or xiphisternal,
   b) Apical,
   c) Parasternal, or
   d) Posterior route.

   Pre-requisities :
   (i) At present, blind pericardiocentesis is avoided. It should be performed under ECG and echocardiographic monitoring, if possible.
   (ii) Strict asepsis (sterile mask, gloves, gown and drapes) is maintained.
   (iii) In an anxious and restless patient, pre-anaesthetic medication is done by slow l.V injection of 10 mg diazepam.

(iv) The skin and subcutaneous tissue of the site of aspiration are infiltrated by 2% lignocaine solution.

3. Any of the above mentioned sites may be selected but usually epigastric or xiphisternal route is preferred (usually recommended and safest route).
   a) Epigastric or xiphisternal : The needle (a pleural aspiration needle or an l.V needle) is inserted to the left of the xiphoid process and directed posteriorly towards the left shoulder at an angle of 45° to the skin. After piercing the skin, subcutaneous tissue and diaphragm (a resistance is felt), the needle enters the pericardial cavity. Now the needle is connected with a 50 ml syringe with or without placing a short rubber tube or three-way cannula in between the needle and the syringe. Application of suction in the syringe draws pericardial fluid into the syringe. The needle is further advanced slowly by about 5 cm and the aspiration continued cautiously. If the needle hurts the myocardium (if advanced too far), a crunching sensation is felt; immediately draw back the needle for 2-3 cm to place the tip of the needle again in the pericardial cavity.

      In few centres, an ECG electrode is attached with the needle by a crocodile clip. As soon as the needle touches the heart, the ECG shows a negative deflection while on slight withdrawal of the needle (i.e., needle in the pericardial cavity), ECG reflects a normal tracing. Requisite amount of pericardial fluid is aspirated in this way.
   b) Apical: It carries the risk of injuring the coronary arteries. In the 5th intercostal space, the needle is inserted outside the apex beat but inside the outer edge of cardiac dullness.
   c) Parasternal: This route carries the risk of injuing the internal mammary artery. The needle is inserted in the left 4th or 5th intercostal space just to the left of the sternum. In a massive pericardial effusion, the aspiration may be done in the similar way from the right side of the sternum.
   d) Posterior route : Pericardial fluid is aspirated from the inferior angle of the left scapula posteriorly.
4. After aspiration, the needle is removed and the punctured site is sealed with tincture benzoin.
5. After-care : Rest in bed for 24 hours is essential with nothing per mouth for first 4 hours. Hourly monitoring of pulse, respiration, BP and temperature are done for next 24 hours (clinical and ECG). Analgesics, sedatives or antibiotics are given whenever indicated. In suspected complications (pneumo-/haemothorax or pneumo-/haemopericardium), a chest X-ray may be taken.

N.B. : Prior to aspiration, confirm the presence of pericardial effusion by chest X-ray or echocardiography. Before doing aspiration, facilities of cardio-respiratory resuscitation including arrangement for defibrillation should be available. Repeated and rapid collection of fluid in uraemia, neoplasia and trauma may require 'window' pericardiectomy.

Complications :

1. Vasovagal attack or shock.
2. Arrhythmia (e.g., ventricular tachycardia).
3. Injury to the myocardium or lung.
4. Trauma to coronary/internal mammary arteries.
5. Puncture of right atrium or pulmonary conus is rare but may be life-threatening.
6. Pneumopericardium, haemopericardium or pyopericardium.
7. Contamination of left pleural space (specially when a pyopericardium is drained in the apical route).
8. Pain in the left shoulder.
9. Injury to liver or diaphragm in subcostal approach.

CHAPTER II : PATHOLOGY SPECIMENS

Observe the specimens for the following :

Size (normal/small/enlarged), shape (normal/distorted), surface (smooth/rough), position (relations of adjacent tissues to each other), capsule (present or not; normal or thickened), colour (normal colour of the parenchyma/haemorrhagic/brown/greenish) and cut section (longitudinal, transverse or oblique cut; the normal as well as the abnormal areas. Contents : normally found or not e.g., an abscess cavity with pus).

I. LUNG

The specimen is identified as lung by the presence of pleura, hilum and bronchovascular structures; blackish pigmentation may be distributed throughout the surface.

1. Lobar pneumonia

There is progressive outpouring of inflammatory exudate into the alveoli in response to the irritation produced by pneumococcus, staphylococcus etc. Air in the alveoli is replaced by the exudate and the lung or part of it is converted into a solid and airless organ (just like liver). This is known as consolidation or 'hepatisation'. The *lesion is divided into four stages* and one or more stages may be seen at a time. This is a progressive process starting from hilum and sweeping out to the periphery involving one or more lobes, and sometimes both the lungs.

Macroscopic (gross) :

(A) Stage I or stage of hyperaemia/congestion (1-2 days) —

The lung is voluminous and greyish red in colour; pits on pressure (oedema). Frothy fluid comes out from the cut surface on application of pressure.

(B) Stage II or stage of red hepatisation (2-4 days) —

The cut surface looks red, dry, granular, friable, solid-like liver with sharp margins. The outer surface is covered with a fibrinous exudate and the cut pieces of lung sinks in water.

(C) State III or stage of grey hepatisation (4-7 days) —

The cut surface looks greyish, moist, granular, more friable, airless or solid-like liver with sharp margins. The pleural exudate is thicker and the cut pieces of lung sinks in water. Bronchial lymph nodes are congested.

(D) Stage IV or stage of resolution (7th day onwards) —

Lung is soft and translucent (like jelly). Large amount of creamy fluid may come out on squeezing.

Microscopic :

(A) Stage I — Capillaries are congested, and the alveoli contains eosinophilic fluid with few neutrophils and large number of pneumococci etc; still contains air.

(B) Stage II — The alveolar wall is greatly oedematous and thickened. The alveolar fluid contains fibrin, RBC, and large number of neutrophils and organisms. The air is totally replaced by exudate and this is known as 'mosaic appearance'.

(C) Stage III — The alveolar wall becomes thin; the red cells are mere ghosts, the threads of fibrin become clumped and the organisms disappear. The exudate is collected at the centre (a space left between exudate and wall). In the late stages, polymorphs are replaced by macrophages.

(D) Stage IV — The alveolus becomes free from exudate. The debris and neutrophils are engulfed by macrophages; the fibrin masses shrunken.

Answer type (model) : The specimen of lung is showing solidification and homogeneous grey appearance. It is the grey hepatisation of lobar preumonia.

2. *Bronchopneumonia*

Macroscopic (morbid anatomy) :

Both the lungs show reddish brown patchy areas of consolidation with intervening normal, spongy lung parenchyma. Pleural surfaces may show thin, fibrinous exudate. Bronchial lymph nodes are enlarged.

Microscopic :

1. The bronchiolar wall is inflammed with congested blood vessels. The lumen of the bronchiole is filled with exudate containing pus cells, desquamated epithelium, few RBC, WBC, little fibrin and organism.
2. Peribronchiolar inflammation — Bronchiole is surrounded by a ring of alveoli filled with inflammatory exudate consisting mainly of neutrophils and fibrin.
3. Consolidated areas may alternate with area of congestion, collapse and emphysema.

Answer type (model): This is a specimen of lung from a child (as the specimen seems small) which shows several greyish patches and few bulbous patches over the lung. Both the lungs are involved; it is the specimen of bronchopneumonia.

3. *Lung abscess*

Macroscopic :

The site, size and number of lung abscess vary according to the aetiology.

1. Site, size and number — Not constant in aspiration or inhalation type; the abscess Is usually found in lower part of right upper lobe or the apical region of right lower lobe as a result of vertical disposition of right main bronchus; It is of moderate or big size.

   Abscess following septicaemia are usually small and present anywhere In both lungs. Post-pneumonic abscess Is also found anywhere in the lungs.
2. Gross appearance — Usually the abscess contains yellow, foetid pus. In early stages, the abscess looks yellow with a thin red rim and feels firm. In aspiration or inhalation type, the cavity communicates with bronchus. The wall of the cavity is usually ragged and necrotic but in chronic abscess, it may be smooth due to fibrosis. Multiple small abscesses surrounding the main abscess, bronchiectatic changes, pleural inflammation (pleurisy) may be seen.

Microscopic :

Acute variety shows destruction of lung parenchyma with dense polymorphonuclear and varying number of macrophagic infiltration. The blood vessels are dilated. Alveolar walls are destroyed. The chronic abscess shows a surrounding rim of fibrous tissue.

Embolic abscess shows from inside outwards :

1. Zone of necrosis.
2. Zone of consolidation.
3. Zone of congestion.
4. Zone of fibrosis.

Answer type (model) : It is a specimen of lung showing a big cavity In the middle part; it is lung abscess.

4. *Pulmonary tuberculosis*

Different forms of morbid anatomy are seen in pulmonary tuberculosis which is commonly associated with overlying pleural involvement.

Macroscopic :

(A) Fibroid type — Affected areas of lungs show small, depressed, pigmented and firm (to touch) areas due to extensive fibrosis. Adjacent lung tissue may reveal emphysematous (compensatory) or bronchiectatic changes. The overlying pleura is involved with dense adhesions to the surrounding structures.

On microscopical examination (M/E), extensive proliferation of fibrous tissue infiltrated with giant cells, epitheloid cells and lymphocytes are seen with scanty necrotic areas.

(B) Chronic fibrocaseous type — This is the characteristic lesion of reinfection type. At the apex of

the lung, 'cavity' in formed; the walls of the cavity is smooth due to fibrosis and is traversed by bronchioles and blood vessels. There are features of consolidation, central cavitation and caseation of cheesy material. Surrounding lung tissue may show emphysematous and bronchiectatic changes. The pleura is thickened with adhesion to parietis.

(C) Acute caseous pneumonic type — This type of infection is seen where the virulence of the organism is maximum with least immunity present in the victim. The entire lung is converted into a solid, airless organ (like grey hepatisation of lobar pneumonia). Widespread caseous areas coalesce to form larger areas and the whole lung may appear pneumonic. 'Acute cavities' may be formed which are small, multiple with irregular lining in the walls.

(D) Miliary tuberculosis — The lungs are studded with multiple tubercles which are greyish translucent in appearance and usually of 1 mm in diameter; when caseation starts, they become opaque and yellowish. The tubercles are not surrounded by zone of congestion (in multiple lung abscesses, the small abscesses are surrounded by a congested zone). The pleura may be thickened and adherent to the parenchyma. The tubercles look like millet seeds and hence called miliary tubercle.

(E) Tuberculoma — Usually solitary and is found in upper lobe; consists of a nodular area of caseation necrosis with surrounding fibrosis. The cut surface reveals caseation with foci of calcification.

Microscopic :

The classical **'tubercle'** (the fundamental unit of lesion caused by M. tuberculosis) consists of central area of caseation surrounded by a rim of epitheloid cells, Langhans' giant cells and lymphocytes, and varying degree of fibrosis. Epitheloid cells are the most characteristic cells of a tuberculous lesion.

Answer type (model) : This a specimen of lung of a child where the upper lobe is caseated; it is acute caseous pneumonic tuberculosis. Or, the specimen shows multiple 'sago' grain appearance in the lung — a specimen of miliary tuberculosis.

Table 7 : Differentiation between tuberculous and lung abscess cavity

	Tuberculous cavity		Lung abscess cavity
1.	Usually apical or sub-apical	1.	No constant site. Usualy present in the lower part of right upper lobe or apical region of right lower lobe
2.	Wall — usually smooth	2.	Wall is ragged
3.	Contains caseous material	3.	Contains pus
4.	Adjacent lung tissue shows acinar lesion	4.	Usually normal but may show secondary abscess
5.	Hilar nodes are caseated	5.	Hilar nodes are enlarged and congested.
6.	Caused by M. tuberculosis	6.	Caused usually by pyogenic organisms
7.	Microscopy — structure of tubercle	7.	Microscopy — structure of an abscess seen

5. Bronchiectasis

It is the permanent dilatation of the bronchioles which may be either localised or generalised.

Macroscopic :

The affection may is unilateral or bilateral with involvement of the lower lobes mostly. The dilatation may be cylindrical, saccular, fusiform or beaded. The mucous membrane of the bronchus is hypertrophied and congested with dilated blood vessels. The lumen of the bronchus (known as bronchiectatic cavity) may contain pus. The bronchiectatic cavity may be small or big like an orange. Pneumonitis may be revealed in the surrounding lung tissue.

Microscopic ;

The mucosa may be hypertrophied or atrophied (lately). There is destruction of the musculo-elastic tissue of the bronchial wall (most significant) resulting in dilatation, and replacement by fibrous tissue in

advanced stages. The cavity may contain pus, pus cells and RBC. Adjacent lung alveoli may reveal pneumonitis, collapse or emphysema.

Answer type (model): A cut section of specimen of lung showing multiple cylindrical or fusiform cavities, present in the lower lobe and few of them showing pus within a specimen of bronchiectasis.

6. *Emphysema*

Macroscopic :

The lung looks voluminous and more airy; pale and dry. Large bullae (thin-walled air spaces more than one centemeter In diameter, and are produced by rupture of alveolar walls) may develop which are usually subpleural in location and remain along the sharp margins of the lung.

Microscopic :

Large, distended, airy (clean) alveoli are seen with broken alveolar septae.

Answer type (model) : A voluminous, airy, pale, dry specimen of lung with multiple subpleural bullae : a specimen of emphysema.

7. *Bronchogenic carcinoma*

Macroscopic :

Hilar type Is the commonest. Squamous cell carcinoma usually arise centrally whereas adenocarcinoma arise from peripheral part of the lung. Commonly a 'firm, greyish-white mass' comes out of a bronchus which may produce obstruction of the bronchus by extending within the lumen or giving pressure from outside. Sometimes no growth is seen, instead a white fibrous thickening, roughening and narrowing of the bronchial wall are found. In diffuse variety, the whole of the lung may be filled with malignant deposit.

The bronchial lymph nodes may be enlarged. Secondary changes in other parts of the lung result in collapse, bronchiectasis and abscess formation. The overlying pleura may be thickened and adherent to the parietis.

Microscopic :

(A) Squamous cell carcinoma — Bronchial epithelium changes into squamous type due to metaplasia and the tumour originates from this squamous cell is known as epidermoid carcinoma. From the basement membrane, solid columns of malignant cells go downwards — the distal part of which expands and the whole appearance seems to be 'flask-like'. Large eosinophilic (irregular) cells with intracellular bridges, mitosis, and cell nests (epithelial pearl) are seen.

(B) Adenocarcinoma — Single layered tall columner cells are seen lining the alveolar septa along with small hyperchromatic nuclei. A glandular pattern is formed by the cells which are rich in 'mucin' but sometimes the glandular structure may be distorted. The stroma varies greatly in density and amount.

(C) Anaplastic carcinoma — The cells vary greatly in shape and size. The parent structure can not be identified and thus known as anaplastic type. There is presence of sheets of small or large undifferentiated pleomorphic cells.

Answer type (model): A specimen of lung showing a firm, grehish-white mass within : probably a specimen of bronchogenic carcinoma.

II. KIDNEY

1. *Acute glomerulonephritis*

Macroscopic :

Both the kidneys are involved; slightly enlarged and congested. The capsule Is tense but can be removed easily. The cut surface shows pale cortex and congested medulla.

Microscopic :

Initially, there is dilatation of glomerular capillaries followed by proliferation of endothelial cells. Thus Bowman's capsule is distended and obliterates the Bowman's space. Capsular space contains serum, fibrin, RBC and WBC.

Tubular cells show cloudy swelling and fatty changes. The lumen of the tubule contains inflammatory exudate. Interstitial tissue shows lymphocytic infiltration.

2. *Granular contracted kidney*

Macroscopic :

Both the kidneys look smaller and pale with a granular surface. Pelvic fat and cortex are thinned out. The final stage of chronic renal failure produces granular contracted kidney and the common aetiology are,

1. Chronic glomerulonephritis.
2. Benign nephrosclerosis.
3. Chronic pyelonephritis.
4. Late stage of tuberculosis of kidney.

The differential diagnosis is done by :

(A) Chronic glomerulonephritis — The kidneys are small, pale, hard and finely granular. The capsule is adherent and can not be stripped off easily. The outer surface may have few retention cysts. The cut section shows extreme irregularity and atrophy of cortex. Medulla remains normal. Pelvic fat is increased.

(B) Benign nephrosclerosis — same as chronic glomerulonephritis except,
   a) The colour is red,
   b) Coarse granularities,
   c) Retention cysts are more common, and
   d) More contracted.

(C) Chronic pyelonephritis — The surface is coarse and irregularly granular; capsule is adherent. The cut section reveals involvement of both cortex and medulla.

(D) Late stage of tuberculosis of kidney — In the early stage, kidney is enlarged but fibrous tissue develops in the late stage and the kidney becomes small and contracted. The cut section shows presence of tubercle (both in cortex and medulla), tuberculous ulcers, yellow streaks etc.

Microscopic :

(A) Chronic glomerulonephritis — Varying degree, of atrophy, hypertrophy and hyalinisation are seen in glomeruli and tubules.

(B) Benign nephrosclerosis — Smallest vessels show hyaline degeneration (e.g., afferent arterioles). There is sharply defined acidophilic thickening of the sub-intimal tissue (gradually the entire thickness is involved and thus, the lumen is obliterated). The internal elastic lamina splits up into several layers by the process of reduplication. Ultimately, closure of the arterioles ends in hyalinisation of glomeruli.

(C) Chronic pyelonephritis — The most characteristic feature is peri-glomerular fibrosis. There is round cell infiltration in the interstitium. End-arteritis obliterans may be noted.

(D) Late stage of tuberculosis of kidney — Classical picture of a tubercle is seen.

3. *Large white kidney*

Macroscopic :

The kidneys are large in size, smooth, pale (white) and soft. The capsule is tense and thickened but can be stripped off easily.

The different aetiology are,

1. Subacute glomerulonephritis.
2. Amyloidosis.
3. Nephrotic syndrome.
4. Lipoid nephrosis.
5. Diabetic nephrosis (K.W. syndrome).
6. Toxaemia of pregnancy.
7. Leukaemic infiltrations.
8. Early stages of tuberculosis of kidney.

9. Hydronephrosis.
10. Polycystic kidney.

Microscopic :

(A) Subacute glomerulonephritis — There is proliferation of the parietal layer of the capsular epithelium into the capsular space and is known as 'epithelial crescents'. ,

(B) Amyloid nephrosis —- Waxy pale amyloid deposits are characteristically seen in glomeruli between the basement membrane, in the wall of arterioles and around the collecting tubules.

(C) Hydronephrosis — Complete destruction of renal parenchyma is noted. Some glomeruli are normal and some are fibrosed; tubules are atrophied, and the renal parenchyma is replaced by fibrous tissue.

* *Why large ?*

Collection of fluid within the kidney (i.e., interstitium) as well as deposition of lipid makes the kidney large.

** *Why white* ?

Deposition of lipid and collection of fluid within the interstitial space (blood vessels are compressed) make the kidney pale (white).

4. Flea bitten kidney

Macroscopic :

The kidney is enlarged and soft; outer surface is smooth with multiple tiny haemorrhagic areas varying from dark red to black in colour, giving the 'flea bitten' appearance. The cut section shows similar haemorrhagic areas on cortex.

The different aetiology are,

1. Subacute bacterial endocarditis.
2. Malignant hypertension.
3. Septicaemia.
4. Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC).
5. Microangiopathic haemolytic anaemia e.g., thrombotic throbocytopenic purpura; abruptio placentae or amniotic fluid embolism.

Microscopic :

This depends on the underlying aetiology. There is cellular hyperplasia and arteriolar necrosis in the vessels; focal glomerulitis with presence of small 'focal glomerular thrombi'; tubular hyperplasia (compensatory) may be seen.

5. Polycystic kidney

Macroscopic :

This congenital malformation almost always affects both the kidneys. The kidneys are enlarged, sometimes enormously, and one kidney may be more bigger than the other. There are numerous thin-walled cysts of different sizes present in the kidney (irregular outline) giving the appearance of bunch of grapes. Some of the cysts are white in colour, whereas others are brown (due to haemorrhagic fluid). The cut section shows numerous, irregular cysts of different sizes often filled with greenish-yellow gel; the cut surface lacks normal kidney tissue.

Microscopic :

Small cysts lined by tubular epithelium are seen. Surrounding normal kidney tissue is attenuated.

6. Hypernephroma

Macroscopic :

The tumour may arise from any one pole of the kidney, commonly the upper one (thus the shape of the kidney is preserved). The mass is usually oval or spherical in shape, and may have lobulations on the surface. The tumour is imperfectly coverd by a capsule made of condensed renal tissue and fibrous tissue; from the capsule, fibrous trabeculae run radially inside the tumour mass, subdividing it into numerous lobules.

The cut section shows characteristic variegated appearance —

1. Healthy parts of the tumour may look golden-yellow in colour (due to deposition of cholesterol and fat), but may be white.
2. The other areas may show fibrosis, necrosis, haemorrhage or cystic changes (containing clear fluid or haemorrhagic fluid; cysts may have red, brown, green or black colour).

Microscopic :

Unlike variegated macroscopic appearance, hypernephroma has a characteristic uniform appearance under the microscope.

1. Cell character — Anaplastic or foamy cells (most characteristic cells; cytoplasm contain glycogen and lipid materials which are washed out by the fat solvents during preparation and fixing, giving the appearance of vacuoles within the cytoplsm), dark cells, clear cells with centrally placed dark nucleus.
2. Cell arrangement — Cord-like, sheet-like, gland-like or tubular pattern.
3. Stroma — Fibrous tissue is scanty.
4. Blood vessels — Numerous, immature and thin-walled (so, haemorrhage occurs commonly).

III. NERVOUS SYSTEM

1. Meningitis

Leptomeningitis — Inflammation takes place in the arachnoid and pia matter.

Patchy meningitis — The dura matter is inflammed.

Macroscopic :

(A) Pyogenic meningitis — Purulent exudate extend mainly over the frontal and parietal regions of the brain. Exudate may look green; though thick, it is less thicker than tuberculous meningitis.

(B) Tuberculous meningitis — Abundant, creamy or gelatinous exudate is seen, mainly over the base of the brain. The exudate is thick and may encase all the structures of the brain. Numerous small tubercles may be found scattered over the brain.

Microscopic :

(A) Pyogenic meningitis — The subarachnoid space is filled with inflammatory exudate consisting mainly of polymorphs, scanty fibrin, RBC and bacteria. The blood vessels are congested.

(B) Tuberculous meningitis — The inflammatory exudate mainly comprises of lymphocytes. Tubercles may be seen in various stages of formation.

2. *Brain abscess*

Macroscopic :

Any area of brain may be affected depending on the source of infection. A solitary abscess may be formed or multiple small abscesses may be seen in septicaemia. On the surface, an area of congestion is seen with suppuration. Features of cerebral oedema may be present (obliteration of sulci and flattening of gyri). The cut section shows an abscess with loculation of pus. A chronic abscess may have a tough capsule.

Microscopic :

Area of necrosis with cellular infiltration, mainly polymorphs and macrophages, are seen.

IV. CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM

1. Rheumatic heart disease

The pathology of rheumatic heart disease is described in three stages, i.e.,

a) Stage of exudation, oedema and fibrinoid degeneration of collagen tissues,

b) Stage of proliferation with Aschoff bodies formation, and

c) Stage of healing by fibrosis.

All the three layers of the heart is inflammed i.e., it is 'pancarditis'.

Macroscopic :

(A) Endocarditis — MacCallum patch i.e., a whitish, rough and thickened patch may be seen, particularly on the posterior wall of the left auricle just above the mitral valve. In the valvular endocardium, mitral and aortic valves are commonly affected. Valve cusps become oedematous, thickened and there is formation of Aschoff bodies in the subendothelial connective tissue. In course of time the surface endothelium becomes raw, and platelet and fibrin are deposited there giving rise to minute pale thrombi; ultimately these rheumatic nodules become organised and covered by adjacent endocardium, and is known as 'rheumatic vegetations'. These are very small (size of a pin'g head), sessile, warty nodules present a few millimeter away from the margin of the cusps knd are arranged in a row. Aschoff bodies are found in chordae tendineae which ultimately becomes thickned, shortened and fibrosed. Valves may be stenosed, specially the mitral and the aortic valve.

(B) Myocarditis — Aschoff bodies are formed in the left side of the heart mainly (due to more strain). They are mostly found in the left ventricle, base of the interventricular septum and base of the mitral valve. Ultimately myocardial fibrosis and myocardial failure may result.

(C) Pericarditis — The pericardium loses its shiny appearance and becomes rough. Acute fibrinous inflammation binds the two layers of pericardium, and when seperated the rough surfaces show 'bread and butter' appearance. There may be exudative collection in the pericardial sac.

Microscopic :

The Aschoff bodies are found around the blood vessels. They are the fundamental units of lesion in rheumatic heart disease, and consist of :

a) Central necrotic area,

b) Surrounded by lymphocytes, plasma cells, occasionally polymorphs,

c) Aschoff cells — large, multinucleated giant cells containing 5-7 nucleoli, and

d) Proliferation of fibroblasts encircling the above elements.

Anitschkow myocytes — large vesicular nucleus containing coarse chromatin, and threads of fibrin from the center to the periphery (cardiac cell with caterpillar nucleus) may also be seen.

2. Pericarditis

Macroscopic :

Commonly fibrinous pericarditis is dealt with. The glossy appearance of pericardium is lost, and it becomes rough. Fibrinous exudate binds, organises and produces adhesions between the two layers of pericardium. If the layers are tried to be separated, they give a 'bread and butter' appearance.

Besides this (fbrinous exudate) serous, sero-fibrinous, haemorrhagic or purulent exudate may be collected within the pericardial sac.

3. Bacterial (infective) endocarditis

Macroscopic :

Large, friable, polypoid vegetations originate in the line of contact of valve (commonly mitral and aortic) and may spread to involve the whole valve and the mural endocardium. The vegetations get easily detached and produce embolism. The vegetations in subacute bacterial endocarditis are larger than rheumatic vegetations but smaller than that of acute bacterial endocarditis.

Microscopic :

The vegetations consist of network of platelet and fibrin entangling inflammatory cells, chiefly polymorphs, clumps of bacteria and desquamated endothelial cells.

4. Atherosclerosis of the aorta

It is a degenerative condition of the arterial wall characterised by deposition of lipid materials in the deepest part of intima of large elastic and muscular arteries.

Download From: AghaLibrary.com

Macroscopic :

Most commonly the abdominal aorta is involved (as a result of maximum trauma and greater hydrostatic presure). Coronary, cerebral, renal, and other visceral vassels as well as big vessels of the limbs may be affected by the process. Depending of the stage, there may be presence of fatty streaks, wax like drops, atheromatous ulcer, thrombi (fibrin and platelet clump), calcification or haemorrhages in the intima.

Microscopic :

a) Cytoplasm of intimal smooth muscle fibres accumulates lipid and transforms into foamy cells.
b) The foamy cells die and release their contents, extracellular lipid pool appears. This leads to classical slit-like spaces in cholesterol crystals.
c) Connective tissues of intima overlying the cholesterol deposit becomes thickened — the sclerotic part of atherosclerosis.
d) A mature 'fibro-lipid plaque' consists of a core of extracellular lipid surrounded by smooth muscle cells and is seperated from the lumen of the vessel by collagen rich fibrous tissue. There may be vascularisation under the plaque.
e) Haemorrhage, thrombus formation or calcification may be noted.

5. Syphilitic aortitis

Macroscopic :

The lesion starts at the root of the ascending aorta just distal to the aortic valve, and spreads horizontally around the root of aorta and distally as far as the mouths of the great vessels. Ascending aorta, arch of aorta and rarely the descending thoracic aorta are the site of involvement due to their rich lymph supply (organisms are carried through lymphatics). It never affects the coronary artery except its opening; never affects the endocardium except the endocardium covering the aortic valve. The aortic valve may be thickned with shortened cusps and widened commissures.

Affected intima may be raised into patches— at first smooth and pearly, later pitted and scarred. Intervening area is wrinkled. It is the fine transverse wrinkles (as a result of stellate scars) which are highly characteristic of syphilis (tree bark appearance). Atherosclerosis of the aorta often complicates syphilis.

Microscopic :

There is periaortitis and mesoaortitis with secondary changes in the intima.

Intima shows marked fibrous proliferation, hyalinisation and endarteritis obliterans. Media shows ischaemic necrosis with foci of inflammatory cells. Vasa vasorum shows perivascular infiltration of lymphocytes and plasma cells. There is gumma formation, specially around the lymphatic channels and vasa vasorum.

V. INTESTINE

(A) SMALL INTESTINE :

1. Tuberculosis of intestine

Macroscopic :

Classical site is ileocaecal junction but it may extend upto ascending colon or descend upto caecum. Small grey tubercles are seen over the Peyer's patches or lymph follicles opposite the attachment of mesentery. Tubercles undergo caseation necrosis and breaks down into ulcers with ragged and undermined edge. The lie of the ulcer is 'transverse' and thus known as 'girdle ulcer'; when this ulcer heals by fibrosis, it may result in intestinal obstruction (there may be stricture formation). The floor of the ulcer is mammiliated (covered with necrotic tissue). The serosal surface is covered with plastic inflammatory exudate (so, perforation is rare) and sometimes with small tubercles. Mensenteric lymph nodes are caseated.

Microscopic :

Ulceration is present in the mucosa with classical 'tubercle' formation which may extend upto serous layer. Blood vessels may show endarteritis obliterans.

Download From: AghaLibrary.com

2. *Typhoid lesion (enteric fever)*

Macroscopic :

Classical site of involvement is terminal ileum and ileocaecal region. There is hypertrophy of the Peyer's patches and solitary lymph follicles opposite the mesenteric attachment with occasional ulcer formation. The ulcer is oval or round, and they grow along the longitudinal axis of the gut (vertical ulcer); Crohn's disease also produces longitudinal ulcer. They edge is raised and smooth, but not undermined. The floor is shieve-like (worm-eaten); the floor is formed by submucous and muscle coat but may extend upto serous coat (so, perforation are likely). Mesenteric lymph nodes are enlarged and congested.

Microscopic :

Ulcerated mucosa, hyperplasia of lymph follicles and hypertrophy of Peyer's patches with submucosa infiltrated by mononuclear cells are seen.

(B) LARGE INTESTINE :

1. *Amoebic ulcer*

Macroscopic :

Classically there are two levels of involvement : more commonly the ileocaecal region and less commonly the rectosigmoid region. The shape is oval or round; the margin is undermined and ragged, often formed by the overhanging mucosa (flask-shaped ulcer). The floor is formed by the muscle coat and covered by the necrotic slough (yellow or black). The intervening mucosa seems to be normal. The overlying serous coat may be thickened.

Microscopic :

Flask-shaped ulcer formation with absence of E. histolytica at the centre; the trophozoites are found at the periphery. Proliferation of endothelial Cells of neighbouring blood vessels causing their thrombosis may also be seen.

2. *Bacillary dysentery ulcer*

Macroscopic :

The ulcers are mainly superficial and diffuse. The shape is irregular or snail-track, sometimes communicates with the submucous coat. The floor of the ulcer is very shallow and remain on the mucous coat; the margin is sharp. The intervening mucosa is swollen and oedematous. Overlying peritoneum is usually normal.

Microscopic :

There is absence of mucous membrane; presence of fibrin, RBC, WBC and pus cells over the mucous coat which forms a 'pseudomembrane'. All the layers of intestine are infiltrated with inflammatory cells. The blood vessels are dilated.

VI. LIVER

1. Cirrhosis of liver

Macroscopic :

The size of the liver is variable (i.e., increased or decreased) depending upon hyperplasia and fibrosis; usually shrunken. The outer surface may have fine nodules (micronodular cirrhosis) giving the liver 'Hob-nail appearance', or have large-irregular nodules (macronodular cirrhosis). The colour of the liver in portal cirrhosis is usually brownish (due to deposition of iron pigment) and it is greenish in biliary cirrhosis. The consistency is very firm (due to fibrosis). The liver gives resistance on cutting and the cut section shows nodules and strands of pale yellow bands of fibrous tissue intercepting the hepatic architecture.

Microscopic :

The hepatic lobular architecture is destroyed. Broad bands of fibrous tissue divide and sub-divide a lobule with the result that the position of the central vein is no longer at the center of the lobule. There is

Download From: AghaLibrary.com

presence of necrosis as well as regeneration of new liver cells (irregular in size and arrangement). Round cell infiltration with proliferation of biliary epithelium are seen in the portal canal.

2. *Amoebic liver abscess*

Macrocopic :

The liver is enlarged and congested. There is presence of a big abscess, commonly at the postero-superior part of the right lobe. Usually a single abscess (big) is seen which may be surrounded by multiple small abscesses. The cut section would show an abscess filled with chocolate coloured pus, better known as anchovy-sauce pus. The content is not true pus but it is an admixture of cytolysed hepatocytes with blood. The wall of the cavity in irregular and ragged.

3. *Pyogenic liver abscess*

Macroscopic :

The whole of the liver is enlarged. There are multiple, small abscesses (necrosed area) seen scattered throughout the liver. Any lobe of the liver may be affected and the right lobe is affected more than the left lobe. The cut section would reveal yellow-coloured pus coming out from the abscess cavity. The wall of the abscess cavity is usually ragged.

4. *Hepato-cellular carcinoma (hepatoma)*

Macroscopic :

In primary carcinoma of the liver, the enlargement usually occurs irregularly. Commonly, one large tumour (nodular or diffuse) may be seen with a few small outlying seedling nodules. The intervening portions of the liver is very firm as hepatomas are commonly seen in cirrhosis of liver. The blood vessels or the bile duct may be involved by extension.

5. *Secondary carcinoma of the liver (metastasis)*

Macroscopic :

The liver is enlarged and studded with multiple big nodules. The irregular nodules show depression at the top and is known as 'umbilication' (due to rapid growth of the tumour there is dimpling as a result of central necrosis). The cut section of a nodule may show area of haemorrhage and necrosis but usually it is greyish-white in colour. There is absence of cirrhotic change in the intervening areas.

'Umbilication' differentiates secondary carcinoma of liver from nodular liver arising out of post-necrotic cirrhosis or hepato-cellular carcinoma.

CHAPTER III : RADIOLOGY

IA] X-RAY CHEST

Preface :

X-rays (electromagnetic rays) were discovered by Sir Wilhelm Conrad Roentgen in November 8, 1895. As on today, the plain radiograph of the chest is still the primary investigation for chest examination.

In the day to day practice, postero-anterior and lateral view of the chest are taken to visualise the lung detail. Depending upon the direction of the rays from the X-ray tube to the X-ray plate, antero-posterior (AP), postero-anterior (PA) and lateral projections are made in roentgenographic examination.

In the PA view, the person should stand erect with the anterior chest closely attached against the X-ray cassette containing the X-ray film, with the hands placed on the waist and the elbows drawn a bit anteriorly. By placing the elbows in a forward direction, the scapulae goes apart and thus they never produce obstruction to the lung fields. The tube-film distance should be about 6 feet or 2 meters, in order to minimise distortion and magnification. *In PA view, the beam of rays falls from behind while in AP view, the beam of raysfalls from the front.* The PA view is preferred because, (a) this view gives a wider lung field as well as a clear picture of bronchovascular shadow (in an AP view, cardiac size is more exaggerated and obstructs part of lung fields), and (b) radiation-risk to eyes is negligible. AP view is often ordered (with the patient supine) in very sick patients who are unable to stand or sit, and in infants. Lateral view (e.g., left lateral film is one which is taken with the left side of the patient's chest placed next to the film), recumbent view (X-ray taken in lying down position, usually supine when the patient is unable to stand due to serious illness), decubitus film (right or left lateral decubitus position) or oblique view (i.e., right anterior, left anterior, right posterior, and left posterior oblique) are taken in special situations. Lateral view of the chest is essential for the identification of lobes and segmental details of lung.

The view of plain films may be :

1. PA, lateral.
2. AP (patient unable to stand/portable X-ray), decubitus (subpulmonary effusion), supine, oblique (for retrocardiac area).
3. Inspiratory-expiratory (air trapping and diaphragmatic movement).
4. Lordotic (e.g., middle lobe collapse), apical (for good visualisation of apex), penetrated (for enlarged left atrium and aorta).
5. Portable/mobile X-ray.

An ideal chest X-ray film should have :

1. Proper exposure (i.e., dose of radiation)—In general, it is desirable that the upper thoracic vertebrae (not all vertebrae) be just barely discernible through the cardiomediastinal shadow. Overexposure makes the lung fields more black with a clear view of vertebral bodies; underexposure makes the lung fields hazy. In overpenetrated films, one may overlook low density lesions. Ideally films should be of medium contrast.
2. Proper labelling by radiology technician—The technician puts 'R' (right) or 'L' (left) in the upper comer of the X-ray plate for side determination. He should label the plate properly with the date of exposure. The physician should read the label at the beginning, otherwise a case of dextrocardia may be missed.
3. Proper centering—The clavicles should be at the same level and the inner ends of the clavicles should be equidistant from the midline i.e., from the spinous process of the vertebral column (or, the gap in the sternoclavicular articulation should be the same on both sides).

The cartilagenous rings of trachea are not visible though the air within trachea may be seen as a dark column (black). Normally, the trachea is slightly deviated to the right.

The scapula should not project over the lung fields. It should be remembered that approximately 75% of the lung fields are seen in routine PA view of the chest (25% lung fields are obstructed by clavicles, ribs, cardiovascular shadow and subdiaphragmatic tissue).

A routine chest X-ray should be always taken in full inspiration except in a case of suspected small pneumothorax. PA view of chest taken in expiration makes the cardiac size enlarged and lung bases hazy. While taking an X-ray, the patient should be unclothed, long hairs should be pinned up, radio-opaque materials e.g., jewelleries should be removed. For lateral view, the patient's arms are folded and extended above the head.

The X-ray plate should be examined in a 'view-box', usually from a distance of 2 feet. The plate should be correctly mounted in the view-box. The side determination (maintaining the anatomical position) is done by the following methods :

1. Label put by the radiology technician (L or R).
2. Apex of the heart should be on the left side.
3. Fundal gas shadow should be on the left side.
4. Right dome of the diaphragm is placed at a higher level than the left.
5. Aortic knuckle should be on the left side.

In a case of rotation of viscera (dextrocardia with or without situs inversus), the above formula does not serve the purpose and one has to depend only on radiographer's labelling.

The normal chest X-ray should be read or described in the following order :

1. View (PA, lateral, oblique).
2. Exposure or penetration.
3. Centralisation.
4. Skeletal structures.
5. Lung fields including blood vessels and pleura.
6. Cardiovascular silhouette.
7. Mediastinum (including position of the trachea and cardiac apex).
8. Costophrenic and cardiophrenic angle.
9. Diaphragm.
10. Soft tissue abnormalities.
11. Final diagnosis or conclusion.

Each part is described below in a nutshell :

1. View
2. Exposure > Described above
3. Centralisation
4. Skeletal structures — In full inspiration, 10 posterior and 6 anterior ribs should be visible. Actually the thoracic bony cage (rib cage, thoracic spine and bones of the shoulder girdle) is looked for :
   a) Kyphosis, scoliosis, straight back.
   b) Any distortion of size or shape of the chest i.e., symmetrical or not.
   c) Crowding (collapse or fibrosis of the lung) or widely spaced (emphysema) ribs.
   d) Absence of clavicle (cleidocranial dysostosis) or erosion of clavicle (bronchogenic carcinoma or multiple myeloma).
   e) Rib erosion (multiple myeloma, bronchogenic carcinoma, hyperparathyroidism) or rib notching (coarctation of aorta), fracture or healed fracture in ribs.
   f) Presence of cervical rib.
5. Lung fields including blood vessels and pleura— Normally lung fields are translucent and look reticular too (due to bronchovascular markings). The X-ray appearance of the lung fields and. the normal bronchovascular tree depends on the degree of aeration and vascular filling at the time of exposure, the size of the bronchi, and other associated anatomic and physiologic factors..

The *vascular* shadows (looks white linear) in the lung are casted by the branches of pulmonary artery. Pulmonary veins (often seen in upper lobes) produce low-density shadow. Branches of pulmonary

artery (form major bulk of hilar density) and vein are accompanied by a corresponding branch of the bronchus. The alveoli, pleura, interstitium and lymphatics produce a very low-density shadow which are rarely identified in the X-ray film. Increase in the white linear shadows (i.e., bronchovascular markings radiating from the hilar region to the periphery) may be seen in :

a) Accentuated pulmonary arteries—Left-to-right shunt in ASD, VSD and PDA.
b) Distension of pulmonary veins—In the left-sided heart failure (left ventricular or left atrial failure).
c) Accentuation of bronchial pattern—Seen in chronic bronchitis, bronchiectasis.
d) Prominence of lymphatic vessels—Commonly seen in bronchogenic carcinoma.
e) Thickened alveolar septum—Seen in pneumoconiosis, pulmonary fibrosis (interstitial lung disease).

In a normal person, the 'hilar shadows' are made up of pulmonary arteries, pulmonary veins, bronchi, hilar lymph glands, lymphatics and connective tissue components. Left hilum is slightly higher in position than the right. For the purpose of radiological description, *lung fields are divided by two horizontal lines into three zones,* i.e., upper, middle and lower zones. The upper line passes horizontally through the inferior borders of the anterior ends of the second costal cartilages; similarly the lower line passes horizontally through the inferior borders of the anterior ends of the fourth costal cartilages. The upper zone is restricted above the upper horizontal line, the mid-zone lies in between upper and lower horizontal lines, and the lower zone extends from lower horizontal line to the bases of lungs. Zones in the X-ray plate do not correspond with the lobes of the lung. Each zone is examined symmetrically on two sides and an area of abnormality is meticulously compared with the corresponding area on the other side.

The normal pleural structures are seldom visible. The pleura may be visible, if thickened or calcified.

* Bronchovascular markings become less prominent in pulmonary stenosis and pericardial effusion.

6. Cardiovascular silhouette—The cardiothoracic ratio (CTR) is expressed as a percentage of the ratio between the maximum transverse diameter of the heart and the maximum internal diameter of the chest (thorax). In health, the transverse diameter of the heart is usually equal to half the internal diameter of the chest or just less i.e., CTR = 0.5 : 1 or it is just < 0.5 : 1; cardiac enlargement is suspected if the CTR is > 0.57 : 1 or the transverse diameter of the heart is > 16 cm (though often varies with age, sex, build and nutrition). In a PA view of the chest, 2/3rd of the cardiac shadow lies on the left and 1/3rd on the right from the midline.

The CTR is a simple method to estimate cardiac enlargement. The CTR is estimated in a better way by the following measurements. First, draw a vertical line over the spinous process in the midline to divide the heart into two halves. Now, maximum extension of the heart to the right of midline (X) and maximum extension of heart to the left of midline (Y) is measured. Next, maximum internal diameter of the thorax (ID) is measured as the maximum measurement of the thorax to the inside of the ribs, at the lowermost part of the PA view of chest. Finally, the **CTR** is calculated as $\frac{X + Y}{ID}$; X+Y is equivalent to maximum transverse diameter of the heart (Fig. 3.1 A).

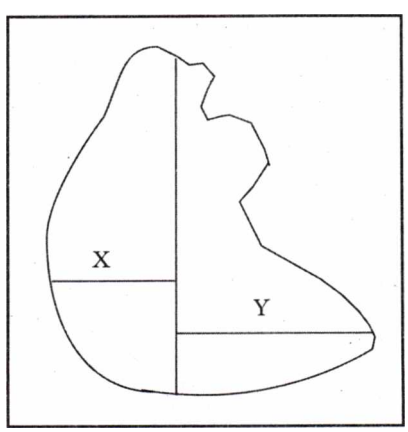


Fig. 3.1 A : Diagramatic representation of maximum transverse diameter of the heart

Borders of cardiac silhouette in PA view of chest :

(A) Right border (from above downwards) :

1. Superior vena cava (sometimes, ascending arch of the aorta takes part)—The upper straight portion.
2. Outer border of the right atrium (sometimes inferior vena cava may be visible just right to the right atrium)—The lower curved portion.

(B) Left border (from above downwards) :

1. Aortic knuckle—A convexity.
2. Pulmonary trunk (conus) or left pulmonary artery—A straight line or a concavity (known as 'pulmonary bay').
3. Left atrial appendages—The short straight portion.
4. Outer border of the left ventricle—The convexity in the lower part, ending at the apex.

Changes in the cardiac size, shape and position :

(A) Prominent aortic knuckle—Old age (unfolding of the aorta and atherosclerosis), aortic aneurysm, post-stenotic dilatation and aortitis.

(B) Concavity of the pulmonary trunk becomes convex—Pulmonary hypertension, left-to-right shunt in the heart, i.e., ASD, VSD, PDA, and idiopathic dilatation of pulmonary artery..

(C) Absent pulmonary artery shadow—Pulmonary stenosis or pulmonary atresia.

(D) Enlargement of cardiac size—Enlarged chambers of heart, pericardial effusion, cardiomyopathy. *Enlargement in transverse diameter indicates RVH, and increase in oblique diameter features LVH.*

(E) Right atrial enlargement— Enlargement of the right border of the heart (a bulge is seen).

(F) Left atrial enlargement :

(i) Straightening of the left border of the heart (the base of the pulmonary bay)

(ii) Prominence of the left atrial appendages in the left border of the heart.

(iii) Double contour of the right border of the heart (the outer and upper border is due to LA, and the inner and lower border is due to RA enlargement).

(iv) Upwards displacement of left main bronchus, and it becomes horizontal; widening of carina.

(v) Posterior displacement of barium-filled oesophagus in right anterior oblique view.

* Atrial enlargement (right or left) is often better seen in the lateral view as a posterior bulge.

(G) Right ventricular enlargement—

(i) PA view—Shifting of the apex to the left (i.e., outward enlargement only) with 'upturned' apex; and increase in the transverse diameter of the heart with 'boot-shaped' configuration.

(ii) Lateral view—Obliteration of retrosternal space from below upwards.

(H) Left ventricular enlargement—

(i) Increase in the oblique diameter of the heart.

(ii) Shifting of the apex outwards (to the left) and downwards.

7. Mediastinum—In a normal chest X-ray, trachea (the black airy tube) remains central or slightly towards the right, and evenly calibred. The thymus, pleural reflections and fibrofatty tissue may or may not be visible. Observe, whether the mediastinum is widened or not. Positions of the cardiac apex (outwards, or out and downwards) and the trachea indirectly indicate shifting of the mediastinum. In there any shadow 'behind' the heart?

8. Costophrenic and cardiophrenic angle—

a) Costophrenic angle (the angle between the diaphragm and the rib)—In a PA view of the chest; costophrenic angles should be clearly visible. Normally, it is sharp and acute in angle. In pleural effusion or empyema thoracis, this angle is obliterated first.

b) Cardiophrenic angle (the angle between the diaphragm and the cardiac broder)—In health, the right-sided angle is acute or near about right angle. In pericardial effusion, the right-sided angle becomes more acute (Rotch's sign). The left-sided angle can not be distinctly seen owing to the presence of epicardial pad of fat (specially in elderly fatty people) and thus it is of no importance radiologically.

9. Diaphragm—The right and left dome of the diaphragm are convex upwards and sharp in outline. The right dome is placed high-up (0.5 to 2.5 cm) than the left dome. In the midclavicular line, the upper limit of the right dome should be between 6th and 7th intercostal space anteriorly and 10th intercostal space posteriorly.
   a) Elevated diaphragm—Collapse or fibrosis of the lung (basal), ascites, pregnancy, diaphragmatic palsy, abdominal mass, amoebic liver abscess (right dome).
   b) Depressed or flattened dome—Emphysema (bilateral), pneumothorax (unilateral).
   c) Localised bulge or 'tenting'—Amoebic liver abscess, subdiaphragmatic abscess, pleural tumour.
10. Soft tissue abnormalities—Soft tissues of the chest wall (wart, angioma, neurofibroma), upper abdomen, neck (calcified lymph nodes) and shoulder may be visible in chest X-ray film. Breast and nipple shadows in female, stemomastoid shadows (specially in male) or gas shadows (subcutaneous emphysema) should be specially looked for. Artefacts (errors in film handling by technician may give rise to white linear shadows or hair balls, buttons may cast rounded shadows, specially in females) should be carefully identified. Check for any foreign body like endotracheal tube, Ryle's tube, chest drain or pacemaker.
11. Conclusion—A normal chest X-ray should be described in the following way (Fig. 3.1) :

    This is a PA view of the chest with normal exposure, proper centering and without any apparent bony abnormality. The trachea is centrally placed and the lung fields are clear with normal bronchovascular markings; cardiovascular silhouette is within normal limit with normal cardiothoracic ratio. The mediastinum, costophrenic and cardiophrenic angles, domes of the diaphragm and soft tissues show no abnormality.

N.B. : For cardiological check-up, following views are necessary :

1. PA 2. Lateral 3. Oblique (right and left anterior oblique views with barium swallow film of oesophagus).

* While describing an X-ray plate, always try to maintain the frame of words described in conclusion, along with the abnormalities seen. While describing individual X-ray plates in the following pages, particularly the abnormalities have been highlighted.

**** Always search for the following, in an apparently normal looking chest X-ray :**

1. Small apical pneumothorax.
2. Very small collection of pleural fluid.
3. Fluid level (e.g., hiatus hernia) or air-fluid level (e.g., achalasia) behind the cardiac shadow.
4. Rib notching, rib erosion, rib fracture, or whiteness of ribs (osteopetrosis).
5. Gas shadow under the diaphragm.
6. Deviation of trachea.
7. Paratracheal lymph node enlargement.
8. Cervical ribs (additional rib/ribs arising from the C_7 vetebra).
9. Mastectomy.
10. Right middle lobe collapse with loss of clear outline of right cardiac border.
11. Soft tissue shadows : subcutaneous emphysema (looks black), axillary lymph node swelling.

*** **Digital chest X-ray** is clean-cut, accurate, more bright and thus revolutionary.

**** **ultrasonography of chest** is indicated in :

1. Small pleural' effusion.
2. To diagnose solid or cystic nature of a superficial lesion.

***** **Q-j. scan** of **chest** is indicated in ;

1. Abnormal or doubtful shadow in chest X-ray.
2. Staging of bronchogenic carcinoma.
3. Widening of mediastinum.
4. Hilar abnormality.
5. Interstitial lung disease, bronchiectasis.
6. Abnormalitis in pleura.
7. Lesions in the chest wall.

CONSOLIDATION OF THE LUNG

(Fig. 3.2)

Description :

This is a PA view of the chest showing a sharply-defined triangular homogeneous opacity involving the right upper and mid-zone; part of the left lower zone also reveals similar opacity. Trachea and apex beat are normal in position. Both the costophrenic angles are clear.

Other points—Within normal limit.

* Air bronchogram is not clearly seen here.

Conclusion :

Consolidation of the right lung with involvement of the left lung too.

Which lobe of right lung is involved ?

It needs a lateral X-ray film to diagnose. It is expected that right upper lobe has been affected.

Differential diagnosis :

1. Collapse of the lung (mediastinum moves to the diseased side; absent air bronchogram).
2. Bronchogenic carcinoma (pleural reaction, i.e., pleural effusion is commonly seen; absence of 'air bronchogram' and there may be presence of rib erosion).
3. Pulmonary tuberculosis (classically sharply-defined consolidation is rare; pleural reaction is more common).
4. Pulmonary infarction (may be a possibility because in pulmonary infarction wedge-shaped, homogeneous, poorly-defined opacity is produced, attached against pleura; thus blunting of costophrenic angle is commonly seen here).

What is air bronchogram ?

Bronchus contains air and the air is not visible seperately in a normal chest X-ray. But in consolidation of the lung (pneumonia), the air within the bronchus casts linear translucency (black) over the background of homogeneous opacity (consolidation). These are commonly seen as scattered linear translucencies rather than continuous branching structures. Air bronchogram reflects that an opacity is intrapulmonary. It is also seen in pulmonary oedema, alveolar cell carcinoma and hyaline membrane disease. It needs a good quality of X-ray film and the observer should have an eagle's eye.

What is 'silhouette sign' ?

When two structures of same radiologic density are in same plane, then the interface between the two is obliterated, and the lack of interface is known as silhouette sign. For example, right heart border is obliterated by right middle lobe lesion (consolidation or collpse), and left heart border is obliterated by lesion in lingular lobe.

Outstanding feature in the X-ray film :

The is no shifting of mediastinum.

N.B. : Bronchopneumonia gives rise to heterogenously scattered patchy opacities without air bronchogram.

PLEURAL EFFUSION

(Fig. 3.3)

Description :

This is a "PA view of the chest showing a triangular homogeneous opacity on the left chest with a curved upper border which is concave medially and upwards, and extends towards the axilla. Left costophrenic angle is obliterated while the right angle is clear. The cardiac shadow and trachea (lower part) have shifted slightly towards the right. Lung fields are apparently normal.

Other points—Within normal limit.

* In pleural effusion, fluid collects in between two layers of pleura, i.e., visceral and parietal pleura.

Conclusion :

Left-sided moderate pleural effusion.

Differential diagnosis :

Actually this type of opacity with concave upper border is classically seen in pleural effusion and ***empyema thoracis. Thickened pleura*** may be a close D/D (usually without any mediastinal shift unless associated with gross thickening when mediastinum is shifted to the same side; ribs may be visible within the opacity, i.e., opacity is not truely dense; upper margin is fading and not concave).

Bronchogenic carcinoma or **consolidation** (with parapneumonic effusion) may be present underneath the effusion. **Fibrosis** or **collapse of the lung** (if considered in the D/D) produces mediastinal shifting to the diseased side.

Hemithorax opacity without any mediastinal shift:

1. Consolidation of the lung.
2. Malignant pleural effusion (due to associated absorption collapse of the lung).
3. Mesothelioma of the pleura.

Blunt costophrenic angle without any fluid collection (spurious) :

1. Breast shadow in females.
2. X-ray taken in expiration.
3. Basal pneumonia in the elderly.
4. Thickened pleura.

Minimal collection for radiological detection :

300 ml fluid is required (earliest clinical detection requires 500 ml fluid).

N.B. : Normally, a small amount of pleural fluid (i.e., 25 ml) is produced from capillaries in parietal pleura at a rate of 0.01 ml/kg/hour which is removed by lymphatics in parietal pleura.

Earliest site of fluid collection in x-ray film (PA view):

Small amount of fluid < 50 ml is not detected on PA view of chest X-ray. However, small effusions (e.g., 100 ml) are diagnosed earlier on lateral film where the fluid is collected in most dependent recess of pleura, the posterior costophrenic angle. A more collection (approximately 300 ml) produces obliteration of lateral costophrenic angle on PA view of chest radiograph.

Why the upper margin of fluid goes towards axilla in chest X-ray ?

Actually it is a radiological illusion. A horizontal section of hemithorax at the level of the upper margin of fluid shows that there is same amount of fluid present anteriorly, posteriorly and laterally. But it is a fact that X-ray beam traverse more fluid laterally than they do centrally because of the peculiar shape of hemithorax. So, we see the curved upper margin going towards axilla in X-ray picture.

Some clinicians opine that it is due to capillary suction between two layers of pleura, which draws the fluid up.

How to diagnose small pleural effusion ?

1. X-ray in lateral decubitus position.
2. USG of the chest.

X-ray picture mimicking pleural effusion but 'dry tap' after needling—why ?

1. Thickened pleura.
2. Empyema thoracis (wide bore needle required).
3. A mass lesion.

How malignant effusion is suspected ?

1. A convex bulge may be seen above the concave fluid level.
2. Collapse (absorption) of the lung may be associated with (in any part of either lung).

3. Trachea may be shifted to the same side (due to associated absorption collapse).
4. Elevated hemidiaphragm may indicate diaphragmatic palsy.
5. Prominence of hilar or parahilar shadow; erosion of ribs may be seen.
6. Recurrent, rapid collection of fluid.

* In this situation, first aspirate the fluid and again take a film.

** USG and CT scan differentiates easily a mass from loculated pleural effusion or pleural thickneing.

PNEUMOTHORAX

(Fig. 3.4)

Description :

This is a PA view of the chest which reveals increased translucency on the right side of the chest with absence of bronchovascular markings. A sharply defined homogeneous opacity is seen lateral to right cardiac border which indicates the collapsed right lung. Right costophrenic angle is a bit blunt but left angle is clear. Cardiac apex and tracheal shadow are not shifted in the X-ray film probably because of improper centering of the patient. Right dome of the diaphragm is a bit flattened. The left lung field is clear and normal.

Other points—Within normal limit.

Conclusion :

Right-sided pneumothorax (probably with a small amount of fluid collection in the right pleural sac).

* *In a suspected case of pneumothorax. X-ray film is taken in erect posture while breath hold in expiration.*

Types of pneumothorax :

(A) Artificial,

(B) Traumatic,

(C) Spontaneous :

(i) Closed (ii) Open, and (iii) Valvular (tension).

* To *diagnose the type of pneumothorax. HI O onset and progress of symptoms are the two most important determinants.*

Why tension pneumothorax is lethal to the patients ?

Marked mediastinal shift -> decreased venous return -> diminished cardiac output

+

Severely compromised ventilation -> arterial hypoxaemia

i

Death, unless tackled immediately. It is a medical emergency to the internist.

Unilateral hypertranslucency in chest X-ray film (D/D) :

1. Pneumothorax.
2. Bullae.
3. Lung cyst.
4. Eventration of the left dome of the diaphragm.
5. Partial bronchial obstruction (unilateral) — obstructive emphysema.
6. Co'mpensatory emphysema.
7. Contralateral thickened pleura (produces apparent increased translucency).
8. Mastectomy, congenital absence or atrophy (e.g., poliomyelitis) of pectoral muscle.
9. Poor technique (e.g., rotation), scoliosis.

* In pneumothorax, .always search for stigmata of tuberculosis in the other lung. Also look for tube drainage and surgical emphysema (i.e., collection of air in the soft tissue).

HYDROPNEUMOTHORAX

(Fig. 3.5)

Description :

This is a PA view of the chest (taken in erect posture) which shows a horizontal fluid level on left chest. There is increased translucency above the horizontal level which is lacking in lung markings ('pneumo' component) and a homogeneous opacity is seen below the horizontal level ('hydro' component). The homogeneous opacity ('hydro' component) is uniform, and medially it has merged with the cardiac silhouette. Trachea and cardiac shadow have shifted towards the right side. The right-sided costophrenic angle and the right lung show no apparent abnormality.

Other points—Within normal limit.

Conclusion :

Left-sided hydropneumothorax.

* The X-ray picture of hydropneumothorax should always be taken in erect posture.

Can you localise the collapsed left lung ?

No. It is usually hidden within the fluid and is not visible in the X-ray.

Cardinal features of hydropneumothorax :

1. Shifting dullness,
2. Succussion splash, and
3. Horizontal fluid level (upper limit of dullness is horizontal).

Differential diagnosis :

1. Haemopneumothorax or pyopneumothorax.
2. Infected lung cyst.
3. Very big lung abscess.

EMPHYSEMA

(Fig. 3.6)

Description :

This is a PA view of the chest which shows hypertranslucency of both the lung fields, wide intercostal spaces, low-flat diaphragm, narrow vertical heart (tear-drop heart), large and prominent hilar shadows with diminished peripheral vascular pattern. Few *'bullae'* are seen as rounded areas of increased translucency with thin hair-line shadow forming the walls. *There is no mediastinal shift.*

Other points—Within normal limit.

Conclusion :

Bullous emphysema.

Bilateral hypertranslucency in chest X-ray film (D/D):

1. Emphysema.
2. Bilateral pneumothorax.
3. Multiple bullae.
4. Bronchial asthma.
5. Overexposed (overpenetrated) film.
6. Fallot's tetralogy with pulmonary atresia, Ebstein's anomaly.

* *Bullae* are thin-walled (<1 mm in thickness) air spaces more than one centemeter in diameter, produced by rupture of alveolar walls. Bullae are usually situated subpleurally, and may be single or multiple, large or small. Rupture of bullae gives rise to pneumothorax.

** *Petit heart (or tear-drop heart)* i.e., long and tubular heart is found in PA view of chest X-ray in emphysema, Addison's disease, panhypopituitarism and constrictive pericarditis.

BRONCHIECTASIS

(Fig. 3.7)

Description :

This is a PA view of the chest which shows multiple ring shadows at both lower zones (left > right). Areas of haziness or fibrosis is seen at places (bases). There is a big bulla seen in the right apex. Right costophrenic angle is blunt. *There is no mediastinal shift.*

Other points—Within normal limit.

* Dilated bronchi give rise to 'tram line shadows' (linear streaks) or 'ring shadows', while dilated air-filled bronchi may produce 'gloved finger shadows'.

Conclusion :

Bronchiectasis (bilateral and basal).

* Commonest site of bronchiectasis is left lower lobe and lingula.

How a bronchiectasis patient presents ?

The common presentation is cough with profuse (and often foetid) expectoration of sputum, usually more marked in the morning after waking from sleep. The patient may have haemoptysis and breathlessness. Features due to secondary infection may be associated with.

What is bronchiectasis sicca (dry bronchiectasis) ?

It is also known as dry bronchiectasis. Here, apices of lungs are affected in contrast to bases and the patient will have minimum or no sputum production (i.e., dry cough as a result of easy drainage). Haemoptysis may be the only symptom.

What is pseudobronchiectasis ?

It is a bronchographic abnormality resulting from atelectasis and tracheobronchitis with ulceration in bronchial mucosa which mimic cylindrical bronchiectasis. Re-expansion of the collapsed lung and healing of bronchial mucosa make the condition reversible and thus it is known as pseudobronchiectasis.

Describe middle lobe bronchiectasis :

When the middle lobe bronchus is obstructed by tuberculous lumph nodes (sequel to primary pulmonary tuberculosis), a post-obstructive bronchiectasis is formed, which is known as middle lobe bronchiectasis or 'middle lobe syndrome'.

What is Kartagener's syndrome ?

This is also known as immotile cilia syndrome. The syndrome is the triad of bronchiectasis, dextrocardia and recurrent sinusitis, associated with infertility. Kartagener's syndrome is a variety of 'primary ciliary dyskinesia' where there is immotility of cilia (with abnormal mucus production) present in respiratory tract epithelium and sperm.

Pathological types of bronchectasis :

1. Cylindrical (fusiform) bronchiectasis—uniform dilatation of bronchi.
2. Varicose bronchiectasis—beaded pattern of dilated bronchi.
3. Saccular bronchiectasis—ballooned or cystic bronchi.

The classification is based on bronchographic appearance.

Outline of management of bronchiectasis :

1. Antibiotics for infection control.
2. Postural drainage—a position is adopted where the lobe to be drained remains uppermost. This is to be continued for 20 minutes, once or twice daily, in empty stomach. Gentle purcussion over the front and back of the chest with cupped hands helps dislodgement of sputum (chest physiotherapy).
3. Bronchodilators, mucolytics as and when necessary.
4. Bronchoscopic aspiration of inspissated sputum is rarely needed.

5. Surgery : lobectomy In localised and unilateral lesion in young adults (< 40 years) who are unresponsive to medical treatment; also in recurrent haemoptysis/pneumonias. Heart-lung transplantation is performed in bilateral extensive disease.
6. General : nutritious diet, correction of anaemia.

How to confirm your diagnosis :

Diagnosis can only be made with certainty by bronchography or high resolution CT scan of thorax (definitive and preferred investigation).

Causes of 'honeycombing' or 'honeycomb lung' (D/D):

X-ray picture shows multiple air containing cyst-like shadows or ring shadows measuring 0.5-2 cm in diameter (mimicking bunch of grapes) in :

1. Bronchiectasis.
2. Fibrosing alveolitis, scleroderma; SLE, rheumatoid arthritis.
3. Cystic fibrosis, tuberous sclerosis, histiocytosis X, pneumoconiosis.
4. Extrinsic allergic alveolitis.
5. After use of drugs like busulphan, nitrofurantoin, bleomycin or melphalan.

Why the right costophrenic angle is blunt ?

It may be due to mild pleural reaction or developed as a result of small collection of fluid.

Three layer sputum test, in bronchiectasis :

When the copious and foetid sputum from a bronchiectatic patient is collected in a conical glass, it seperates into three layers arbitrarily as.

Upper layer — contain's froth,

Middle layer — contain's liquid or thick sputum,

Lower layer — contain's heavier particles, e.g., epithelial debris, masses of bacteria, clumps of pus cells, foul-smelling Dettrich's plugs, blood clots.

Bedside diagnosis of bronchiectasis :

Read 'Bedside Clinics in Medicine, Part I'.

LUNG ABSCESS

(Fig. 3.8)

Description :

This is a PA view of the chest showing a big cavity occupying the left-sided mid and lower zones with thick, rough and shaggy inner wall. The cavity is circular; the lower homogeneous opacity with a horizontal level indicates fluid inside the cavity, and the hypertranslucency (devoid of lung markings) above the fluid level indicates air within the cavity. Rest of the lung fields are clear. Trachea and cardiac apex are in normal position.

Other points—Within normal limit.

* Air-fluid level is the hallmark of lung abscess.

Conclusion :

Left-sided solitary lung abscess.

Differential diagnosis :

Differentiate between the causes of horizontal fluid level seen in the chest X-ray plate. They are,

1. Lung abscess (inflammation associated with necrosis of lung tissue).
2. Hydropneumothorax, haemopneumothorax or pyopneumothorax—loculated variety.
3. Cardiospasm or achalasia cardia.
4. Diaphragmatic hernia (obstructed).

5. Infected lung cyst.
6. Hydropneumopericardium (rare).

Predisposing factors and bedside diagnosis of lung abscess :

(A) Predisposing factors :

1. Alcoholism.
2. Old age.
3. Diabetes mellitus.
4. H/O convulsions.
5. H/O general anaesthesia.
6. Malnutrition or immunocompromised patients (e.g., corticosteroid therapy, AIDS).
7. Oral or pharyngeal sepsis, drowning, following bronchial obstruction, tracheo-oesophageal fistula, bulbar palsy, unconscious patients, achalasia cardia — predisposes aspiration of infected material.
8. Cystic fibrosis (thick, viscid sputum production).
9. Inadequately treated pneumonia, septic emboli, pulmonary infarction, infection of lung cyst.
10. Pulmonary tuberculosis (an important cause of lung abscess).

(B) Specific infection by :

Streptococcus pneumoniae, Staphylococcus aureus, Klebsiella pneumoniae, different fungi etc.

(C) Obstruction by :

Bronchogenic carcinoma, foreign body, bronchial adenoma or enlarged lymph node.

(D) Spread ('local' from liver abscess or subphrenic abscess; 'haematogenous' from septicaemia, pelvic abscess).

(E) Bedside diagnosis (clinical features) :

a) Symptoms :

(i) Anorexia, malaise, weakness, loss of weight and symptom of toxaemia; the onset may be insidious, acute or chronic.
(ii) Fever—Intermittent, may be hectic.
(iii) Cough with profuse, foetid, purulent and often blood-tinged sputum.
(iv) Pleuritic chest pain or deep-seated chest discomfort.
(v) Haemoptysis.

b) Signs :

(i) Fever.
(ii) Halitosis.
(iii) Clubbing.
(iv) Examination of the chest may be normal or may include signs of consolidation, i.e., no shifting of mediastinum, woody dullness on percussion, bronchial breath sound (cavernous or amphoric), pleural rub, coarse crepitations (often post-tussive crepitations) with increased vocal resonance. Sometimes, feature of empyema thoracis may be found.

Frank signs of cavity are rarely found.

Possible cuases of *multiple' lung abscess :

1. Aspiration of infected material.
2. Infection by (Staphylococcus aureus, Klebsiella and fungus).
3. Amoebic liver abscess ruptured into lung.

Complications :

1. Massive haemoptysis.
2. Acute dry pleurisy.
3. Empyema thoracis.
4. Pneumothorax or pyopneumothorax.
5. Metastatic cerebral abscess.
6. Pyaemia.

7. Aspergillosis (fungus ball).
8. Amyloidosis (rare)—in chronic cases.

Differential diagnosis of cavity containing air or fluid :

1. Cavity with shaggy walls—Lung abscess, bronchogenic carcinoma, tuberculous cavity (empty).
2. Cavity with thin walls—Tuberculous cavity (caseous), lung cyst, bullae, mycotic cavitation.
3. Very small cavity with much thicker wall—Bronchogenic carcinoma.

Differential diagnosis of intracavitary mass lesion in chest X-ray :

1. Aspergilloma.
2. Cavitating carcinoma of lung.
3. Blood clot.

What is 'pseudocavity'?

Cavity—Liquefaction necrosis within the lung (may remain empty or filled with secretion) surrounded by a wall whose thickness is > 1mm and usually communicating with a patent bronchus.

Pseudocavity—Radiological appearance mimicking pulmonary cavity as a result of summation shadows of ribs, vessels, fibrotic bands, calcification or artefacts.

HOMOGENEOUS OPACITY OF ONE HEMITHORAX

(Fig. 3.9)

Description :

This is a PA view of the chest which shows homogeneous opacity of the whole of the left chest. Left costophrenic angle is obliterated and the mediastinum has shifted to the right side. The right lung apparently shows no abnormality.

Other points—Within normal limit.

Conclusion :

The causes of unilateral dense homogeneous opacity are,

1. Massive pleural effusion.
2. Empyema thoracis.
3. Collapse of the lung.
4. Consolidation (massive).
5. Thickened pleura.
6. Pleural mesothelioma.
7. Agenesis of lung.
8. Pneumonectomy.
9. Destroyed lung (from chronic inflammation and fibrosis).
10. Technical (rotation/scoliosis).

As there is mediastinal shifting towards the opposite side, No 1 and 2 are the most probable possibilities here.

* Causes of bilateral opaque hemithorax are ARDS, bilateral pleural effusion, extensive bilateral consolidation and hyaline membrane disease.

Shifting of trachea and cardiac shadow in others :

1. Collapse of the lung—Same side.
2. Consolidation—No shifting.
3. Thickened pleura—Same side (in gross thickening).
4. Pleural mesothelioma—Usually no shifting.
5. Agenesis of lung, pneumonectomy and destroyed lung—Same side.

COLLAPSE OF THE LUNG

(Fig. 3.10)

Description :

This is a PA view of the chest showing an opacity which is rather homogeneous and involving almost whole of the right lung. The trachea and cardiac apex have shifted towards the right side. Neither elevation of the right dome of diaphragm nor compensatory emphysema of the left lung is noted. Crowding of the ribs are seen on the right side.

Other points—Within normal limit.

Conclusion :

Collapse (absorption) of the right lung.

* To diagnose collapse of the lung, both PA and lateral films are necessary.

What is collapse of the lung ?

This is the reduction in lung volume due to absorption of alveolar air (absorption collapse) or resulting from expulsion of air from the alveoli (compression collapse).

Types of collapse :

1. Absorption or active collapse e.g., mucus plug, foreign body, bronchogenic carcinoma.
2. Compression or passive collapse e.g., pleural effusion, pneumothorax, hydropneumothorax.

[3. Infarction collapse e.g., pulmonary thromboembolism].

Clinical features of collapse :

1. Absorption or active collapse—Read 'Bedside Clinics in Medicine, Part I'.
2. Compression or passive collapse—Features of pleural effusion, pneumothorax or hydropneumothorax are clinically manifested.

Differential diagnosis :

Same as 'Homogeneous opacity of one hemithorax' described earlier.

FIBROSIS OF THE LUNG

(Fig. 3.11)

Description :

This is a PA view of the chest showing haziness in the upper zone of the left lung with shifting of trachea and cardiac apex towards the left side. Crowding of the ribs at the left upper chest are seen. Both the costophrenic angles are clear. Diaphragmatic contours are normal.

Other points—Within normal limit.

* In chest X-ray of fibrosis of the lung one should also search for fibrous bands, pulled-up hilum and tenting of diaphragm which are absent here.

Conclusion :

Fibrosis involving upper zone of the left lung.

Types and clinical features of fibrosis :

Read 'Bedside Clinics in Medicine, Part I'.

Differential diagnosis of such localised haziness :

1. Fibrosis of the lung.
2. Pulmonary tuberculosis (primary).

3. Resolving bacterial pneumonia.
4. Thickened pleura.
5. Localised bronchiectasis (usually basal).
6. Alveolar cell carcinoma.

Causes of fibrosis of the lung of cardiac origin :

1. Mitral stenosis, and
2. Pulmonary infarction (multiple).

Basic clinical differentiation between fibrosis and collapse :

(A) Fibrosis :
- a) Onset is chronic.
- b) Chest wall is retracted on the affected side.
- c) Crowding of the ribs and drooping of the shoulder on the affected side.
- d) Breath sound is diminished but never absent. Crepitations may be heard.

(B) Collapse :
- a) Onset is acute.
- b) Chest wall is flattened on the affected side.
- c) Crowding of the ribs and drooping of the shoulder may be evident, if the collapse is prolonged.
- d) Breath sound is absent if a major bronchus is obstructed; usually no added sound.

* Fibrosis : Opacity is non-homogeneous; collapse ; Opacity is homogeneous.

** Features of collapse are more or less same as fibrosis but is of lesser in degree.

TUBERCULOUS INFILTRATIONS

(Fig. 3.12)

Description :

This is a PA view of the chest which reveals multiple wooly opacities involving both the lung fields, giving the X-ray film a 'moth-eaten appearance'. The costophrenic angles are clear. No mediastinal shift is seen.

Other points—Within normal limit.

Conclusion :

Pulmonary tuberculosis (possibly post-primary type).

Differential diagnosis of such an X-ray picture :

1. Pulmonary tuberculosis.
2. Resolving bacterial pneumonia.
3. Alveolar cell carcinoma.
4. Pulmonary oedema.
5. Fungal disease of the lung.

Different radiological findings in pulmonary tuberculosis :

1. Wooly opacites or soft fluffy shadows (exudative phase).
2. Uni- or bilateral apical infiltrations.
3. Dense nodular shadow (proliferative phase).
4. Miliary mottling.
5. Cavities (bilateral or multiple).
6. Fibrocaseous lesion.
7. Reticulonodular (if interstitium is involved).
8. Calcification (healed disease).
9. Tuberculoma (round or oval solitary shadow).
10. Bronchiectasis, specially affecting the upper zones.

* Involvement of pleura and pericardium is excluded.

Features of tuberculous 'activity' in a patient:

1. Presence of AFB in sputum (i.e., sputum + ve cases), certainly indicates activity.
2. Patients having tuberculous toxaemia, i.e., evening rise of temperature, night sweats, anorexia, malaise, cough or loss of body weight, are in favour of activity.
3. A high ESR may be an indicator of activity.
4. Radiological features of activity are :
   a) Presence of a cavity.
   b) Soft shadows, even if very small.
   c) In case of extensive shadow, activity is likely.
   d) Progression of shadows in spite of treatment (in serial chest X-rays).

* Surest sign of activity—Sputum positivity for AFB in direct smear examination.

N.B. : A strongly +ve Mantoux test (e.g., induration > 30 mm) may be quite compatible with activity.

Types of pulmonary tuberculosis :

(A) Parenchymatous :
   a) Primary
   b) Progressive primary
   c) Post-primary
   d) Miliary
   e) 'Cryptic' miliary

(B) Respiratory tract or airway infection :
   a) Laryngitis
   b) Bronchitis

(C) Pleural :
   a) Pleurisy
   b) Pleural effusion
   c) Pneumothorax
   d) Hydropneumothorax

What is 'primary complex' ?

The subpleural tuberculous focus in the lung, hilar lymphadenopathy and interconnecting lymphatics constitute the primary complex (Ghon's complex).

Enumerate different tuberculous focus in various organs :

1. Pulmonary :
   a) Subpleural — Ghon's focus.
   b) Deep apical — Ashman's focus.
   c) Subpleural focus in the upper lobe — Simon's focus.
2. Cerebral — Rich's focus.
3. Hepatic — Simond's focus.
4. Blood vessels — Wigard's focus (present within tunica intima).
5. Besides these, there are primary lymph node, splenic, renal and intestinal focus.

Common causes of apical shadows in chest X-ray :

1. Tuberculosis.
2. Aspergillosis.
3. Pancoast's tumour.
4. Bullae.
5. Pneumothorax
6. Artefacts (hair balls or stemomastoid shadow).
7. Pleural cap (irregular crescentic, commonly left-sided, may represent old pleural thickening, incidence 7%).

Haemoptysis in post-primary tuberculosis :

Mechanisms responsible :

1. Tuberculous pneumonitis — bronchiolar ulceration and necrosis of adjacent vessels.
2. Rupture of Rasmussen's aneurysm (aneurysmally dilated pulmonary artery in a cavity).
3. Invasion of blood vessels by active tuberculous granulation tissue.
4. Oozing from the wall of an active cavitary lesion.

* Haemoptysis may result from aspergillosis in tuberculous cavity; lately, post-tuberculous bronchiectasis or scar carcinoma may lead to haemoptysis.

How do you like to investigate a suspected case of pulmonary tuberculosis ?

(A) Routine blood examination—Hb, TC, DC, ESR (anaemia, mild elevation of lymphocytes and high ESR may be found).

(B) X-ray chest-PA view; apical lordotic view to visualise the apex in a better way.

(C) Mantoux test—Negative reaction usually rules out tuberculosis but a positive reaction (induration > 10 mm) is observed in the presence of tuberculosis whether it is healed or active. It is often said that a +++ reaction (induration > 30 mm) or a positive reaction below 3 years of age (non-BCG vaccinated) indicates towards active tuberculosis.

(D) Sputum examination for AFB (acid fast bacilli) for consecutive 3 days, or detection of AFB in gastric aspirate in children, or search for AFB from laryngeal swab, broncho-alveolar lavage in selected cases—Confirms the diagnosis.

(E) Biopsy of the cervical lymph nodes in selected cases.

(F) Culture of sputum for M. tuberculosis in Lowenstein-Jensen media; result usually comes within 8-12 weeks.

(G) Newer diagnostic techniques (costly and not routinely practised) ;

a) ELISA (IgG or IgM) — not much useful as the bacilli contains complex antigenic structure; having high specificity (97%) with low sensitivity (65%).

b) Adenosine deaminase activity (ADA).

c) Detection of tuberculostearic acid.

d) Polymerase chain reaction (PCR)—to detect mycobacterial DNA.

e) Radiolabelled DNA and RNA probes, specific for different mycobacterial species, identify organisms in culture.

f) 'Bactec' test—Radioisometric blood culture; result within 7 days.

MILIARY MOTTLINGS

(Fig. 3.13)

Description :

This is a PA view of the chest which shows small discrete nodules or miliary opacities (spotted or mottled appearance) of the size of 1-2 mm diameter, involving all the zones of both the lungs. There is no mediastinal shifting. Both the costophrenic angles are hazy (i.e., may have pleural reactions).

Other points—Within normal limit.

Conclusion :

The probable differential diagnosis of 'miliary mottlings' in chest X-ray are,

1. Acute miliary tuberculosis (generalised, uniform size, smaller shadows, usually hilar lymph nodes are not affected and common in children; upper zones are always involved).
2. Tropical eosinophilia (usually involves the mid and lower zones, non-uniform, larger shadows with hilar lymph nodes involvement, persons of any age are affected).
3. Miliary carcinomatosis (rare, slightly larger shadows of secondary deposits: may be the primary source in breast, bronchus, kidney or thyroid).
4. Pneumoconiosis (size 3-5 mm; coal-miners commonly).

5. Acute lymphangitis carcinomatosa [a form of metastatic carcinoma where the pulmonary lymphatics are invaded and are often blocked by malignant cells; 2-3 mm nodules with thickening of pulmonary septa (Kerley's A and B lines); may be the primary source in bronchus, stomach, breast, colon or prostate].
6. Extrinsic allergic alveolitis (often more pronounced in upper zones).
7. Pulmonary haemosiderosis (smaller but dense shadows).
8. Sarcoidosis (larger shadows, spare apices but hilar lymph nodes may be enlarged).
9. Fungal diseases like histoplasmosis, coccidioidomycosis.
10. Miscellaneous—Collagen vascular diseases, chickenpox pneumonia, mycoplasma pneumonia, mitral stenosis (having pulmonary haemosiderosis from recurrent haemoptysis), aspiration of blood or vomitus, multiple pulmonary infarction, Loeffler's syndrome, alveolar microlithiasis, after lipoidal bronchography, artefacts like multiple skin warts or neurofibromatosis.

* Early lesions of 'miliary mottlings' are often better visualised in over-penetrated PA view of the chest with viewing the X-ray plate by putting a bright light behind. The nodular shadows of miliary mottlings are detected earlier in CT scan than radiograph.

Clinical features of acute miliary tuberculosis :

Read 'Bedside Clinics iri Medicine, Part I'.

* The 1 -2 mm miliary opacities mimic millet seeds and it is why these type of shadows are known as 'miliary mottlings'.

****Calcification' seen in the chest X-ray :***

(A) Parenchymal (lung): Tuberculosis, histoplasmosis, hamartomas (popcorn calcification), silicosis (egg-shell calcification), alveolar microlithiasis, haemosiderosis from recurrent haemoptysis, lung abscess.

(B) Pleural : Tuberculosis, asbestosis, empyema thoracis.

(C) Cardiac : Aortic arch (ring shaped), pericardial (constrictive pericarditis), calcification of heart valves (e.g., mitral and aortic), calcification of coronary arteries, left atrial myxoma with thrombi.

(D) Mediastinal : Lymphadenopathy from tuberculosis or sarcoidosis, teratodermoid.

(E) Chest wall : Costal cartilage calcification, nipple in females, phleboliths, Guinea worm in soft tissue, artefact.

MEDIASTINAL WIDENING

(Fig. 3.14)

Description :

This is a PA view of the chest which shows multiple circumscribed coin-like shadows involving both the lung fields with gross mediastinal widening. Both the costophrenic angles are clear and there is absence of mediastinal shifting. Diaphragms are normal in position with normal contour.

Other points—Within normal limit.

Conclusion :

Apparently it is a case of bronchogenic carcinoma.

Differential diagnosis of 'coin lesion' (or solitary nodule) in the lung :

1. Bronchogenic carcinoma.
2. Bronchial adenoma.
3. Metastatic nodules (secondary infiltrations).
4. Hamartomas.
5. Granuloma (tuberculosis, fungal infection e.g., histoplasmosis, eosinophilic granuloma, Wegener's granulomatosis).
6. Cyst (congenital, hydatid, dermoid, polycystic disease), lipoma, fibroma.
7. Miscellaneous—Arteriovenous fistula, interlobar effusion, mesothelioma of pleura, pulmonary

Infarction, lung abscess, localised pneumonia, rheumatoid nodule, intrapulmonary lymph nodes, bronchopulmonary sequestration.

* **Coin lesion**—Coin-shaped round lesion (usually less than 3 cm) with well-circumscribed margin which is completely surrounded by normal aerated lung, and without associated lung, pleural or mediastinal pathology.

Solitary pulmonary nodule—Spherical, 1-6 cm in diameter, intrapulmonary, roentgenographic density.

Mass lesion — nodules > 6 cm in size, and are often malignant.

Differential diagnosis of mediastinal widening :

1. Lymph node enlargement as a result of bronchogenic carcinoma (primary or secondary), lymphoma, tuberculosis, sarcoidosis, fungal infection of the lung.
2. Mediastinal mass—
   a) Anterior and middle mediastinum—Teratodermoid, lymphoma, metastatic carcinoma, aortic aneurysm, bronchogenic cyst, pericardial cyst.
   b) Superior mediastinum—Thymoma, retrosternal thyroid, metastatic carcinoma, aortic aneurysm, Zenker's diverticulum, tumours of parathyroid.
   c) Posterior mediastinum—Neurogenic tumour (neurofibroma), lymphoma, aortic aneurysm, achalasia cardia, hiatus hernia, paravertebral abscess, pharyngo-oesophageal pouch.

Causes of hilar enlargement :

(A) Bilateral —

1. Sarcoidosis.
2. Lymphoma, bronchogenic carcinoma.
3. Tuberculosis, histoplasmosis.
4. Increased pulmonary flow.
   due to septal defects in heart.
5. Pulmonary hypertension.
6. Silicosis.
7. Lymphangitis carcinomatosa.

(B) Unilateral —

1. Bronchogenic carcinoma.
2. Sarcoidosis.
3. Lymphoma.
4. Tuberculosis.
5. Pulmonary artery aneurysm.

Differential diagnosis of elevation of diaphragm :

(A) Unilateral—Phrenic nerve paralysis, amoebic liver abscess, basal pulmonary infarction, subphrenic abscess, basal collapse or fibrosis, subpulmonic pleural effusion, eventration of the diaphragm, splenic cyst, scoliosis, massive hepatomegaly or splenomegaly.

(B) Bilateral—Poor inspiration, obesity, ascites, pregnancy^ huge mass in the abdomen, hepatosplenomegaly, fibrosing alveolitis, bilateral phrenic nerve paralysis, bilateral basal collapse, pneumoperitoneum.

* **Diaphragmatic hump**—this is a localised elevation on the medial aspect of right dome of diaphragm. The hump is smooth and convex upwards, and is usually a normal finding.

** **Tenting of diaphragm**—the diaphragm may be pulled upwards loosing its smooth upward convex contour by basal pleurisy. Here, the elevation of diaphragm is abrupt and 'tent-like'.

Types of bronchogenic carcinona :

(A) Non-small cell carcinoma (80%) :
   a) Squamous or epidermoid carcinoma.
   b) Adenocarcinoma (including bronchioloalveolar).
   c) Large cell carcinoma (also known as anaplastic carcinoma).'

(B) Small cell carcinoma or oat-cell carcinoma (20%).

* Recent incidence rate of bronchogenic carcinoma is as follows :

Squamous cell carcinoma 35%
Small cell carcinoma 20%
Large cell carcinoma 15%.
Adenocarcinoma 30%

Clinical findings expected in this patient:

Features of superior mediastinal syndrome may be present.

PULMONARY OEDEMA

(Fig. 3.15)

Description :

This is a PA view of the chest which shows "bat's-wing" or "butterfly" appearance of confluent shadows which extends from the hilum to the mid and upper zones. These bilateral pulmonary clouding escapes the peripheral and basal zones. Cardiac silhouette is enlarged. Costophrenic angles are clear and there is no mediastinal shifting.

Other points—Within normal limit.

Conclusion :

Pulmonary oedema.

Differential diagnosis (of widespread alveolar opacities):

1. Pneumonia.
2. Acute lung injury or ARDS.
3. Alveolar cell carcinoma.
4. Uraemic pneumonitis.
5. Intra-alveolar haemorrhage.
6. Fat emboli.
7. Metastasis by haematogenous route.

Different causes of pulmonary oedema :

(A) Cardiogenic—Left-sided heart failure (i.e., left ventricular or left atrial failure), acute myocardial infarction, cardiac dysrrhythmias, pulmonary thromboembolism.

(B) Non-cardiogenic—Drowning, inhalation of toxins, gram-ve septicaemia, fluid overload, insecticide poisoning, narcotic overdose, haemorrhagic pancreatitis, high altitude.

X-ray shows pulmonary oedema without any cardiac enlargement :

1. Mitral stenosis (producing left atrial failure),
2. Constrictive pericarditis, and
3. Causes of non-cardiogenic pulmonary oedema.

Pressure changes in left atrium in evolution in pulmonary oedema :

1) Normal left atrial pressure : 6-10 mm of Hg.
2) Prominence of upper lobar pulmonary veins in X-ray : 12 mm of Hg.
3) Interstitial oedema : > 15 mm of Hg.
4) Kerley's B lines in chest X-ray : > 20 mm of Hg.
5) Pulmonary oedema : > 25 mm of Hg.

Evolution of radiographic features in pulmonary oedema :

(A) Interestitial oedema—As the left atrial pressure rises > 20 mm of Hg (i.e., pulmonary venous pressure increases), normally invisible interstitial septa becomes visible as a result of interstitial oedema (Kerley's B and A lines).

(B) Alveolar oedema—When the left atrial pressure is > 25 mm of Hg, fluid collects within the alveoli giving rise to parahilar "bat's-wing" or "butterfly" shadow in chest X-ray.

THORACIC NEOPLASM

(Fig. 3.16)

Description :

This is a skiagram of the chest, PA view which shows a dense homogeneous opacity (with sharp margin) occupying the left upper and mid-zone. There is absence of 'air bronchogram'. Mediastinal widening, mediastinal shifting, obliteration of the costophrenic angles (though not clearly seen), elevation of diaphragm are absent. There is absence of any rib destruction. Radiographer's signal (L for left) is wrongly given.

Other points—Within normal limit.

Conclusion :

Apparently it is a case of pulmonary neoplasm.

Differential diagnosis of such a lesion in X-ray :

1. Bronchogenic carcinoma.
2. Pneumonia.
3. Lung cyst.
4. Aortic aneurysm.
5. Granuloma.

Common symptoms in bronchogenic carcinoma :

(A) Non-specific systemic symptoms—Anorexia, weakness, loss of weight, nausea and vomiting, pyrexia.

(B) Pulmonary symptoms—Cough, haemoptysis, chest pain, breathlessness.

(C) Metastatic symptoms—Jaundice, neuralgic pain over the extremities, haematuria, convulsions, pathological fracture, SVC syndrome (dysphagia, dyspnoea, hoarseness of voice), lymphoedema with severe breathlessness, spinal cord compression with paraplegia.

(D) *Paraneoplastic syndrome* (not related to metastasis) :

a) Systemic—Anorexia, loss of weight, cachexia, lassitude,

b) Endocrine—Cushing's syndrome, hyperparathyroidism, carcinoid syndrome, syndrome of inappropriate ADH secretion (SIADH), hypoglycaemia.

c) Neuromuscular—Peripheral neuropathy, myasthenic syndrome (Lambert-Eaton syndrome), myopathy, polymyositis, cortical degeneration, subacute cerebellar degeneration, encephalomyelopathy.

d) Haematological—Normoblastic anaemia, granulocytosis, leucoerythroblastosis, polycythemia, haemolytic anaemia, disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC).

e) Cutaneous—Dermatomyositis, acanthosis nigricans, pruritus, herpes zoster.

f) Bones and connective tissue—Clubbing, hypertrophic pulmonary osteoarthropathy (HPOA) and pachydermoperlostitis.

g) Vascular—Migratory thrombophlebitis, gangrene.

h) Renal—Nephrotic syndrome, glomerulonephritis.

i) Miscellaneous—Gynaecomastia.

* *Paraneoplastic syndrome* is seen when a hormone with biologic activity is secreted by the tumour.

Rib erosion and rib notching :

(A) Rib erosion—There is destruction of ribs; ribs may look moth-eaten. It is found in bronchogenic carcinoma, multiple myeloma, histiocytosis X disease.

(B) Rib notching—Notching of the ribs may be present in the upper border, lower border or randomly. It is found in coarctation of aorta (lower border of 3rd to 8th rib), hyperparathyroidism (random), chronic SVC and IVC obstruction, arteriovenous fistula, neurofibromatosis (upper border), Fallot's tetralogy, pulmonary stenosis, after Blalock-Taussig shunt operation done in Fallot's tetralogy.

* Rib notching in coarctation of aorta in chest X-ray is known as Dock's sign.

Different radiological features of bronchogenic carcinoma in chest X-ray :

1. Solitary, dense, well-circum£ bribed pulmonary opacity; sometimes a cavity within.
2. Dense, irregular hilar opacity with peripheral extension.
3. Localised emphysema (an early feature); atelectasis involving a segment, lobe, or the whole lung.
4. Mediastinal widening, rib erosion, elevated hemidiaphragm (phrenic nerve palsy), pleural effusion may be seen.
5. Linear streaks radiating from hilum, or miliary mottlings developing as a result of lymphangitis carcinomatosa.

* In a suspected X-ray of thoracic neoplasm, always search for rib erosion, pleural effusion and diaphragmatic palsy.

****Pseudotumour' in chest X-ray :***

1. Paravertebral cold abscess.
2. Scoliosis.
3. Aortic aneurysm.
4. Achalasia cardia.
5. Extramedullary haematopoiesis in chronic haemolytic anaemia (e.g., thalassaemia).

[B] X-RAY CHEST—HEART

MITRAL STENOSIS

(Fig. 3.17)

Description :

This is a PA view of the chest which shows **'mitralisation' of heart,** or straightening of the left border of heart and is due to (from above downwards),

a) Small aortic knuckle (due to low cardiac output),
b) Conspicuous convexity due to dilated pulmonary artery (due to pulmonary hypertension),
c) Convexity produced due to prominent left atrial appendages, and
d) Normal left border of left ventricle.

Double contour of the right border of heart (the upper and outer border is due to LA, and the lower and inner border is due to RA enlargement) is present here.

The cardiac size shows enlargement in transverse diameter (RVH). Dilated pulmonary arteries at hilum with peripheral pruning is seen (evidence of pulmonary hypertension). Upper lobar pulmonary veins are dilated.

Kerley's B line, fan-shaped opacity at hilum (pulmonary oedema), mitral valve calcification, features of haemosiderosis are not evident here.

Other points—Within normal limit.

* The apex of the heart in the X-ray plate seems to be outwards as well as downwards (RVH + LVH). As MS does not produce LVH, think of other causes associated with MS (see the question in next page) i.e., this X-ray plate probably does not belong to a case of isolated MS.

** The D/D of this X-ray picture is ASD or left atrial myxoma.

Conclusion :

Mitral stenosis with features of pulmonary hypertension.

What are "Kerley's—A, B and C" lines ?

(A) Kerley's A line : Ragged, unbranched lines which run centripetally towards the hilum; seen near the apex.

(B) Kerley's B line : Fine, dense, non-branching horizontal lines at the base of the lung (near costophrenic angles).

(C) Kerley's C line : Fine, interlacing lines and are seen in the central and parahilar region.

A, B and C lines are also known as septal lines. These white lines represent 'dilated lymphatics and distended interlobular septa'. B line is most commonly seen. They occur most often in pulmonary oedema as a result of chronic pulmonary venous hypertension. Kerley's B line has a relation with left atrial pressure (B-lines are invariably present if LA pressure goes above 20 mm of Hg). These lines are actually found in left-sided heart failure.

* Kerley's **A** line stands for apex, **B** line for base and **C** line for central region.

** Kerley's B lines are found in :

a) Pulmonary venous hypertension e.g., LVF, left atrial failure from MS.

b) Dilated lymphatics due to lymphatic obstruction e.g., lymphangitis carcinomatosa, pneumoconiosis.

Radiological features of raised left atrial pressure :

1. Prominence of hilar pulmonary vascular shadows,
2. Dilated upper lobar pulmonary veins,
3. Kerley's B lines, and
4. Interstitial pattern of pulmonary shadow—either diffuse haziness or "bat's-wing" appearance of acute pulmonary oedema.

Radiological evidences of pulmonary arterial hypertension :

Causes :

1. Left to right shunt (ASD, VSD, PDA).
2. Long standing left-sided heart disease (MS).
3. COPD or other chronic pulmonary diseases (e.g., interstitial lung disease).

Radiological features :

1. Bulging pulmonary arteries at hilum (parahilar prominence).
2. Peripheral 'pruning' (peripherally pulmonary arteries taper sharply).
3. Disappearance of Kerley's B line.

Radiological evidences of pulmonary venous hypertension :

Causes :

1. Left-sided heart failure (LAF/LVF), i.e., mitral or aortic valve disease, IHD, cardiomyopathy, left atrial myxoma.
2. Chronic cor pulmonale.
3. Pulmonary thromboembolism.
4. Pulmonary venous obstruction (veno-occlusive disease).

Radiological features :

Prominent vascular markings as a result of venous congestion in lung (upper lobe vessels become prominent initially followed by parahilar congestion).

X-ray shows 'mitralisation', but the apex is down and out—possibilities :

Always try to determine to position of the cardiac apex by counting intercostal spaces (whether outwards, or downwards as well as outwards) in all chest X-ray (PA view).

Isolated MS with pulmonary hypertension and RVH will have outward apex. As MS (evidenced by mitralisation) does not produce LVH, other causes of LVH should be considered to be associated with MS if the apex goes downwards and outwards. So the likely possibilities are :

MS associated with,

1. MI, AI, AS.
2. Systemic hypertension.
3. Ischaemic heart disease
4. Severe anaemia.
5. Cardiomyopathy.
6. Thyrotoxicosis.

A patient of MS becomes symptomatic suddenly or within few days—possibilities :

Possibilities :

1. Left atrial failure and pulmonary oedema.
2. Development of tachyarrhythmias e.g., atrial fibrillation.
3. Sudden embolic manifestations (e.g., pulmonary embolism).
4. Physical (unaccustomed exercise) and emotional stress.
5. Severe anaemia, intercurrent illness (e.g., infection), development of thyrotoxicosis.
6. Pregnancy.
7. Attacks of active rheumatic carditis.
8. Excess intake of salt, poor compliance with therapy.

* In MS, a chest X-ray done in right anterior oblique (RAO) view with barium-filled oesophagus may reveal the backward curving of oesophagus (sickling of oesophagus) as a result of left atrial enlargement.

** Double contour of the right border of heart may also be found in isolated mitral regurgitation.

PERICARDIAL EFFUSION

(Fig. 3.18)

Description :

This is a PA view of the chest which shows grossly enlarged (globular) cardiac silhouette with a 'water-bottle configuration' or 'pear-shaped heart'. The cardiothoracic ratio is increased. The cardiac land-marks (indentations) on the borders of the heart (ie, ups and downs, or convexity-concavity) are obliterated (stencil-cut outline). Right cardiophrenic angle is more acute (Rotch's sign). The lung fields are oligaemic. Left costophrenic angle is apparently clear but the right costophrenic angle is a bit blunt.

Other points—Within normal limit.

* In pericardial effusion, fluid collects in between visceral and parietal pericardium.

Conclusion :

Pericardial effusion (with right-sided pleural effusion).

Causes of pulmonary oligaemia and plethora :

(A) Pulmonary oligaemia :

a) Radiological features—Bronchovascular markings are less conspicuous and lung vessels are of diminished calibre.

b) Causes—Fallot's tetralogy, truncus arteriosus, severe pulmonary stenosis, pulmonary atresia, pericardial effusion, right-to-left shunt.

(B) Pulmonary plethora :

a) Radiological features—Dilated vessels are seen throughout the lung fields (from hilum to periphery) due to increased pulmonary blood flow. [With the onset of pulmonary hypertension, plethora disappears and the peripheral 1 /3rd of lung will have less arterial markings ('pruning')].

b) Causes—MS, MI, AS, AI, left ventricular failure, left-to-right shunt (ASD, VSD, PDA).

* ASD is an important cause of pulmonary plethora in clinical practice.

How much pericardial fluid is required to show enlarged cardiac silhouette in chest X-ray ?

It is approximately 250 ml.

Minimum amount of fluid required to diagnose pericardial effusion by echocardiography :

Echocardiography can detect pericardial effusion as small as 15 ml.

Common causes and clinical features of pericardial effusion :

Read 'Bedside Clinics in Medicine, Part I'.

* In a patient of pericardial effusion, if the X-ray is taken in Trendelenberg's position, there is widening of superior mediastinal shadow.

ENLARGED CARDIAC SHADOW

(Fig. 3.19)

Description :

This is a PA view of the chest which shows grossly enlarged cardiac shadow with increased cardiothoracic ratio. The indentations on the borders of the heart are retained. Bronchovascular markings and right cardiophrenic angle are within normal limit. The lung fields look normal (i.e., not oligaemic).

Other points—Within normal limit.

Conclusion :

Cardiomegaly apparently due to cardiomyopathy.

Enlarged cardiac shadow (cardiomegaly) in radiology :

1. Cardiomyopathy (indentations at cardiac borders are retained, absence of pulmonary oligaemia, right cardiophrenic angle remains acute i.e., normal.)
2. Pericardial effusion (indentations at cardiac borders are lost, pulmonary oligaemia, more acute right cardiophrenic angle).
3. Enlargement of heart chambers (commonly from multiple valvular heart disease) :
   a) Enlargement in transverse diameter with a boot-shaped configuration—RVH.
   b) Enlargement in oblique diameter—LVH.
   c) Double contour of the right border—LAH.
   d) Extension of the right atrial border with increased convexity—RAH.

* Read the causes of chamber enlargement of heart from 'Bedside Clinics in Medicine, Part I'.

4. Congestive cardiac failure [upper lobar veins are prominent, evidence of Kerley's B line, phantom tumour (interlobar effusion) or even hydrothorax may be present].
5. Atrial septal defect (T CTR, RVH, prominent pulmonary artery with pulmonary plethora).
6. Ebstein's anomaly (T CTR with big right atrium).
7. Left ventricular aneurysm (a distinct bulge is seen from the wall of the left ventricle).
8. Chest X-rays taken in full expiration or lying down position, patients with high diaphragm, or with cardiac pad of fat, or with skeletal deformity (e.g., depressed sternum, scoliosis) may give a false impression of cardiomegaly (spurious).

** In chest X-ray , it is better to say chamber enlargement (e.g., left or right ventricle) while in ECG interpretation, chamber hypertrophy is a better terminology.

N.B. : **In clinical practice, common causes of cardiomegaly are,**

1. Pericardial effusion.
2. Cardiomyopathy.
3. Systemic hypertension.
4. Valvular heart diseases present singly or in combination e.g., AI, MI, MS with MI etc.
5. Ischaemic heart disease.
6. Congenital heart disease (ASD, VSD, Ebstein's anomaly).

What is cardiomyopathy ?

These are diseases primarily involving the myocardium in the absence of congenital, rheumatic, hypertensive, coronary, arterial, or pericardial abnormalities, and is present with cardiac enlargement.

Clinical classification of cardiomyopathy :

(A) Dilated or congestive (commonest)—LVH and/or RVH, CCF, arrhythmias, embolism; systolic dysfunction.

(B) Restrictive (rare)—Restriction of LV and/or RV filling; abnormal diastolic function.

(C) Hypertrophic (rare)—Disproportionate LVH. Massive hypertrophy of interventricular septum. Double kicking apex; diastolic dysfunction.

* Features of restrictive variety mimic constrictive pericarditis.

** The diffuse myocardial fibrosis that accompanies multiple myocardial scars developed as a result of myocardial infarction very often derange LV function, and is termed as 'ischaemic cardiomyopathy'.

Management of cardiomyopathy :

(A) Dilated—Management of heart failure, alcohol withdrawal, cardiac transplantation.

(B) Restrictive—Diuretics, excision of the fibrotic endocardium, cardiac transplantation.

(C) Hypertrophic—Beta blockers, dual chamber pacing.

Possible aetiology of combined pleural plus pericardial effusions :

1. Tuberculosis / viral.
2. Hydrothorax (e.g., CCF, cirrhosis of liver).
3. Lymphoma or acute leukaemias.
4. Collagen vascular diseases (e.g., SLE).
5. Polyserositis.
6. Septicaemia.
7. Neoplastic or post-irradiation.

[C] STRAIGHT X-RAY OF THE ABDOMEN

GAS UNDER THE DIAPHRAGM

(Fig. 3.20)

Description :

This is a striaght X-ray of the abdomen (taken in erect posture) which shows semilunar gas shadow under the right dome of diaphragm. Normal fundal gas shadow is seen under the left dome of diaphragm.

Psoas shadow, feature of bowel obstruction, calculus or any sign of calcification is absent. Lung bases are normal with clear costophrenic angles.

* Never say PA or AP view of the abdomen.

Conclusion :

This X-ray film strongly suggests perforation of hollow viscus, most probably it is acute perforation of a peptic ulcer.

The other possibilities are :

1. Peritonitis by gas forming organism.
2. Subdiaphragmatic abscess (right) by gas forming organism.
3. Following:
   a) Tubal insufflation test.
   b) Abdominal surgery.
   c) Laparoscopy.
   d) Peritoneal dialysis.
4. Chilaiditi's syndrome i.e., interposition of colon between the liver and the diaphragm simulating pneumoperitoneum (colonic haustrations are seen). This is a normal finding as well as a transient phenomenon.

Clinicaly, how to suspect the presence of gas under the diaphragm ?

Percussion of the liver is done from above downwards along right MCL. Loss of liver dullness clinches the above diagnosis in a patient with acute abdomen.

What is Helicobacter pylori ?

These are spiral, curved or comma-shaped, microaerophilic, gram -ve and Giemsa +ve multiflagellated,

highly motile organism measuring 0.5 x 0.3 mm which colonises the stomach in the deep portion of mucous gel layer that coats mucosa and also in the surface epithelial cells. They adhere to gastric epithelium but never invade. H. pylori is responsible for 80% patients developing gastric ulcer, 95-100% cases of duodenal ulcer and 50% cases of non-ulcer dyspepsia.

How to eradicate Helicobacter pylori ?

Eradication of H. pylori is not an easy matter. H. pylori plays a role in the development of gastric adenocarcinoma and mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT), and thus it should be eradicated at its earliest. There are many drug schedules but the accepted regimens are :

(A) Monotherapy : Colloidal bismuth 120 mg QDAC or lansoprazole 30 mg ODAC for 4 weeks. Cure rate is 10%.

(B) Dual therapy : Omeprazole 20 BDAC, plus amoxycillin 500 gm TDS x 2 weeks. Cure rate is 60%.

(C) Tripple therapy :

(i) Traditional—Colloidal bismuth 120 mg QDAC, plus metronidazole 400 mg TDS, plus amoxycillin 500 mg TDS x 2 weeks. Cure rate is 85-90%.

(ii) Non-bismuth therapy—Omeprazole 20 mg ODAC or BDAC, plus clarithromycin 250 mg BDS, plus metronidazole 400 mg or tinidazole 500 mg TDS x 7 dyas. Cure rate is 90%.

(D) Quadruple therapy : Traditional tripple therapy, plus one antisecretary agent (H_2RA or proton pump inhibitor) x 14 days. Cure rate is 90%.

* A **recently suggested non-bismuth tripple therapy** containing two antibiotics demands very high cure rate and comprises omeprazole 20 mg BDAC, plus clarithromycin 500 mg BDS, plus amoxycillin lg BDS given orally for 7 days only.

** Instead of omeprazole 20 mg, lansoprazole 30 mg/pantoprazole 40 mg may be tried.

*** Important facts : When standard regimens failed ciprofloxacin/levofloxacin, furazolidone and rifabutin are also used in tripple thrapy ('rescue therapy'). A shorter regimen of 7-10 days are not as effective as tripple therapy for 14 days.

**** At present, the accepted :

Regimen 1 : Omeprazole (20 mg BDAC) + clarithromycin (500 mg BDS) + amoxycillin (lg BDS) x 7 days.

Regimen 2 : Same as above except metronidazole (400 BDS) instead of amoxycillin x 7 days.

Regimen 3 : Omeprazole (20 mg BDAC) + colloidal bismuth 240 mg QDAC + tetracycline (500 mg QDS) + metronidozole (400 mg TDS) x 14 days.

N.B. : Regimen 1 and 2 are first line while Regimen 3 is second line choice.

'Calcification' seen in the straight X-ray of abdomen :

1. Faecoliths.
2. Phleboliths.
3. Calcified lymph nodes (e.g., tuberculosis), calcified aorta, calcified dermoid/fibroid/foetus.
4. Calculi in organs like renal, biliary, pancreatic and splenic.
5. Hepatic calcification : haemangioma, tuberculosis, hepatoma, calcified hydatid cyst, brucellosis, histoplasmosis.
6. Chronic pancreatitis, Addison's disease, calcification of abdominal wall (e.g., cysticercosis).

[D] BARIUM STUDY

For barium studies of the G. I. tract, the patient swallows radio-opaque barium sulfate. The radiologist carefully observes the passage of barium on a fluorescent screen/TV monitor with an image intensifier and takes X-ray films for permanent recording. For the study of oesophagus, *barium swallow* X-ray is required (for stricture, varices, achalasia cardia, hiatus hernia); and for stomach, duodenum and small intestine (e.g., narrowing, dilatation, diverticula, floculation of barium in malabsorption, narrow-

ing of ileocaecal valve) barium meal X-ray are taken sequentially after few minutes of swallow *(barium follow-through). Barium enema* (barium suspension introduced per rectum) is used for diagnosis of large intestinal (e.g., ulcerative colitis) and rectal diseases.

For better visualisation in barium enema study, when barium and air both are used it is known as 'double contrast' study.

DUODENAL ULCER

(Fig. 3.21)

Description :

This is a barium meal X-ray of stomach and duodenum which shows deformity of the duodenal cap. The outline of stomach is within normal limit. It is seen that barium has passed into the small intestine.

Conclusion :

Duodenal ulcer.

* Deformity of the duodenal cap is due to an ulcer crater, oedema, muscular spasm, fibrosis or their combination.

Enumerate the deformities of duodenal cap :

One of the deformities is known as clover leaf or trefoil deformity.

How do you diagnose Helicobacter pylori ?

1. Histology by gastric mucosal biopsy (gold-standard for diagnosis; the organism has been discussed in X-ray picture of 'Gas under the diaphragm'. The biopsy tissue is stained by,
   a) Haematoxylin and eosin.
   b) Special stain (modified Giemsa, Warthin-Starry, Gram stain).
   c) Immunohistochemistry (endonuclease analysis).
2. Biopsy culture—most specific but may not be very sensitive.
3. Serology (ELISA)—detects IgG antibody, and are reasonably sensitive (90%) as well as specific. Detection of IgG antibody in saliva may also be done.
4. Rapid urease test—biopsy tissue is put into urea-containing broth (Chlamydia-like organism or CLO test; also known as helicochek test; urea-containing broth is broken down to NH_3 if urease is produced by H. pylori and the colour of the broth is changed to red in a positive test).
5. Carbon-urea (13_c or 14_c) breath test—most consistently accurate test; useful for screening test to detect H. pylori, and also to follow-up after treatment.
6. Stool antigen test for H. pylori (HpSA)—a new promising test, role not fully established.
7. Emerging : Polymerase chain reaction (PCR).

* H. pylori was discovered by Marshall and Warren in 1983, who received Nobel Prize in 2005.

** Invasive tests—1, 2, 4; non-invasive tests—3, 5, 6, 7

GASTRIC ULCER

(Fig. 3.22)

Description :

This is a barium meal X-ray of stomach which shows an ulcer crater on the lesser curvature of the stomach (the small projection) and an indentation or indrawing (incisura) on the greater curvature opposite to the ulcer crater. There is no filling defect seen within the stomach. Duodenal cap is not clearly visualised. Barium has passed into the duodenum and small intestine. Bony and soft tissue structures show no apparent abnormality.

Conclusion ;

Benign gastric ulcer.

Possible aetiology of 'stress ulcers' and erosions in stomach :

1. NSAID (e.g., aspirin) or corticosteroid-induced.
2. Head injury or increased intracranial tension (Cushing's ulcer), bum (Curling's ulcer), severe sepsis, shock and severe trauma.

Table 8 : Differentiation between benign and malignant ulcer in stomach

	Benign ulcer		Malignant ulcer
1.	Projects beyond the margin of lesser curvature	1.	Remains within the margin of curvature
2.	Deep	2.	Shallow
3.	Sharply marginated, round	3.	Irregular in shape
4.	Rugae converge towards ulcer	4.	Rugae are interrupted
5.	Smooth ulcer 'collar'	5.	Absence of ulcer 'collar'
6.	Hampton's line (linear radiolucent line at the base of projection in lesser curvature) is present	6.	Hampton's line is absent
7.	No adjacent nodules or mass	7.	Adjacent wall is rigid or nodular
8.	Heals completely	8.	Complete healing is rare

* Larger ulcers (> 2 cm) are likely to be malignant. Ulcers in lesser curvature are usually benign whereas greater curvature ulcers are likely to be malignant.

OESOPHAGEAL CARCINOMA

(Fig. 3.23)

Description :

This is a barium swallow (oblique view) X-ray of oesophagus showing persistent irregular filling defect or a persistently stenotic segment. Proximal dilated part of oesophagus (usually present) is not seen here.' Either soft tissue growth or clssical 'rat-tail' like deformity is not present. Bony structure shows no apparent abnormality. The dye (radio-opaque barium sulfate) has passed into the stomach.

Conclusion :

Carcinoma of the oesophagus (involving middle and lower third).

How to confirm the diagnosis ?

By endoscopic biopsy.

Irregular filling defect of oesophagus in barium swallow :

1. Carcinoma of the oesophagus (rat-tail deformity).
2. Oesophageal varices.
3. Multiple stricture following strong acid or alkali poisoning.
4. Leiomyoma of the oesophagus.
5. Diffuse oesophageal spasm (corkscrew oesophagus).
6. Candida (monilial) oesophagitis.

Describe the barium swallow picture of oesophageal varices :

Multiple filling defects give a picture of *'moth-eaten'* or *'worm-eaten'* appearance of the oesophagus and the irregularity is maximum near the lower end. The varices formed by anastomosing channels of portal and systemic veins produce those serpigenous filling defects in the regular contour of oesophagus. Oesophageal varices also need endoscopic confirmation and grading.

CARDIOSPASM

(Fig. 3.24)

Description :

This is a barium swallow X-ray of oesophagus which shows smooth and symmetrical beak-like narrowing of the terminal part (of oesophagus) with funnel-like gross dilatation of the proximal part (seen within the cardiac shadow). There is absence of fundal gas shadow. Bony and soft tissue structures show no apparent abnormality.

Conclusion :

Cardiospasm or achalasia cardia.

D/D with carcinoma of the oesophagus :

(A) Cardiospasm : Outline is smooth, central narrowing of lumen, beak-like narrowing and non-rigid affected area (fluoroscopy); absent fundal gas shadow.

(B) Carcinoma of the oesophagus : Outline is irregular, eccentric narrowing of lumen, irregular narrowing and rigid affected area (fluoroscopy); fundal gas shadow is visible.

Symptoms at presentation :

Usually a middle-aged patient presents with,

1. Dysphagia (first with solids, then both with solids and liquids).
2. Retrosternal chest pain (vigorous achalasia).
3. Regurgitation (effortless apperance of gastric content in mouth).
4. Cough due to recurrent pulmonary aspiration.
5. Sense of fullness or a gurgling sound while taking meal.
6. Loss of weight.

Different causes of cardiospasm :

(A) Primary or idiopathic : Congenital defect of smooth muscle innervation [reduction in myenteric neurones which is related to abnormal nitric oxide synthesis within the lower oesophageal sphincter (LES)].

(B) Secondary : Infiltrating gastric carcinoma, lymphoma, irradiation, Chagas' disease, toxins and drugs (chronic narcotic use).

Investigations commonly done :

1. PA view of the chest—Midline opacity with horizontal fluid level may be seen in upright posture; absence of fundal gas shadow.
2. Barium swallow of oesophagus—Described above.
3. Oesophagoscopy—Endoscopy may reveal inflammation and ulceration; oesophagus is dilated. On gentle pressure, the instrument can be pushed into the stomach (may not be possible in oesophageal carcinoma). Endoscopy is very helpful in excluding secondary causes, specially gastric carcinoma (biopsy is taken, if necessary). Proper cleansing of oesophagus is necessary before endoscopy.
4. Oesophageal manometry—Elevated resting lower oesophageal sphincter (LES) pressure; absence of swallow-induced relaxation of LES; simultaneous-onset contractions replace primary peristaltic waves; injection of mecholyl (cholinergic drug) raises the baseline oesophageal pressure instead of lowering it.

Line of management :

1. Calcium channel blockers like nifedipine, or isosorbide dinitrate sublingually; soft foods, sedatives, anticholinergic drugs are not very helpful. Mild cases may not require treatment.

2. Hydrostatic or pneumatic bag dilatation—One or more dilatations may be required.
3. Endoscope-aided injection of botulinum toxin into the LES may induce temporary clinical remission.
4. Heller's cardiomyotomy operation—Risk of development of reflux oesophagitis and peptic stricture of oesophagus are there. In this operation, the circular muscle layer is incised.
5. Colonic interposition may be done.

'Opacity' seen within cardiac opacity in a PA view of chest X-ray :

1. Aortic aneurysm.
2. Paravertebral abscess (e.g., cold abscess).
3. Any soft tissue mass (e.g., mediastinal mass).
4. Extramedullary haematopoiesis (e.g., thalassaemia).
5. Achalasia cardia.

* Achalasia cardia has an increased incidence of developing squamous cell carcinoma of the oesophagus after few years.

PYLORIC STENOSIS

(Fig. 3.25)

Description :

This is a barium meal X-ray (of stomach) which shows grossly distended stomach (with excessive fasting contents). An obstruction is seen near the pylorus though the dye has passed into the duodenum. Bony and soft tissue structures show no apparent abnormality.

Conclusion :

Gastric outlet obstruction, most probably pyloric stenosis.

Confirmation of diagnosis :

a) Failure of the stomach to evacuate the barium meal even after 6 hours.
b) Upper G. I. endoscopy.

Diff erential diagnosis :

(A) Gastric outlet obstruction—Other than pyloric stenosis (resulting from duodenal cicatrisation as a complication of chronic duodenal ulcer) they are carcinoma of the pylorus, oedema of the pylorus, adult hypertrophic pyloric stenosis, hypertrophic gastritis, bezoars (trichobezoars or phytobezoars) and congenital hypertrophic pyloric stenosis (infants).

(B) Non-obstructive gastric dilatation— Gastroparesis diabeticorum (from diabetes mellitus), postpartum and postoperative gastric dilatation, drugs (clonidine, tricyclic antidepressants e.g., amitriptyline), scleroderma, dermatomyositis or polymyositis, myotonia dystrophica. In this category, radioisotopic gastric emptying study often confirms the diagnosis.

Important bedside signs in pyloric stenosis :

1. Diffuse swelling present in the upper abdomen.
2. Visible peristalsis traversing from left to right hypochondrium.
3. Positive succussion splash.
4. Positive ausculto-percussion test.

[E] X-RAY OF SKULL

MULTIPLE MYELOMA

(Fig. 3.26)

Description :

This is a lateral view of the skull which shows multiple small, rounded, 'punched out' areas (radiolucency) of different sizes. The margin of the radiolucent areas are sharply defined and are not surrounded by zone of osteosclerosis.

Orbital fossa, sinuses, pituitary fossa are within normal limit. No intracerebral calcification is noted. Soft tissue shadow of pinna (ear) is present.

Conclusion :

Probably, it is the skull X-ray of multiple myeloma.

Single or multiple osteolytic lesion in skull :

1. Multiple myeloma (classical rounded 'punched out' areas without surrounding osteosclerosis).
- 2. Metastatic carcinoma from bronchus, thyroid, breast or kidney (osteoblastic reaction, i.e., osteosclerosis is seen at the margin of osteolytic lesions).
3. Hyperparathyroidism (spotty decalcification).
4. Paget's disease (moth-eaten appearance).
5. Histiocytosis X disease (big mappy area of radiolucency or 'geographical skull').
6. Leukaemic or lymphomatous deposits (small to large).
7. Burr-hole (iatrogenic).
8. Sarcoidosis (small to large).
9. Miscellaneous—Big diploic foramen, congenital venous lakes, haemangioma of the vault, fibrous dysplasia, arachnoid granulations.

* Mandible may be affected in multiple myeloma, which is usually not a feature of metastatic carcinoma.

Radiographic examination in multiple myeloma :

1. Skull—multiple punched out osteolytic lesions.
2. Spine—collapse of one or more vertebrae, and osteoporosis.
3. Chest—punched out lesions in ribs, clavicle and sternum; pathological fracture in ribs.
4. Pelvis—multiple punched out osteolytic lesions; osteoporosis.
5. Kidney—nephrocalcinosis.

Features noted in any X-ray of skull:

They are viewed as follows,

(A) Calvarium and base (e.g., physiological radiolucencies like sutures, vascular imprints; or fracture; or sinuses, fontanelles).

(B) Sella turcica (shape, size, erosion of clinoid process, mineralisation etc).

(C) Calcification.

Presentation *of multiple myeloma :*

It is a 'plasma cell neoplasm', and other related disorders are Waldenstrom's macroglobulinaemia, benign monoclonal gammopathy, .heavy chain diseases and primary amyloidosis. The patient of multiple myeloma is classically a male one, in between 60-70 years of age and presents with :

1. Bone pain (most common symptom)—specially in the spine.
2. Severe weakness with wasting.
3. Low-grade pyrexia.
4. Pre-syncope, syncope, vertigo, breathlessness as a result of severe anaemia.
5. Paraplegia (with plasmacytoma or localised myeloma).

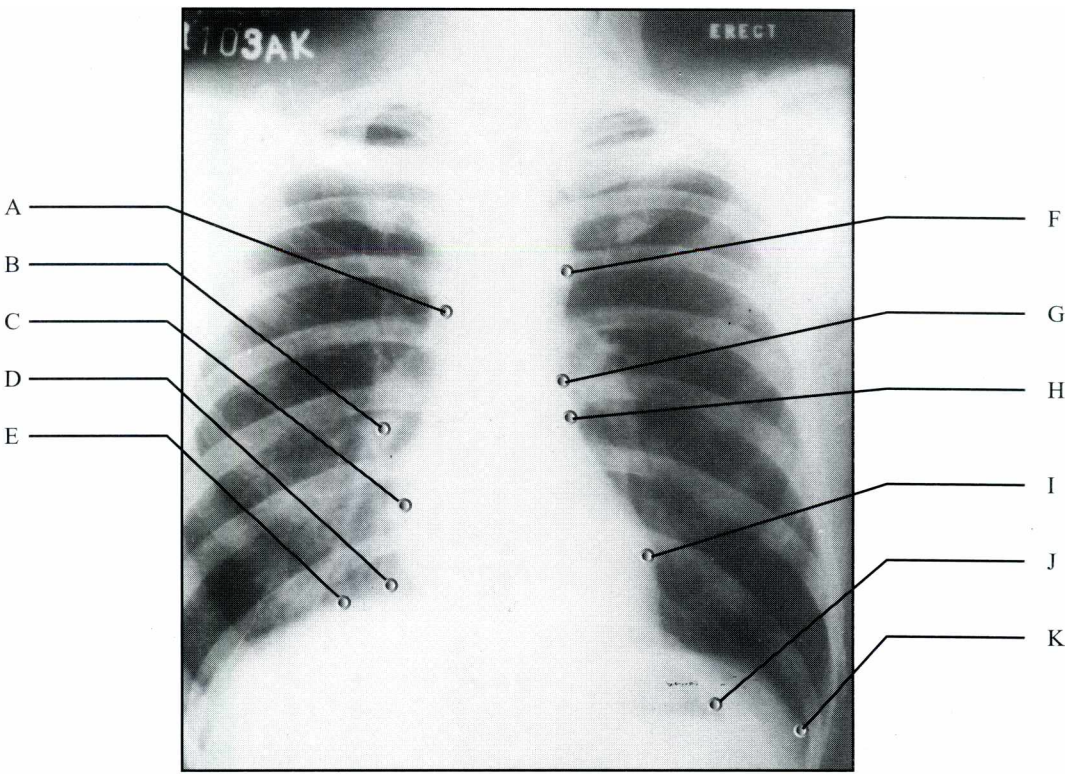


Fig. 3.1 : PA view of the chest in a normal adult

A : Superior vena cava
B : Bronchovascular marking
C : Right atrium
D : Cardiophrenic angle (right)
E : Diaphragm (right)
F : Aortic knuckle
G : Main pulmonary artery
H : Left atrial appendages
I : Left ventricle
J : Fundal gas shadow
K : Costophrenic angle (left)

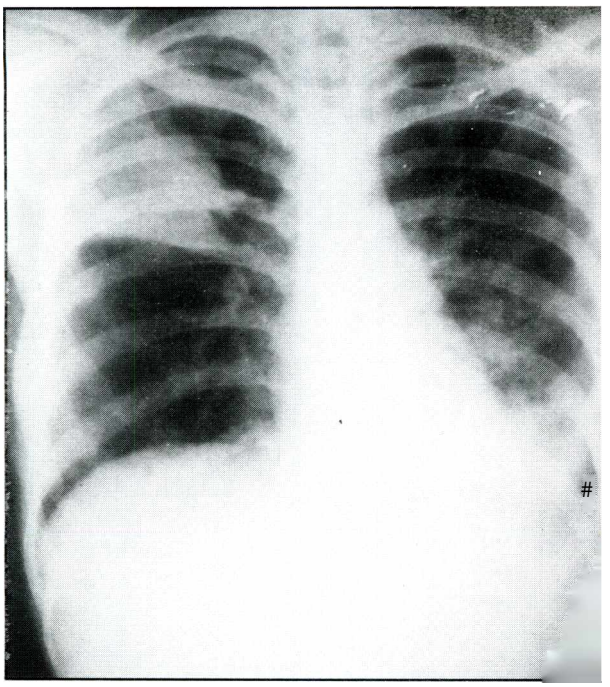


Fig. 3.2 : Consolidation of the right lung

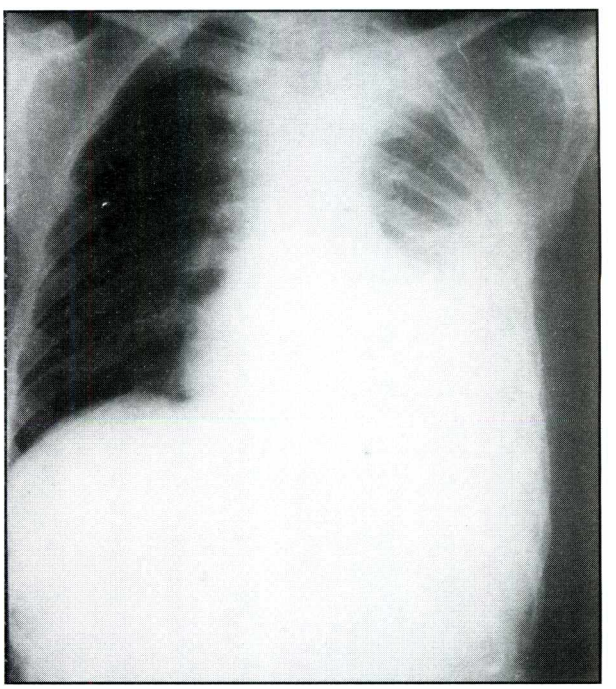


Fig. 3.3 : Left-sided pleural effusion

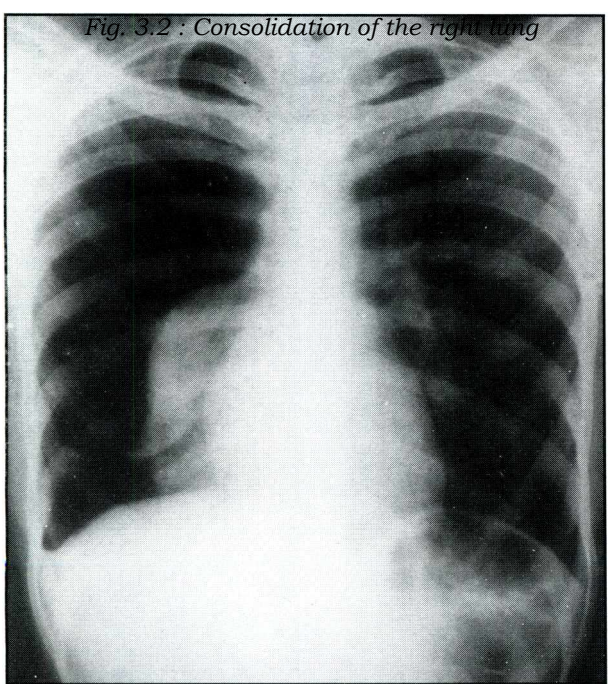


Fig. 3.4 : Pneumothorax of right side

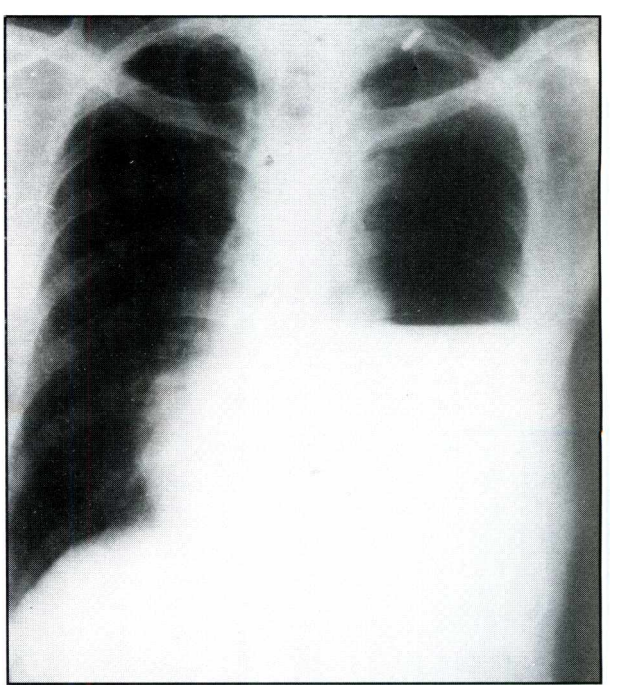


Fig. 3.5 : Hydropneumothorax of left side

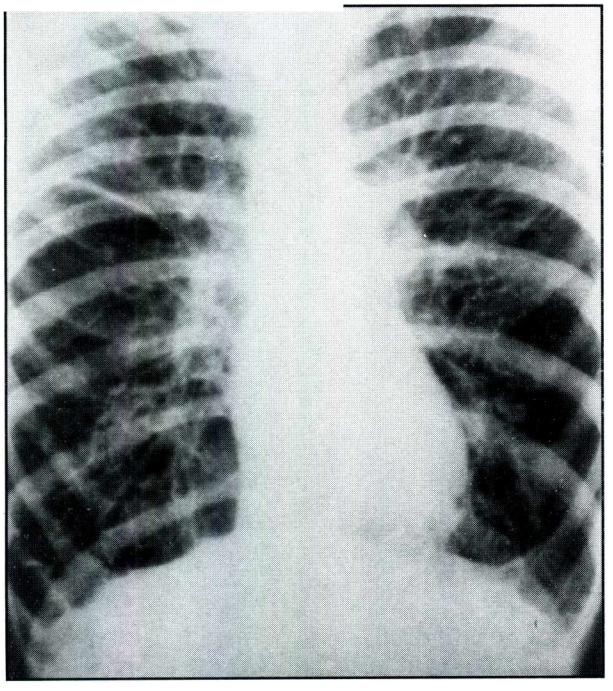


Fig. 3.6 : Emphysema

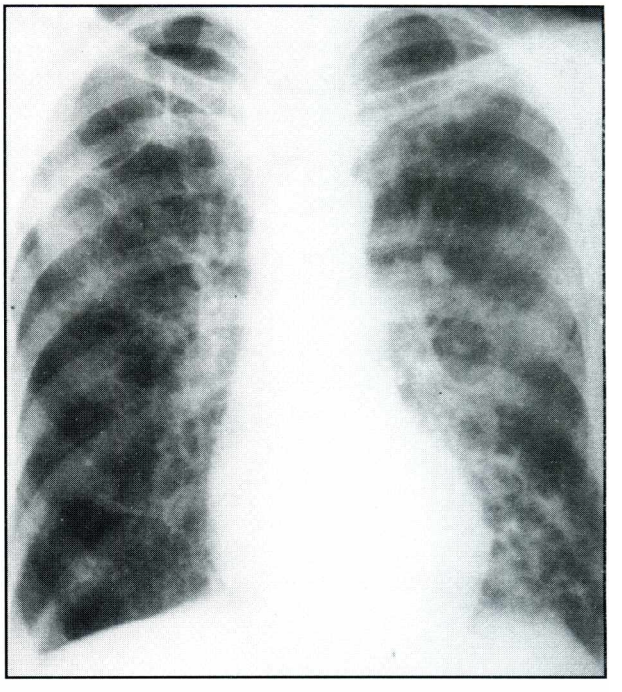


Fig. 3.7 : Bronchiectasis

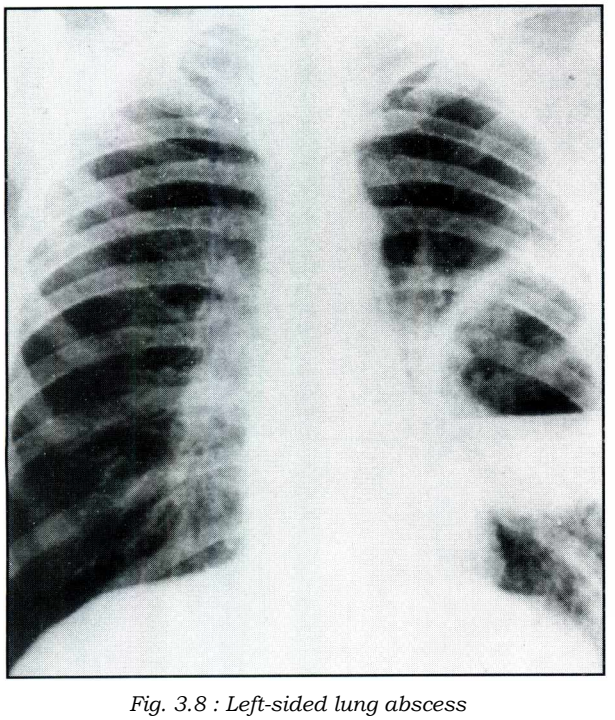


Fig. 3.8 : Left-sided lung abscess

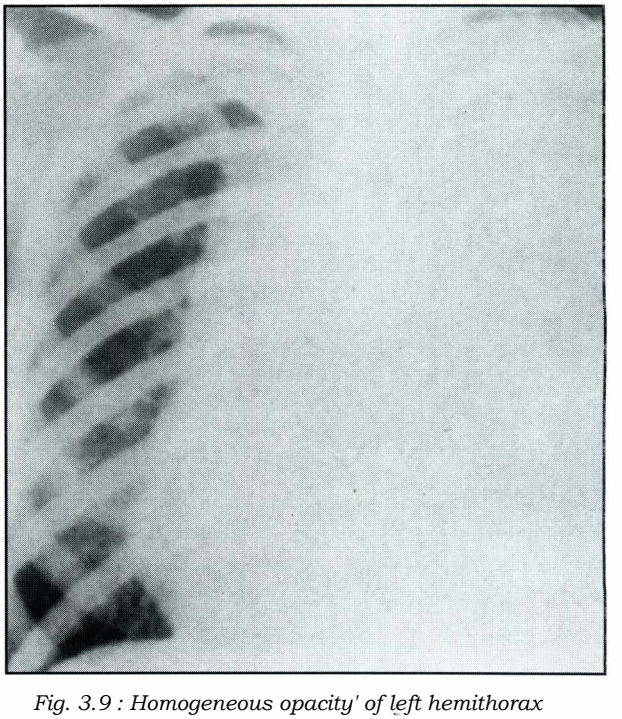


Fig. 3.9 : Homogeneous opacity' of left hemithorax

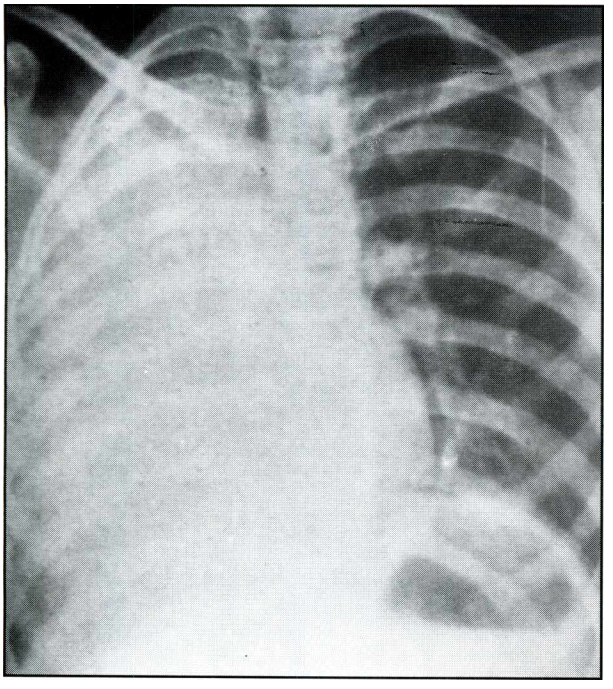


Fig. 3.10 : Collapse of the right lung

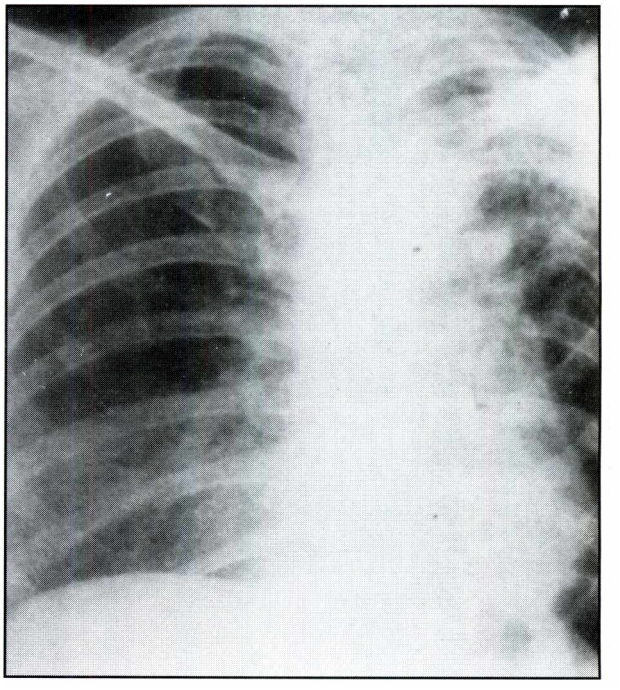


Fig. 3.11 : Fibrosis of the left upper lobe

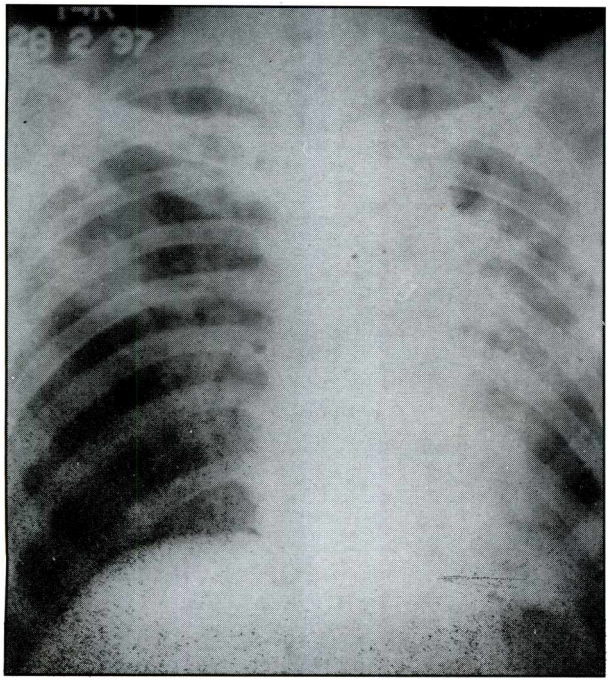


Fig. 3.12 : Tuberculous infiltrations

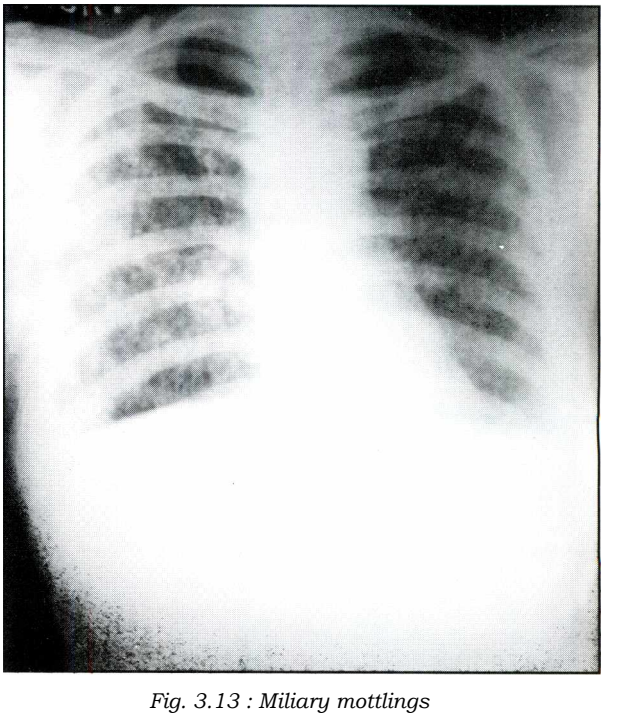


Fig. 3.13 : Miliary mottlings

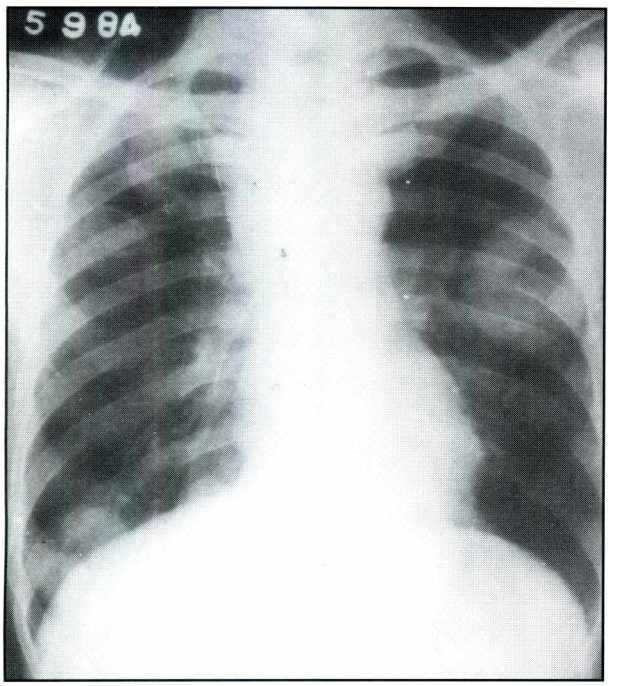


Fig. 3.14 : Mediastinal widening

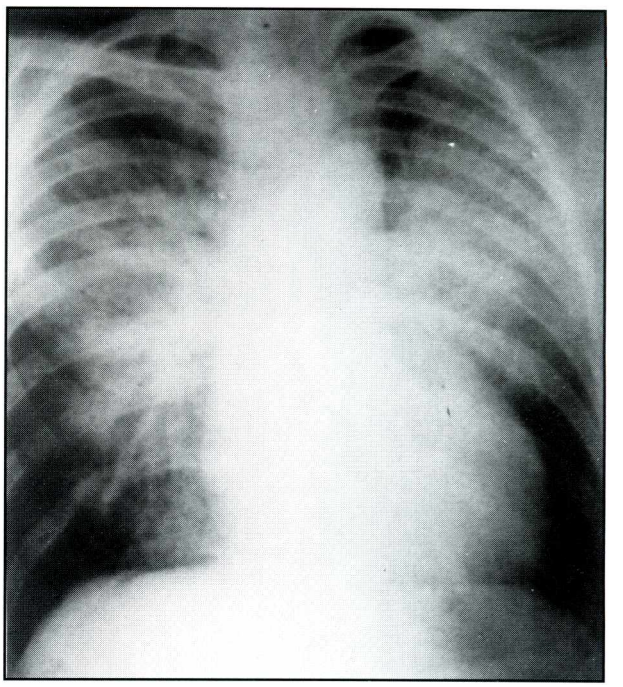


Fig. 3.15 : Pulmonary oedema

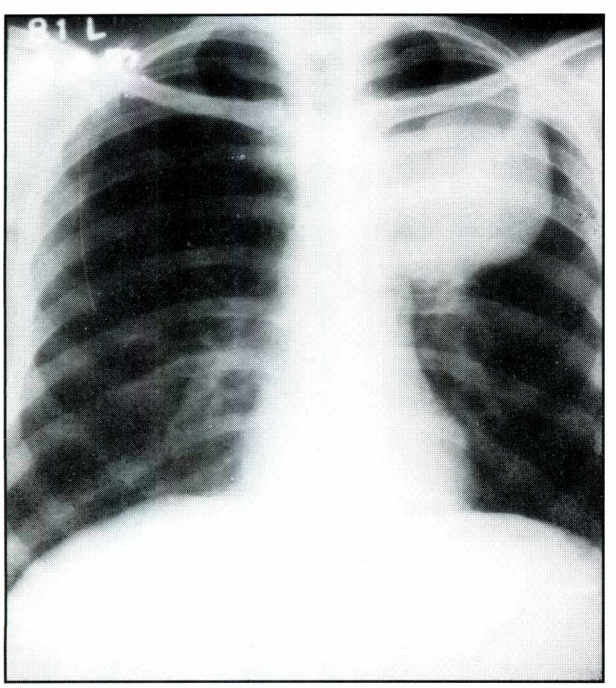


Fig. 3.16 : Left-sided thoracic neoplasm

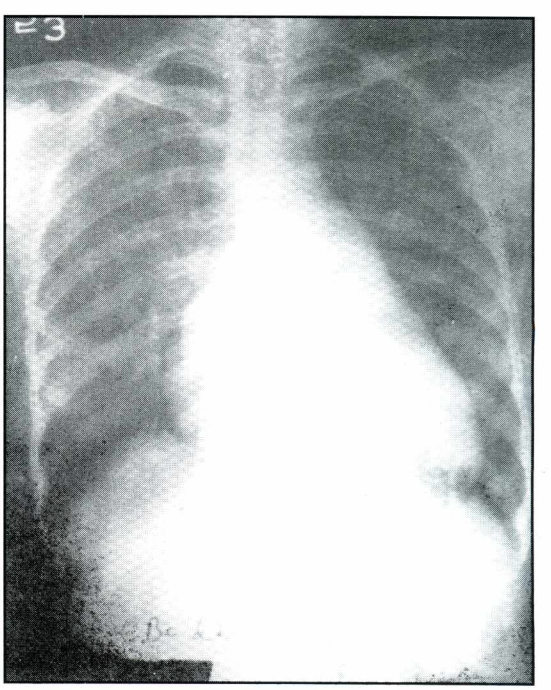


Fig. 3.17 : Mitral stenosis

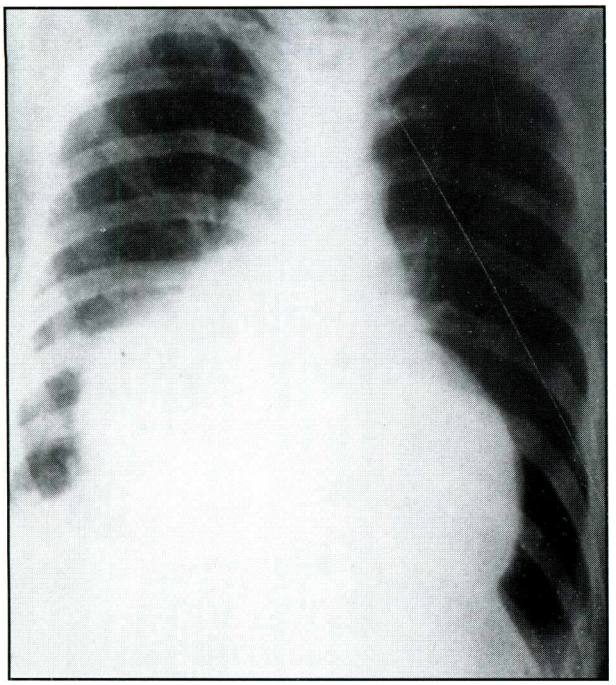


Fig. 3.18 : Pericardial effusion

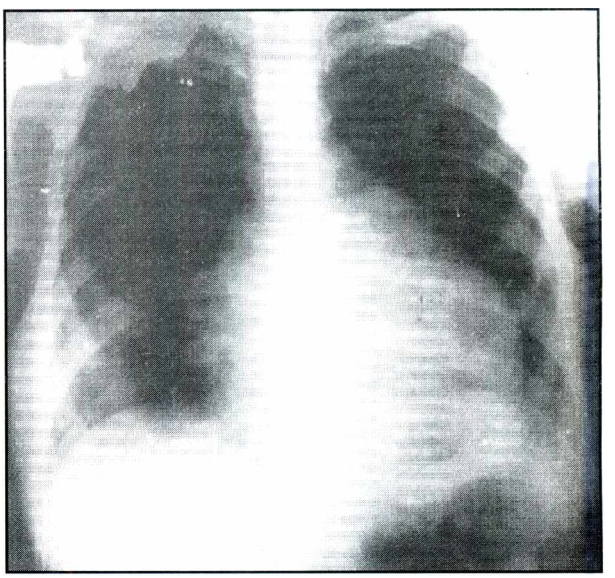


Fig. 3.19 : Enlarged cardiac shadow

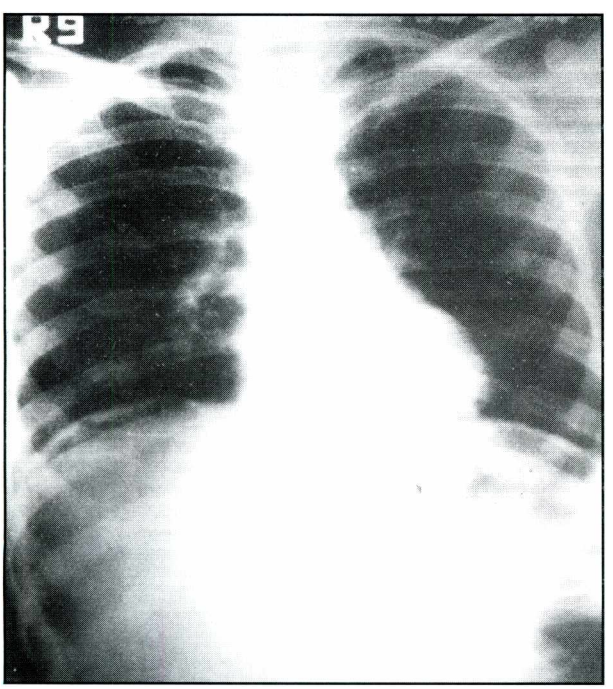


Fig. 3.20 : Gas under the diaphragm

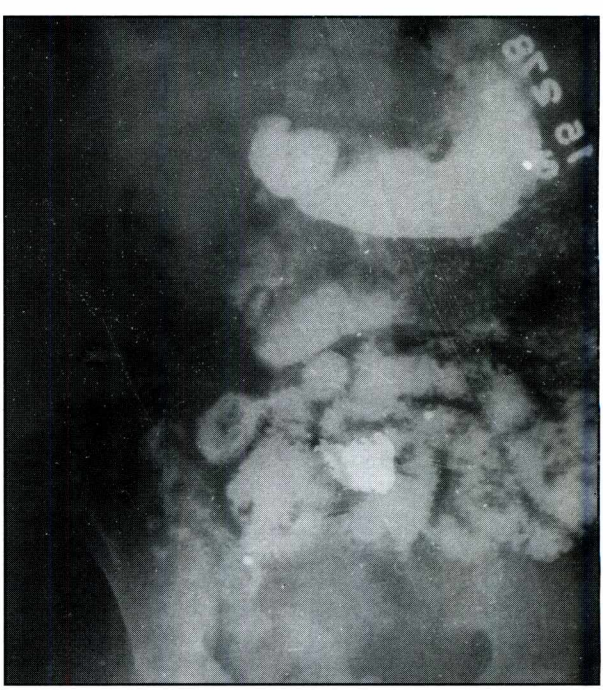


Fig. 3.21 : Duodenal ulcer

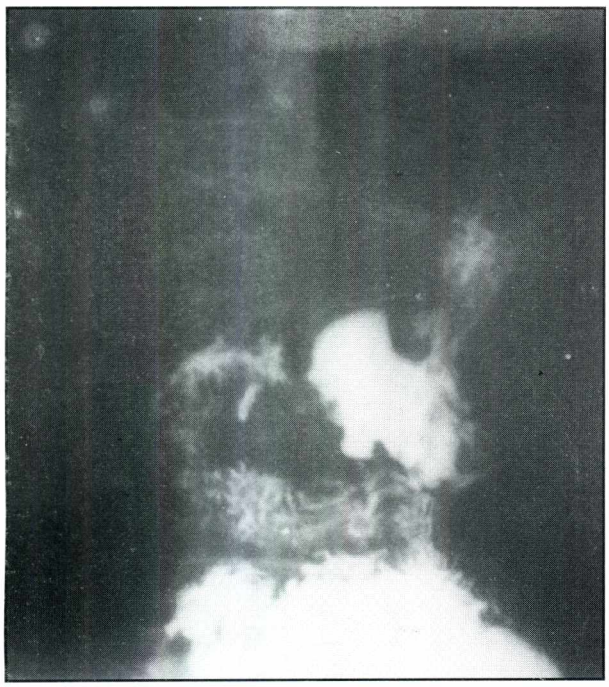


Fig. 3.22 : Gastric ulcer



Fig. 3.23 : Oesophageal carcinoma

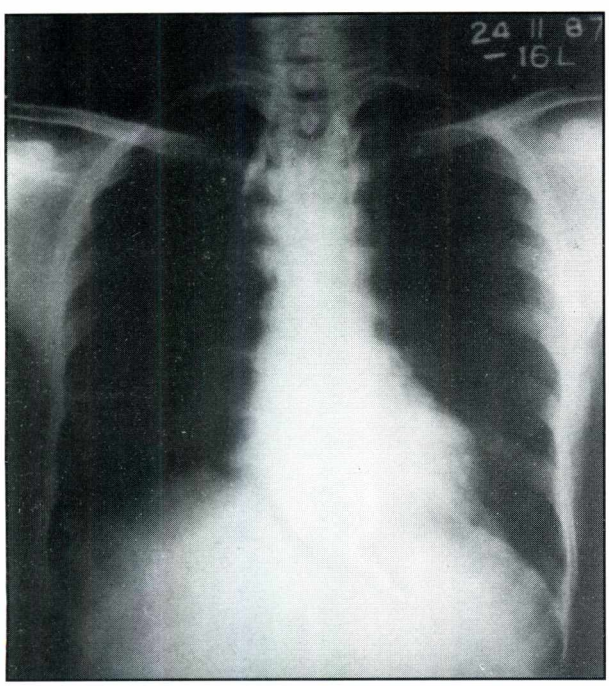


Fig. 3.24 : Cardiospasm (achalasia cardia)

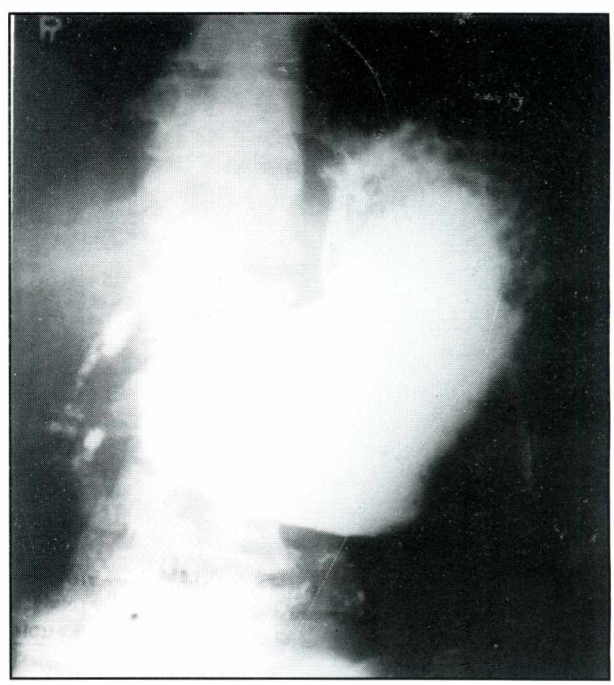


Fig. 3.25 : Pyloric stenosis

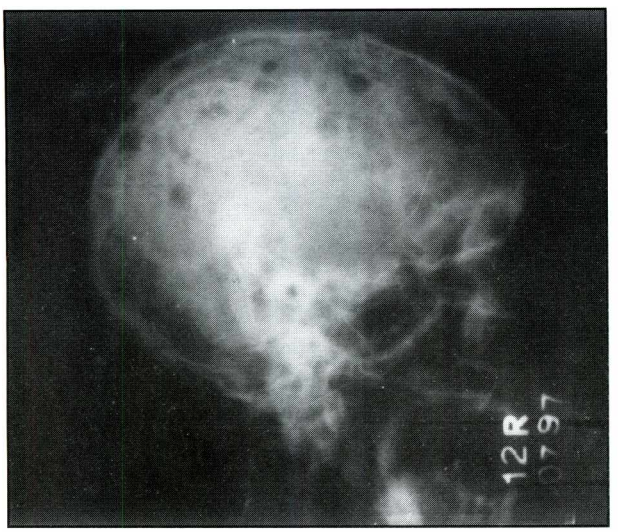


Fig. 3.26 : Multiple myeloma

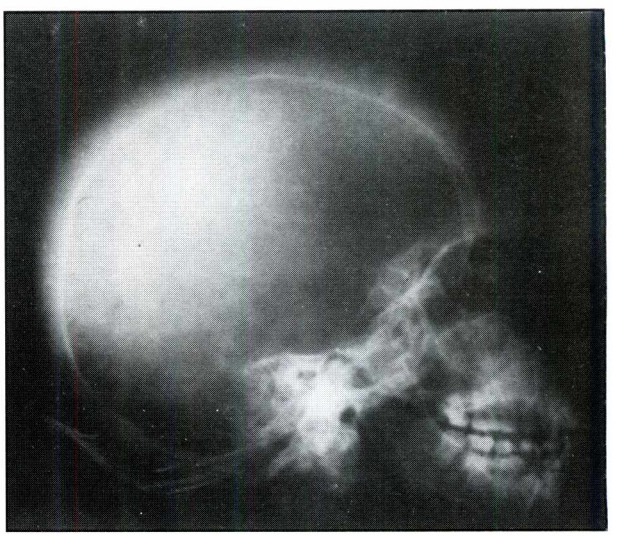


Fig. 3.27 : Thalassaemia

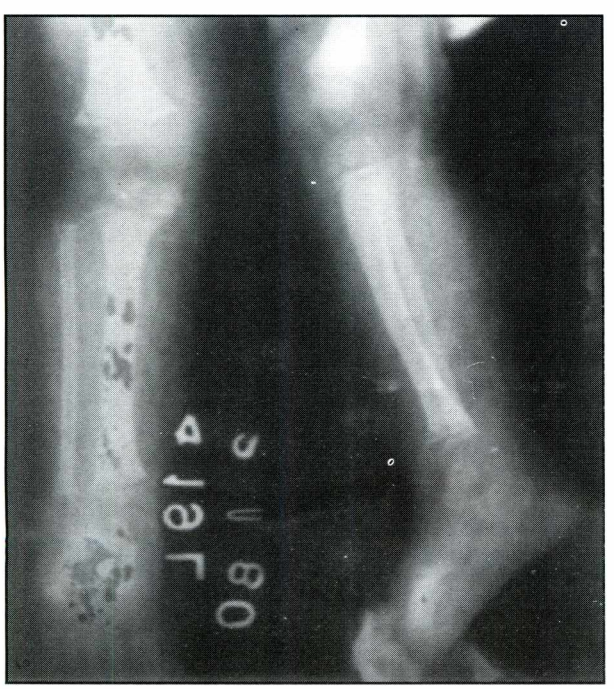


Fig. 3.28 : Scurvy



Fig. 3.29 : Rickets

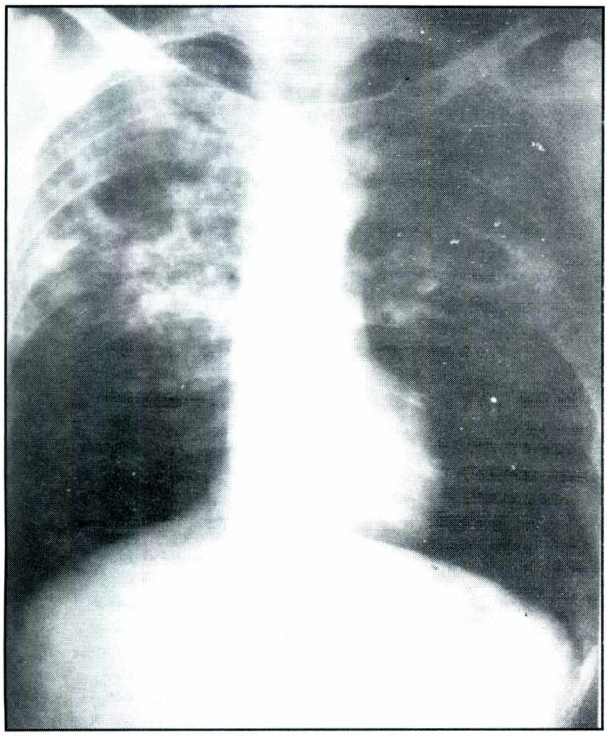


Fig. 3.30 : Bilateral fibro-cavitary lesion

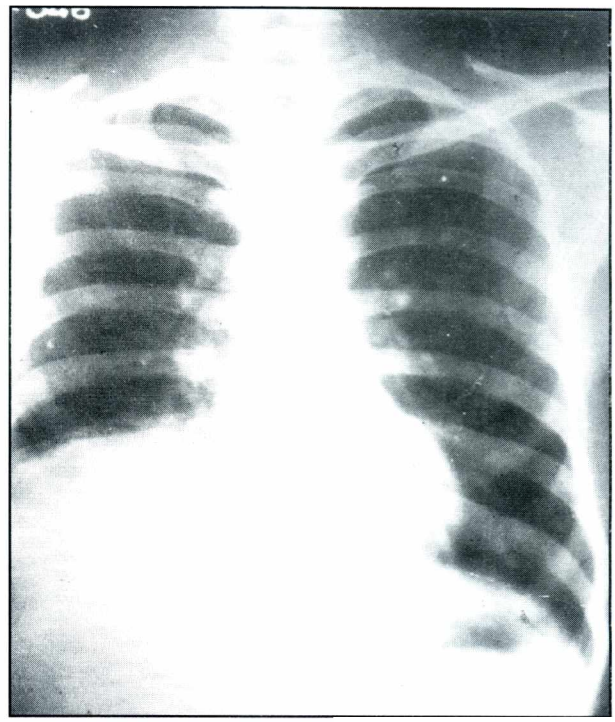


Fig. 3.31 : Elevated right dome of diaphragm

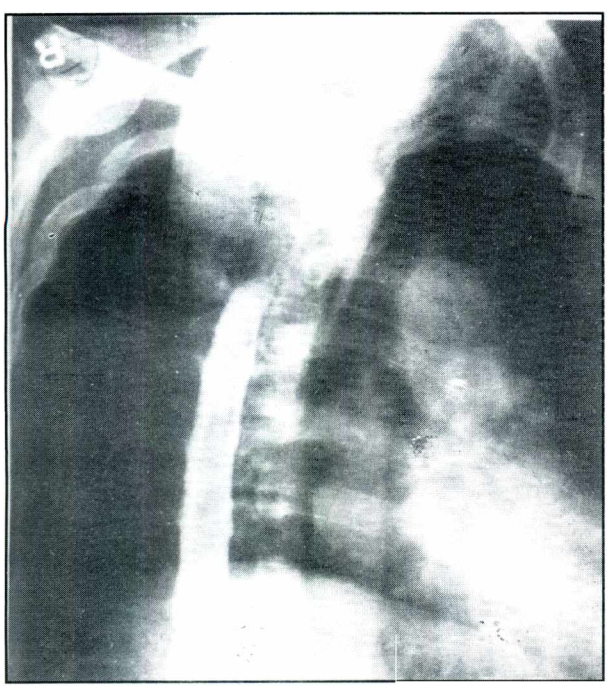


Fig. 3.32 : Myelography with spinal block

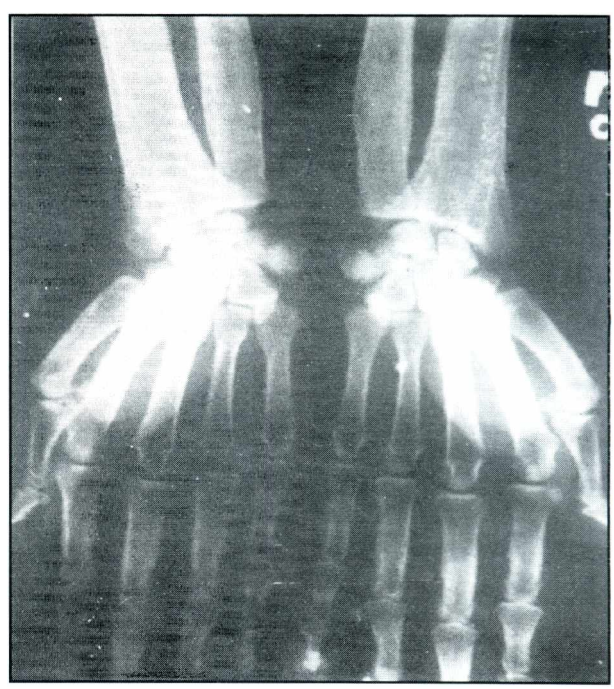


Fig. 3.33 : Hypertrophic osteoarthropathy

CT Scan

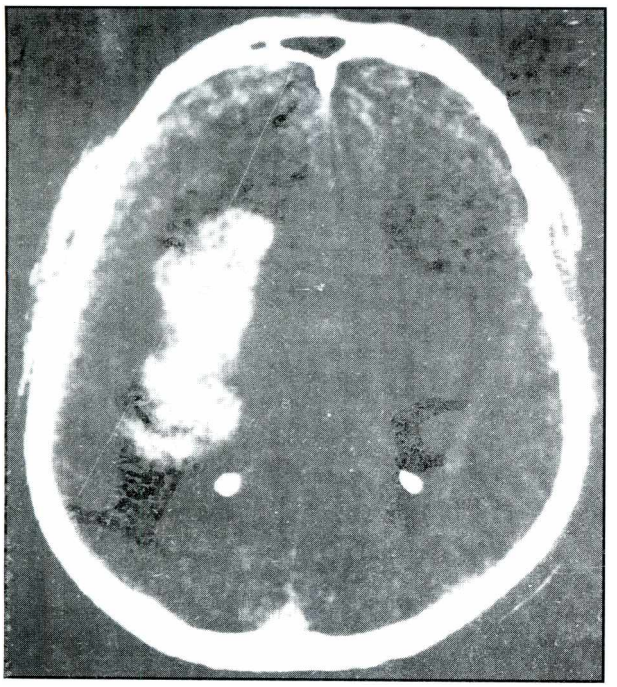


Fig. 3.34 : Intracerebral bleed (haematoma)

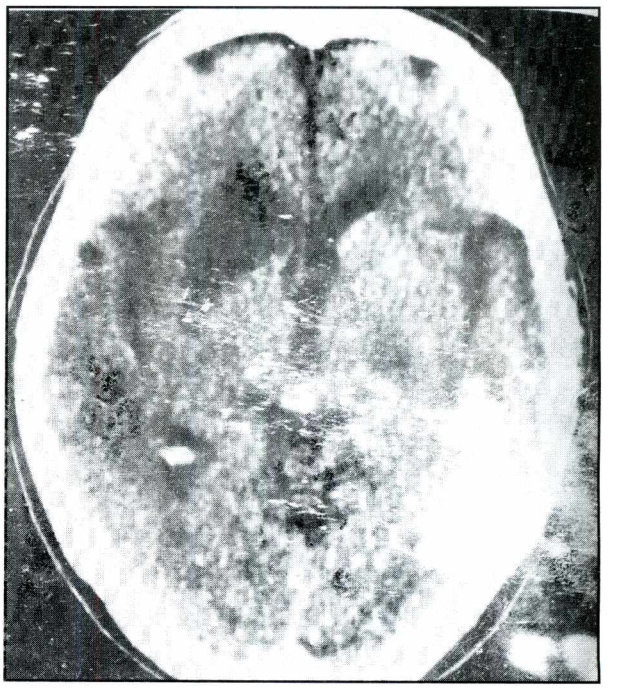


Fig. 3.35 : Cerebral infarction

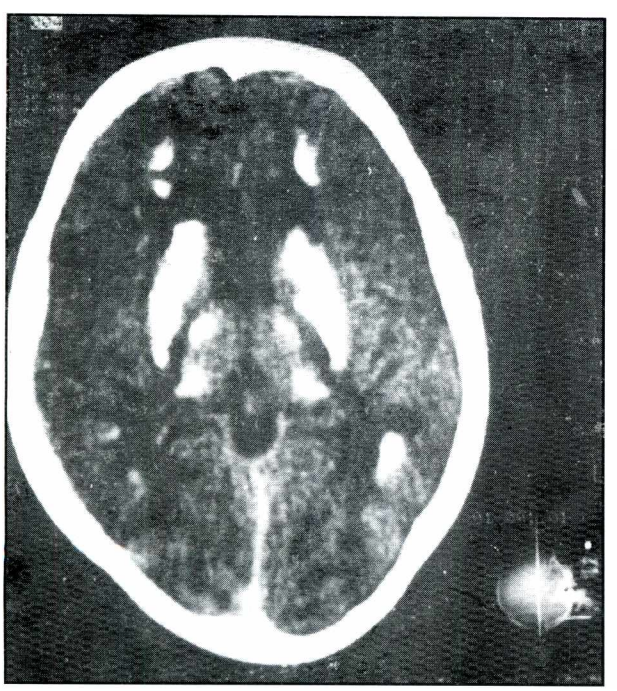


Fig. 3.36 : Basal ganglia calcification

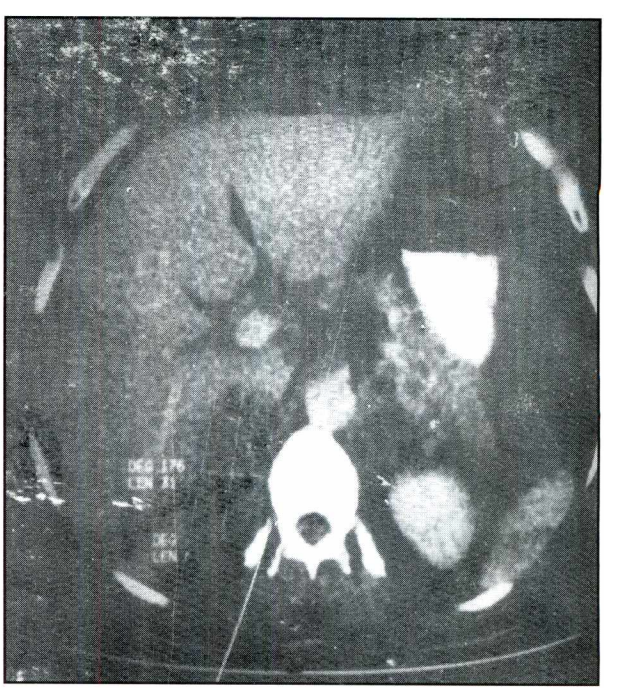


Fig. 3.37 : Bilateral adrenal tumour



Fig. 3.38 : Tuberculoma

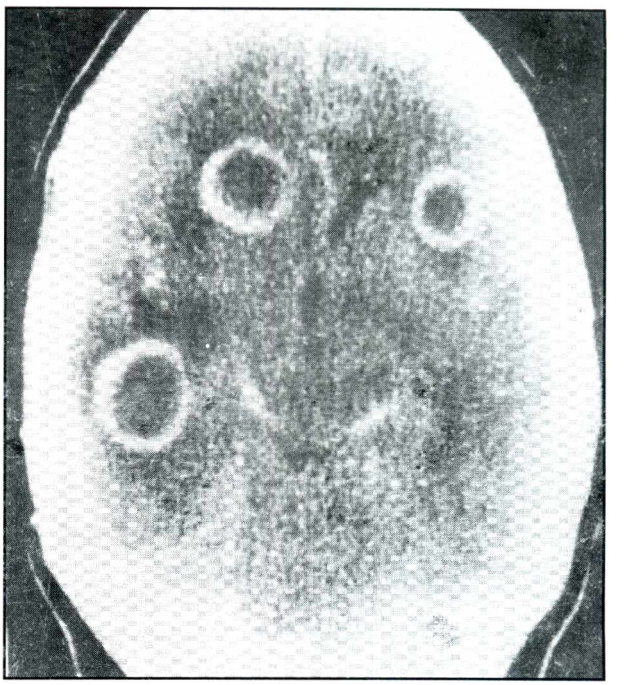


Fig. 3.39 : Multiple cerebral abscesses

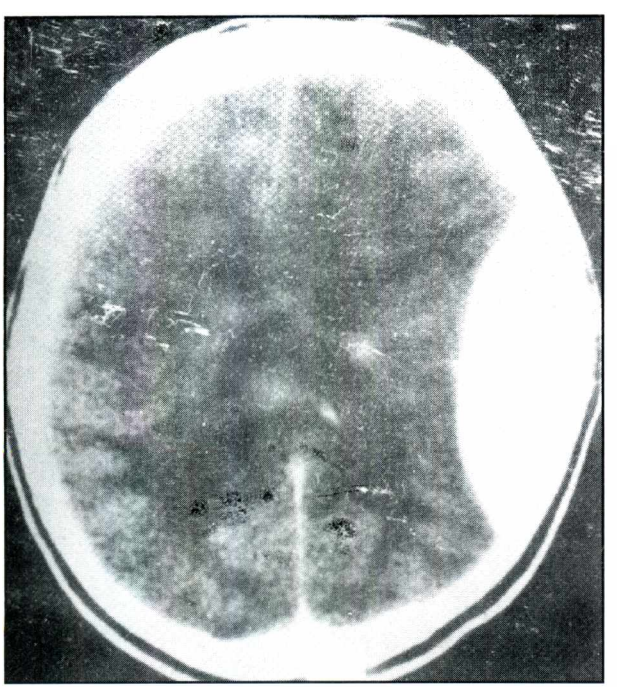


Fig. 3.40 : Epidural haematoma

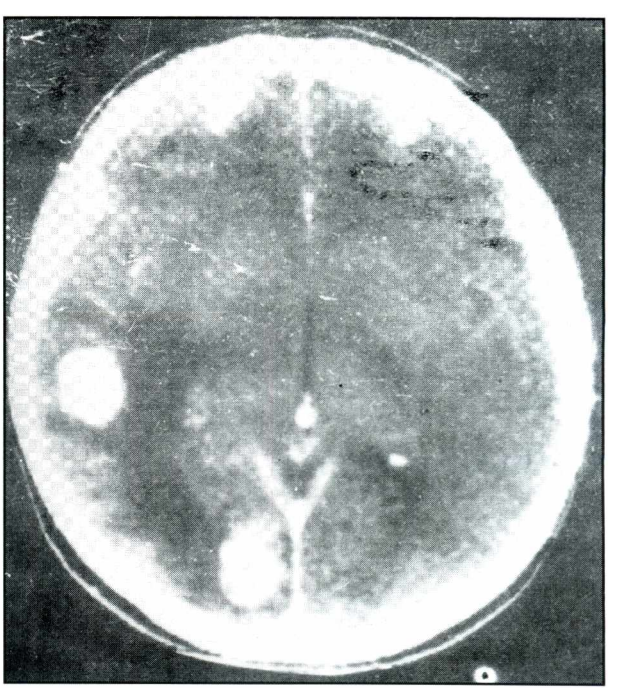


Fig. 3.41 : Cerebral metastases

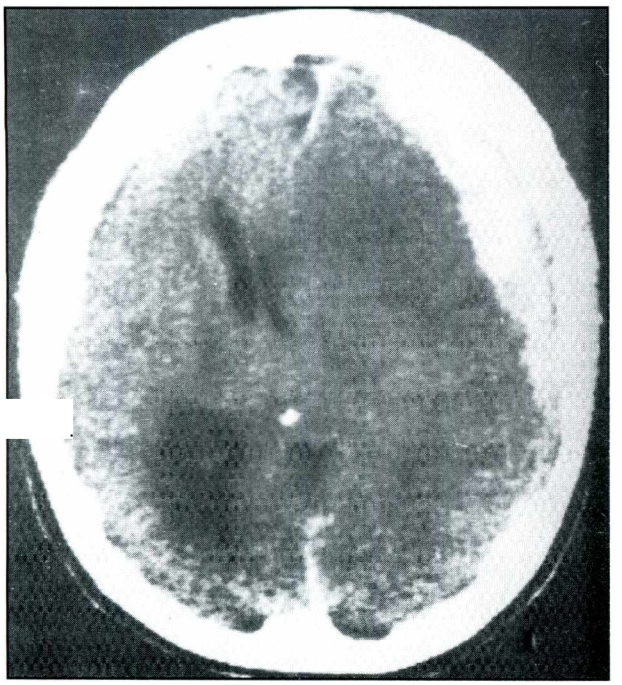


Fig. 3.42 : Acute subdural haematoma

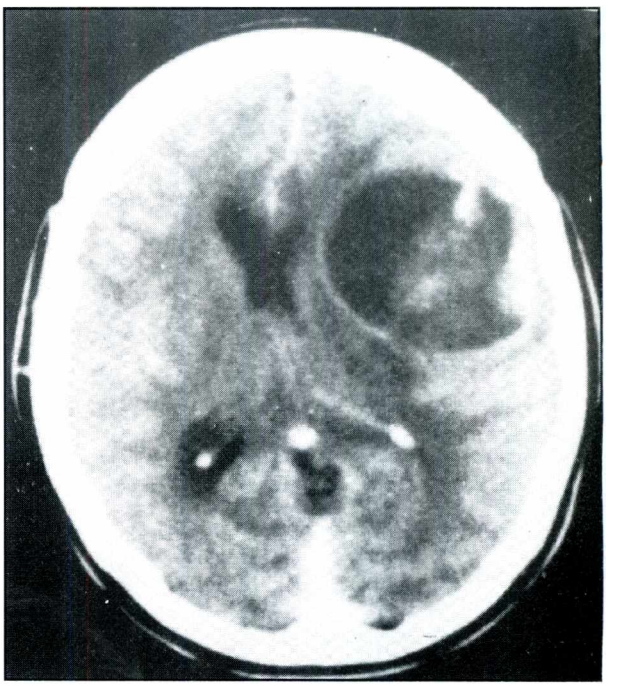


Fig. 3.43 : Intracerebral tumour

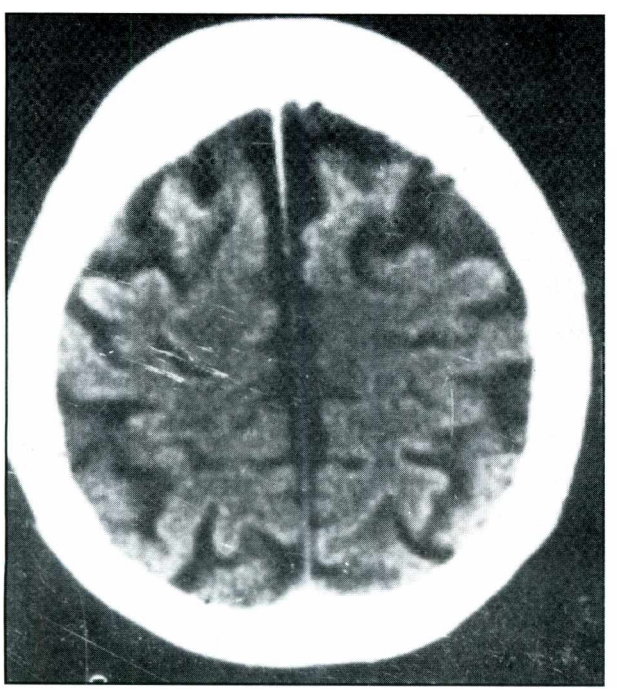


Fig. 3.44 : Cerebral atrophy

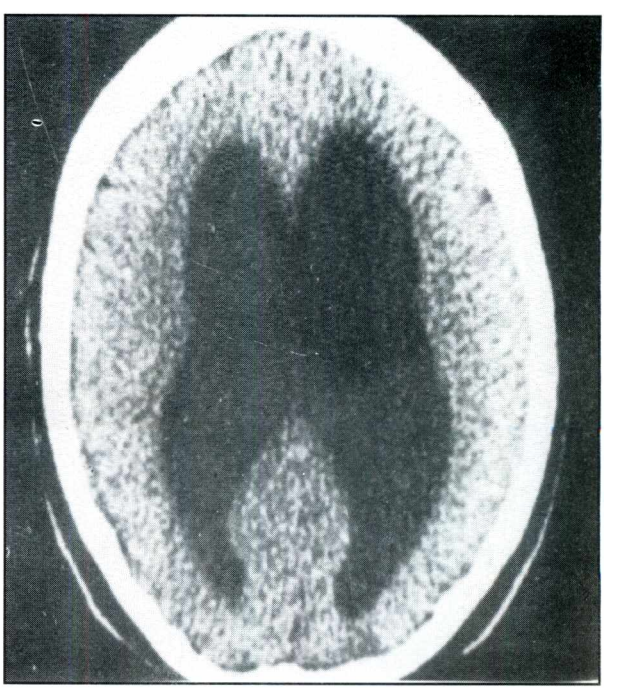


Fig. 3.45 : Hydrocephalus

6. Renal failure [hypercalcaemia, tubular damage due to excretion of light chains (Bence Jones proteinuria), hyperuricaemia, amyloid deposits, recurrent infections and infiltrations of the kidney by myeloma cells are the contributory factors],
7. Joint pain.
8. *Hyperviscosity syndrome* due to aggregation of IgM paraproteins (bleeding from gum or nose, thrombotic episodes, Raynaud's phenomenon, congestive heart failure, neurological manifestations like fatigue, malaise, paraesthesia, headache, fluctuating consciousness, mild impairment to abrupt loss of vision with 'string on sausages' appearance in ophthalmoscopy)—Plasmapheresis (and hydration) may give rapid relief.
9. Recurrent respiratory tract infection.
10. Amyloidosis (secondary).

Low-trauma fractures occur in :

1. Severe osteoporosis.
2. Metastatic bone disease.
4. Multiple myeloma.

M-band or M-component on electrophoretic strip :

1. Plasma cell neoplasms/disorders (mentioned above).
2. CML, CLL, lymphomas, breast carcinoma.
3. Non-neoplastic conditions : cirrhosis of liver, rheumatoid arthritis, sarcoidosis, myasthenia gravis.

What is "paraprotein' ?

Normal immunoglobulins are polyclonal but in multiple myeloma, plasma cells produce immunoglobulin of a single heavy and light chain, a 'monoclonal protein', which is known as paraprotein. These paraproteins are responsible for hyperviscosity, renal damage and amyloidosis (rare).

Confirmation of diagnosis :

Presence of at least two of the following confirms the diagnosis :

1. Monoclonal immunoglobulin, or light chains in blood or urine (by electrophoresis).
2. Bone marrow infiltration with malignant plasma cells (by bone marrow biopsy).
3. Osteolytic bone lesions (by radiology).

* Very high ESR (stormy ESR) and increased rouleaux formation make the pathologist suspicious.

** Plasma alkaline phosphatase level remains normal unless there is a fracture.

What is Bence Jones protein ?

The clone Which produces increased amount of intact monoclonal immunoglobulin, also synthesizes and secretes excess of free light chains that appear in the urine as monoclonal light chains, and is known as Bence Jones protein. Bence Jones proteinuria may also be found in primary amyloidosis, Waldenstrom's macroglobulinaemia and lymphoma.

Possible causes of osteosclerosis (bone turns absolutely whitish):

1. Fluorosis.
2. Secondary deposits from carcinoma of prostate (commonly), and rarely from breast, intestine or bronchus.
3. Hodgkin's disease (ivory vertebra), mastocytosis.
4. Marble bone disease (osteopetrosis or Albers-Schonberg disease).
5. Vitamin A or D toxicity (i.e., hypervitaminosis).
6. Diffuse idiopathic skeletal hyperostosis (Forrestier's disease).
7. Jaw in Paget's disease.
8. Renal osteodystrophy.
9. Osteopoikilosis.
10. Pycnodysostosis.

THALA9SAEMIA

(Fig. 3.27)

Description :

This is a lateral view of the skull which shows widening of diploic space (i.e., seperation of two tables) with faint outer table. The bony trabeculae are arranged perpendicular to the inner table giving rise to 'hair on end' appearance.

Orbital fossa, sinuses, pituitary fossa are within normal limit. No intracerebral calcification is noted.

Conclusion :

Chronic haemolytic anaemia, most probably thalassaemia major (commonest cause).

Radiological features of small bones of hand in thalassaemia :

1. Wide medullary cavity with coarse trabeculae and thinned out cortex (mosaic pattern).
2. Phalanges may loose their biconcave shape and ultimately become rectangular or biconvex.

[3. Long bones may also give rise to mosaic pattern].

Does thalassaemia minor produce these skeletal changes ?

Usually skeletal changes are absent in thalassaemia minor.

What are the other possible radiological changes in skull ?

1. Obliteration of paranasal air sinuses.
2. Slight prominence of frontal and maxillary bones.
3. Dental malposition.

* Very rarely, this type of skull X-ray picture is seen in severe iron deficiency anaemia.

MISCELLANEOUS SKULL X-RAYS

1. Raised intracranial tension—

a) Silver-beaten appearance (in children).
b) Sutural diastasis or seperation (in children).
c) Erosion of clinoid process.
d) Deepened sella turcica.
e) Enlargement of internal auditory meatus.

2. Acromegaly—

a) Thickened skull vault.
b) Enlarged sella turcica (i.e., pituitary fossa).
c) Large frontal and maxillary sinuses.
d) Prognathous mandible.

3. Hyperparathyroidism—spotty decalcification of skull.

4. Paget's disease—

a) Increase in size of the skull.
b) Marked thickening of bone.
c) Hazy opaque mottled appearance (moth-eaten appearance).

5. Intracranial calcification (on plain films)—

a) Primary tumours—glioma, meningioma, craniopharyngioma. Cerebral metastases do not give rise to calcification.

b) Vascular malformations—arteriovenous malformations, Sturge-Weber disease ('railroad track' or curvilinear calcification), cerebral aneurysm.

c) Multiple small discrete calcifications are produced by tuberous sclerosis, congenital toxoplasmosis and cytomegalovirus infection.

d) Old cerebral abscesses.

[F] X-RAY OF HANDS

SCURVY

(Fig. 3.28)

Description :

This is an AP and lateral view of lower part of the thigh, knee joint, leg and foot which reveals,

1. Pencilling of cortex of epiphysis or signet ring appearance of epiphysis (Wimberger's ring sign).
2. Increased density and widening at ends of tibia and fibula seen as white line (white line of Frankl).
3. Transverse band of radiolucency (black line) in the metaphysis, adjacent to white line of Frankl ('scurvy line' or Trummerfeld zone).
4. Ground-glass appearance of the shaft of diaphysis (uniform demineralisation).

* Other radiological features which are not evident in Fig. 3.28 are,

5. Angular lateral bony spurs of marginal fractures in the junction of diaphysis and metaphysis (Pelkan's sign).
6. Elevation of periosteum (as a result of subperiosteal haemorrhage which may rarely calcified).

Conclusion :

Scurvy.

Why the white line and black line are formed ?

a) White line of Frankl reflects impaired growth and continued deposition of calcium phosphate.

b) Scurvy line (black line) reflects failure of primary ossification.

* **Vitamin C deficiency (scurvy)** creates a condition where there is diminished production and maintenance of intracellular ground substance.

Differential diagnosis :

1. Traumatised child syndrome (absence of demineralisation of bone).
2. Heavy metal poisoning e.g., lead poisoning (no osteopenia, and absence of zone of translucency).

Clinical features of infantile scurvy :

Usually It is seen in between 6-18 months of age.

1. Fretful, listless and anorexic child who cries on being handled.
2. Reluctance to move the painful limbs (pseudoparalysis).
3. Symptoms due to haemorrhage :
   a) Subperiosteal—'Frog position' with thighs flexed as well as abducted, and knees flexed.
   b) Bleeding from gum; gum is swollen and spongy too.
   c) Bleeding into skin, mucous membrane; orbit—petechiae or proptosis.
   d) Beading of ribs as a result of posterior displacement of sternum—Scorbutic rosary (angular and sharp in contrast to rickety rosary which in semicircular and dome-shaped).
   e) Haematochezia, haematuria and intracranial haemorrhages are rarely seen.
4. Low grade pyrexia, pallor (anaemia) and extreme weakness.

* **In adults,** there is spongy-swollen-bleeding gums, perifollicular haemorrhages and hyperkeratotic papules, petechiae, ecchymoses, splinter haemorrhages, deformed 'cork-screw' hair projecting from hair follicle, poor wound healing, and muscle and joint haemorrhages.

** Manifestations of scurvy in gums are not seen in edentulous (teethless) persons.

Dose of vitamin C in scurvy :

250 mg of vitamin C should be given 3 times daily.

* Recommended daily intake of ascorbic acid for children and adults are respectively 20 mg and 50 mg.

Dietary sources of vitamin C :

Fresh citrus fruits are good sources. Amla, guava, orange, lemon, tomato, drumstick leaves, amaranth, papaya, cabbage, cauliflower are rich in ascorbic acid. Breast milk contains adequate amount of vitamin C.

RICKETS

(Fig. 3.29)

Description :

This skiagram shows AP view of lower parts of the forearm, wrist joint and part of the hand which reveals cupping, widening and fraying (saucer deformity) of the lower end of radius and ulna. There is generalised demineralisation of bones (osteopenia) present. The epiphysis appears indistinct and lacks a bony cortical margin. Broadening of the wrist (soft tissue shadow) is seen. There is increased distance between the distal end of radius-ulna and metacarpal bones because of non-calcification of rachitic metaphysis.

* Other radiological features not present in Fig. 3.29 are, cortical spurs from metaphysis growing towards displaced epiphysis (produces deformity), and green-stick fracture with bending and deformities.

Conclusion :

Rickets.

Radiological features of x-ray skull in rickets :

1. Delayed closure of anterior fontanelle.
2. Frontal and parietal bossing.
3. Quadrate skull.
4. Widening of sutures.
5. Late appearance of temporary teeth.

Differential diagnosis :

One can not differentiate among different causes of rickets by seeing the X-ray plate only. The X-ray plate of rickets (cupping and fraying) may be confused with metaphyseal dysostosis and hypophosphatasia.

Radiological signs of 'healing' rickets :

1. The radiological density is increased and roughness is diminished.
2. Epiphyseal cartilage becomes horizontal.
3. Horizontal 'Harrison's line' are seen in the lower end of diaphysis (initialy near the epiphysis).

Causes of rickets :

1. Deficiency of Vitamin D—Dietary deficiency, deficient endogenous synthesis (e.g., inadequate exposure to sunlight).
2. Gastrointestinal disturbances—Malabsorpsion (commonest cause in India), gastrectomy, hepatic disorders, chronic pancreatic insufficiency.
3. Disturbances of vitamin D metabolism—Hereditary and acquired (use of anticonvulsants e.g., phenytoin sodium or chronic renal failure).
4. Renal disorders—
   a) Renal tubular acidosis.
   b) Fanconi's syndrome.
   c) Familial hypophosphataemic rickets.
5. Primary defect in mineralisation of bone—
   a) Hypophosphatasia (deficiency of alkaline phosphatase).
   b) Treatment by fluoride.

6. Prolonged lactation and frequent pregnancies.
7. Non-renal acidosis—
   a) Ureterosigmoidostomy.
   b) Chronic acetazolamide or ammonium chloride intake.
8. Conditions with rapid bone formation e.g., osteopetrosis or marble bone disease.

Read 'Bedside Clinics in Medicine, Part I' for further details.

Table 9 : Biochemical features of common bone diseases

Diseases	Calcium	Phosphate	Alkaline phosphatase
Osteoporosis	N	N	N
Osteomalacia or rickets	*I* or N	1 or N	T
Hyperparathyroidism	T	*i*	N
Hypoparathyroidism	1	T	N
Secondary deposits	T	N	T
Multiple myeloma	T	N	N
Paget's disease	N	N	t

* Alkaline phosphatase is increased in hyperparathyroidism with significant bone involvement, and in multiple myeloma with healing fracture of bones (as osteoblastic activity tries to repair fracture).

MISCELLANEOUS HAND X-RAYS

1. Rheumatoid arthritis—

a) Periarticular osteopenia.
b) Loss of articular cartilage (4. of joint space).
c) Periarticular bone erosions.
d) Subluxation of the joints (or ankylosis).
e) Marked osteoporosis may be evident.
f) Varying degree of deformities.

* In the hand, mainly the PIP and MCP joints are affected.

2. Osteoarthritis—

a) Arthritis of the thumb, i.e., involvement of 1st carpometacarpal joint (the joint space is 4.).
b) Hard bony nodules are seen over the dorsal aspect of DIP (Heberden's node) and PIP (Bouchard's node).

3. Chronic haemolytic anaemia—read radiology of 'Thalassaemia'.

4. Acromegaly—

a) The hand is large.
b) Tufting of terminal phalanges, i.e., 'arrow-head appearance'.
c) Widening of MCP joints spaces due to overgrowth of articular cartilage.

5. Resorption of terminal phalanges—

Subperiosteal bone resorption in terminal phalanx is characteristic of :

a) Scleroderma (may have soft tissue calcification)
b) Leprosy.
c) Hyperparathyroidism (rarely may reveal arterial calcification).
d) Acromegoly.

* The fingers may mimick clubbing (known as pseudoclubbing).

6. Gout—

a) Soft tissue swelling (due to underlying arthritis)—periarticular.

b) Typical well-defined punched-out erosion with an overhanging edge over the joints (Martel's sign).

c) Tophi—large soft tissue lumps (due to deposits of monosodium urate crystals) are seen; may show calcification.

Short description of Fig. 3.30 to Fig. 3.33 :

Fig. 3.30 ; This is a skiagram of the chest, PA view which shows bilateral upper and mid-zonal fibrosis (right > left) with cavity formations. Lower zones of the lung reveal evidence of compensatory emphysema. The costophrenic angles are clear.

Impression — Fibro-cavitary lesion of the lung probably resulting from tuberculosis.

Fig. 3.31 : The X-ray plate reveals skiagram of the chest, PA view demonstrating elevated right dome of diaphragm. The pulmonary parenchyma, costophrenic angles, cardiac silhouette and mediastinum are within normal limit.

Inpression — Elevated right dome of diaphragm (the possibilities are mentioned in page 93).

Fig. 3.32 : This is a X-ray picture showing myelogram of a patient with right anterior oblique view of the chest. There is cord compression at upper thoracic level.

Impression — Myelogram demonstrating cord compression (the patient will have paraparesis/ paraplegia).

Fig. 3.33 : This is AP view of lower part of radius and ulna, carpals, metacarpals and phalanges of both hands featuring 'subperiosteal new bone formation' at lower end of both radius.

Impression — Hypertrophic osteoarthropathy (i.e., Grade IV clubbing; differential diagnosis closely resembles thyroid acropachy).

[G] A SYNOPSIS OF COMPUTED TOMOGRAPHY (CT) SCAN

The advent of X-ray computed tomography (CT) in the early 1970s was a major milestone, since it has revolutionized the ability to visualize the inside of a patient's body. In 1979, the Nobel Prize for the invention of CT scan was shared by **Godfrey Hounsfield,** a British engineer and Allen Cormack, a physicist. The CT came in 1970s, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) in 1980s, and positron emission tomography (PET) and single-photon emission computed tomography (SPECT) thereafter. CT scanning provides a very sensitive method for evaluating suspected lesions in the central nervous system. The parallel and thinly collimated X-ray beam traverse synchronously across a slice of brain tissue between 2 mm and 13 mm thick; the X-irradiation is computer processed and a value (Hounsfield number) is given to its density [e.g., air (black) = - 1000 units, water (less black than air) = 0, and bone (white) = + 1000). The difference in density (i.e., X-ray attenuation) makes it possible to differentiate between extravasated blood, cerebral oedema, space occupying lesion (SOL) or infarction. Contrast enhancement by intravenous iodinated contrast media helps to diagnose lesions with increased blood supply (e.g., angioma, some SOL) and cerebral oedema. The irradiation involved in CT and MRI scan is negligible.

Table 10 : Attenuation values of different tissues

Tissue	Hounsfield units
Air	-1000
Fat	upto-100
Fluid	0-20
Soft tissue	20-100
White matter	30-35
Grey matter	35-45
Acute haemorrhage	55-75
Calcification	90-200
Bone	1000

CT scan of brain and spinal cord demonstrates cerebral haemorrhage, cerebral Infarction, intracranial SOL, subarachnoid haemorrhage, 'mass effect' by lateral shifting of midline structures, hydrocephalus, subdural and epidural haematoma, calcification within a lesion, cerebral atrophy, fracture of skull or vertebra, spinal tumours (CT-myelography) etc.

In MRI scan, protons are imaged with radiofrequency waves, and $T_{1(}$ T_2 and other sequence-weighted images are recorded. One of the advantages of MRI scan is that it involves no ionising radiation, and the other is that it distinguishes between white and grey matter in the brain and spinal cord. The intravenous contrast used in MRI scan contains gadolinium. Following are the situations where MRI is specially useful for evaluation :

1. Demyelinating disease (e.g., plaques of multiple sclerosis).
2. Posterior fossa tumours or vascular lesions.
3. Dementia.
4. Pituitary imaging.
5. Leucodys trophies.
6. MR angiography for arteriovenous malformations.
7. Myelopathy (spinal cord, spinal canal and nerve roots are imaged clearly) e.g., prolapsed intervertebral disc, syringomyelia, vascular malformations.
8. Imaging musculo-skeletal soft tissue diseases or injuries, e.g., shoulder or knee pain.
9. AIDS-associated diseases of brain.
11. Visual disturbances — for imaging beyond retina.

* MRI scan is very helpful in detecting hypothalamic and cranial nerve lesions, white matter lesion and lesion in brainstem.

CT and MRI scan are very safe except the contrast-related systemic reactions experienced by a minority of patients. MRI is costlier than CT.and more time-consuming. The common contraindications of MRI scan are :

1. Patients having pacemaker.
2. Bullet injury (bullets inside the body),
3. Cochlear implant,
4. Along with splint and traction.
5. Tattoed eye-liner, and
6. Any ferro-magnetic clip (e.g., clipping cerebral aneurysm) present within the body. Claustrophobia is a relative contraindication.

CT scan of thorax gives an excellent anatomic details of hilum, pulmonary parenchyma and pleura. Coventionally thick slices (10 mm) are taken. High resolution computed tomography (HRCT) produces thinner slices (1.5 mm). HRCT helps in diagnosis of bronchiectasis, insterstitial lung disease, infiltrative diseases of lung, pulmonary neoplasms, asbestos-related pleural plaques, and planning for radiotherapy.

CT scan of abdomen delineates liver, spleen, gall bladder, kidney, aorta, stomach (barium-filled), pancreas and spine (vertebra). It is helpful in diagnosis of pancreatic diseases, hepatic neoplasms, malignant deposits, ascites, assessment of vascularity of tumour and tumour staging.

In the examination, mount the CT-plate correctly in the view-box (by seeing the patient's name and other write-up) and say : 'it is the CT scan plate of brain showing different cut sections..... and there is a big hyperdense shadow in right parieto-temporal region..... ; the final dignosis is.....'. Try to comment on skull bone (e.g., any fracture), ventricles (e.g., full with blood or 'cupping' seen), midline shift, brain parenchyma etc.

The CT scan plates are described below :

Fig. 3.34 : This is a CT scan of brain which reveals a big intracerebral bleed/haematoma (white) in right cerebral hemisphere with perilesional cerebral oedema (black). Mass effect with midline shift to the left is noted. Choroid plexus calcification is seen bilaterally. The skull bone is intact.

N.B. : The patient will have left-sided complete hemiplegia. It is a patient of cerebral haemorrhage.

Fig. 3.35 : This is a CT scan of brain showing paraventricular triangular hypodense lesion of cerebral infarction on the right hemisphere.

N.B. : the patient will have left-sided complete hemiplegia, and is due to cerebral thrombosis, cerebral embolism and vasculitis (rare).

Fig. 3.36 : This is a CT scan of brain which shows bilateral basal ganglia calcification (white). Calcification in other parts of brain is also seen.

N.B. : common causes of *basal ganglia calcification* are : idiopathic (commonest), familial, hypoparathyroidism, pseudohypoparathyroidism, carbon monoxide poisoning (attempted hanging) and toxoplasmosis (congenital).

Fig. 3.37 : The CT scan of abdomen demonstrates liver, spleen, aorta, stomach (barium-filled) and spine. The left kidney has a mass in its upper pole though the right kidney is not properly visualized; rather a big mass (marked by radiologist) is seen in the right side. Considering the facts, it seems to be a case of bilateral adrenal (suprarenal) tumour.

N.B. : This is a CT scan picture of adrenal tuberculosis. The usual mode of presentation is Addison's disease (i.e., hypofunction of adrenal cortex).

Fig. 3.38 : Contrast-enhanced CT scan of brain (CECT) showing an isodense mass with ring enhancement in the left periventricular region with enlargement of ventricles. This is a patient with tuberculoma in brain.

Fig. 3.39 : CECT scan of brain reveals multiple large 'ring lesions'. This is a case of multiple cerebral abscesses in the white matter.

Fig. 3.40 : The non-contrast-enhanced CT scan of brain showing a peripheral high-density biconvex blood collection. This patient suffers from subacute epidural haematoma.

Fig. 3.41 : CECT scan of brain shows two hyperdense masses in the right posterior temporal and occipital lobes. The lesions enhance homogeneously; perilesional oedema and a slight midline shift to the left is seem. This is a patient of cerebral metastases from carcinoma of colon.

Fig. 3.42 : This is an axial non-contrast-enhanced CT scan of brain showing a peripheral high density extracerebral collection within the subdural space which compresses the left cerebral hemisphere; there is a midline shift. This is a patient of acute subdural haematoma.

Fig. 3.43 : CECT scan of brain demonstrates a well-marginated cyst with central mass in the left cerebral hemisphere; there is midline shift towards right. This is a case of intracerebral tumour (astrocytoma).

Fig. 3.44 ; Axial CT sections of brain shows enlargement of cortical sulci over the convexities. This is the CT scan brain of a 83-years old man having cerebral (cortical) atrophy.

Fig. 3.45 : This is .a CT scan of brain showing symmetrical enlargement (dilatation) of the entire ventricular system. The patient is suffering from communicating hydrocephalus.

* CT scan feature of meningitis is 'diffuse meningeal enhancement'.

** *'Ring lesion'* (single or multiple; outer white ring with inner black shadow) in brain is seen in :

1. Tuberculoma.
2. N eurocysticercosis.
3. Brain abscess.
4. Cerebral metastasis.
5. Venous infarcts.
6. Others—Fungal infection, glioma, demyelinating disorders, toxoplasma, resolving haematoma. CNS lymphoma*etc..

In CT scan, white shadow means hyperdense lesion and black shadow means hypodense lesion.

N.B. : One has to remember that imaging modalities of choice during pregnancy are ultrasound and MRI. In disorders of musculoskeletal system, investigation of choice is MRI.

CHAPTER IV : ELECTROCARDIOGRAPHY

Introduction and basic principles :

The graphic recording of the electrical activity of the heart is known as electrocardiogram or ECG. The ECG is recorded by applying electrodes to different parts of the body and connecting those electrodes to an electrocardiographic apparatus. It is inexpensive, easily accessible, simple to interpret, and provides wealth of information about cardiac status of the patient.

The specially prepared ECG paper (usually pink or blue in colour) is made of small and large squares. Five small squares make one large square. The horizontal and vertical lines are present at 1 mm interval. Heavier lines of large squares are present every 5 mm. Time is measured along the horizontal lines; **one small square is equal to 0.04 second in duration,** and one large square is equal to 0.2 second (i.e., 0.04 x 5). Voltage is measured along the vertical lines and is expressed in mm, and **10 mm is equal to 1 mV** (the usual calibration in ECG is a 1 mV signal that produces a 10 mm deflection). The ECG **paper moves at a speed of 25 mm/second,** i.e., 1500 mm/minute, i.e., 1500 small squares (so called 300 large squares) are covered in 1 minute and thus to calculate the heart rate, one should divide 1500 by the number of small squares present in between two heart beats (R-R interval).

Any deflection above the baseline (isoelectric line) is known as positive deflection and that below the baseline is regarded as negative deflection.

A normal heart has P, Q, R, S, T and U waves (> 5 mm) in ECG. Small waves of < 5 mm in height are designated by small letters (q, r, s).

P wave — Normally upright and signifies atrial depolarisation; precedes the QRS complex.

Q wave — The initial negative deflection that precedes the R wave.

R wave — The first positive deflection of the QRS complex, i.e., ventricular depolarisation.

S wave — The negative deflection of QRS complex that follows R wave.

T wave — Normally upright and signifies ventricular repolarisation; follows S wave.

U wave — Positive deflection that follows T wave and is probably due to slow repolarisation of interventricular (Purkinje) conduction system.

R-R interval — Distance between two successive R waves. It helps in counting the heart rate i.e., R-R interval 15 mm = heart rate 100/minute (1500/15), and R-R interval 25 mm = heart rate 60/minute (1500/25).

P-R interval — It is the time taken for an impulse to traverse from the SA node to the ventricles. This is the period of conduction pause at AV node. It is measured from the beginning of the P wave to the onset of the QRS complex (more accurately P-Q interval) and is normally in the range of 0.12-0.20 second. P-R interval must be correlated with the heart rate.

Q-T interval — It is the time taken for the total ventricular events (i.e., depolarisation as well as repolarisation) and is measured from the beginning of the Q wave to the end of the T wave. The normal Q-T interval is usually 0.35 to 0.44 second.

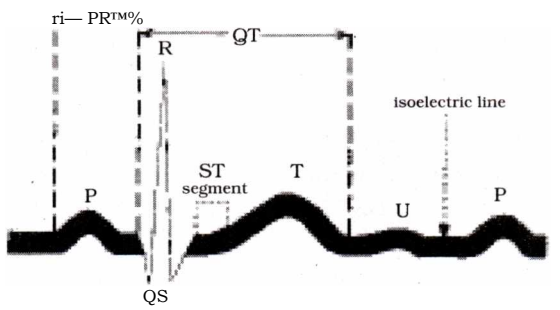


Fig. 4.1 : Diagram of ECG complexes, segments and intervals

Uses of ECG in clinical practice :

1. Hypertrophy of cardiac chambers, myocardial isehaemia or infarction, arrhythmias, different heart blocks, pericardial diseases.
2. Effects of drugs and electrolytes on the heart.
3. Evaluation of efficacy of angioplasty or by-pass surgery.
4. Holter monitoring and stress ECG.

Leads in surface BCG :

Conventionally, 12 leads ECG are used in day to day practice (I, II, III, avR, aVL, aVF, $V_{1(j)}$). The right leg electrode and the lead act as a ground wire.

Bipolar standard limb leads — Lead I, Lead II, Lead III.

Unipolar (augmented) limb leads — aVR, aVL, aVF.

Unipolar precordial or chest leads — V_t, V_2, V , V_4, V_s, V_6.

Lead I, II, III, aVR, aVL, aVF reflect electrical activity of heart in the frontal plane while lead V, to V_6 reflect the same in the horizontal plane. Each standard lead measures the potential differences between two extremity electrodes : lead I = left arm-right arm voltages, lead II = left leg-right arm, and lead III = left leg-left arm.

Besides these leads, oesophageal leads (E) are there to record magnified atrial complexes and to explore the posterior surface of left ventricle (introduced through nasal catheter). Unipolar intracardiac leads (recorded from right atrium or right ventricle) may be used for clarification of different types of arrhythmias.

Though in routine screening of ECG '12-leads' are employed, in following progress of arrhythmia a 'long lead II' or V, is needed, or it is wise to explore higher (e.g., 3Vj $_9$) and more lateral areas of precordium (e.g., V_{3R}, V_{4R}) in a doubtful case of acute myocardial infarction. The common precordial positions of the chest leads are as follows :

Vj : 4th intercostal space (ICS) at the right sternal border

V_2 : 4th ICS at the left sternal border

V_3 : Equidistant from V_2 and V_4 leads

V_4 : 5th ICS in the left MCL (midclavicular line). All the subsequent leads ($V_{5–9}$) are placed in the same horizontal plane (i.e., in left 5th ICS) as. V_4

V_5 : Anterior axillary line

V_6 : Midaxillary line

V_7 : Posterior axillary line

V_8 : Posterior scapular line

V_9 : Left border of the spine

V_{3R-9R} : Taken on the right chest in the same location as left-sided leads V_{39}; V_{2R} is therefore same as V

3V, $_9$: Taken one intercostal space higher than V,$_9$; these are 3rd interspace leads. Similarly 2nd ICS and 6th ICS leads will be respectively 2V, $_9$ and 6V, $_9$

VE : Taken over ensiform cartilage

* *Lead aVR* is usually oriented to the cavity of the heart and thus deflections of P-QRST are normally negative in this lead.

Avis *deviation :*

A 'hexaxial reference system' using standard leads and unipolar limb leads, deduced from **'Einthoven triangle'** reflects the mean QRS vector as follows :

Normal axis lies between -30° and +100°

Left axis deviation between -30° and -90°

Right axis deviation between +100° and ±180°

Indeterminate axis (or extreme right axis deviation) between -90° and ± 180°

* Axis lying between 0° to -30° is often known as mild left axis deviation.

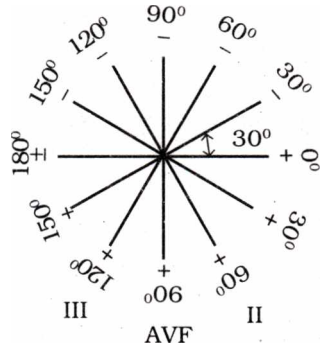


Fig. 4.2 : Hexaxial reference system

Determination of axis :

The positive pole of lead I is considered as 0° and the negative pole of lead I as ±180°; the positive pole of aW is designated as +90° and the negative pole of aVF as -90°. The QRS complexes (positive or negative deflection) is marked or plotted in lead I and aVF accordingly, and the axis is determined accurately (lead I and aVF are perpendicular to each other, and are routinely used to calculate the axis in clinical practice). One may consider lead II and aVL, or lead III and aVR for axis calculation. Actually, the net positive or net negative QRS deflection in lead I and lead aVF is calculated (by subtracting the smaller deflection above or below the isoelectric line, from the larger deflection) and finally plotted for axis determination. One example is given below for better understanding :

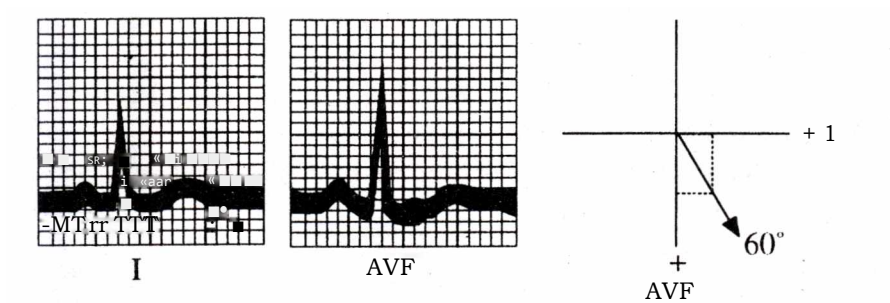


Fig. 4.3 : Diagrammatic illustration of axis determination. The QRS axis is approximately +60°

Causes of left axis deviation —

1. Left ventricular hypertrophy (LVH).
2. Left bundle branch block.
3. Left anterior hemiblock.
4. W-P-W syndrome.
5. Hyperkalaemia.
6. Endocardial cushion defect e.g., ostium primum type ASD.
7. Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy.
8. Mechanical shifts e.g., expiration, obesity, high diaphragm resulting from pregnancy, ascites. abdominal tumours.

Causes of right axis deviation —

1. Right ventricular hypertrophy (RVH), right ventricular strain.
2. Right bundle branch block.
3. Left posterior hemiblock.
4. Normal variation; infants.
5. During inspiration; thin built.
6. Dextrocardia.
7. Emphysema and cor pulmonale.
8. Ostium secundum type ASD, Fallot's tetralogy.

Position of the heart: *

As anatomical rotation is rare, rotation of the heart refers to rotation of the electrical forces. Rotation of the heart may occur on either the antero-posterior axis (i.e., frontal plane) or the oblique axis (i.e., horizontal plane).

Rotation on the antero-posterior axis or **lie of the heart** is diagnosed by axis deviation :

a) Horizontal (-30°)—aVL shows major upward deflection while aVF shows major downward deflection of QRS complex.
b) Semihorizontal (0°)
c) Intermediate (+30°)—both aVL and aVF show major upward deflection (it is the normal position of heart).
d) Semivertical (+60°), and
e) Vertical (+90°)—aVF shows major upward deflection and aVL shows major downward deflection.

Rotation (electrical) on the oblique axis is diagnosed by the precordial leads :

a) Clockwise rotation — Persisting S waves in V_5 and V_6 (i.e., rS complexes in V_5 and V_g).
b) Anti-clockwise rotation — Appearance of left ventricular complexes as early as V_2 (i.e., qR complexes in V_2, V_3).

* Clockwise or anti-clockwise rotation is considered when the heart is viewed through the diaphragm.

Technique of reading or reporting ECG :

1. Standardisation
2. Voltage
3. Heart rate
4. Rhythm
5. Axis
6. Lie and rotation
7. P Wave
8. P-R interval
9. QRS complex
10. ST segment
11. T wave
12. U Wave
13. Q-T duration
14. Final diagnosis or conclusion

* In arrhythmia, study of 'long strip' of lead II is necessary.

** **In the examination,** hold the ECG strip correctly (put your left hand over lead I and right hand over V_6; some small printing from ECG paper manufacturer will help you to select the upper and lower borders of ECG strip) and read the ECG in this way : 'it is the 12-lead strip of electrocardiogram showing normal standardisation..... voltage .....heart rate ..... rhythm ..... axis..... and the final diagnosis is..... '.

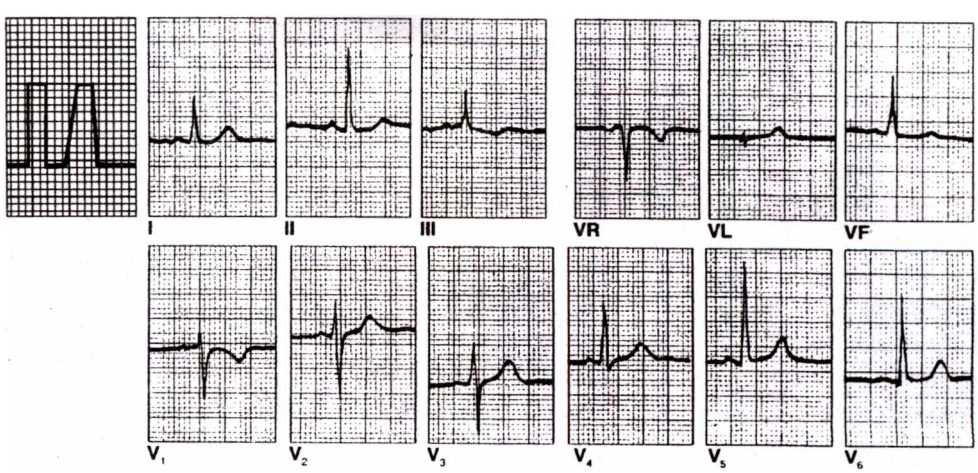


Fig.4.4 : Normal electrocardiogram

DIFFERENT WAVES, COMPLEXES AND INTERVALS :

P WAVE

P wave signifies atrial activity. This is best visualised in lead II and V_r and normally it is upright in lead I, II, aVF and $V_{3\ 6}$. P wave is inverted in aVR and frequently in V_r Normally it does not exceed 2.5 mm in height and 0.12 second in duration (i.e., horizontally).

The abnormalities are :

1. Wide and notched (also known as **P-mitrale;** as mitral valve disease is a common cause of this abnormality)—Indicates left atrial hypertrophy. Notching is considered significant when the distance between two peaks exceeds 0.04 second.

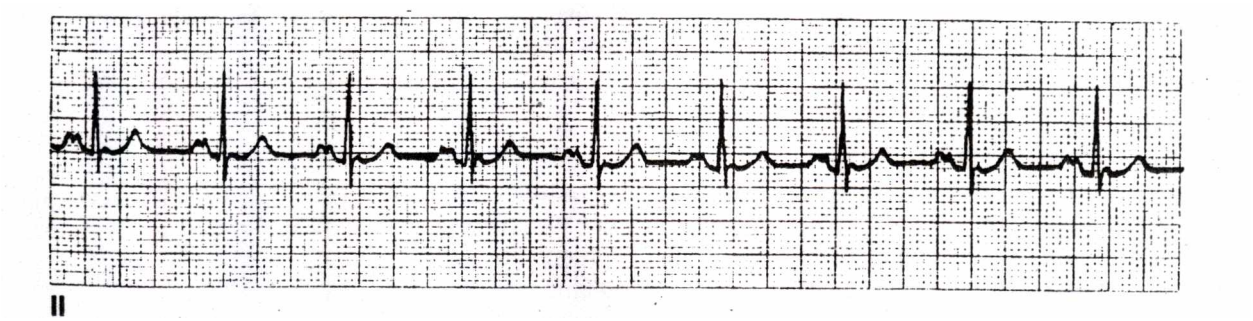


Fig. 4.5 A : P-mitrale

2. Tall and peaked (also known as **P-pulmonale;** as severe pulmonary disease is a common cause of this abnormality)—Indicates right atrial hypertrophy when the height of P wave is greater than 2.5 mm.

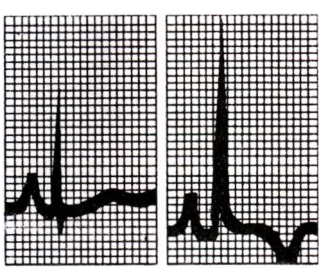


Fig. 4.5 B : P-pulmonale

3. Absent—In atrial fibrillation, nodal rhythm, SA block and sometimes in hyperkalaemia.
4. Inverted (in lead I)—In wrong electrode placement by the technician, dextrocardia or possibly due to retrograde atrial activation (e.g., nodal rhythm).
5. Diphasic or biphasic P wave—The P wave in V, may be normally biphasic with a shallow, terminal negative component. If the terminal negative component is prominent, it indicates left atrial hypertrophy.
6. Deformed—In atrial fibrillation, P waves are replaced by numerous small, rapid, irregular fibrillation (f) waves. In atrial flutter, P waves are replaced by flutter (F) waves which give the baseline a corrugated or saw-toothed appearance.

Summary :

Right atrial enlargement — P-pulmonale in lead II and lead V_l

Left atrial enlargement — P-mitrale in lead II, and/or diphasic P wave with prominent negative terminal component in lead

* Common causes of atrial hypertrophy/enlargement are :

Mitral or tricuspid stenosis, secondary to LVH (develops left atrial enlargement) or RVH (develops right atrial enlargement), secondary to pulmonary hypertension or cor pulmonale, mitral incompetence, left atrial myxoma etc.

QRS COMPLEX

This complex comprises of Q, R and S waves, and is produced as a result of ventricular depolarisation (i.e., septal activation).

(A) Q wave — It signifies depolarisation of the ventricular septum from left to right side.

(B) R wave — It signifies depolarisation of the ventricles. Initially, the anteroseptal portion is depolarised followed by the major muscle mass of ventricles.

(C) S wave — It denotes depolarisation of the posterobasal part of the left ventricle, pulmonary conus and the superiormost part of the ventricular septum.

The height of QRS complex is different in different leads. The height also depends on the position of the heart and the degree of abnormality.

Voltage criteria of QRS complex :

a) Low voltage — When the QRS complex is < 5 mm (i.e., 5 small squares) in limb leads visiting Lead I, II, III, aVR, aVL and aVF, and <10 mm (i.e., 10 small squares) in precordial leads visiting V_1 to V_6, it is designated as low voltage. Common causes are,

1. Incorrect standardisation by the technician.
2. Obesity or thick chest wall.
3. Emphysema.
4. Pericardial effusion or chronic constrictive pericarditis.
5. Myxoedema.
6. Panhypopituitarism.

b) High voltage — Tall QRS complexes usually signifies ventricular hypertrophy (criteria for LVH and RVH are described afterwards).

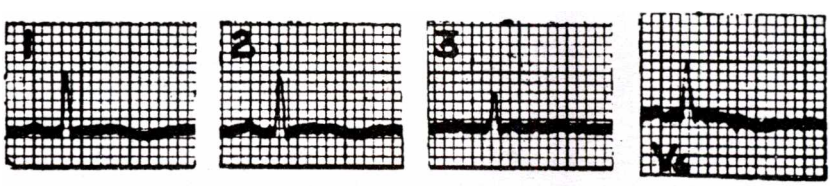


Fig. 4.6 : Low voltage in a case of myxoedema

T WAVE

It is a dome-shaped wave with two asymmetrical limbs, and is produced as a result of ventricular repolarisation. It is normally upright, except in leads III, aVR, V, and V_2.

The abnormalities are :

1. Tall peaked T wave — In hyperkalaemia, acute subendocardial ischaemia or infarction, often in true posterior wall myocardial infarction.

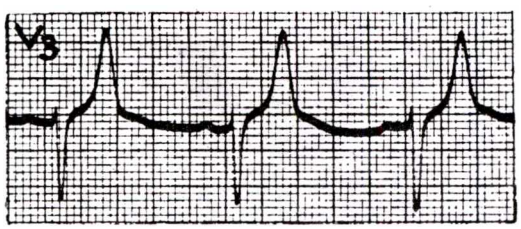
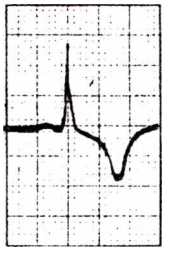


Fig. 4.7 : Tall T wave

2. Low or Inverted T wave — Indicates coronary heart disease or myocardial ischaemia, ventricular 'strain' pattern, constrictive pericarditis, hypokalaemia, CVA (subarachnoid haemorrhage). In myocardial infarction, two limbs of the T wave may be symmetrical.



V_5

Fig. 4.8 : Inverted T wave

3. Flat T wave — In thick chest wall, emphysema, myocardial ischaemia, myocarditis, pericardial effusion, myxoedema and hypokalaemia.

* Following the T-wave there is a brief 'isoelectric period' of 0.04 sec.

U WAVE

It is usually a positive deflection which comes after T wave and precedes the P wave of the next cycle. It is possibly produced as a result of slow repolarisation of the Purkinje's fibres, the interventricular septum and the papillary muscles. Many a time, the U wave is not evident in ECG. It is usually best seen in lead V_2 to V_4.

The abnormalities are :

1. Prominent U wave — In hypokalaemia.
2. Inverted U wave (i.e., U wave which is opposite in direction to the T wave) — In coronary heart disease (acute myocardial infarction), hypertensive heart disease, acute pulmonary thromboembolism, intracerebral haemorrhage.

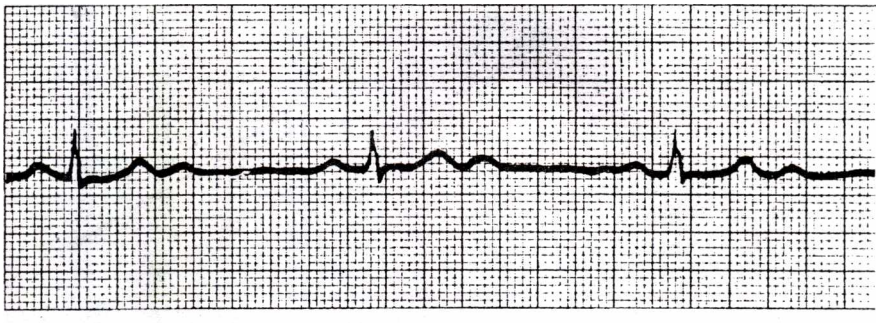


Fig. 4.9 : U wave in hypokalaemia

ST *SEGMENT*

The ST segment measurement is taken from the end of the QRS complex to the beginning of the T wave. Though usually 'isoelectric', it may vary from -0.5 mm (depressed) to +2 mm (elevated) in precordial leads. The diagnosis of depressed or elevated ST segment is evaluated in comparison to the **T-P segment** (i.e., the base line between the termination of the T wave and the begenning of the P wave of the next cycle). The point where the QRS complex ends and the ST segment begins is known as **'J point',** which is an important point for evaluation of ST segment deviation. ST segment represents the time interval between ventricular depolarisation and repolarisation.

The abnormalities are :

1. Elevated (with convexity upwards) — In acute myocardial infarction, coronary spasm, LV aneurysm.
2. Elevated (with concavity upwards) — In acute pericarditis.
3. Depressed (oblique, plane or sagging) — In coronary artery disease (angina pectoris).
4. Depressed with mirror-image of a 'correction mark'—In digitalis effect.
5. Depressed with upward convexity — In strain pattern of ventricular hypertrophy.

ST Segment deviation :

a) ST elevation—
   1. Acute myocardial infarction.
   2. Prinzmetal's angina.
   3. Pericarditis.
   4. Ventricular aneurysm.

b) ST depression—
   1. Angina pectoris.
   2. Acute subendocardial infarction.
   3. Myocarditis.
   4. Ventricular hypertrophy with strain.
   5. Digitalis effect.
   6 . CVA

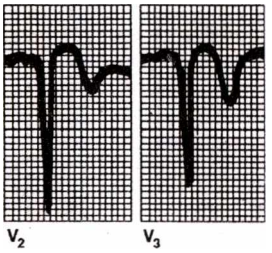


Fig. 4.10 : Acute myocardial infarction with ST elevation (convexity upwards)

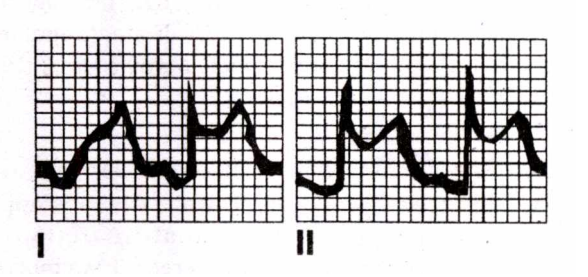


Fig. 4.11 : Acute pericarditis with ST elevation (convexity upwards)

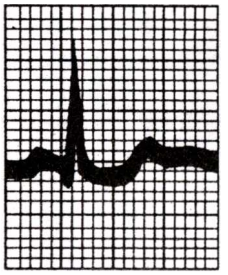


Fig. 4.12 : Sagging depression

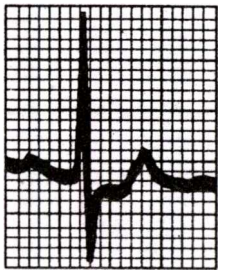


Fig. 4.13 : Plane depression

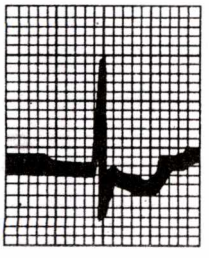


Fig. 4.14 : Digitalis ejfect

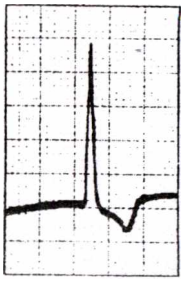


Fig. 4.15 : Strain pattern

P-P AND R-R INTERVAL

The P-P interval is the distance between two successive P waves, and the R-R interval is the distance between two successive R waves. In *sinus rhythm,* the P-P and R-R intervals are same in duration. In heart blocks, some of the P waves are conducted while some are blocked and thus the P-P interval is different from R-R interval. Atrial rate is reflected in P-P interval and so the ventricular rate in R-R interval.

Calculation of heart rate :

If the rhythm is *regular,* count the small squares present between two consecutive P waves or R waves, and then divide 1500 by that number. For example, if the R-R or P-P interval becomes 20 small squares (i.e., 20 mm), the heart rate with be 1500 + 20 = 75 / minute. In a case of complete heart block, the R-R interval (not the P-P interval) will help in calculation of heart rate (i.e., ventricular rate).

If the rhythm is *irregular,* select consecutive 20 large squares (i.e., 0.2 x 20 = 4 second) in long strip of lead II, and count the number of R waves (or QRS complex) present in the time span of 4 second. Multiply the number of R waves by 15 to get the number of beats/minute or heart rate.

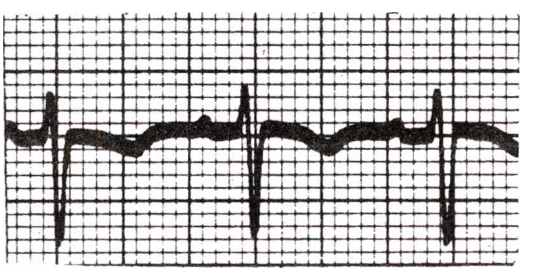


Fig. 4.16 : Patient with heart rate 100 / minute (1500/15)

P-RINTERVAL

It is measured from the beginning of the P wave to the beginning of the QRS complex. The normal P-R interval is 0.12-0.20 second; the duration decreases with increase in heart rate. It is an indirect measurement of the time interval between atrial and ventricular depolarisation, and reflects intra-atrial, AV nodal and His-Purkinje conduction.

The abnormalities are :

1. Increased P-R interval (synonymous with 1° heart block) — In acute rheumatic fever, ischaemic heart disease, after digitalis or (3-blocker therapy, in some cases of hyperthyroidism, ASD and as rare normal variation.

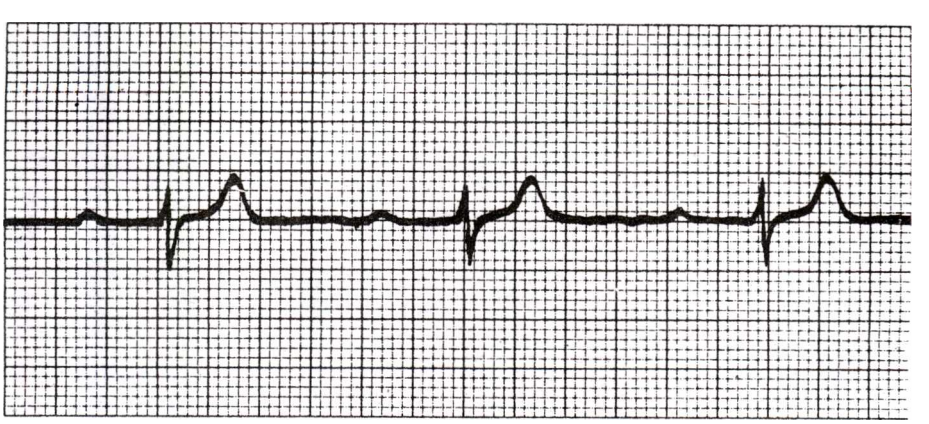


Fig. 4.17 : Increased P-R interval. Heart rate is 50/minute

2. Shortened P-R interval — In Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome, AV nodal rhythm, low atrial rhythm.

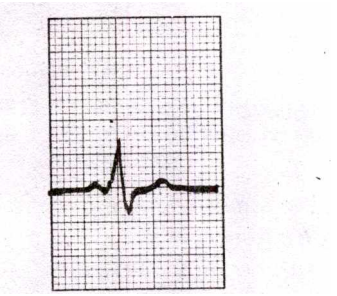


Fig. 4.18 : Shortened P-R interval

3. Progressive prolongation of P-R interval is found in Wenckebach's 2° heart block.
4. Variable P-R intervals are found in wandering atrial pacemaker or multifocal atrial tachycardia.

QRS INTERVAL

It measures the total ventricular depolarisation time. The QRS interval is measured from the beginning of the Q wave (or, consider R wave if no Q wave is visible) to the termination of the S wave. The upper limit of QRS interval is 0.10 second.

If the QRS interval goes above 0.12 second, bundle branch block or intraventricular conduction defect is considered.

Prolongation of the QRS interval >0.12 second = Complete bundle branch block, and if

The QRS interval is < 0.12 second = Incomplete bundle branch block.

* *Intrinsicoid deflection or ventricular activation time (VAT)* is the time taken for an impulse to traverse the myocardium from its endocardial to epicardial surface. Measurement is taken from the beginning of the Q wave to the peak of the R wave. The VAT should not exceed 0.03 second in $V_{t\,2}$ and 0.05 second in v_M-

Q-T INTERVAL

It is measured from the beginning of the Q wave to the end of the T wave. It measures the total duration of ventricular systole. The Q-T interval should be corrected (Q -Tc) as it changes with the heart rate. Though Q -T interval varies from 0.35 to 0.44 second, the Q -Tc should be :

$$\text{Q-Tc} = \frac{\text{Q-T interval (in second)}}{\sqrt{\text{R-R interval (in second)}}}$$

This is *Bazett's formula* (rate related) and according to this formula, Q-Tc is < 0.44 second.

The abnormalities are :

1. Prolonged Q-T interval — Hypocalcaemia, hypokalaemia, acute rheumatic carditis, acute myocardial infarction, myocarditis of any aetiology, quinidine or procainamide therapy, CVA, hypothermia and congestive cardiac failure.
2. Shortened Q-T interval — Hypercalcaemia, digitalis therapy, vagal stimulation and hyperthermia.

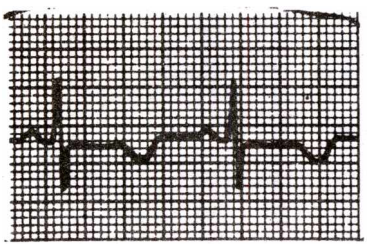


Fig. 4.19 : Prolonged Q-T interval

RHYTHM

Often a glance to the ECG recording is enough to say whether the rhythm is regular or irregular.

1. Regular (sinus rhythm) — Sino-atrial, A-V nodal or idioventricular; the normal rhythm is regular.
2. Irregular (arrhythmia or dysrrhythmia) — Whether any definite pattern is present (i.e., beats grouped in pairs or every fourth beat is dropped) or not (i.e., totally irregular or with erratic irregularity like atrial fibrillation).

Measure the R-R or P-P interval and compare with corresponding two R or P waves.

AVOIDANCE OF TECHNICAL DIFFICULTIES BEFORE RECORDING

To avoid poor technical records, follow these instructions :

1. Patient should be explained the procedure to allay anxiety. Patient should be totally relaxed. A comfortable bed is necessary. Shivering or tremor should be avoided.
2. Good contact between the skin and the electrode is a must. Electrolyte jelly should be rubbed properly in the skin.
3. The patient and the ECG machine should be properly grounded to avoid AC interference.
4. Remove all electronic or magnetic equipments, or metal from the patient's body.
5. Correct standardisaton (see below).

STANDARDISATION

Normal coventional standardisation is 1 mV which will produce a upward deflection of 10 mm. Incorrect standardisation will lead to faulty interpretation as a result of incorrect voltage of the complexes (e.g., overstandardisation will unnecesarily diagnose ventricular hypertrophy and understandardisation will incorrectly diagnose a normal person as hypothyroid). Furthermore, the stylus of the ECG machine should have a correct pressure on the recording edge; otherwise the recording stylus will not move properly. Half standardisation is done in case of very high voltage (e.g., ventricular hypertrophy) and double standardisation is done in very low voltage (e.g., myxoedema).

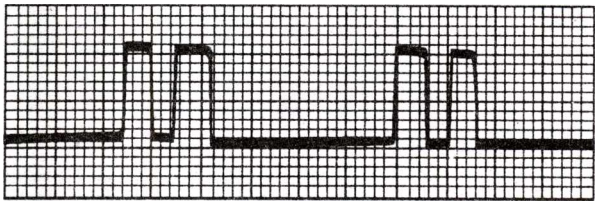


Fig. 4.20 : Correct standardisation

EFFECT OF DEEP RESPIRATION ON ECG

Deep inspiration makes the heart more vertical with clockwise rotation, and in deep expiration heart becomes more horizontal with anti-clockwise rotation. Ofen in lead III, a small q wave appears which disappears on taking deep inspiration (i.e.. lead III R should be a routine procedure in the standard ECG tracing; R stands for respiration).

EXERCISE ELECTROCARDIOGRAPHY

Since the resting ECG is normal in 25-40% of patients with angina, stress (exercise) ECG is used to assess the cardiac response to exercise. The ECG is recorded while the patient walks or runs on a motorized treadmill (TMT or treadmill test) or bicycle ergometer, which follows the 'Bruce protocol'. Exercise can result in relative myocardial ischaemia as it increases myocardial demand on coronary blood supply.

[A] HYPERTROPHY PATTERNS
(CHAMBER ENLARGEMENT)

'Hypertrophy' refers to an increase in muscle mass (pressure overload), commonly resulting from systemic hypertension (T LV) and aortic stenosis (T LV). 'Enlargement' is due to dilatation of heart chamber (volume overload), commonly as a result of valvular heart diseases, e.g., aortic regurgitation (LV enlargement), or mitral stenosis/regurgitation (LA enlargement); hypertrophy and enlargement may co-exist.

Atrial hypertrophy :

Read the P wave in details (described earlier)—P-mitrale and P-pulmonale.

Ventricular hypertrophy :

1. Left ventricular hypertrophy (LVH) :

Criteria for diagnosis —

a) Voltage criteria — There is tall R waves in V_5 and V_6, lead I and aVL; deep S waves in V_1 and V_2; R in V_5 or V_6 is > 27 mm; S in V_1 or V_2 + R in V_5 or V_6 is > 35 mm, and

b) R in AVL is > 11 mm.

c) Horizontal heart with QRS axis < -30° and anti-clockwise rotation.

c) The intrinsicoid deflection in V_5 > 0.05 second i.e., VAT is increased.

d) Strain pattern — Depressed and convex upwards ST segment with inverted T wave in lead I, aVL, V_5 and V_6.

* Left axis deviation is not an invariable accompaniment of LVH and if the axis is > -30°, think of associated left anterior hemiblock. Remember, lead V_5 represents the left ventricular forces.

** Now-a-days, *Romhilt and Estes point scoring system* is probably the best formula to diagnose LVH.

*** There may be associated P-mitrale.

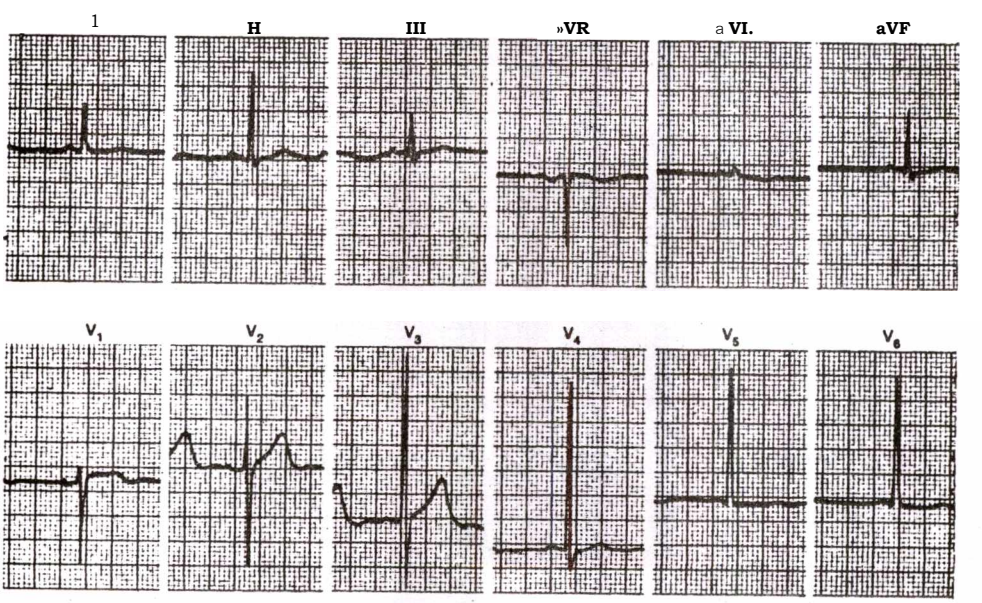


Fig. 4.21 : Left ventricular hypertrophy

Right ventricular hypertrophy (RVH) :

Criteria for diagnosis —

a) Voltage criteria — R wave is greater than S wave in V_1 or V_{3R} i.e., R : S = >1; usually a tall R wave > 5 small squares in V, is suggestive of RVH.

b) Persistent deep S wave in V_5 and V_6.

c) Normal axis or usually with right axis deviation (> +100°).

d) Vertical heart with clockwise rotation.

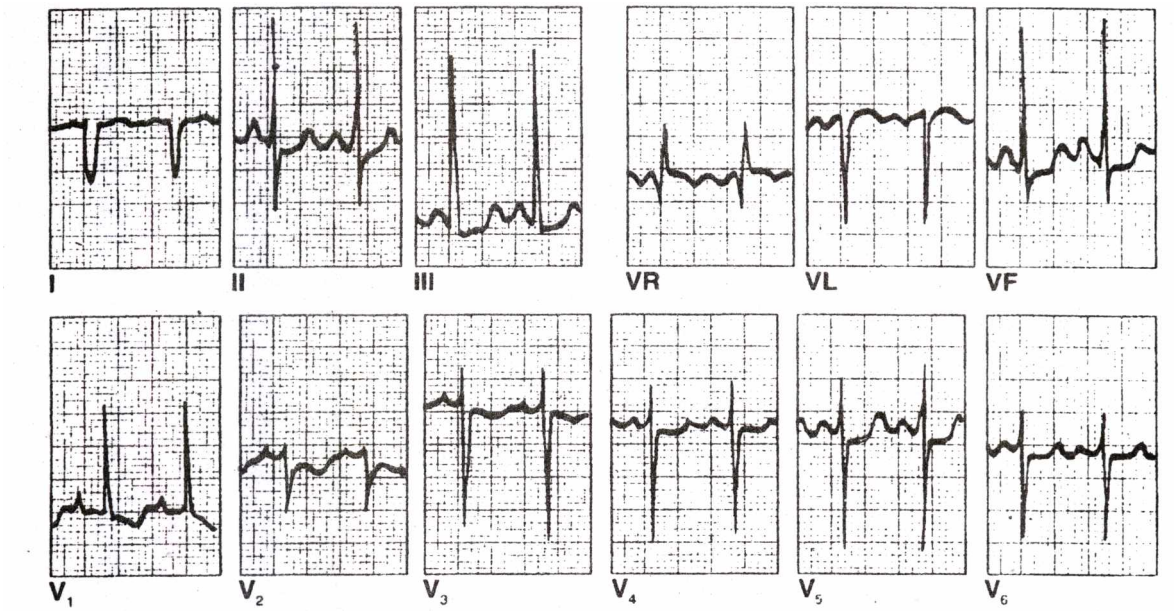


Fig. 4.22 : Right ventricular hypertrophy with strain

e) Intrinsicoid deflection in V_1 or V_{3R} is over 0.03 second i.e., VAT is increased.

f) Strain pattern — Depressed and convex upwards ST segment with inverted T wave in right ventricular leads (V_1, aVR, V_{3R}).

* There may be associated P-pulmonale. Remember, lead V_1 represents the right ventricular forces.

3. Combined left and right ventricular hypertrophy :

It is difficult to diagnose because very often the features of RVH are obscured by those of LVH. The most reliable criteria are the features of LVH in precordial leads associated with an axis deviation > +90° (signifies RVH).

* *'Katz-Wachtel phenomenon'*—large amplitude equiphasic RS complexes in mid-precordial leads are seen in biventricular hypertrophy (commonly in VSD).

4. Chronic cor pulmonale :

a) P-pulmonale in lead II, III and aVF.

b) Vertical heart with clockwise rotation; there may be right axis deviation due to RVH.

c) - Features of RVH.

d) Low voltage due to the presence of emphysema.

e) Right bundle branch block (rsR'-pattern in V^.

f) 'Sj, S_2, S_3 syndrome' (producing S wave in standard leads I, II and III) as a result of emphysema.

* The Sj, S_2, S_3 syndrome constitutes supportive evidence of RVH.

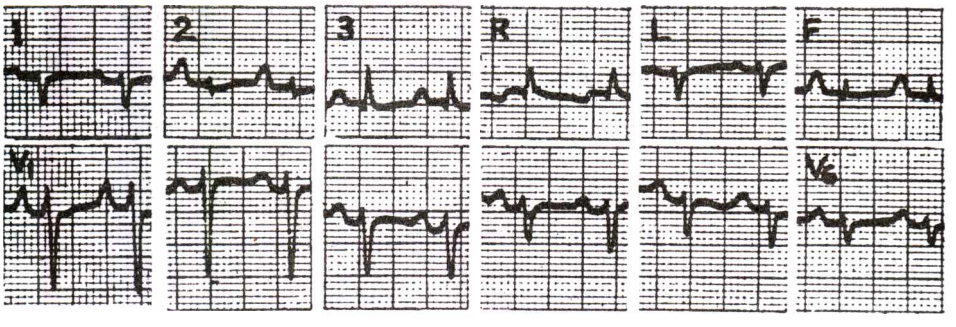


Fig. 4.23 : Chronic cor pulmonale

5. Acute cor pulmonale (acute pulmonary thromboembolism) :

a) Sinus tachycardia.
b) RVH with strain pattern.
c) Right axis deviation.
d) Right bundle branch block.
e) P-pulmonale.
f) 'Sj, Q_3, T_3 pattern', i.e., prominent S wave in lead I, prominent Q wave in lead III and inverted T wave in lead III (a reflection of right heart strain).

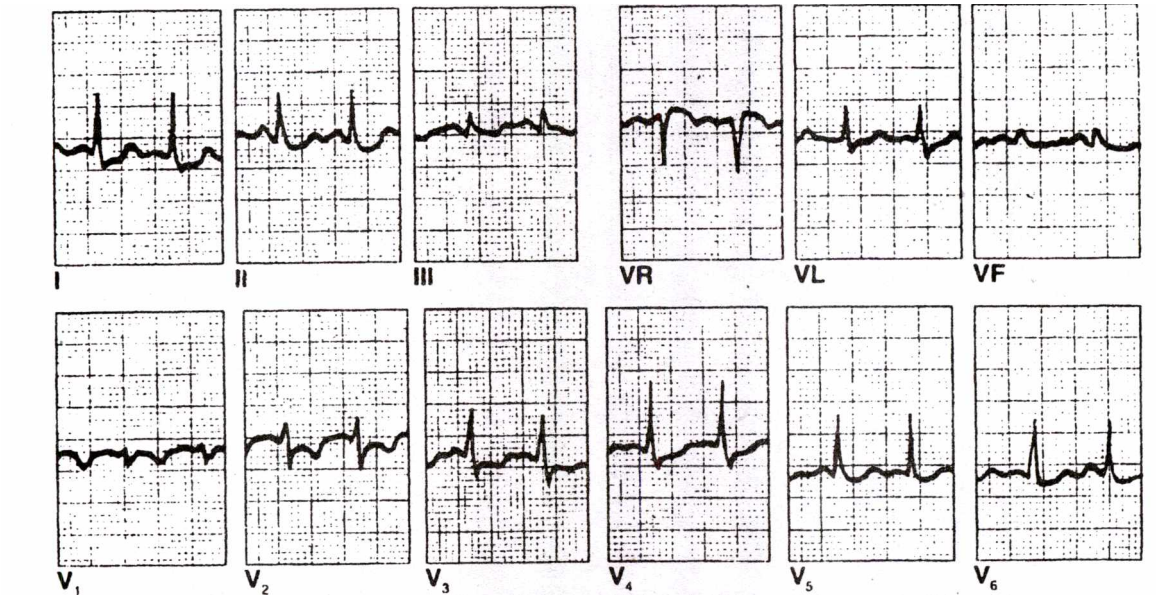


Fig. 4.24 : Acute pulmonary thromboembolism

[B] MYOCARDIAL ISCHAEMIA AND INFARCTION

Ventricular surfaces and leads that reflect ischaemia/infarction :

Surfaces (left ventricle)	Lead orientation
1. Anterior	
2. Anteroseptal	V,–4
3. Anterolateral	I. aVL, V^
4. Extensive anterior wall	I, aVL, V,_g
5. High lateral	I, aVL
6. Apical	
7. Inferior	II, III, aVF
8. Posterior	No direct lead specification. 'Mirror-image' changes (ST depression and tall R) are seen in V_{1-3}

Surfaces (left ventricle)	Lead orientation
Right ventricle	aVR, Vj and right-sided precordial leads, specially V_{4R}

Myocardial ischaemia (angina pectoris) :

Criteria — ST *depression orT wave inversion or both* in standard leads, extremity leads and precordial leads.

The ST depression may be of plane, oblique or sagging depression.



Normal ST segment Oblique depression Plane depression Sagging depression

Fig. 4.25 : Normal and abnormal ST segment

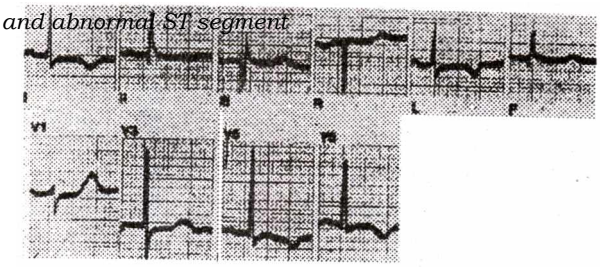


Fig. 4.26 : *Angina pectoris (coronary insufficiency). Antero-lateral ischaemia is present*

* ST depression in angina pectoris usually indicates transient subendocardial ischaemia. In Prinzmetal's angina, there is ST elevation seen as a result of transient subepicardial injury.

Myocardial infarction :

Three zones i.e., ischaemia-injury-necrosis sequence in myocardial infarction is reflected in ECG. The ECG tracing (fully evolved phase) is the summation of,

1. Myocardial injury — ST *elevation with convexity upwards.*
2. Myocardial necrosis — Wide and deep Q wave.
3. Myocardial ischaemia —•' T inversion; T wave is peaked and both the limbs are symmetrical (arrowhead T wave).

* Myocardial infarction is diagnosed on ECG by infarction pattern (Q wave, ST elevation and T wave inversion), seen in more than two consequtive leads; the infarction pattern observed in different leads determines the site (e.g., anterior, lateral, inferior).

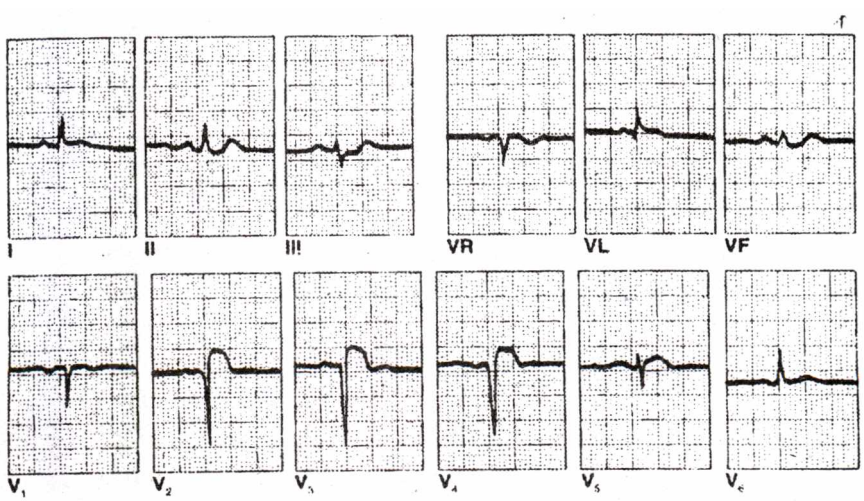


Fig. 4.27 : Acute anterior wall myocardial infarction (extensive) —fully evolved phase

Pathological 9 wave in myocardial infarction :

1. Wide — >0.04 second in duration.
2. Deep — Usually >4 mm in depth.
3. Usually >1/4 th of R wave (in height) and is associated with substantial loss in the height of ensuring R wave.

4. Pathological Q waves are usually present in several leads e.g., in inferior wall infarction, it is present in lead II, III and aVF.

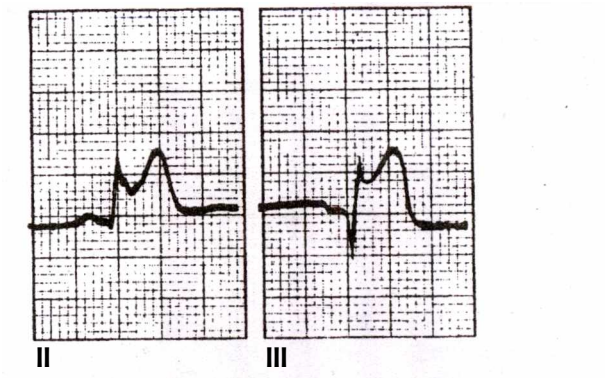


Fig. 4.28 : Hyperacute phase of AMI

The process of infarction progresses through three phases :

(A) Early 'hyperacute' phase (within a Jew hours of the onset) :

1. Slope-elevation of the ST segment with
2. Wide and tall T wave.

(B) Fully evolved phase (usually within 24 hours of the onset) :

1. Pathological Q wave.
2. Coved and elevated ST segment.
3. Symmetrically inverted T wave.

(C) Phase of resolution or old infarction :

1. Pathological Q wave.
2. ST segment and T wave may be normal, equivocal or point towards coronary insufficiency.

N.B. : Pathological Q wave, isoelectric ST segment and symmetrically inverted T wave are found in 'AMI of some duration' (e.g., after 3 to 5 days).

* The reciprocal leads will show ST depression in case of acute myocardial infarction (AMI).

Table 11 : Indicator leads and reciprocal leads in AMI

Indicator leads of AMI	Reciprocal leads
Anterior- I, aVL, V,^	II, III, aVF
Inferior- II, III, aVF	I, aVL and some precordial leads
Lateral- I, aVL, V_{5-0}	V_{1}, V$_{3R}$

** The above features give an idea of transmural (full thickness) infarction. *Subendocardial (partial thickness)* infarction is a bit different so that ECG shows deep symmetrical T wave inversion and loss of height of R waves facing the infarction (there is neither Q wave nor ST elevation).

*** In high antero-lateral infarction, third intercostal space leads are recorded. Remember, QS complexes may normally be seen in V_{12} (in clockwise rotation) and in AVF (in horizontal- heart). Persistence of ST segment elevation for a period of months or years after AMI indicates development of ventricular aneurysm.

[C] DISORDERS OF RHYTHM

Sinus rhythm :

The rate and rhythm of the normal heart are controlled by the SA node which is again influenced by the vagus nerve. When the impulse is produced by the SA node, it is known as *sinus rhythm* which is the

normal rhythm of the heart. The average heart rate Is 60-100 beats/minute. If vagal tone increases, the heart rate is decreased and in decrease in vagal tone, there is accentuation of the heart rate.

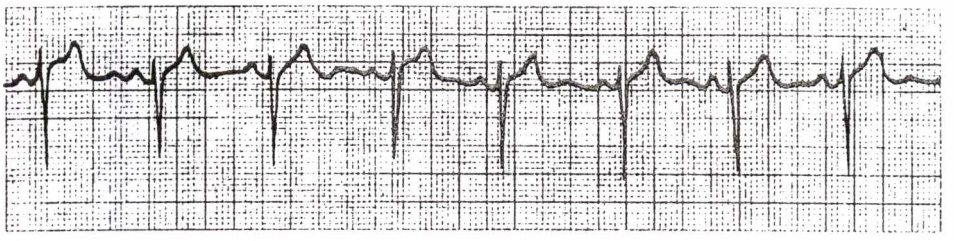


Fig. 4.29 : Sinus rhythm

Sinus arrhythmia :

Heart rate increases with inspiration and decreases with expiration in sinus arrhythmia (i.e., alternate tachycardia and bradycardia associated with phases of normal respiration). This physiological phenomenon is commonly seen in children than in adults and is often associated with sinus bradycardia. Sinus arrhythmia is accentuated by vagotonic produres like carotid sinus massage, and is abolished by vagolytic procedures like exercise. The ECG tracing is diagnosed by gradual lengthening and gradual shortening of R-R interval in a normal ECG with normal P-QRST complexes.



Fig. 4.30 : Sinus arrhythmia

Sinus tachycardia :

It is a *regular sinus rhythm* with SA node discharging in excess of 100 times/minute (usually 100-160 times/minute). Common causes are strenuous exercise, emotion, anxiety, excitement, congestive cardiac failure, severe anaemia, thyrotoxicosis, shock, pain, pyrexia, myocarditis, acute haemorrhage, pregnancy, atropinisation and drugs like nifedipine. The ECG tracing is diagnosed by R-R interval less than 15 small squares with normal P-QRST complexes.

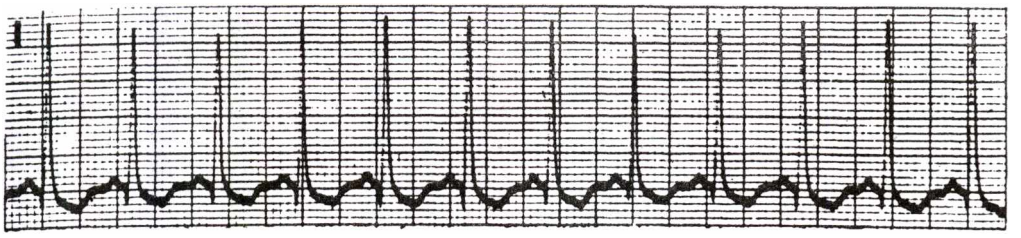


Fig. 4.31 : Sinus tachycardia. Heart rate is 125/minute

Sinus bradycardia :

It is a *regular sinus rhythm* with SA node discharging in less than 60 times/minute. Common causes are athletes, deep sleep, myxoedema, obstructive jaundice, increased intracranial tension, vasovagal attacks, sick sinus syndrome, heart blocks, hypersensitive carotid sinus, hypothermia, administration of drugs like propranolol and digitalis. The ECG tracing is diagnosed by R-R interval more than 25 small squares with normal P-QRST complexes.

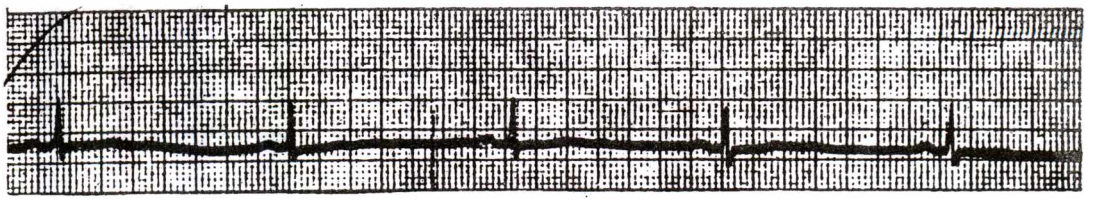


Fig. 4.32 : Sinus bradycardia. Heart rate is 42/minute

SUPRAVENTRICULAR RHYTHM DISTURBANCES

Tachyarrhythmias are classified into two groups :

(A) Supraventricular—focus originating from atria or AV node.

(B) Ventricular—focus lies in ventricles.

Supraventricular premature beats (SVPB) or extrasystoles :

The ectopic impulse is due to premature discharge either from the atrium or the AV node.

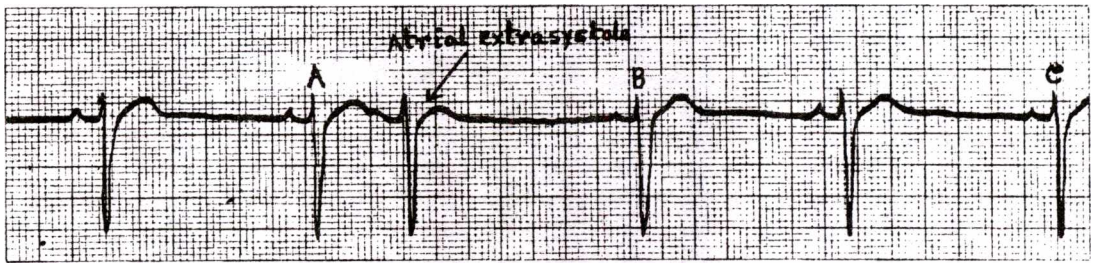


Fig. 4.33 : Atrial extrasystole

Features :

1. As the atrial ectopic beat (P) occurs prematurely, it comes earlier than the anticipated sinus P wave.
2. The P wave may be upright, inverted or diphasic; it may be pointed or notched, i.e., P wave is bizarre.
3. The P wave is usually followed by a normal QRST complex (an ectopic P wave may be blocked and thus it may not be followed by a QRST complex).
4. The 'compensatory pause' is incomplete, i.e., the sum total of the R-R intervals of the normal beat before and after the ectopic beat is less than double of the normal R-R interval, i.e., A-B interval is < B-C interval in Fig. 4.33.

Aetiology :

1. Overindulgence of tea, coffee, cigarettes, alcohol.
2. Anxiety, dyspepsia.
3. Rheumatic, ischaemic, hypertensive, thyrotoxic and cardiomyopathic heart diseases.
4. Drugs — Digitalis, emetine, adrenaline.
5. During cardiac surgery.

* Two to four SVPB may result from smoking, insomnia, overindulgence of coffee or alcohol, and very often regarded as normal.

Symptoms pertaining to extrasystoles :

Symptoms, if present are due to,

a) Extrasystoles or ectopics — Palpitation, extra beat.

b) As a result of compensatory pause — Vertigo, syncope, stoppage of heart, chest pain.

c) As a result of forceful contraction after the pause — Palpitation or thumping sensation.

Paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia (PSVT) :

PSVT is best thought of as a run of rapidly repeated premature beats of sudden onset, usually three or more consecutive rapidly occuring SVPBs which continue for several hours or days; it may have sudden termination. PSVT is characterised by a regular rhythm at a rate of 160-220/minute.

As PSVT resembles a continuous run of SVPB, each P wave is followed by a ventricular QRS complex. PSVT is principally due to AV nodal re-entry mechanism often exaggerated by using a concealed extranodal pathway.

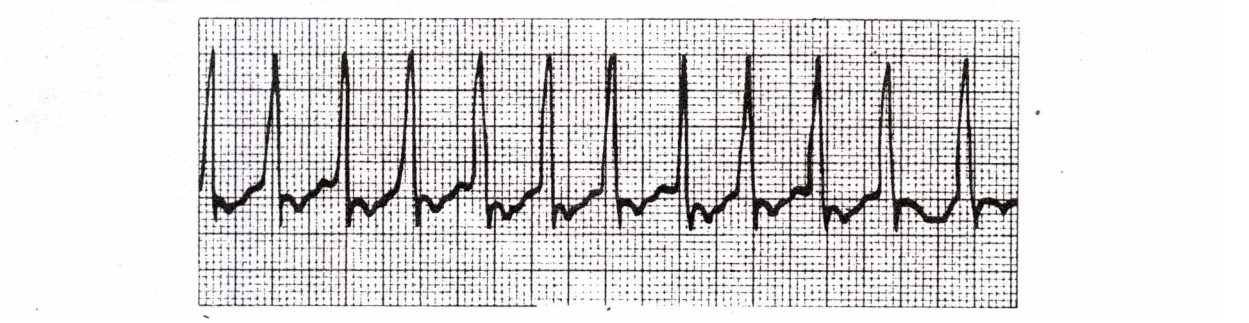


Fig. 4.34 : Paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia (PSVT)

Features :

1. Abnormal P wave preceding QRS complex.
2. Rapid (160-220/minute), regular and normal QRS *(narrow)* complex.
3. ST segment depression with T wave inversion may be seen.

Usually there is 1 : 1 AV conduction. Sometimes, there is AV block of varying degree, usually 2 : 1 (paroxysmal atrial tachycardia with block). The P -R interval is often prolonged in PSVT and the P wave may be buried in the preceding QRS complex (i.e., no P wave seen), mimicking junctional (nodal) tachycardia.

Significance of PSVT :

Aetiologies are same as SVPB (sometimes PSVT may be seen in association with ASD, Ebstein's anomaly, W-P-W syndrome, sick sinus syndrome or floppy mitral valve syndrome). If PSVT continues for a long time, cardiac failure may be precipitated. *Management* is done by carotid sinus massage or with the help of other vagotonic procedures, and administration of drugs like verapramil, adenosine, beta-blockers; lastly cardioversion with synchronized DC shock (150 J) may be applied.

Atrial fibrillation :

The excitation and recovery of the atria are totally disorganised and chaotic in atrial fibrillation. The atrial rate is usually 350-600/minute and varying degrees of AV block always exist in an untreated patient. The ventricular rate is usually 100-150/minute.

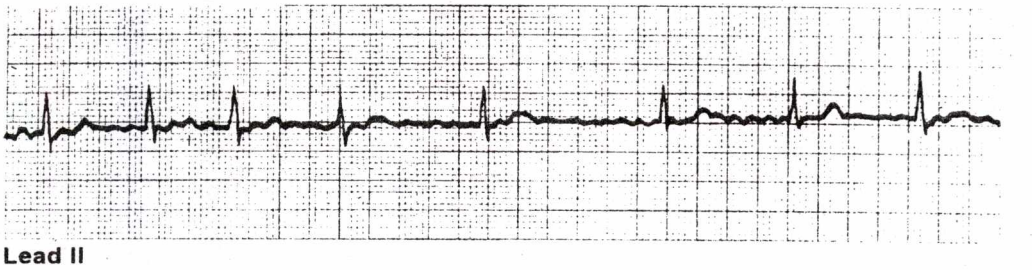


Fig. 4.35 : Atrial fibrillation

Features :

1. Atrial deflections are irregular and chaotic, and thus results in a ragged baseline. The P waves are replaced by fibrillation waves or 'f waves which are rapid, small and irregular waves.
2. *Irregularly irregular ventricular rhythm.*
3. Normal QRS complexes, sometimes varying in amplitude.

Aetiology :

1. Heart diseases — Rheumatic (commonly MS), ischaemic, hypertensive, thyrotoxic and cardiomyopathic.
2. Myocarditis, pericarditis.
3. Drugs — Digitalis, emetine, adrenaline.
4. 'Lone' atrial fibrillation — In elderly persons without any demonstrable organic heart disease.
5. Constrictive pericarditis, ASD, W-P-W syndrome, cor pulmonale, pulmonary thromboembolism.
6. Sinoatrial disease (sick sinus syndrome).

Atrial flutter :

It is the rapid as well as regular contraction of atria at a rate of approximately 220-350/minute. The ventricular rate is usually regular, being 1/2 to 1 /4 th of the atrial rate (as AV block is always associated with). Constantly changing AV block makes the ventricular rate irregular. The P' waves of atrial flutter have a 'saw-toothed' appearance and are known as flutter (F) waves (usually in lead II and III).

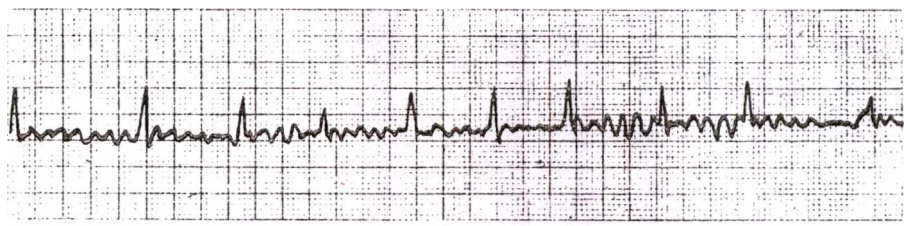


Fig. 4.36 A : Atrial flutter

Features :

1. 'Saw-toothed' or undulating baseline with 'F' waves replacing P waves. Usually atrial rate is 220-350/minute and the ventricular rate is 1/2 to 1/4 th of the atrial rate.
2. *Regular ventricular rhythm* unless associated with changing AV block.
3. Normal QRS complexes in a ratio of 2 : 1 to 8 : 1.

Aetiology :

Same as atrial fibrillation.

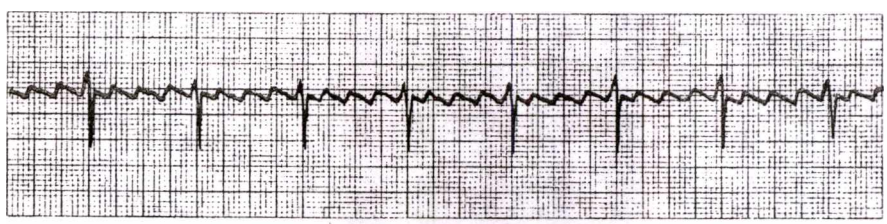


Fig. 4.36 B : Atrial flutter–fibrillation

Flutter-fibrillation :

Sometimes, a mixture of atrial flutter with atrial fibrillation is seen and the precise differentiation between them is often very difficult. This is known as flutter-fibrillation.

* Fibrillation and flutter waves are best seen in lead II and V_r

VENTRICULAR RHYTHM DISTURBANCES

Ventricular premature beats (VPB) or extrasystoles :

The VPB arises from an ectopic focus in any portion of the ventricular myocardium.

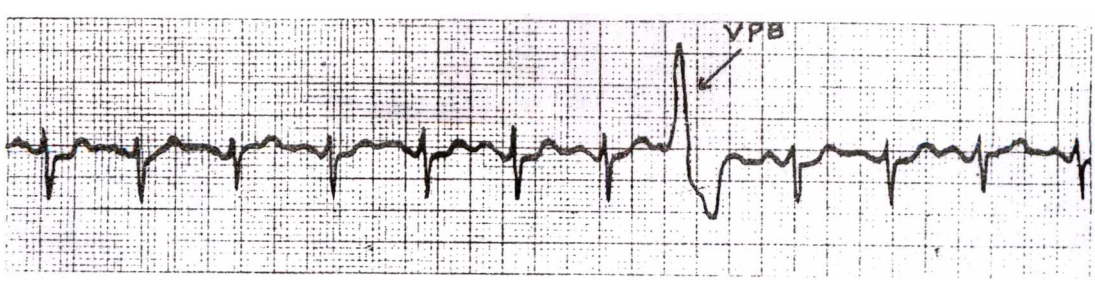


Fig. 4.37 : Ventricular extrasystole

Features :

1. The ectopic beat appears prematurely.
2. P^1 wave is usually hidden in the QRS complex or a retrograde P^1 wave (usually inverted) may follow the QRS complex.

3. Bizarre, wide and tall QRS complexes. The ST segment and T wave are usually displaced in the opposite direction of the major QRS complex.
4. The 'compensatory pause' is complete i.e., the sum total of the R-R intervals of the normal beat preceding and following a VPB is equal to double of the normal R-R interval.

* Ventricular ectopics or VPBs may be monomorphic (same pattern) or polymorphic (different patterns). They may form 'couplet' (a pair of successive VPBs) or 'bigeminal rhythm' (an ectopic beat alternating with a sinus beat).

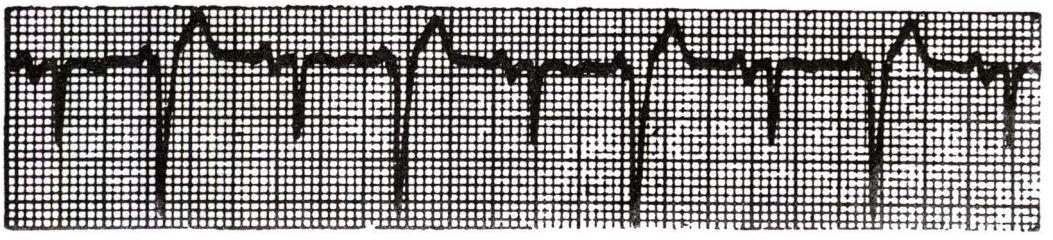


Fig. 4.38 : Bigeminal rhythm produced by alternate VPB

Aetiology :

Same as SVPB.

Significance of VPB :

SVPB frequently occurs in normal individuals. Diagnosis of organic heart disease should not be made solely on the ECG criteria of SVPB. Very often atrial extrasystoles occur secondary to emotional disturbances, after consumtion of tea, coffee, tobacco and alcohol.

Though **VPB** may occasionally be found in normal individuals, it is always significant if associated with,

1. Bigeminal rhythm.
2. In an individual with organic heart disease, specially myocardial disease.
3. If the VPB are multifocal.
4. If the VPB occur frequently, i.e., in 'crops'.
5. If the VPB are present > 5 times/minute.
6. If precipitated by exercise.
7. If occurs in persons > 40 years of age.
8. Presence of 'R on T phenomenon' (such an ectopic beat is prone to initiate repetitive discharge, i.e., ventricular tachycardia or fibrillation may be precipitated).

N.B. : In contrast to SVPB (often found in normal individuals), VPB usually indicates some cardiac disease.

(Paroxysmal) ventricular tachycardia (VT) :

When a series of three or more consecutive VPBs occur for few beats or continue for several hours or days, it is known as VT. Usually VT has a regular rhythm with a heart rate of 140-220/minute.

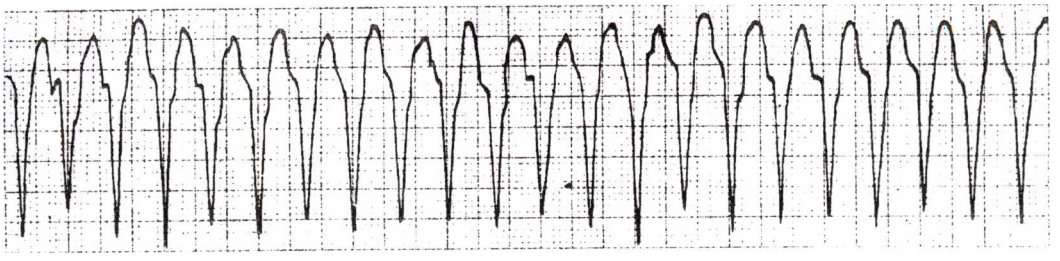


Fig. 4.39 : Ventricular tachycardia

Features :

1. Premature, bizarre, tall and wide QRS complexes recorded in rapid succession.
2. The P wave bears no relationship with the QRS complexes (AV dissociation).

3. Presence of *capture beats* (the normal sinus conducted beat occuring during the run of VT) and *fusion beats* (a blending complex beat which is in between normal sinus beat and ventricular ectopic beat).
4. Concordant precordial leads (i.e., $V_{;\ 6}$)—all the complexes are either upwards or downwards.

Aetiology :

Same as SVPB (commonly due to IHD, cardiomyopathy, valvular heart disease, thyrotoxicosis, floppy mitral valve syndrome, myocarditis, hypoxia, acidosis, digitalis and hypokalaemia). VT is commonly associated with recent myocardial infarction. It is regarded as a very serious arrhythmia. If not treated properly, VT may degenerate into VF.

* *Torsades de pointes* is a form of VT manifested by episodes of alternating electrical polarity with the QRS amplitude twisting around an isoelectric baseline (hence the name); the rhythm usually starts with a VPB and is preceded by prolongation of Q-T inverval. Certain drugs (e.g., quinidine, procainamide) and electrolyte imbalance (iCa^{++}, $4K^{++}$) may precipitate the situation. Usually the attacks are self-limiting but may lead to VF.

Ventricular fibrillation (VF) :

VF is a chaotic and incoordinated activity of the heart, which results in totally irregular, bizarre and deformed deflections of varying height, width and shape. This is a fatal and terminal condition where the peripheral pulses are not palpable and the heart beat is inaudible. Fibrillating ventricles can not effectively pump out blood in the circulation. The treatment is immediate electrical defibrillation.

Aetiology :

1. Ischaemic heart disease, specially acute myocardial infarction.
2. Digitalis, adrenaline or quinidine toxicity, specially if associated with hypokalaemia.
3. Electrical shock (accidental).
4. Hypoxia, specially induced by cardiac surgery.
5. Hypothermia.
6. Myocarditis, cardiomyopathy.
7. Electrolyte imbalance (high or low K^+, low Ca^{++} or Mg^{++}).

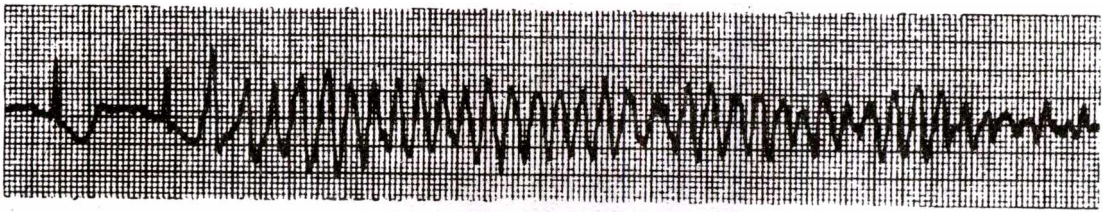


Fig. 4.40 : Ventricular fibrillation

Significance :

It is considered as the most *serious and catastrophic arrhythmia,* and the prognosis is extremely poor.

Ventricular flutter :

This results from a very rapid and regular ectopic ventricular discharge associated with grossly abnormal intraventricular conduction, and manifested by bizarre and wide configuration of the QRS complex where the QRS complex is fused with T wave mimicking continuous 'hairpin curves' or 'sine-like wave' form.

Aetiology :

Same as VF.

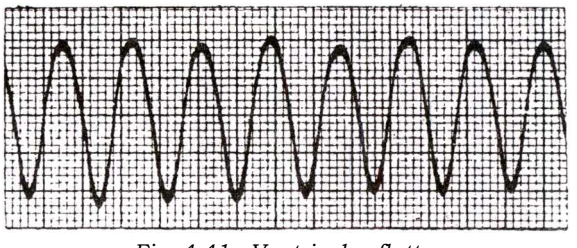


Fig. 4.41 : Ventricular flutter

* Complete absence of electrical activity of heart is called **ventricular asystole** (i.e., cardiac standstill or cardiac arrest) when there is absence of ventricular complexes in ECG (shows flat line) for seconds to minutes. Clinically, this can not be differentiated from ventricular fibrillation unless ECG monitoring is done.

Table 12 : Differentiation between SVT and VT

	Features	SVT with aberrant conduction	VT
1.	P wave	A premature P wave may precede QRS	QRS complex not preceded by P' wave
2.	Duration of QRS complex >0.14 second	Absent	May be present
3.	R-R interval	Perfectly regular and constant	Slightly irregular and not absolutely constant
4.	Carotid sinus massage	May be reverted to normal	No effect
5.	Left axis deviation	Usually absent	Usually presnt
6.	AV dissociation	Not present	Present
7.	Capture and fusion beats	Absent	A characteristic feature

Clinically, VT is associated with varying intensity of and irregular cannon waves in neck vein.

[D] INTRAVENTRICULAR CONDUCTION DEFECTS

Pacemaker tissues and conducting system of the heart :

Certain tissues in the heart responsible for initiation and propagation (i.e., conduction) of the heart beat, are known as 'pacemaker tissues'. They are :

1. Sinoatrial (SA) node—it lies in the right atrium at the junction of superior vena cava and right atrial appendages. SA node originates impulses at a rate of 60-100 beats/min (average 72 beats /min) which traverses through three internodal atrial pathways towards atrioventricular (AV) node. SA node is the natural pacemaker of the heart and generates sinus rhythm.
2. Atrioventricular (AV) node—It is located posteriorly on the right side of the interatrial septum. When SA node fails, AV node may generate impulse at the rate of 40-60 beats/min (nodal rhythm).
3. Bundle of His—It originates from AV node and divides into right (acting as a single fascicle) and left (left anterior and left posterior fascicles) branches. 'Fascicular block' or 'bundle branch block' results from their delay in conduction.
4. Purkinje fibres—they penetrate the ventricular wall after taking origin from terminal divisions of right and left branches of the bundle of His. When SA or AV node fails, the purkinje cells of the ventricular muscle may beat at the rate of 30-40 beats/min (average 36 beats/min), which is known as idioventricular rhythm.

Classification :

1. Unilateral bundle branch block — Right or left; complete or incomplete.
2. Peripheral left ventricular conduction defect—left anterior fascicular/hemiblock (LAHB) or left posterior fascicular/hemiblock (LPHB), septal block.
3. Bilateral bundle branch block or bifascicular block — Right bundle branch block with LAHB or LPHB block, alternating RBBB and LBBB, RBBB or LBBB with prolonged AV conduction.
4. Trifascicular block.

Right bundle branch block (RBBB):

RBBB is a *fairly common ECG finding* and does not necessarily indicate any organic heart disease.
Incomplete — QRS interval <0.12 second.
Complete — QRS interval >0.12 second.

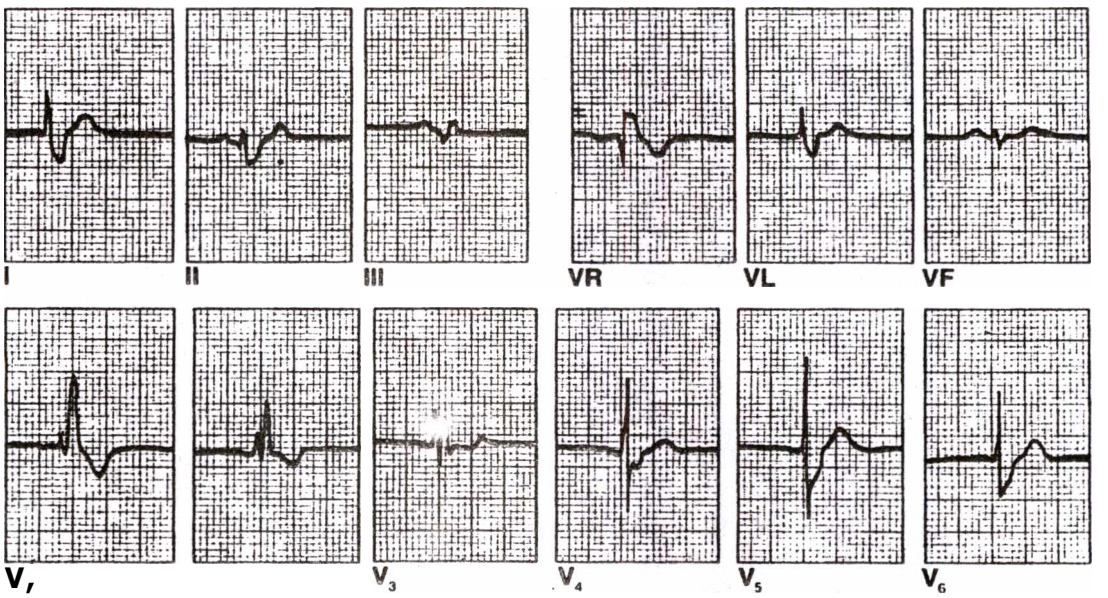


Fig. 4.42 : Right bundle branch block (incomplete)

Features :

1. RSR' or rsR' pattern or 'M-shaped' complexes in V_{12} (also in aVR and V_{3R}); absent q waves in these leads.
2. Wide and slurred S waves in lead 1 and V_c 5-6
3. ST depression and T wave inversion in V .
4. QRS interval is equal, more, or less than 0.12 second (in V_2).
5. Right axis deviation.
6. VAT (intrinsicoid deflection) is prolonged.

Aetiology :

1. Normal variant.
2: Right ventricular hypertrophy.
3. Emphysema of lung.
4. ASD (ostium primum type).
5. Ischaemic heart disease.
6. Myocarditis from any cause.
• 7. Hypertensive heart disease.
8. Acute pulmonary thromboembolism.
9. Cardiomyopathy.
10. Idiopathic.

Left bundle branch block (LBBB) :

Complete LBBB indicates organic heart disease, and is commonly associated with ischaemic and hypertensive heart diseases. Prognostically it is worse then RBBB.

Complete or incomplete — Criteria of duration in timing are same as RBBB.

Features :

1. rsR' or RsR' pattern or 'M-shaped' complexes in leads $V_{4\,6}$, I and aVL; absent q waves in these leads.
2. ST depression with T wave inversion in lead I and $V_{4\,6}$.
3. QRS interval is equal, more, or less than 0.12 second (in $V_{5\,6}$).
4. Usually associated with left axis deviation.
5. VAT (intrinsicoid deflection) is prolonged.

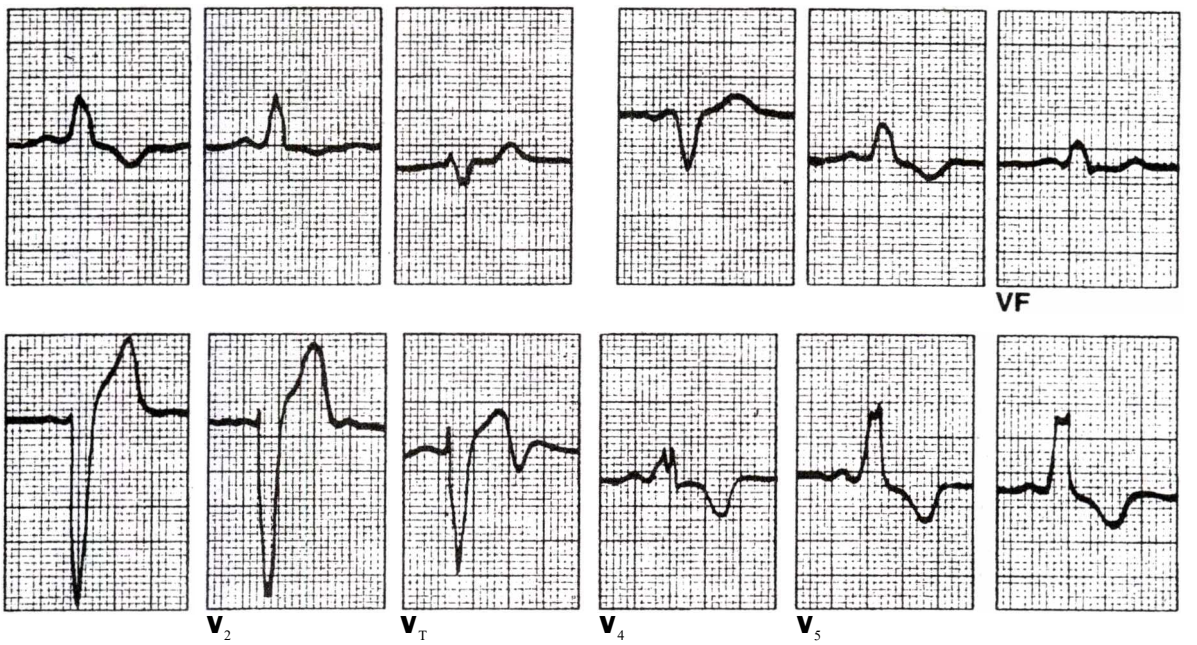


Fig. 4.43 ; *Left bundle branch block (complete)*

Aetiology :

1. Ischaemic heart disease.
2. Left ventricular enlargement due to any cause (specially from systemic hypertension).
3. Cardiomyopathy.
4. Myocarditis due to any case.
5. Drugs like quinidine or procainamide.
6. Aortic valve disease e.g., aortic stenosis.
7. Idiopathic fibrosis.

* The presence of q waves in lead I and $V_{5\,6}$ always negate the diagnosis of LBBB or indicates associated acute myocardial infarction (AMI).

** In the presence of AMI, LBBB can not be diagnosed properly.

Left anterior fascicular block *(also known as left anterior hemiblock or LAHB)* **;**

Features :

1. Left axis deviation.
2. Narrow QRS complex, qR in lead I, aVL and V_{5-a}; rS in lead II, III, aVF.

Left posterior fascicular block *(also known as left posterior hemiblock or LPHB)**:***

Features :

1. Axis of +100° or greater, i.e., right axis deviation.
2. Narrow QRS complex, and qR in lead II, III, aVF; rS in lead I, aVL and $V_{5\,6}$.
3. 'Sj, Q_3, T_3 pattern' may be seen.

Left septal block :

Feature :

Absent q wave in $V_{5\,6}$.

Bilateral bundle branch block or 'bifascicular block':

The possible combinations are :

- RBBB with LAHB — Features of RBBB plus left axis deviation (commonest),
- RBBB with LPHB — Features of RBBB plus right axis deviation, or
- LBBB (both anterior and posterior fasciclcs are blocked).

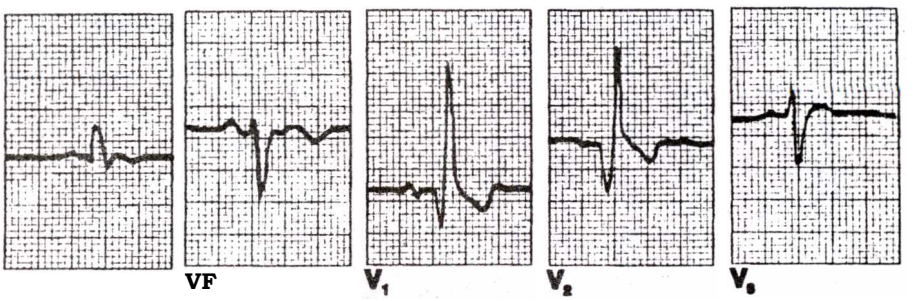


Fig. 4.44 : Bifascicular block (RBBB with LAHB)

Trifascicular block :

When the three fascicles (right bundle, left anterior fascicle and left posterior fascicle) are blocked, it is known as trifascicular block.

Features :

1. Features of RBBB.
2. Left axis deviation (indicating left anterior fascicular block).
3. Prolonged P-R interval (indicating first degree AV block, or may be represented by left posterior fascicular block).

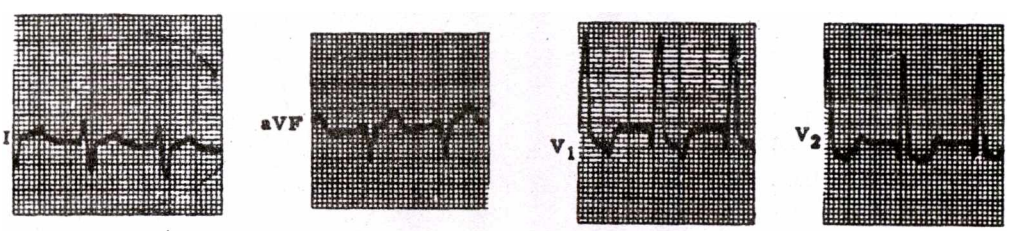


Fig. 4.45 : Trifascicular block

[E] ATRIOVENTRICULAR (AV) CONDUCTION DEFECTS

AV block is the disturbance in the conduction of normal sinus impulse through the AV node, the bundle of His, or the intraventricular conduction system.

Classification :

(A) Incomplete :
- a) First degree (1°)
- b) Second degree (2°)
  - (i) Mobitz type I or Wenckebach type
  - (ii) Mobitz type II

(B) Complete : i.e., third degree (3°) heart block

1 ° heart block :

There is disturbance in conduction between the SA node and the AV node, and results in the prolongation of the P-R interval above the upper limit of normal (0.20 second). The rhythm is regular with constant P-P and R-R interval. Atrial rate : ventricular rate = 1 : 1 .

Aetiology :

1. Acute rheumatic fever (myocarditis).
2. Any acute infectious disease (mainly viral).
3. Digitalis, quinidine or propranolol-induced.
4. Ischaemic heart disease.

5. ASD or Ebstein's anomaly.
6. Hyperkalaemia.
7. Idiopathic i.e., in the absence of organic heart disease.

Clinical suspicion : If the Sj becomes muffled in the presence of tachycardia, 1° heart block is thought of. There is *no dropped beat* in peripheral pulse.

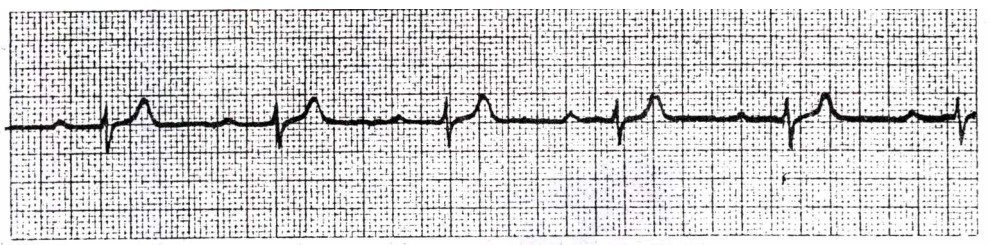


Fig. 4.46 : First degree heart block. P-R interval is 0.32 second

2° heart block :

From time to time, some atrial impulses are allowed to pass and some are not allowed to pass through the AV node. So the atria contracts but as all the contractions do not reach the ventricle, there is missing beats in the pulse. Following are the types of 2° heart block :

a) Mobitz type I or Wenckebach block :

The P-R interval progressively increases till one beat is completely blocked and thus that P wave is not followed by QRS complex. This is more benign and commoner type than Mobitz type II block. This type is commonly associated with acute inferior wall myocardial infarction. Here, the disease lies proximal to the bundle of His.

The basic rhythm is sinus with a constant P-P interval. The conduction ratio varies e.g., 5 : 4, 4 : 3 etc.

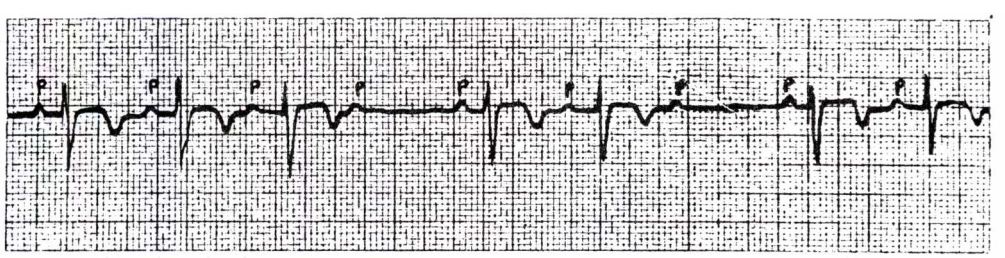


Fig. 4.47 A : Second *degree heart block (Wenckebach type)*

b) Mobitz type II:

The ventricle periodically fails to respond to the atrial contraction in Mobitz type II block. Here, P-R interval remains either normal or prolonged but is always 'fixed'; and ultimately misses one beat (progressive prolongation of P-R interval like Wenckebach phenomenon is absent here). This type is commonly associated with acute anterior wall myocardial infarction. Here, the block lies below the bundle of His and prognostically worse than Mobitz type I block.

The basic rhythm is sinus with constant P-P and P-R intervals. The conduction ratio may be fixed (4 : 3, 2 : 1) or variable. ■

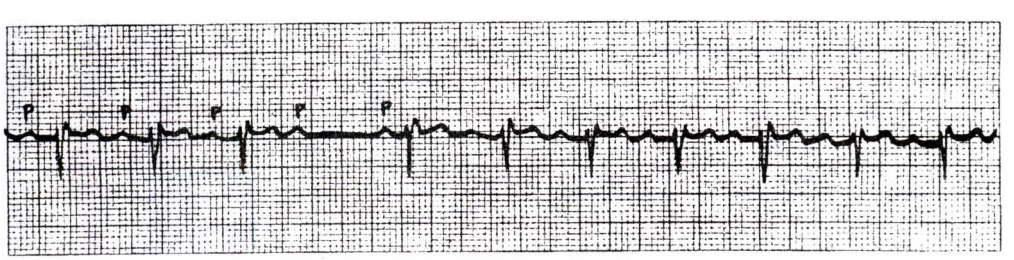


Fig. 4.47 B : Second degree heart block (Mobitz type II)

c) 2° constant (advanced) heart block (2 : 1 or 3 : 1 type):

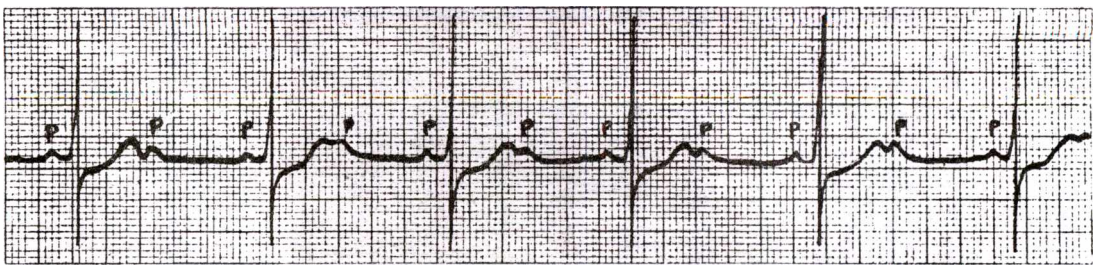


Fig. 4.48 : Second degree fixed heart block (2 : 1 type). Every alternate P wave is not followed by QRS complex

* There is a fixed AV relationship in constant 2° block. In 3 : 2 block, there are 3-P waves and 2-QRS complexes; in 6 : 5 block, 5-QRS complexes follow 6-P waves, i.e., the last P wave does not produce any QRS complex.

Aetiology (of 2° heart block) :

1. Acute rheumatic fever producing carditis.
2. Ischaemic heart disease.
3. Myocarditis following diphtheria.
4. Digitalis toxicity.
5. May be associated with PSVT or atrial flutter as a 'protective mechanism'.

3° *Heart block or complete heart block :*

Here, all the supraventricular impulses are blocked i.e., no SA impulse is allowed to pass through the AV node barrier. Ventricles, therefore, are activated by ectopic pacemaker (idioventricular rhythm) and contract at a regular rate of 30-40/min (idioventricular pacemaker is present in the walls of ventricle close to the AV node). So, there is no relationship between atrial and ventricular pacemaker, and the atrial and ventricular rhythms are asynchronous (there is complete dissociation between P waves and QRS complexes). The atrial rate is that of average regular sinus rhythm. Thus, the P waves and QRS complexes are seen to occur at a different but constant rate (i.e., the P-P and R-R intervals are constant). Usually the rate of the QRS complex is near about half that of the P wave. There is absence of fixed P-R relationship.

If complete heart block develops suddenly and ventricular standstill persists for few seconds, the patient may develop Stokes-Adams syndrome (read the 'Emergency medicine' section).

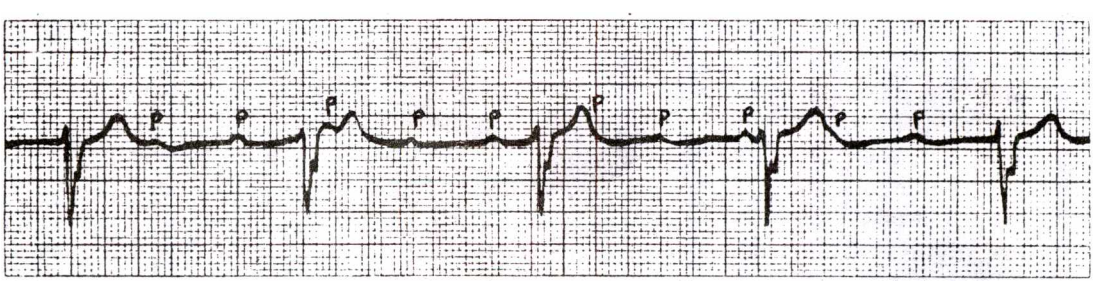


Fig. 4.49 : Complete heart block with ventricular rate 43/minute. Atrial rate is 115/minute

Aetiology :

1. Coronary artery disease, specially acute anterior wall myocardial infarction.
2. 'Congenital' complete heart block.
3. Digitalis, quinidine or procainamide overdose.
4. Myocarditis, pericarditis.
5. Association with ASD (ostium primum type) or VSD.
6. Cardiac surgery (near the conducting system).
7. Lenegre's disease (idiopathic sclerodegenerative disease of the conducting system).

8. Lev's disease (fibrocalcific affection of the conducting system).
9. Cardiac tumour, SBE (aortic root abscess), granulomatous infection (tuberculosis, gumma) or parasitic infestations (Chagas' disease in central and south America).
10. Idiopathic (specially in India).

* Acute rheumatic fever may be associated with first and second degree heart block but not with complete heart block (CHB).

** Clinically, CHB is associated with bradycardia (36-40/min) with regular pulse rate, varying intensity of Sj and irregular cannon waves in neck vein.

[F] HEART BLOCK

Classification of heart block :

1. SA block — The sinus impulse is blocked within the SA junction, i.e., neither atrial nor ventricular activation takes place. So, both the P wave and the QRS complexes are absent, and heart will miss a beat as a whole.



Fig. 4.50 : SA block (every third SA impulse is blocked). Incidentally, there is associated first degree AV block (increased P-R interval)

2. AV block (read section E).
3. Bundle branch block (read section D).
4. Arborisation or Purkinje block — When the bundle branch block is associated with low amplitude complexes, it is known as arborisation block. This term is uncommonly used at the present moment.

* **24-hours ambulatory** or **dynamic ECG** (or **'Holter' ECG.** after its inventor): this technique records transient changes, e.g., an occasional pause in heart beat or a brief paroxysm of tachycardia in the cardiac cycle, complained by the patient. During the recording, the patient remains ambulatory. A1 least 1 lac complexes are recorded in 24-hours and analysed by automatic methods.

[G] MISCELLANEOUS

Wolff-Parkinson-White (W-P-W) syndrome :

Here, the atrial impulse goes to the ventricles via normal as well as anomalous pathway (bundle of Kent). The early activation of the ventricular myocardium is known as *pre-excitation.*

Features :

1. Short P-R interval (< 0.12 sec).
2. Wide QRS complex (> 0.12 sec).
3. Slurred initial upstroke of the QRS complex, known as *'delta wave'.*
4. Secondary ST segment and T wave changes.

* Patients with W-P-W syndrome are prone to attacks of supraventricular tachyarrhythmias.



Fig. 4.51 : W-P-W syndrome with delta wave

Sick sinus syndrome (structural nodal disease) :

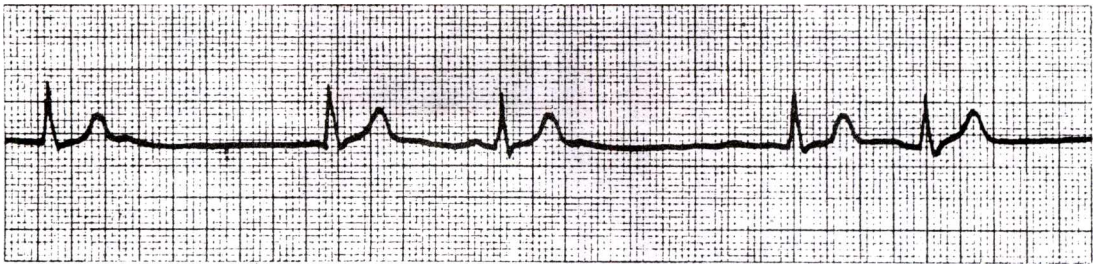
It is also known as *bradycardia-tachycardia syndrome.* Patient may present with dizziness, confusion, fatigue, pre-syncope and syncope, palpitation, chest pain, irritability etc. It is diagnosed by,

a) Clinical appraisal (symptoms are due to cerebral hypoperfusion and low cardiac output).
b) ECG monitoring (sinus bradycardia, sinus arrest, sinus pause, SA block with the appearance of escape rhythm, AV block or SVT, atrial fibrillation or flutter).
c) Provocative tests — Sinus node recovery time (a response to overdrive atrial pacing; normal value is < 1500 millisecond) and sino-atrial conduction time. These times are prolonged in structural SA node disease.

Aetiology :

The underlying pathology may involve fibrosis, degenerative changes and/or ischaemia of the SA node.

1. Ischaemic heart disease.
2. Infiltrative or degenerative heart disease.
3. Coronary atherosclerosis with or without systemic hypertension.
4. Cardiomyopathy.
5. Congenital heart disease.
6. Digitalis, quinidine, procainamide-induced.
7. Idiopathic.



Contd.

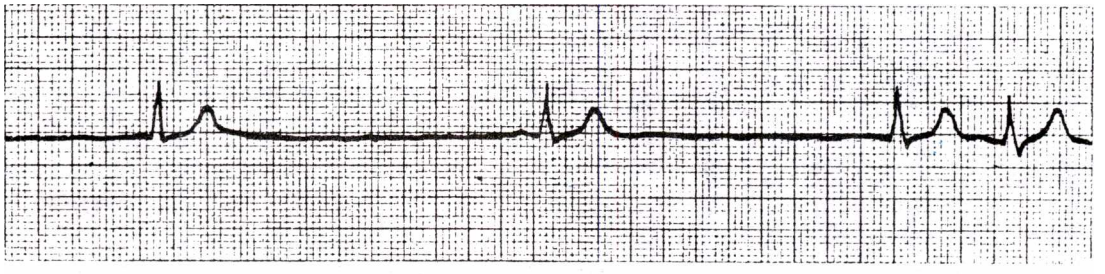


Fig. 4.52 : Sick sinus syndrome

ECG manifestations of sinus node dysfunction are often intermittent and thus it is difficult to prove. Ambulatory ECG (Holter) monitoring remains the mainstay in evaluating sinus node function. Treatment of structural nodal disease is done by artificial demand pacemaker into the right ventricle or permanent pacemaker, as well as using various antiarrhythmic drugs (atropine, isoprenaline).

Hypothermia :

Features :

1. Sinus bradycardia.
2. J wave or 'Osborne wave' — Narrow hump-like wave superimposed on the terminal part of the distal limb of the QRS complex.
3. Q-T interval is prolonged.
4. Muscle tremor (i.e., shivering artefact).
5. Very low temperature, i.e., 30°C or less may produce ventricular fibrillation.

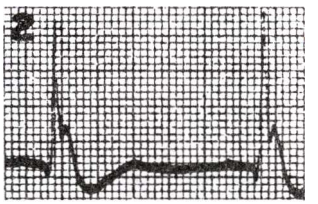


Fig. 4.53 : Hypothermia with J wave

Electrical alternans :

Here, the height of the R wave (i.e., QRS complex) alternates every other beat.

Aetiology :

1. Pericardial effusion, usually with cardiac tamponade (commonest)—heart may rotate freely within the fluid and the electrical axis of the heart may vary with each beat.
2. Paroxysmal atrial tachycardia (rare).
3. Atherosclerotic heart disease (rare).

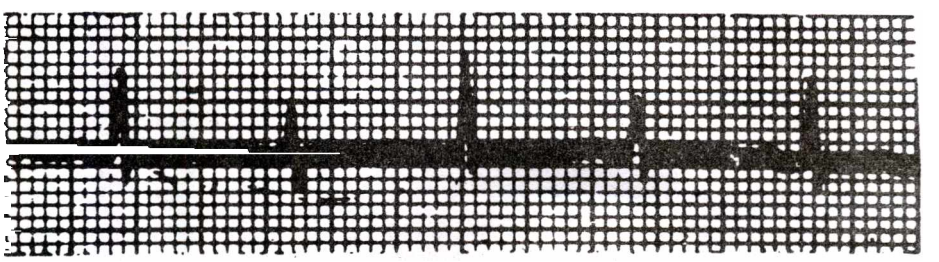


Fig. 4.54 : Electrical alternans

EFFECT OF DRUGS

Digitalis :

(A) Digitalis effect:

Digitalis effect in ECG does not indicate the need to reduce the dose of the drug. When the patient reaches adequate digitalisation, these changes may be seen in the ECG.

1. ST segment becomes depressed, rounded and with concave (scooped) configuration. It gives the impresion of T wave inversion — the mirror-image of a 'correction mark'.
2. Shortened Q-T interval.

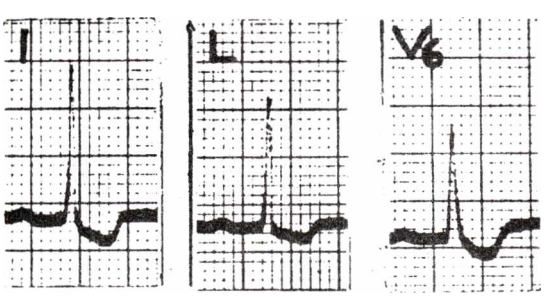


Fig. 4.55 : Digitalis effect

(B) Digitalis toxicity :

Overdigitalisation or toxic effect of the drug may be as follows :

1. Sinus bradycardia.
2. First degree, second degree or third degree AV block; SA block and bundle branch block.
3. Isolated VPB which are unifocal or multifocal, or especially *ventricular bigeminy.*

4. Supraventricular tachyarrhythmias—paroxysmal atrial tachycardia with or without block, atrial flutter, atrial fibrillation.
5. Ventricular arrhythmias — VT, ventricular flutter or fibrillation.

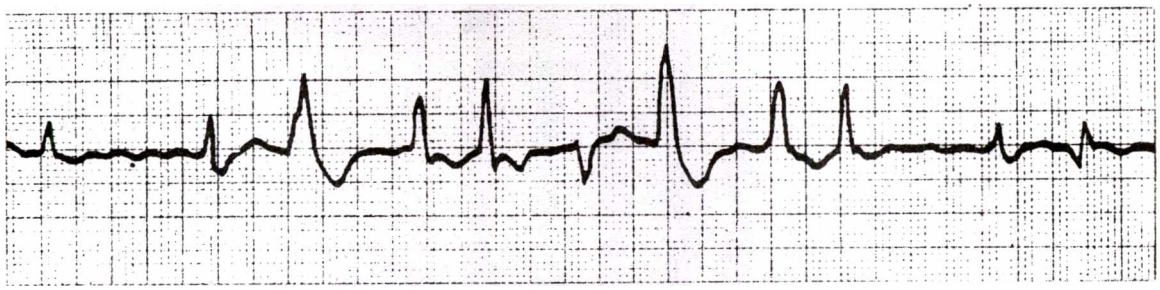


Fig. 4.56 : Digitalis toxicity

* Digitalis may produce any type of arrhythmia except Mobitz type II AV block and parasystole.

N.B. : Digitalis toxicity is increased in the presence of hypokalaemia, renal or hepatic failure and with advanced heart diseases.

Quinidine :

(A) Quinidine effect:

1. ST segment depression with T .wave flattening; wide and notched T wave.
2. Prolonged Q-T interval.

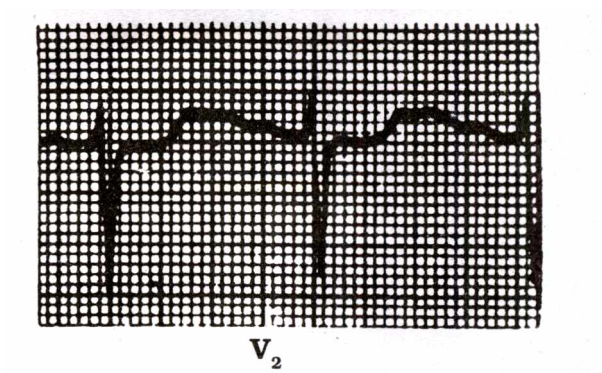


Fig. 4.57 : Quinidine effect with prolonged Q-T interval

(B) Quinidine toxicity :

1. SA block; first, second and third degree AV block; bundle branch block.
2. Ventricular arrhythmias — VPB, VT, idioventricular rhythm, ventricular fibrillation and cardiac standstill.
3. AV junctional rhythm.
4. Widened QRS complex.
5. *Marked prolongation of the Q-T interval.*

EFFECT OF ELECTROLYTES

Potassium :

(A) ***Hyperkalaemia :***

Progressive rise in serum potassium level is associated with the following ECG changes :

1. *Tall, slender and peaked T wave.*

2. Amplitude of the R wave is diminished. QRS complex widens and merges with the T wave in such a way that it is difficult to detect the ST segment, and producing a bizarre, widened and diphasic deflection of T wave.
3. Amplitude of the P wave is diminished and ultimately disappears completely; gradually a 'sine-like wave' is seen.
4. Ventricular arrhythmia may be associated with. Sinus bradycardia may be seen.

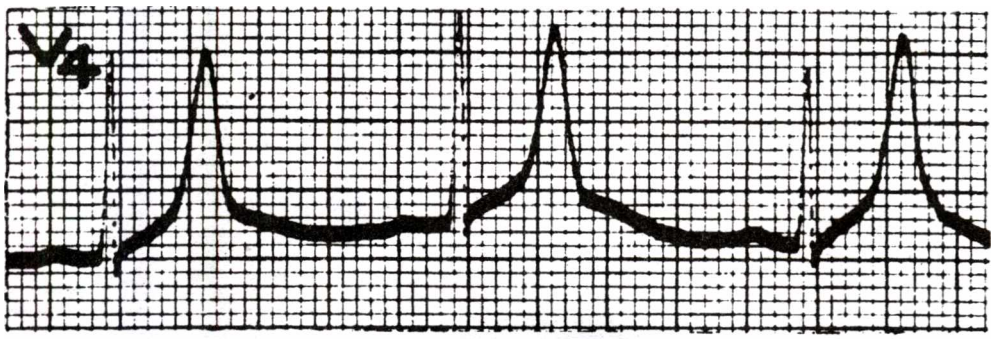


Fig. 4.58 : Hyperkalaemia

(B) Hypokalaemia:

Progressive diminution in serum potassium level is associated with the following ECG changes :

1. ST depression with flattened or inverted T wave.
2. *Prominent U wave.*
3. Prolonged P-R interval.
4. Prolonged Q-T interval.
5. Rarely, SA block.

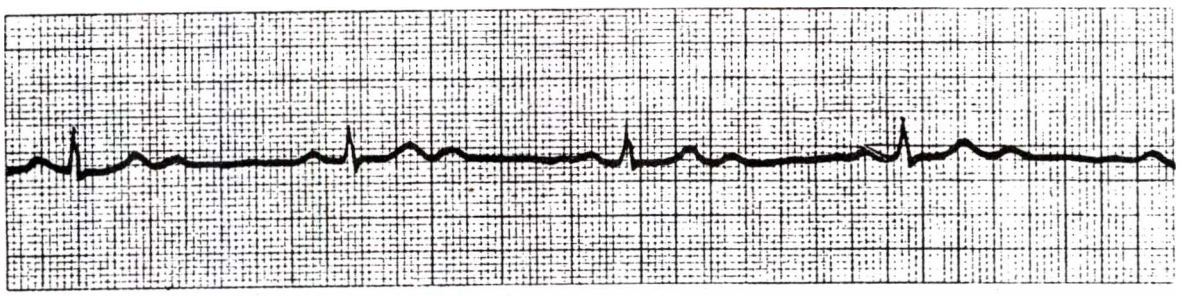


Fig. 4.59 : Hypokalaemia with U wave

* Normal serum potassium level is 3.5-5 meq/L.

Dextrocardia :

Features :

1. P wave is inverted in lead I. QRS complex and T wave are also inverted in lead I. Upright P wave in aVR.
2. Tallest QRS complexes are seen in the right precordial leads, i.e., in V_t and V_2, and progressively diminished to the left. That is to say, there is gradual diminution of height of R waves from V, to V_6.

* In *technical dextrocardia* (faulty interchange of right and left arm electrode by a technician) lead I, II, III, aVR, aVL and aVF will have similar changes like true dextrocardia; but there will be no alteration of normal ECG pattern in precordial leads (i.e., in V,^).

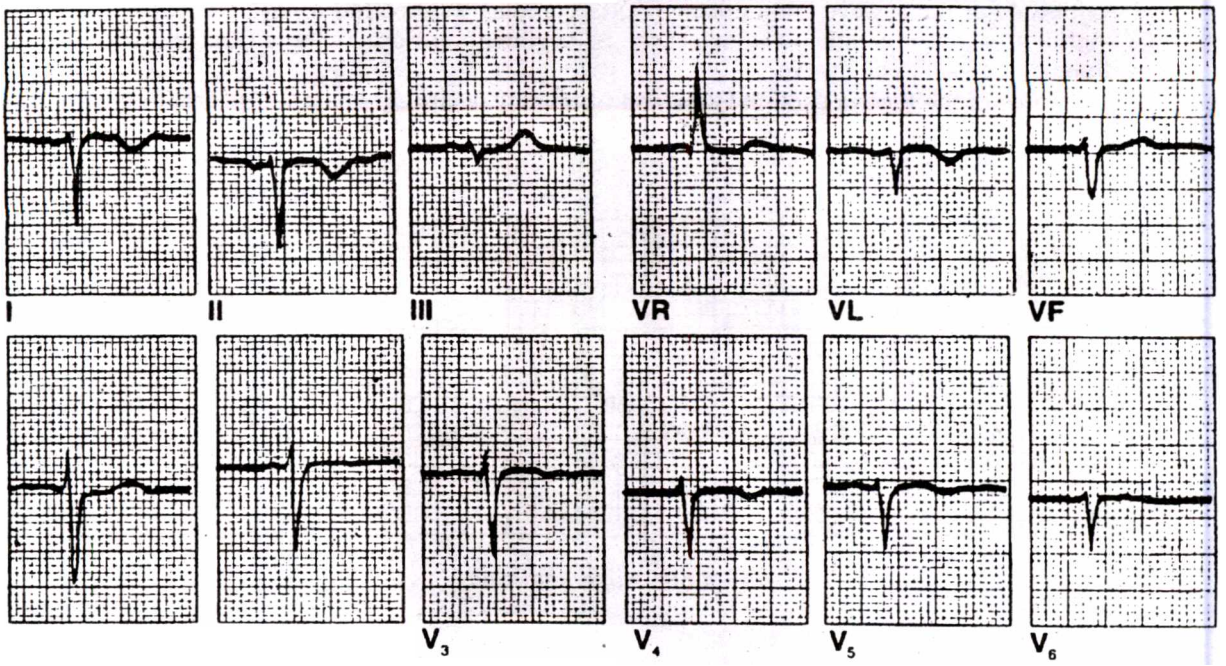


Fig. 4.60: Dextrocardia

Pericarditis :

(A) Acute pericarditis :

1. Normal voltage.
2. *Elevated ST segment with concavity upwards* (in contrast to ST elevation with convexity upwards seen in AMI) — Saddle-back appearance.
3. T wave remains upright (as there is no myocardial ischaemia). After few days, T wave may be inverted.

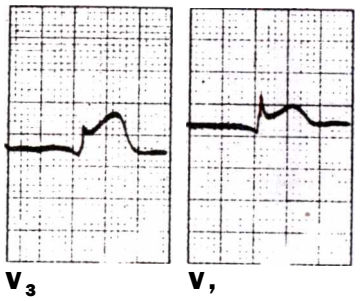


Fig. 4.61 : Pericarditis (acute)

(B) Chronic constrictive pericarditis :

1. Low voltage.
2. Low to inverted T wave.

(C) Pericardial effusion :

1. Low voltage.
2. Low to inverted T wave (sometimes with ST elevation).
3. Electrical alternans may be seen.

Myocarditis :

Myocarditis commonly results from secondary to infections and produces :

1. Varying degree of heart block e.g., first degree AV block, bundle branch block etc.
2. QRS abnormality very often mimics acute myocardial infarction.
3. Various arrhythmias.

Myxoedema :

1. Sinus bradycardia.
2. Low voltage QRS complexes.
3. Prolongation of the P-R interval.
4. Flattened T waves.

Athlete's heart:

1. Sinus bradycardia.
2. Varying degree of AV block (e.g., first degree AV block).
3. Incomplete RBBB is not uncommon.
4. Non-specific ST elevation along with T wave flattening/inversion in precordial leads.

Cerebral diseases on the ECG :

Abnormal ECG is specially found in cerebral and subarachnoid haemorrhage (i.e., CVA), and the changes are :

1. ST depression, and flat to inverted T waves; precordial T waves may be wide and prominent (bizarre ST-T changesl.
2. Prolongation of the Q-T interval.
3. Prominent U waves.
4. Sinus bradycardia.

Pacemaker complex :

The prime indication of electrical pacing of the heart is Stokes-Adams syndrome. The ECG of such a person shows 'pace artefact' or 'pacing spike' (a vertical line) in the tracing. If pace artefact is to be removed, a special magnet should be used while recording the ECG.

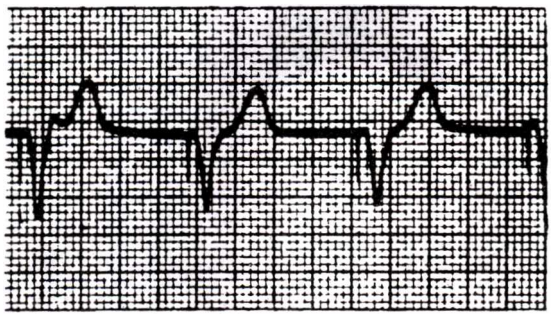


Fig. 4.62 : Right ventricular endocardial pacing. Pace artefact is seen before each QRS complex

ALWAYS REMEMBER THESE GOLDEN LINES

ECG is a simple laboratory test and like all laboratory findings, an abnormal tracing reveals significance if correlated clinically. An abnormal ECG tracing does not necessarily mean an abnormal heart and a normal tracing does not rule out pathology. A patient with a normal tracing may be dead after ten minutes from a coronary attack and another patient with grossly abnormal tracing may survive in this world for many years without having any cardiac symptoms.

CHAPTER V : EMERGENCY MEDICINE

EVALUATION AND MANAGEMENT OF COMA

In coma, the patient is deeply unconscious and there is no response evoked by external or internal stimuli. The Greek word 'kome' means deep sleep.

The common causes of coma are :

1. CVA (e.g., cerebral haemorrhage, massive cerebral infarction with oedema), encephalitis, meningitis, cerebral abscess, subdural or extradural haematoma, intracranial SOL, tentorial herniation, hypertensive encephalopathy, cerebral malaria, head injury, post-epileptic.
2. Diabetic ketoacidosis, hypoglycaemia, renal failure, hepato-cellular failure, respiratory failure, severe anoxia, myxoedema coma, pituitary apoplexy, adrenal crisis, hyponatraemia, eclampsia.
3. Stokes-Adams syndrome, arrhythmias, tight aortic stenosis, cardiogenic shock (e.g., AMI), hypotension, malignant hypertension.
4. Poisoning (barbiturate, organophosphorus, morphine), alcohol overdose, hypothermia, heat stroke, snake bite.
5. Severe sepsis.
6. Psychogenic.

* Structural lesion in the brain (affecting reticular activating system in diencephalon, and brainstem), toxic or metabolic derangements, and cardiac problems are the chief causes of coma.

** Altered consciousness is produced by three basic mechanisms, i.e., diffuse brain dysfunction (metabolic cause), direct effect within brainstem (pontine glioma), and pressure effect on the brainstem (mass lesion within brain) affecting reticular formation, brainstem and cerebral cortex.

Outline of evaluation :

Initial assessment should focus on history (from relatives/associates/eyewitriess) and general physical examination.

(A) History :

Onset, progress, premonitory symptoms, H/O epilepsy, features of increased intracranial tension (IIT), trauma (head injury), alcohol overdose, poisoning, suicidal tendency, high fever, dyspnoea, chest pain, jaundice, haematemesis/melaena, discharge from ear, urinary output, hypertension, diabetes mellitus; circumstances in which the patient was found to be unconscious should be specially asked for.

(B) Physical examination :

Perform a thorough physical examination. General appearance (flushed face with parotid swelling in chronic alcoholism), odour of breath, ears, eyes with special reference to pupil, jaundice, pattern of respiration (frothy sputum coming through nose in organophosphorus poisoning, or Cheyne-Stokes type breathing in metabolic coma), neck rigidity, tongue bite mark, involuntary movements, sweating, soiling of clothes, temperature, pulse (bradycardia in Stokes-Adams syndrome/IIT), BP, motor response (one side of the face may puff off with expiration in CVA with neurodeficit), hepatosplenomegaly (splenomegaly in cerebral malaria/typhoid state), and fundus examination (diabetic retinopathy, papilloedema in IIT) should be performed.

* In coma, plantar response in bilaterally extensor. Often the localisation of side of neurodeficit in CVA is not possible while the patient is in coma.

** Pupil examination :

a) Pin-point but reactive pupil—Pontine haemorrhage, organophosphorus poisoning, narcotic (morphine) overdose. Morphine poisoning also shows features of respiratory depression.
b) Bilaterally dilated and fixed pupil—Severe anoxic encephalopathy, glutethimide or atropine intoxication, dhatura poisoning.
c) Unilateral dilated and fixed pupil (anisocoria)—Oculomotor palsy caused by uncal herniation.
d) Midposition (4-5 mm) but fixed pupil—Midbrain lesion.
e) Hutchinson's pupil-—Head injury.
f) Horner's syndrome (unilateral) — Seen in hypothalamic damage.

*** So, a torch must be in hand while the doctor is in emergency.

**** Corneal reflex is absent in coma.

***** Measure the 'score' by Glasgow Coma Scale (eye opening, best motor response and verbal response).

(C) Investigations :

a) Urine—Specially for sugar, acetone and albumin.

b) Blood—Sugar, urea, creatinine, bilirubin, smear for malaria parasite, Na\ K^+; blood gas analysis. Blood should be sent for metabolic and endocrine studies (cortisol, TSH), and kept for drug screening (salicylates, barbiturates).

c) CSF—Meningitis, subarachnoid haemorrhage.

d) Examination of vomitus or gastric contents (toxicology screening)—Naked eye examination of appearance of undigested tablets, and the odour often clinch the diagnosis of drug overdose or poisoning.

e) ECG—Complete heart block, AMI, tachyarrhythmias.

f) X-ray—Usually not possible in a comatose patient. X-ray in lying down position may be taken for skull/chest (i.e., in injury).

g) CT Scan—May detect structural lesion in brain (if facility is available). Early CT scan is often inconclusive in CVA (e.g., cerebral infarction). EEG, radionuclide brain scan or angiography is dependent on the availability of facilities.

Classify coma on rapidity of evolution :

(A) Abrupt (i.e., within seconds or minutes) :

1. Cerebral haemorrhage.
2. Massive cerebral infarction.
3. Subarachnoid haemorrhage.
4. Cardiac arrest.
5. Epileptic convulsions.
6. Head injury.
7. Psychogenic.

(B) Acute (i.e., within a few hours) :

1. Cerebral haemorrhage or infarction.
2. Acute poisoning or drug-overdose.
3. Hypoglycaemia.

(C) Subacute (i.e., within few hours and a few days) :

1. Metabolic encephalopathy (hyponatraemia, hepatic or uraemic encephalopathy, anoxia or hypercapnoea, heat stroke, diabetic ketoacidosis, dyselectrolytaemias).
2. Encephalitis, meningitis, brain tumour.
3. Toxic encephalopathies resulting from severe infection e.g., cerebral malaria.

Outline of managment:

To maintain life, follow a -> b -> c -> d chronologically.

1. Place the patient on a soft mattress in supine position; bed with railed cot, if available; change of posture in every two hours. Prone in lateral position may prevent aspiration of gastric contents.
2. Maintain *'airway'* by neck extension/chin lift; place oropharyngeal airway tube or endotracheal tube; suck the oropharynx. Always try to prevent the falling back of the tongue.
3. Ensure adequate *'breathing'-,* if necessary, give mouth to mouth ventilation. In a desperate situation give 100% 0_2, ventilate with face mask or Ambu bag.
4. Maintain adequate *'circulation';* if carotid/femoral pulses are palpable, continue ventilation with 0_2. If pulses are not palpable and heart sounds are not audible, deliver a sharp blow to the centre of the chest. If heart does not start immediately, start cardiac massage at a rate of 1/second and ventilate mouth to mouth once/5 massages.
5. After resuscitation by basic life support put a Ryle's tube, insert IV catheter (intracath), apply a Foley's or condom catheter.

6. If necessary (make correction by *'drugs'),*
   a) Maintain circulation—By 5% dextrose, normal saline or plasma.
   b) Acidosis—inj. sodium bicarbonate (7.5%) 1 meq/kg, l.V; may be repeated after 10-15 minutes.
   c) To increase renal perfusion and to treat hypotension—By dopamine infusion at the rate of >5 |ig/kg/min; 200 mg of inj. dopamine is dissolved in 540 ml of normal saline to run at the rate of 10-12 drops/min.
   d) Suspected hypoglycaemia—100 ml of 25% glucose, I.V.
   e) Suspected morpine poisoning—Inj. naloxone 0.4-0.8 mg, l.V.
   f) Convulsions—Inj. diazepam 5-10 mg, slow l.V; may start inj. phenytoin 13-18 mg/kg in normal saline, not faster than 50 mg/min.
   g) Hypothermia—Cover with blankets, continue 0_2, correct acidosis by inj. sodium bicarbonate (7.5%) 1 meq/kg, l.V, to be given over 10 minutes.
      Hyperthermia—Start ice irrigation, ice bag on head, inj chlorpromazine—25 mg, I.M stat.
   h) Organophosphorus poisoning—Inj. atropine, 1-2 mg, l.V. to be repeated till the full dilatation of pupil. Start inj. pralidoxime 1-2 gin infusion of 100 ml of normal saline over 30 minutes. Forced alkaline diuresis is started in barbiturate poisoning.
   i) Copper sulphate poisoning- Start D-penicillamine 250 mg, 1 cap 4-6 hourly through Ryle's tube. In dhatura poisoning, start inj. neostigmine 1 mg, I.M. stat and repeat 4-6 hourly.
   j) Stokes-Adams syndrome—Maintain airway, start inj. atropine 0.6 mg, l.V; repeated, if necessary. Now, start isoprenaline drip by 2 mg dissolved in 540 ml of 5% dextrose, l.V. to maintain the heart rate at 70-80/ min. Permanent pacemaker should be implanted.
   k) Drug poisoning—Start gastric lavage, if not applied yet.
7. Diabetic ketoacidosis, hepato-cellular failure, renal failure, myxoedema coma, hypertensive encephalopathy, snake bite need special line of management (see afterwards).
8. Inj. hydrocortisone hemisuccinate—100 mg, l.V. stat and every 8 hourly. Often helpful in cerebral oedema, Stokes-Adams syndrome and myxoedema coma.
9. General care of the comatosed patient—
   a) Maintain intake-output chart.
   b) Prevention of cutaneous pressure sore (bed sore)—Frequent change of posture in bed, maintain local hygiene (by alcohol/spirit cleansing); bed should be dry and clean; use air cushions to protect pressure points; apply local antibiotic (with or without povidone iodine and metronidazole ointment) from the beginning of a small bed sore, and consult surgeon.
   c) Care of bladder, bowel and mouth—Condom catheter is preferable in male patients as indwelling catheters are common source of UTI. Constipation should.be managed by dioctyl sodium sulphosuccinate tablets (100 mg/tablet), 2 tab at bed time or by enema. Mouth care should be done by swabs soaked in boroglycerine/lotio mercurochrome (1%) or by sucker (prevents parotitis); fungal infection should be tackled by oral clotrimazole lotion.
   d) Maintain Ryle's tube, l.V catheter, condom/indwelling catheter (with an intake-output chart). Check pulse, respiration, BP, temperature **(vital signs)** regularly including pulse oximetry and continuous ECG monitoring. Recheck serum electrolytes.
   e) Start systemic antibiotic in the first chance, if evidenced by UTI, basal pneumonia etc.
   f) Maintain 'nutrition' and hydration by Ryle's tube feeding (3000 calories/day) or I.V alimentation.
   g) Eye care—Gentamycin or chloramphenicol eye ointment is applied (prevents exposure keratitis); taping of eyelids, irrigation as and when necessary.
   h) Start physiotherapy as soon as the patient recovers from coma (in CVA cases).
   i) Inj. ranitidine—50 mg, I.V, 3-4 times daily or sucralfate 1 g, 6 hourly, orally to prevent stress ulcer.
   j) Maintain normal body temperature.
   k) Record improvement by scoring of Glasgow Coma Scale.
   1) Move the legs and arms passively thrice daily to prevent leg vein thrombosis and frozen shoulder respectively.
10. Gastric aspirate and urine should be preserved for possible toxicological screening.

*** Psychogenic or hysterical coma :**

1. Very resistant to firm supraorbital pressure. Often shows forced eye closure in response to painful stimuli.
2. Plantar response—Bilaterally flexor.
3. May be associated with hyperventilation.
4. Absence of H/O spontaneous micturition, defecation or tongue bite.
5. Pupils—Bilaterally normal and reacting equally.
6. The patient is usually a young female under stress or familial dysharmony.
7. Increased tone in skeletal muscles in the presence of coma.
8. Normal caloric test, EEG or CT scan.

**** Doll's-eye movement (oculocephalic reflex) :**

The head of the comatosed patient is quickly rotated from side to side with the eyes kept open, and the positive response observed is conjugate deviation of the eyes to opposite direction to that of the head. For example, in a comatose patient if the head is quickly rotated to the left, the eyes will deviate to the right if the patient has 'intact brainstem' (with release from higher cerebral control). Absence of this reflex indicates severe structural lesion in brainstem or deep metabolic coma. This reflex is not present in normal persons.

***** 'Brainstem functions' are assessed by :**

1. Level of consciousness.
2. Pattern of respiration (e.g., Cheyne-Stokes respiration, apneustic breathing or ataxic type of breathing).
3. Pupillary size and reactivity.
4. Ocular movements (conjugate deviation, doll's-eye movement).
5. Oculovestibular reflex (caloric test).

****** Respiratory patterns in coma (or CNS disorders) :**

1. Post-hyperventilation apnoea (periods of apnoea after 5-10 deep breaths) — indicates bifrontal disease.
2. Cheyne-Stokes respiration—indicates supratentorial lesions (massive cerebral lesions).
3. Central neurogenic hyperpnoea (rather, it is like Kussmaul breathing i.e., deep, regular breathing with increased rate and depth) — indicates midbrain-upper pontine lesion.
4. Apneustic breathing (a pause of 2-3 seconds after full inspiration)

   or

   Biot's breathing (e.g., 3 to 4 respirations without waxing or waning, followed by a pause) - indicates lower pontine-level lesion.
5. Ataxic breathing (rhythm is chaotic, varying in rate and depth) — indicates lesion in medulla.
6. Hyproventilation (regular, rhythmic shallow breathing)—may have lesion in brainstem.

MANAGEMENT OF HEPATIC PRE-COMA/COMA

1. Read the 'general care of the comatosed patient' (see before).
2. In hepatic pre-coma, patient may be restless. Tie him with gauze and cotton, in a railed cot. Oxazepam (15-30 mg) may be given orally through Ryle's tube.
3. Blood is tested for :
   a) Serum bilirubin and other LFTs.
   b) Na\ K^+, HCO_3-; Ca^{++}, Mg+\ Po_4~-.
   c) Serum ammonia.
   d) Urea and creatinine; sugar (random).
   e) Prothrombin time.
4. Identify and remove possible precipitating factors e.g., electrolyte imbalance or drugs consumed with cerebral depressant properties.

5. Protein restricted diet. Recently protein restriction is discouraged to maintain nutrition; replace animal-based protein with vegetable-based protein.
6. Neomycin sulphate (for gut sterilisation)—4g/day or 3 cap (350 mg/capsule) 6 hourly to be given through Ryle's tube till revovery occurs. Metronidazole 200 mg, 6 hourly may be started in the absence of neomycin or where the patient suffers from concomitant renal insufficiency. Recently rifaximin (400 mg tds) has proved to be very effective.
7. Syrup lactulose—10-30 ml, three times daily to continue, orally or so as to cause two to three semisolid stools daily. Lactitol 30 g daily is compatible in efficacy to lactulose.
8. Inj. mannitol (20%)— 100 ml, 8 hourly, I.V (few clinicians prefer to run mannitol 300 ml, I.V rapidly in 30 minutes). It reduces cerebral oedema in hepatic pre-coma. Mannitol should be withheld in hepatic coma.
9. Maintenance of calorie, fluid and electrolytes—
   a) About 1500-2000 calories/day are required of which 1200 calories/day to be given in the form of 10-25% glucose.

   I.V. fluid direction (3 bottles/24 hours) :

   10% dextrose, followed by

   10% dextrose wih normal saline, followed by

   Darrow's solution.

   b) As hypokalaemia is a common complication, 60 meq/day of K^+ should be given in slow I.V route in three divided doses. Half of the dose may be given orally (syrup potassium chloride).
   c) Hypoglycaemia, hypomagnesaemia, hypocalcaemia and hypophosphataemia should be properly dealth with.
10. High bowel wash or enema 8-12 hourly daily for 2-3 days.
11. Inj. vitamin K — 10 mg I.M/I.V twice daily for consecutive 3 days.
12. Inj. ranitidine (50 mg/2 ml)—50 mg, I.V, 3-4 times daily till recovery.
13. Miscellaneous—
   a) Flumazenil, L-dopa (1-4 g/day, orally in divided doses) may be tried "j
   b) I.V. branched-chain amino acid, charcoal haemoperfusion may be beneficial I empirical
   c) Bromocriptine—2.5-15 mg/daily, orally J
   d) Judicious use of diuretics in treating oedema arid ascites.
   e) Manage haematemesis/melaena accordingly.
   f) Inj. ampicillin—500 mg, I.M/I.V, 6 hourly or inj. cefotaxime—lg, I.V, 12 hourly for 5-7 days in systemic infection.
   g) Inj. vitamin B complex- 2 ml, I.M/I.V once daily.
   h) Fresh blood, fresh frozen plasma or platelet transfusion in case of haemorrhage, if any.
   i) L-omithine L-aspartate (LOLA) given orally or parenterally promotes hepatic removal of NH_3 along with detoxication (of NH_3).
   j) Zinc supplementation may be helpful.

* In hepatic coma, clinical jaundice may be mild.

** Flapping tremor is present in hepatic pre-coma, absent in coma.

*** In the management of hepatic encephalopathy (pre-coma/coma), always be careful regarding electrolyte imbalance. It is very often the silent killer (specially, hypokalaemia). Paralytic ileus with diminished peristaltic sound is a bedside clue to hypokalaemia.

COMA IN A DIABETIC

The probable causes of coma in a diabetic are :

1. Hypoglycaemic coma (commonest cause).
2. Diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA).
3. Hyperosmolar hyperglycaemic non-ketotic coma (HHNK or HONK).
4. Lactic acidosis (rare).

5. Other causes of coma like,
   a) CVA,
   b) Renal failure,
   c) Hepatic coma,
   d) Drug-induced coma.

At first, try to differentiate between hypoglycaemic coma and DKA (see below).

Table 13 : Differentiation between DKA and hypoglycaemic coma

	Features	DKA	Hypoglycaemic coma
1.	History	No insulin; infection	Large dose of insulin; no food; heavy exercise
2.	Onset	Gradual	Sudden
3.	Symptoms and signs	Pain abdomen, vomiting	Hunger, drenching sweat, tremor, palpitation
	a) Tongue and skin	Dry	Moist
	b) Pulse	Weak	Bounding
	c) BP	Low	Normal or high
	d) Respiration	Air hunger	Shallow breathing
	e) Reflexes	Diminished	Brisk
4.	Urine examination	Sugar + Acetone +	Sugar - Acetone -
5.	Blood examination	Sugar T hco_3- ı	Sugar 1 $HC0_3$“ : normal

A patient of lactic acidosis may give H/O regular intake of metformin (big'uanides), if associated with severe hepatic or renal disease. HHNK is common in elderly type 2 DM patients.

* DKA patients may have Kussmaul's breathing with smell of acetone in breath.

Management :

(A) Hypoglycaemic coma—

Symptomatic hypoglycaemia occurs when the blood level of glucose is less than 55 mg/dl.

1. Inj. dextrose (25%)-—50 ml, I.V bolus to be followed by 5% dextrose infusion, I.V, rapidly until the patient is able to eat a meal. Blood sugar should be preferably kept above 150 mg/dl.
2. As soon as the patient is able to take food orally, start oral feeding with glucose, sucrose or sugar-containing liquids. Frequent monitoring of blood sugar is necessary.
3. In refractory cases, inj. glucagon 1 mg, S.C or I.M may be given and repeated after 10 minutes, if required.
4. If the patient is on insulin or oral hypoglycaemic agents (OHA). readjust the dosage schedule and reeducate the patient.

(B) Diabetic ketoacidosis—

Management of DKA should preferably be conducted in ITU (Intensive Therapeutic Unit). Success of treatment depends on close monitoring by the physician.

1. In an established case, the patient usually suffers from a fluid deficit of 7-8 litres (sodium loss is 500 mmol). It is better to correct the fluid loss in this way :

Normal saline volume	Time
1 litre	in 30 minutes
ı litre	in next ı hour
ı litre	in next 2 hours
1 litre	in next 4 hours
4 litres	in next 16 hours

2. Inj. soluble (regular) insulin—Administer soluble insulin (0.1 units/kg as bolus) or I.M (0.3 units/kg), and then 0.1 unit/kg/hour by continuous I.V infusion, as long as normal saline drip continues. When the blood sugar level falls to 250 mg/dl, reduce the rate of insulin infusion to 3 units/hour. If the blood glucose concentration does not fall within 2 hours, the dose of insulin should be doubled.
3. When the blood sugar level reaches 250 mg/dl, the fluid is changed to 5% glucose (as a prophylactic measure to control late cerebral oedema, to prevent dangerous hypoglycaemia and to supply 'free water'). 12 units of soluble insulin is charged in each bottle to neutralise glucose (5%) present in the solution of the bottle. The rate of the fluid is adjusted according to the degree of dehydration and other parameters.
4. Inj. potassium chloride—This therapy is usually required after 4 hours of initial therapy (when acidosis tends to be corrected and the K^+ shifts intracellularly by the action of insulin). If plasma K^+ is <5.5 meq/L, give inj. potassium chloride 10 meq/hr; administer 40-80 meq/hr when plasma K^+ is <3.5 meq/L, or if bicarbonate is given. If oral feeding is possible, give syrup potassium chloride 2 g, 4 hourly for next 48 hours.
5. If P^H goes below 7.0, immediately start 300-500 ml of 1.4% isotonic sodium bicarbonate in place of same volume of normal saline, to run over 30 minutes. Slow correction of bicarbonate is often beneficial.
6. Infection is controlled by inj. cefotaxime or inj. ceftriaxone—1 g, I.V, 12 hourly.
7. 'General care of the comatosed patient' (see before) is followed meticulously. Blood sugar, serum $K^+$and $HC0_3^-$, pH, sugar and acetone in urine should be checked every 2 hourly till the patient regains consciousness.
8. As soon as oral feeding is possible, give fruit juices and frequent small fluid meals. Administer intermediate or long-acting insulin in place of soluble or short-acting insulin.

* Few clinicians prefer 'low-dose insulin' therapy from the beginning by 6-8 units/hour given I.V; as the question of insulin resistance can not be ruled out in few patients, many physicians advocate 25-50 units of soluble insulin/hour until the acidosis is reversed. Persistence of acidosis despite several hours treatment with insulin makes the clinician suspicious about insulin resistance.

** As there is phosphate depletion in DKA, potassium may be administered as phosphate salt in the place of potassium chloride, at least initially.

*** Plasma expander is used, I.V in hypotension. As gastroparesis diabeticorum is common in diabetes, gastric aspiration should be done to minimise the risk of aspiration pneumonia. Central venous pressure (CVP) is monitored in an ideal setting.

**** body temperature remains normal in DKA. If raised, think of infection. Try to find out the underlying cause (e.g., perianal abscess). A chest X-ray, ECG (to exclude AMI), urine and blood culture should be performed.

***** While managing DKA, a *'flow sheet'* containing timing and amount of parenteral fluid and insulin administered as well as recording of vital signs, urinary output and blood biochemistries should be maintained.

****** Inj. magnesium sulphate (50%) in doses of 2.5-5.0 ml (i.e., 10-20 meq magnesium), I.V can be administered in patients with ventricular arrhythmia.

******* DKA is a major medical emergency and remains a serious cause of morbidity and mortality. Other than fluid and electrolytes losses, complications encountered are ARDS, cerebral oedema, DIC, thromboembolism (leg veins and pulmonary) and acute circulatory failure.

(C) Hyperosmolar hyperglycaemic non ketotic coma (HHNK or HONK)—

In HONK, dehydration is profound; plasma osmolality is high.

1. If plasma osmolality is > 350 mosm/kg, start 1 /2 strength i.e., 0.45% saline until the osmolality becomes normal, when (0.9%) normal saline should be given. The rate of fluid infusion will be judged by monitoring CVP and plasma Na^+ concentration (if osmolality of plasma falls rapidly, there is a chance of developing cerebral oedema).
2. As these patients are usually insulin sensitive, half the dose of insulin advised in DKA should be employed here, at least initially.

3. Recognition and correction of the precipitating factors (e.g., infection, heat stroke, peritoneal dialysis, high carbohydrate diet, steroids etc).
4. Others—As done in DKA (inj. potassium chloride, antibiotic, general care etc); sodium bicarbonate requirement is less as it is a non-ketotic coma.

* Usually the fluid deficit is 10 litres or even more in HHNC. The hyperglycaemic hyperosmolar state (HHS; a new terminology for HONK) is diagnosed when plasma glucose is > 600 mg/dl, osmolality > 350 mosm/kg and there is absence of ketoacidosis; the p^H of blood is usually > 7.3 with HCO,, > 18 meq/L. The mortality ranges as high as 20-30%, mainly because of the advanced age. As there is absence of 'ketosis', features like pain abdomen, nausea, vomiting and Kussmaul's respiration are absent.

(D) Lactic acidosis—

Here, the $HC0_{3^-}$ deficit is enormous. The p^H should be kept over 7.2. Treatment is aimed at,

1. I.V sodium bicarbonate—May require 2500 mmol/24 hrs.
2. Soluble insulin—As given in DKA.
3. Often haemodialysis is required (if p^H does not rise above 7.0 on meticulous treatment).
4. Others—As done in DKA.

* Urine may not contain acetone, breath does not smell that of acetone in lactic acidosis. Plasma lactate is high (> 5.6 mmol/1) and diagnostic.

(E) Other causes of coma—

Read respective chapters.

SUDDEN RESPIRATORY DISTRESS

The common causes are :

1. Acute left ventricular failure (LVF) or acute left atrial failure (acute pulmonary oedema).
2. Acute exacerbation of bronchial asthma (acute severe asthma) or COPD.
3. Spontaneous pneumothorax.
4. Acute laryngeal obstruction (e.g., foreign body).
5. Acute pulmonary thromboembolism (PTE).
6. Cardiac tamponade.
7. Anaphylaxis.
8. Hysterical hyperventilation.

Outline of evaluation :

(A) History :

Onset (except bronchial asthma and hysterical hyperventilation, all are acute in onset), progress, H/O chest pain (pneumothorax) or ingestion of foreign body, H/O penicillin administration (anaphylaxis), personality disorder (hysteria), and past history (similar episode may occur in LVF or bronchial asthma) should be taken into account.

(B) Physical examination :

At first, examine the patient for orthopnoea and central cyanosis.

a) Cough ++ —Pneumothorax, LVF, foreign body.
b) Pulse— Pulsus alternans in LVF, pulsus paradoxus in acute severe asthma.
JVP—Raised in cardiac tamponade, LVF; prominent x-trough in tamponade.
c) BP—May be hypertensive in LVF.
d) Urticaria (involving lips, tongue) with itching—Anaphylaxis.
e) Trachea—Deviated to opposite side in pneumothorax.
f) Percussion—Tympanitic resonance on affected side is obtained in pneumothorax. Obliteration of liver and cardiac dullness may be revealed in acute severe asthma and COPD. Cardiac dullness is increased in tamponade.

g) Auscultation—
   (i) LVF—Rhonchi +, crepitations +++, gallop rhythm; vesicular breath sound with prolonged expiration.
   (ii) Acute severe asthma or COPD—Rhonchi +++ , crepitations +, heart sounds muffled; may have silent chest.
   (iii) Anaphylaxis, acute pulmonary thromboembolism—Vesicular breath sound with prolonged expiration, occasional rhonchi and pleural rub (in PTE).
   (iv) Spontaneous pneumothorax—Diminished vesicular or absent breath sound on affected side, no adventitious sound.
   (v) Cardiac tamponade—Muffled heart sounds.

h) Stridor—Anaphylaxis and laryngeal obstruction.
   Wheeze—In other situations.

i) RVH—Acute severe asthma, COPD.
   LVH—LVF.

j) Hysterical hyperventilation—Pause in between inspiration and expiration. No cyanosis; exaggerated in front of relatives. Carpo-pedal spasm may be seen due to tetany.

(C) Investigations :

At least, chest X-ray (PA view) and X-ray of neck (foreign body) should be done. Blood gas analysis may be informative.

* Read the differences between cardiac asthma and bronchial asthma from 'Bedside Clinics in Medicine, Part I'.

Outline of management :

(A) Acute LVF, acute LAF or acute pulmonary oedema (cardiac asthma)—

1. Propped-up position in bed with moist O_z delivered (100%) through face mask or nasal prongs with high flow rates i.e., upto 10 litres/min.
2. Inj. morphine sulphate—Slow I.V injection in a total dose of 5-10 mg, at a rate of 2 mg/minute or inj. pethidine 100 mg, I.M given. Large doses of morphine may produce respiratory depression and it should be aoided if systolic BP is < 90 mm of Hg.
3. Inj. frusemide—40 mg, I.V stat (or bumetanide 1 mg) and maybe repeated after 30 minutes.
4. Inj. aminophylline—It was once commonly used; chance of developing arrhythmia is there; 250-500 mg of the drug should be given I.V slowly, in not less than 20 minutes. It relieves bronchospasm and improves cardiac contractility.
5. Digitalis—Needs judicious use (as diuretics produce hypokalaemia and may precipitate digitalis toxicity in turn).
6. One tab. of nitroglycerine (0.5 mg/tab) is given sublingually, may be repeated after 1/2 hour. Inj. nitroglycerine (5-100 |og/min as infusion) may be given I.V to reduce the preload.
7. Afterload reduction by I.V sodium nitroprusside (20-30 |a.g/min) may be done if systolic BP is > 100 mm of Hg.
8. Dobutamine (2.5-15 |ig/kg/min) may be of some help (I.V) in cardiogenic pulmonary oedema with shock and hypotension.
9. Phlebotomy or venesection (250 ml) may by required in intractable cases. Rotating tourniquets may be applied in the extremities—they reduce the load in the heart by diminishing venous return. Keep the sphygmomanometer cuff inflated at 80 mm of Hg (i.e., at diastolic pressure) for 15 minutes; inefficient and rarely used.
10. The patient may be transferred to ICU for continuous monitoring of pulse, BP, respiration and cardio-respiratory status.

*** This is the treatment schedule of cardiac asthma too.**

**** Few special points in the treatment :**

a) The patient is most comfortable in 'trunk up, legs down' position, i.e., patient will be sitting with the legs dangling along the side of the bed. This reduces venous return and central venous pressure. I.V fluids should be restricted.

b) Morphine relieves anxiety, reduces venous filling pressure to the heart, shifts blood from lesser to the major circulation (pharmacological phlebotomy) and diminishes adrenergic stimuli to arteriolar as well as venous bed.

c) Aminophylline has bronchodilator, vasodilator, diuretic, cardiac inotropic and respiratory muscle inotropic effects.

I amp. of inj. aminophylline (10 ml) contains 250 mg of the drug. Usually it is diluted upto 50 ml with normal saline.

d) If digitalis has not been administered previously, 0.5 mg of the drug may be administered by slow I.V injection. Later, it may be followed by one tab. of digoxin (0.25 mg/tab) daily.

e) Sodium nitroprusside 50 mg is given in 500 ml of 5% dextrose by slow I.V infusion.

f) Correction of precipitating factors e.g., infection or arrhythmia, and underlying cardiac problem.

g) ACE inhibitors or angiotensin receptor blockers diminish both after- and pre-load; specially recommended in hypertensive patients.

h) Amrinone and milrinone may be added in severe left ventricular dysfunction.

*** In clinical practice, most common causes of heart failure are ischaemic heart disease (IHD), hypertensive heart disease and valvular heart disease.

**** **High-altitude pulmonary oedema** can be prevented by dexamethasone, calcium-channel blockers, or long-acting inhaled p_2-adrenergic agonists. The situation is treated by descent from altitude, bed rest, 0_2 therapy, inhaled nitric oxide and nifedipine.

(B) Acute severe asthma—

1. Propped-up position in bed with high concentration 0_2 inhalation through an intranasal rubber catheter at the rate of 4-6 litres/min. An I.V drip should be started with normal saline.
2. Inj. aminophylline—Loading dose is 5.8 mg/kg of body weight in 100 ml normal saline over 20 minutes, followed by maintenance dose as mentioned below :

   Patients with CCF or hepatic disorder—0.45 mg/kg/hour.

   Patients over 50 years of age—0.68 mg/kg/hour.

   Young patients-0.9 mg/kg/hour.

If the patient has used the drug sporadically, loading dose will be half in that situation; I.V drip is to be continued till the acute crisis is over. However, use of I.V aminophylline is not recommended by pulmonologists at present.

* I ampoule of inj. aminophylline contains 10 ml = 250 mg of the drug.

3. Inj. hydrocortisone hemisuccinate—I.V infusion.

   Loading dose—4 mg /kg of body weight for 4 hours.

   Maintenance dose—3 mg/kg/6 hour for next 24 hours.

   Or, inj. hydrocortisone, 200 mg I.V is given 4-hourly for 24 hours from the beginning.
4. The patient is reassessed. Measure 0_2 saturation with a pulse oximeter.
5. Nebulised salbutamol 5 mg or terbutaline 10 mg with 0_2 as the driving gas may be started and repeated 4-hourly.
6. Inj. Ampicillin—500 mg, I.M, 6 hourly or inj. cefotaxime - lg, I.V, 12 hourly for 5-7 days.
7. Antimuscarinic bronchodilators e.g., ipratropium bromide (20-40 (ig. 3-4 times daily) or oxitropium bromide (200 mg twice daily) by aerosol inhalation may be started with p_2-adrenoceptor stimulants. Nebulized solution may also be used.
8. If no improvement is seen, one of the following I.V infusions may be started :
   - Salbutamol 3-20 (xg/min,
   - Terbutaline 1.5-5.0 |ig/min, or
   - Magnesium sulphate 1.2-2 g over 20 minutes.
9. Assisted (mechanical) ventilation is required if :
   a) (i) $Pa0_2$ < 64 mm of Hg and falling
      (ii) $PaCo_2$ > 48 mm of Hg and rising
      (iii) pH < 7.3
   b) Patient goes into coma/respiratory arrest /exhaustion/extreme drowsiness/ totally confused.

10. After the acute attack is over, following drugs will continue :
    a) Tab salbutamol (2 mg) or terbutaline (2.5 mg)—1 tab. thrice daily, orally.
    b) Tab prednisolone (10 mg)—Strafed with 6 tablets in the morning, orally and gradually tapered within 2 weeks.
    c) Sodium'chromoglycate inhalation—20 mg (i.e., 2 puffs), four times daily or nedocromil sodium inhalation (4 mg, 2-4 times daily).
    d) Ketotifen—1-2 mg twice daily, orally.
    e) Leukotriene antagonist, montelukast (10 mg, orally, once daily in the evening) or zafirlukast (20 mg, orally, BD) may be used in mild to moderate persistent asthma.
11. Mucolytics (acetyl-cysteine) may be used during the acute attack.
12. Plenty of fluid with semisolid/liquid diet is given orally when the acute attack is over.

* Inhalation of salbutamol/terbutaline/corticosteroid/ ipratropium bromide may be used in between the attacks. Never sedate the patient during acute attack. Avoid beta-blockers.

** If the patient is not improved in time, check the arterial blood gases and do the chest X-ray (PA view) to exclude pneumothorax developing from acute severe asthma. The patient should be admitted in the hospital for at least 5 days.

(C) Spontaneous pneumothorax—

Read 'Bedside Clinics in Medicine, Part I'.

(D) Acute laryngeal obstruction (foreign body)—

Immediately send the patient to cardio-thoracic surgeon for bronchoscopic removal of the foreign body.

(E) Acute pulmonary thromboembolism (acute PTE or acute cor pulmonale) —

1. Absolute bed rest. Moist 0_2 inhalation at the rate of 4-6 litres/min.
2. Severe chest pain may be relieved by inj. pethidine 100 mg I.M or inj. morphine 15 mg I.M (avoid in severe hypotension).
3. Normal saline drip is started.
4. Inj. heparin sulphate—10000 units, I.V bolus stat; followed by 5000 units I.V, 6 hourly, charged in 200 ml of normal saline (via a side connector) for at least 5 days (may be continued upto 10 days). Low molecular weight heparin (LMWH) given in S.C route has the same effect as unfractionated heparin (e.g., enoxaparin is used in a dose of 1 mg/kg twice daily subcutaneously). LMWH is well tolerated, easier to administer, eliminates the need for frequent monitoring of PTT, and is the treatment of choice in acute PTE. The target INR should be 2.5.
5. Start oral anticoagulation with tablet warfarin sodium (5 mg/tab) from the 2nd day as 1 tab twice daily for at least 3-4 weeks till the patient becomes ambulant, and then tapered gradually (to keep the INR at 2.5-3.0). It may be continued for 6 months. Patients with underlying prothrombotic risk will continue it for life-long.
6. Inj. dopamine infusion in hypotension or shock—200 mg of dopamine (1 ampoule) is dissolved in 540 ml of normal saline. The bottle runs at the rate of 10-12 drops/min (<10 ng/kg/min) and the systemic BP is maintained near about 90-100 mm of Hg.
7. Thrombolytic (fibrinolytic) therapy—In massive embolism with systemic hypotension, sreptokinase or urokinase is injected into the pulmonary artery through a catheter (2.5 lakh units) followed one hourly by 1 lakh unit, I.V for 2-3 days. The treatment is very costly.
8. Digitalis—Digoxin 0-5 mg is given I.V, rapidly to increase the right ventricular output.
9. ACE inhibitors are tried but not much beneficial.
10. Surgical—Pulmonary embolectomy is now rarely performed.

* The dose of heparin is adjusted on the basis of clotting time/aPTT (maintained at $1'/_2$-2 times of *controlled* value) and that of warfarin is adjusted by the result of prothrombin time (PT). LMWH needs no monitoring of coagulation profile.

** Predisposing factors for PTE :

1. Prolonged immobilisation in bed (predisposes deep venous thrombosis or DVT).
2. Post-surgical, pregnancy, post-partum state.
3. Fracture of long bones of leg.
4. Carcinoma (specially of pancreas).
5. Prolonged use of oral contraceptive pills.
6. Obesity.
7. Chronic deep venous insufficiency in legs.
8. LVF and RVF.
9. Acute myocardial infarction.

*** Ventilation-perfusion (V/Q) lung scans have traditionally been the main test for suspected PTE and a normal V/Q scan virtually excludes PTE; now-a-days contrast-enhanced spiral (helical) CT scan of lung is performed. Whenever the clinical data and non-invasive tests are equivocal or contradictory, pulmonary angiography is performed to diagnose PTE; recently CT pulmonary angiography has largely replaced conventional pulmonary angiography. Assay of plasma D-dimer is also helpful (if undetectable, excludes PTE).

In a patient of DVT, colour Doppler ultrasound of the leg veins remains the investigation of choice.

(F) Cardiac tamponade—

Immediate pericardiocentesis is done under echocardiographic monitoring (read 'pericardiocentesis' from 'Instruments and procedures' section).

(G) Anaphylaxis—

Vide 'Syringe (5 ml/50 ml)' in 'Instruments and procedures' section.

(Hj Hysterical hyperventilation—

1. Reassurance to the patient as well as to the relatives.
2. Rebreathing bag—A paper bag is kept over the mouth of the patient. She/he rebreaths for 5 minutes what has expired out, and this would allow $C0_2$ retention and correction of acid-base imbalance. This is helpful if the patient develops tetany (hyperventilation -> respiratory alkalosis -> alkalosis reduces ionic calcium) and syncopal attack after hyperventilation.
3. Often inj. diazepam 5-10 mg, I.M is helpful.
4. Psychological counselling.

CONGESTIVE CARDIAC FAILURE

Heart failure is a complex syndrome that develops when the heart can not function as a pump and is not able to maintain an adequate cardiac output or can do so only at the expense of an elevated filling pressure. The diagnosis of CCF (basically right ventricular failure) should be suspected from clinical presentation.

(A) Non-pharmacologic measures :

a) Restriction of physical activity helps to reduce myocardial work load and oxygen consumption. Complete bed rest in propped-up position, if dyspnoeic. 0_2 inhalation at the rate of 4-6 litres / minute relieves dyspnoea, reduces the work of breathing, and limits pulmonary vasoconstriction in patients with hypoxaemia. Check pulse and BP regularly. Try to find out the cause of CCF.

b) Salt restricted diet (normal diet contains 10-15 g of Nacl or 4-6 g of Na^+. Salt restricted diet means avoiding table salt or extra salt = 2-4 g of Na^+/day, and salt free diet means avoidance of table plus cooking salt = 1 g of NaVday. Restrict the fluid intake <1.5 litre/day, if found to be hyponatraemic (<130 meq/litre) or presents with volume overload.

(B) Pharmacologic therapy :

a) Diuretics — High potency loop-diuretic may be used; frusemide (40 mg/tab) 1 tablet daily to be taken in the morning (diuretic therapy reduces preload to the heart). Medium potency

thiazide diuretics may be used (hydrochlorthiazide 25-100 mg/day, indapamide 5-10 mg/day, orally), low potency potassium sparing diuretics may be added to loop diuretics (e.g., spironolactone 50-200 mg/day). Recently, it was noted that spironolactone has been shown to lower morbidity and mortality (upto 30% reduction in mortality), improve survival, and decrease hospitalisation in patients with heart failure and severe secondary hyperaldosteronism [spironolactone should not be used with ACE inhibitors, NSAIDs or in renal insufficiency, i.e., serum creatinine > 2.5 mg/dl]. The potassium loss by loop diuretics is adjusted by adding spironolactone to it.

b) Tab digoxin (0.25 mg/tab) *2-a* tablets on the first day, then 1 tab daily to continue. In old age or in the presence of renal insufficiency, 1 tab may be given daily for '5 days in a week'. One should be careful about the appearance of digitalis toxicity as the toxic : therapeutic ratio of the drug is narrow.

c) ACE inhibitors like enalapril (2.5/5/10/20 mg per tablet) — 2.5 - 5 mg tab daily to be taken in the morning or in divided doses. ACE inhibitors improve symptoms and survivals in patients of CCF (reduces preload as well as afterload). The treatment with this drug decreases ventricular filling pressure and thus increases the cardiac output, without little or no change in heart rate or BP. Captopril 6.25 mg, orally, TDS may also be given. Angiotensin II receptor blockers (e.g., losartan) may be useful in patients unable to tolerate ACE inhibitors because of intractable cough or angio-oedema.

d) (3-blockers—The deleterious effects of endogenous catecholamines on the failing heart (e.g., myocyte toxicity) can be antagonised by beta-blockers e.g., carvedilol (initiated at a dose of 3.125-6.250 mg, orally BD and is titrated to 25-50 mg, orally, BD), bisoprolol (initiated by 1.25 mg/day, orally and gradually increased to 10 mg/day), metoprolol (initiated by 12.5-25 mg/day, orally and gradually increased to 100-200 mg/day). A minimum of 2-3 months of therapy is required to observe significant haemodynamic improvement. One must be cautious in using these drugs in heart failure with very low ejection fraction. It is better to avoid p-blockers in patients having bradycardia, severe bronchospasm and heart block.

e) Reduce the dose of digitalis with the appearance of toxicity (may be given V tab daily and to continue as '5 days in a week' with 2 days rest/week). Periodic check up of urea, creatinine, Na*, K* is necessary.

* Arterial vasodilators (hydralazine, prazosin), venodilators (glycerol trinitrate) and inotropic agents (dobutamine) are not beneficial in CCF.

**** Specific treatment of heart failures :**

Forward failure — vasodilators and inotropes

Backward failure — diuretics and venodilators

Systolic dysfunction — diuretics and vasodilators

Diastolic dysfunction — vasodilators

*** Read different types of **shock** (hypovolaemic, cardiogenic, anaphylactic, obstructive [pulmonary thromboembolism] and septic) and **'systemic inflammatory response syndrome' (SIRS)** from any standard texbook.

REFRACTORY HEART FAILURE

Heart failure is considered refractory when the response to therapy becomes inadequate and the patient does not improve in due time. Probable possibilities are :

(A) Overlooked underlying otherwise correctable disease—Silent MS or AS, SBE, systemic hypertension, thyrotoxicosis or constrictive pericarditis.

(B) Precipitating cause of heart failure persists—Recurrent pulmonary thromboembolism, hypoxia, anaemia, arrhythmia, pulmonary infection, myocarditis, pregnancy.

(C) Complication induced by overzealous therapy—Digitalis toxicity, hypokalaemia, hyponatraemia or other electrolyte imbalance.

* *The most common complication results from vigorous therapy with diuretics.*

Management :

1. Carefully look for and correct the overlooked underlying cause or precipitating cause.
2. Search for complications of overzealous therapy e.g., hypovolaemia, dyselectrolytaemia or digitalis toxicity.
3. Easing up of salt restriction and diuretic administration temporarily.
4. Hyponatraemia is corrected by temporary cessation of diuretic therapy and restriction of oral water intake.
5. I.V sodium nitroprusside plus dopamine/dobutamine (raises cardiac output and lowers filling pressure) are started. As the patient feels better, combination of hydralazine/enalapril and amrinone (a phosphodiesterase inhibitor with positive inotropic and vasodilator actions) is used orally.
6. Cardiac transplantation may be considered if all of the above measures fail.

EVALUATION AND MANAGEMENT OF ACUTE CHEST PAIN

The common causes are :

1. IHD i.e., angina pectoris and acute myocardial infarction (AMI).
2. Acute dry pleurisy due to any cause.
3. Pneumothorax.
4. Trauma to the chest wall.
5. Diffuse oesophageal spasm (DES)/oesophagitis.
6. Costochondritis.
7. Malignant deposits on the ribs, rib fracture, intercostal myalgia, herpes zoster on the chest wall, multiple myeloma, acute dry pericarditis.
8. Dissection of ascending aorta.
9. . Hiatal hernia, gall bladder disease, acute pancreatitis.
10. Pulmonary thromboembolism (PTE).
11. Cardiac neurosis (psychogenic):

Outline of evaluation :

(A) History :

Onset, progress, pain with movement, actual site and character of pain, aggravating and relieving factors, duration, relation with food, associated symptoms (e.g., profuse perspiration and vomiting are present in AMI), dyspnoea present or not (AMI, pneumothorax, PTE, dissection of aorta are associated with dyspnoea), shock (AMI, tension pneumothorax, PTE etc), radiation of pain, any personality disorder should be taken into account.

* Retrosternal chest pain — AMI, dissection of aorta, PTE, DES, pericarditis.

** Character :

a) Tenderness—2, 4, 6 and 7 (musculoskeletal disorders).
b) Pleuritic in nature—2, 3, pericarditis and 10.
c) Chest pain with abdominal pain—AMI, basal pleurisy and 9.
d) Retrosternal chest pain with dysphagia—DES.
e) Diffuse chest pain with tenderness all over the chest—Trauma, cardiac neurosis.

(B) Physical examination :

Ashen-grey pallor, pulse, BP, JVP, cyanosis, oedema, decubitus, features of shock, vesicles on the chest wall, tenderness, heart sounds, gallop, pericardial rub, breath sound, rhonchi, crepitations, pleural rub should be meticulously searched/examined.

(C) Investigations :

a) If one investigation to be done, it is the electrocardiogram (ECG).

b) Chest X-ray (PA view).

c) Others : Cardiac injury enzymes (e.g., CK and CK-MB, AST, LDH, troponin T and *troponin I),* USG of abdomen, plasma D-dimer assay (e.g., PTE), barium swallow or upper G. I. endoscopy.

Outline of management :

(A) Angina pectoris (chronic stable angina)—

1. Acute attack :

a) Isosorbide dinitrate (5 mg/tab) or glycerol trinitrate (GTN; 0.5 mg/tab)—1 tab to be placed sublingually (GTN may be used as spray). Usually pain is relieved within 2-5 minutes. If not relieved, any of the drug may be repeated after 10 minutes. If the chest pain continues after use of 2/3 tablets, think of AMI.

b) Acetyl salicylic acid (75-150 mg/tab)—1 tab stat and to be continued indefinitely as 1 tab daily after meal. Clopidogrel (75 mg) - 1 tab daily may be started (instead of aspirin) or added with aspirin.

c) Alprazolam (0.25/0.5 mg per tablet)—1 tab stat and sos to allay anxiety. Diazepam (5 mg)—1 tablet may be given instead.

2. Prevention of further attacks :

a) Restful life. Avoid weight gain, smoking, exertion and psychic stress. Salt restricted, fat free, light diet.

b) Continue isosorbide dinitrate (5 mg/tab)—1 tab 4 times daily (may produce headache). Isosorbide-5 mononitrate (20 mg/tab) may be used instead (1 tab twice daily; 8 A.M. and 3 P.M.—known as eccentric dosage schedule).

* Propranolol—40 mg, twice daily, orally, or atenolol—100 mg, once daily orally, or bisoprolol—5-10 mg, daily, orally may be continued. Calcium channel blockers (CCB) like nifedipine-10 mg, 6 to 8 hourly daily (or sustained-release form), orally or amlodipine (2.5 - 10 mg daily, orally) or verapramil (120 - 240 mg, 8 hourly, orally, daily) or diltiazem (60-120 mg, 8 hourly, orally, daily) may be prescribed. (3-blockers reduce myocardial 0_2 demand by reducing heart rate and myocardial contractility. CCBs reduce myocardial 0_2 demand by relaxing coronary arteries and vasodilatation.

c) Prinzmetal's angina—Add nifedipine 5-20 mg, 8 hourly daily, orally.

d) Regular BP and ECG (resting) check up. Stress ECG (treadmill test) and echocardiography may be performed. The patient is advised to carry isosorbide dinitrate (5 mg/tab) or glycerol trinitrate (0.5 mg/tab) with him, and to be kept under tongue if there is chest pain. In uncontrolled angina pectoris, coronary angiography should be performed.

e) Associated systemic hypertension, diabetes mellitus, hyperlipidaemia (i.e., co-morbidities) should be treated by diet control and drugs. Correct exacerbating factors contributing to angina e.g., obesity, CCF, anaemia or hyperthyroidism.

f) In intractable angina pectoris—Patient may be advised to do coronary angiography with a view to undergo coronary artery bypass grafting (CABG) or percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty (PTCA).

** Angina pectoris was first described by Heberden in the year 1772.

*** Internal mammary artery or reversed segments of saphenous vein of patients are used for CABG.

**** Angina without coronary artery occlusion may be seen in severe myocardial hypertrophy, severe AS or AI, severe anaemia, hyperthyroidism or paroxysmal atrial tachycardia with rapid ventricular rate.

(B) Acute myocardial infarction (AMI)—

1. First aid :

a) Bed rest. Give reassurance. Moist 0_2 inhalation at the rate of 4-6 litres/minute.

b) Tab isosorbide dinitrate (5 mg/tab) or tab glycerol trinitrate (0.5 mg/tab)—1 tab to be kept under tongue immediately and to be repeated every 5 minutes till relief of chest pain. Discontinue if hypotension develops.

c) Insert I.V cannula, if possible.

d) Inj. morphine sulphate (to combat excruciating chest pain)—10 mg, I.V stat, may be repeated (5 mg, I.V) if necessary.

e) Acetyl salicylic acid (aspirin; 150-300 mg/tab)—1 tab stat to be chewed or clopidogrel 300 mg given orally as gel.

f) Inj. cyclizine tartrate—50 mg, I.V stat, or inj. metoclopramide 10 mg, I.V stat (as an antiemetic).

g) Start slow I.V drip of 5% dextrose solution as an emergency I.V channel.

h) Carry out 12 lead ECG. Take blood for cardiac enzymes (CK, CK-MB, AST, LDH, troponin T and troponin I), blood count, ESR, electrolytes (Na^*, K^+, Mg^{++}), glucose and lipid profile. Repeat the enzymes study at 12 hrs and 24 hrs. Remember, **CK-MB is elevated in** AMI, myocarditis or after electrical cardioversion.

i) Patient is shifted to ICU at the earliest opportunity.

2. Specific therapy :

If the patient comes within 12 hours (preferably within 6 hours) of the onset of symptoms,

a) Thrombolysis by inj. streptokinase—1.5 million units dissolved in 100 ml of normal saline and infused by I.V route over 1 hour.

Anistreplase (30 units, single I.V injection given over 5 minutes), alteplase or human tissue plasminogen activator (I.V infusion schedule as—15 mg bolus followed by 50 mg in the first 30 minutes and then 35 mg in the next 1 hour), urokinase (1.5 million units bolus plus 1.5 million unit as infusion over $1^1/_2$ hours) may be substitute of streptokinase.

b) I.V atenolol (10 mg) or metoprolol (10 mg) relieves pain, reduces the chance of arrhythmias and also diminishes the size of infarction—if the patient is attended within 12 hours of the onset of symptoms. (3-blockers are helpful to combat ongoing chest pain, tachycardia and hypertension. In hypotension, bradycardia, CCF and heart block, (3-blockers can not be used.

* Inj heparin, S.C, 5000 units twice daily may prevent deep vein thrombosis and left ventricular thrombus formation. After successful thrombolysis, inj. heparin 5000 units, S.C, twice daily may be continued for 7 days (in addition to daily oral aspirin). Enoxaparin, a LMWH may be used 1 mg/kg twice daily, subcutaneously instead. Oral anticoagulation with warfarin sodium may follow inj. heparin.

** ACE inhibitors reduce mortality. Captopril 6.25 mg there times daily (may be increased) should be started early (in patients who are haemodynamically stable) and may be continued (to counteract ventricular remodelling) after discharge from the hospital. Enalapril (5 mg, orally daily) or lisinopril (5 mg, orally daily) may be used instead.

3. Treatment of complications :

a) LVF—See before.

b) CCF—See before.

c) Sinus bradycardia—Elevation of the legs and/or foot end of the bed; inj. atropine 0.6 mg, I.V stat.

d) Sinus tachycardia—Inj. propranolol 2.5 mg, I.V and may be repeated.

e) Hypertension—Inj. diazepam 10 mg, I.V may be given.

f) Atrial fibrillation or flutter—Digoxin 0.25 mg I.V stat; synchronised DC shock in rapid ventricular rate with hypotension or circulatory collapse.

g) Paroxysmal atrial tachycardia—Inj. verapramil 10 mg, I.V.

h) Ventricular fibrillation—DC shock, cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR).

i) Cardiac asystole—CPR; if fails, temporary pacemaker.

j) Heart block—Inj. atropine 0.6 mg, I.V stat, repeated if necessary; pacemaker.

k) Ventricular premature beats—Inj. lignocaine 1 mg/kg, I.V, followed by an I.V infusion of 1-4 mg/min. Serum magnesium level maybe measured and repleted if necessary to reduce the risk of ventricular arrhythmia.

1) Cardiogenic shock—0_2 (8-10 litres/min), normal saline drip, dopamine infusion (2-20 *ig/* kg/min), inj. hydrocortisone hemisuccinate (200 mg, I.V stat and repeated 100 mg, 4 hourly, I.V), intra-aortic balloon counterpulsation may be tried. Arrhythmias should be carefully dealt with.

m) Chest pain— Inj. morphine sulphate, 5 mg, I.V. stat given and may be repeated after 10-15 minutes. In recurrent chest pain I.V nitroglycerine at the rate of 0.6-1.2 mg/hr and I.V. heparin (1000 unit/hr) are to be infused.

* Ongoing chest pain, arrhythmias, CCF and shock are common complications in AMI.

** If percutaneous coronary interventions (PCI) are planned (i.e., percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty i.e., PTCA, or stent placement in the coronary artery'), start glycoprotein Ilb/IIIa inhibitors (i.e., abciximab, tirofiban, eptifibatide).

4. Symptomatic treatment :
   a) Constipation—Tablet dioctyl sodium sulphosuccinate 200 mg at bed time/Isapgol husk 2-4 tsf in tepid water at bed time.
   b) Restlessness—Diazepam (5mg/tab), 1 tablet twice daily may be given.
5. General treament :
   a) Record vital signs regularly.
   b) Low calorie diet: multiple small feeds from the 2nd day onwards (liquid diet on the 1st day). Diet should contain fibres. Stop smoking.
6. Discharge :
   a) Usually after 7-10 days (depends on complications) with an advice to restrict physical activities for 4-6 weeks.
   b) Advise and liaise with family physician.
   c) Continue,
      (i) Tab aspirin (75-150 mg/tab) or clopidogrel (75 mg-150 mg/tab)—1 tab daily after meal to continue indefinitely until further advice.
      (ii) Tab atenolol (25/50/100 mg/tab)—25-50 mg daily to continue until further advice. Metoprolol 25-50 mg orally, twice daily may be given instead.
      (iii) Tab isosorbide-5 mononitrate (20 mg/tab)—1 tab twice daily (8 A.M. and 3 P.M.; eccentric dosage schedule to prevent nitrate tolerance) to continue until further advice. Tab isosorbide dinitrate (5 mg/tab)—1 tab to be placed sublingually, sos at the onset of chest pain.
      (iv) Tab captopril (25 mg/tab)—$^1/_2$ to 1 tab three times daily to continue until further advice. Ramipril (2.5-10 mg) orally daily or lisinopril (5-10 mg) orally daily are other alternatives.
      (v) Statins—Atorvastatin (5-20 mg) or simvastatin (5-20 mg) orally daily given at bedtime to control hyperlipidaemia.
7. Review :
   a) Usually at 1 month.
   b) Carry out exercise test.
   c) Review secondary prevention (avoid smoking, control hypertension and diabetes, taking regular exercise, control weight gain, lower lipid level by diet control and statins) and screening of the family.

* *Relative contraindications of thrombolytic (e.g., streptokinase) therapy :*

1. Recent major surgery (within 1 month).
2. Active internal bleeding (probable active peptic ulcer bleeding, menstruation).
3. Past H/O intracerebral or subarachnoid haemorrhage.
4. A recent head injury, even if minor/recent trauma.
5. Pregnancy.
6. Uncontrolled hypertension.
7. Diabetic retinopathy (proliferative).
8. Acute pericarditis or dissection of aorta.
9. Acute pancreatitis.
10. Recent streptococcal infection.

** *Aim of initial therapy in AMI* is to relieve pain, reduce the size of infarcted tissue, prevent/treat arrhythmias and mechanical complications.

*** Clopidogrel (75 mg) - 1 tablet, orally daily may be an alternative to aspirin (may be added to aspirin). Clopidogrel may be used where aspirin is strictly contraindicated like acute gastritis, H/O chronic duodenal ulcer, H/O recurrent upper G.I. bleeding, acute gout (low dose aspirin is contraindicated) or incipient renal failure.

**** **Right ventricular infarction** is suspected by : ↑ JVP, ↓ cardiac output and hypotension, Kussmaul's sign, right ventricular S_3 or S_4, absence of pulmonary congestion, presence of TI murmur and oedema in the background of inferior wall infarction.

***** At present thrombolytic therapy is not recommended for NSTEMI (non-ST-elevation myocardial infarction) and unstable angina.

(C) Musculoskeletal disorders—

1. Hot fomentation followed by local analgesic gel application (e.g., diclofenac gel).
2. NSAID e.g., ibuprofen 400 mg, 8 hourly, orally after meals, plus tab antacid—1 tab, 8 hourly, orally to be taken after meals.
3. Alprazolam—0-25 mg tablet, orally at bed time.

(D) Acute dry pleurisy—

1. Rest in bed.
2. Relief of chest pain by,
   a) Hot fomentation.
   b) Splinting of the chest wall with leucoplast strapping (old practice).
   c) Analgesics e.g., indomethacin 25 mg, 8 hourly, orally after meal along with tablet antacid.
   d) Sedatives.
3. Treatment of the underlying aetiology.

(E) Acute dry pericarditis—

1. Rest in bed.
2. Hot fomentation, analgesic and sedatives are not of much value.
3. If pericardial effusion develops—echocardiography-guided pericardiocentesis is to be done.
4. Treatment of the underlying aetiology (viral, tuberculous, uraemic etc).

* Cardiac tamponade is a medical emergency; so, treat acute dry pericarditis at the earliest.

(Fj Herpes zoster—

1. Calamine lotion or povidone iodine solution—as local application; acyclovir cream may be applied 4 hourly for 7 days.
2. Acyclovir (800 mg/tab)—1 tab 5 times daily for 7 days. Valacyclovir 1 g, 8 hourly may be used.
3. NSAID e.g., indomethacin 25 mg, 8 hourly, orally after meals along with tablet antacid.

[4. Post-herpetic neuralgia is managed by amitriptyline/carbamazepine/gabapentin. Transcutaneous nerve stimulation (TENS) with aggressive analgesia is helpful.)

(G) Diffuse oesophageal spasm—

1. Nifedipine (5 mg)—1 tab stat, orally, twice daily to continue.
2. Glycerol trinitrate (0-5 mg/tab)—1 tab to be used sublingually stat and sos.
3. Tranquilisers e.g., alprazolam 0-25-0-5 mg, orally daily at bed time to continue.
4. Oesophageal dilatation with mercury-filled rubber dilators.
5. Surgery—Longitudinal myotomy of oesophageal circular muscles in intractable cases.

(H) Cardiac neurosis—

1. Reassurance to the patient as well as to the relatives.
2. Inj. diazepam—10 mg, I.M stat.
3. Tab alprazolam—0-25 mg, orally at bed time to continue.
4. Psychological counselling.

N.B. : ***Unstable angina*** is managed by,

1. Absolute bed rest. Continuous ECG monitoring. Rule out AMI by ECG and cardiac enzymes.
2. Aspirin 75-300 mg/day. Clopidogrel (75-150 mg, orally, daily) or ticlopidine (250 mg, BD,.orally) may be used.

3. Atenolol 50-100 mg daily or metoprolol 50-100 mg twice daily, orally. If beta-blockers are contraindicated, it is better to start diltiazem (60 mg thrice daily) or verapramil (40 mg thrice daily).
4. If pain persists, anticoagulation is done by I.V heparin (1000 unit/hour, adjusted by PTT), and
5. I.V nitroglycerine (for refractory pain)—Started at 10 ng/min and maintained at systolic BP > 100 mm of Hg.
6. Identify exacerbating factors e.g., TBP, arrhythmia, acute infection or chronic heart failure, and treat them accordingly.
7. Patients refractory to medical treatment are advised to do coronary angiography with a view to undergo CABG or PTCA.

Definitions :

(A) Unstable angina— it includes a) recent onset of severe angina (< 2 months), b) angina at rest or with minimal activity, c) recent increases in frequency as well as intensity of chronic anginal pain, and d) recurrent angina within several days of AMI without re-elevation of cardiac enzymes.

(B) Angina decubitus— anginal pain while lying flat.

(C) Nocturnal angina— unusual form of anginal pain which occurs at night and may be associated with dyspnoea, palpitations or nightmares; commonly seen in aortic regurgitation.

(D) Prinzmetal's or variant angina— pain occurs as a result of coronary arterial spasm and is accompanied by transient ST segment elevation in ECG without any increase in cardiac enzymes.

* **Acute coronary syndromes (ACS)** include unstable angina, ST-elevation myocardial infarction (STEMI) and non-ST-elevation myocardial infarction (NSTEMI).

DRUG THERAPY IN HYPERTENSIVE EMERGENCIES

Hypertensive crises are life threatening events which demand immediate medical attention. It is an acute perilous state associated with marked increase in peripheral vascular resistance and decrease in tissue perfusion. This syndrome consists of:

1. Malignant hypertension.
2. Hypertensive encephalopathy.
3. Hypertensive acute LVF/acute pulmonary oedema.
4. Dissection of aorta/leaking aneurysm of aorta.
5. Eclampsia.
6. Epistaxis associated with hypertension.
7. CVA (cerebral haemorrhage commonly; also cerebral infarction and subarachnoid haemorrhage).
8. Hypertension related decreasing renal function.
9. Severe hypertension associated with pheochromocytoma.
10. Severe hypertension related peripheral vascular diseases.

* No. 1, 2, 3, 5 and 7 are commonly encountered problems.

Hypertensive 'emergency' : Severe elevation in BP accompanied by acute target organ damage, which must be reduced within minutes, ususally with parenteral medication. Above mentioned 10 points are examples of the situation.

Hypertensive 'urgency' : Severe elevation in BP without any target organ damage, which must be reduced within hours, usually with oral drug therapy. The examples are postoperative hypertension, uncontrolled hypertension in patients requiring surgery, accelerated hypertension or hypertension associated with severe bum/post-organ transplantation.

Outline of management:

1. Complete bed rest; propped-up, if necessary. Hospitalisation is a must.
2. Diet—Salt free diet (avoidance of table salt plus cooking salt), i.e., 1 g of NaVday is allowed; *liquid* diet till the crisis is over. Restrict cholesterol, saturated fat; stop smoking; perform isotonic or aerobic exercise regularly (cycling, swimming, jogging) after recovery and are followed life-long (lifestyle modifications).
3. Take details history to come to a pin-point aetiological diagnosis. Check BP at 10 minutes interval. Perform ophthalmoscopy.

4. a) Insert I.V cannula and send blood for sugar, urea, creatinine, VMA (vanillylmandelic acid for pheochromocytoma).
   b) Inj. diazepam—10 mg, I.M stat given.
5. Primary target is to lower the sustained high level of BP by antihypertensives to prevent further target organ damage (majority are administered through I.V route):
   a) Sodium nitroprusside—The bottle has to be protected from light because it can decompose into toxic thiocyanates. Dose—initially 0.3 ()ig/kg)/min. I.V; usual 2-4 (|ig/kg)/min; maximum 10 (mg/kg)/min for 10 min.
   b) Diazoxide—This is given in the dose of 50-100 mg over 5 minutes in slow I.V bolus and may be repeated. It should not be used with H/O coronary insufficiency and CVA (precipitous fall of BP may occur).
   c) Hydralazine—5-10 mg, I.V bolus dose is given at every 15 minutes (maximally 50 mg).
   d) Nicardipine—Initially 5 mg/hr; titrate by 2.5 mg/hr at 5-15 intervals; maximum 15 mg/hr. Putting the punctured nifedipine capsule sublingnally for rapid reduction of BP is not practiced now as sudden death may supervene.
   e) Frusemide—1 amp (2 ml = 20 mg), I.V stat in shot push and may be repeated after V hour, if necessary. Electrolyte imbalance (especially hypokalaemia) may pose a problem.
   f) Reserpine (not a very popular drug at present)—It can be given in the dose of 2-5 mg, every 3 hourly by I.M route. The onset of action is delayed (not prompt like the drugs mentioned above).
   g) Enalaprilat (intravenous form of enalapril)—The dose is 0-625-1.25 mg, I.V, over 5 minutes, and is given stat and every 6-8 hours; maximum 5 mg/dose.
   h) Labetalol—2 mg/min upto 300 mg, or 20 mg over 2 min, then 40-80 mg at 10 min-intervals upto 300 mg total dose.
   i) Esmolol—Initially 80-500 ng/kg over 1 min, then 50-300 (|ug/kg)/min to be maintained,
   j) Nitroglycerine—Initially 5 (ig/min, then titrate by 5 ng/min at 3-5 min intervals; if no response occurs at 20 (ig/min, one may incrementally increase the dose by 10-20)ig/min.
   k) Phentolamine—5-15 mg bolus dose.
6. Discharge the patient with some advice (mentioned in point No. 2) and antihypertensive medications (ACE inhibitors, calcium channel blocker etc).

* In case of cerebral haemorrhage and infarction (i.e., CVA), immediate reduction of high BP may hamper cerebral autoregulation and exacerbate cerebral damage. So, CVA is an exception among hypertensive emergencies where urgent BP reduction may be injurious to the patient.

Table 14 : Different drugs in hypertensive emergencies

	Hypertensive emergency	Drug (s) of choice	Drugs to be avoided
1.	Hypertensive encephalopathy	Nitroprusside, diazoxide, labetalol	Methyl dopa, reserpine
2.	Hypertension with LVF	Nitroprusside, enalaprilat, loop diuretics	Hydralazine, nifedipine
3.	Hypertension plus renal failure	Nitroprusside, diazoxide, hydralazine, frusemide	Trimethaphan
4.	Malignant hypertension	Nitroprusside, hydralazine, frusemide, enalaprilat	--
5.	Hypertension with pregnancy	Methyl dopa, labetalol, nicardipine, hydralazine, atenolol	Nitroprusside, diazoxide, enalaprilat
6.	Hypertension with subarachnoid haemorrhage	Nitroprusside, nicardipine	Methyl dopa, reserpine
7.	Pheochromocytoma	Phentolamine, nitroprusside	All other drugs
8.	Dissection of aorta	Nitroprusside, esmolol, labetalol	Diazoxide. hydralazine
9.	Hypertension associated with AMI or severe angina	Labetalol, nitroglycerine, nicardipine, esmolol	Nifedipine

* Hypertension in pregnancy is indicated at BP > 140/90 mm of Hg plus proteinuria; severe pre-eclampsia is indicated at BP > 160/110 mm of Hg, proteinuria > 5 g/day, visual disturbances or headache.

Reasons for poor therapeutic response in hypertension ;

(A) Poor patient's compliance, suboptimal dose.

(B) Gain in weight, smoking, insulin resistance, sleep apnoea, ethanol intake (> 30 ml/day).

(C) Volume expansion done by,
   a) Excessive intake of salt.
   b) Secondary to non-diuretic antihypertensive drugs.
   c) Inadequate diuretic therapy.

(D) Secondary hypertension (i.e., not idiopathic).

(E) Using one class of drugs (in that situation, try different classes).

(F) Drug antagonism by,
   a) Oral contraceptive pills.
   b) Corticosteroids.
   c) Sympathomimetics.
   d) Carbenexolone.
   e) Nasal decongestants, licorice (as may be found in chewing tobacco), erythropoietin, antidepressants.

(G) Pseudo-resistance : 'White coat hypertension', use of regular cuff on very obese arm.

MANAGEMENT OF AN UNCONSCIOUS PATIENT WITH BRADYCARDIA

The common causes of bradycardia encountered in day to day practice are

1. Athletes or during sleep.
2. Myxoedema.
3. Obstructive jaundice.
4. Increased intracranial tension.
5. Drugs like propranolol, digitalis or verapramil.
6. Hypothermia.
7. Complete heart block (CHB).
8. Sick sinus syndrome.
9. Vasovagal attacks.

* Except the CHB, all are established cause of sinus bradycardia. In CHB, there is generation of idioventricular rhythm at the rate of 36-40/minute (obviously it is not sinus bradycardia). Now, while considering bradycardia in an unconscious patient, few of the above causes come in mind, e.g.,

1. Complete heart block (Stokes-Adams syndrome).
2. Increased intracranial tension.
3. Sick sinus syndrome.
4. Myxoedema coma.
5. Hepatic coma form obstructive jaundice (rare).
6. Hypothermia (rare).

D/D among these causes are easy and overt.

(A) Stokes-Adams syndrome—

1. Stoppage of the precipitating agent e.g., digitalis, propranolol etc, if any; A sharp blow over the precordium is often enough to start the cardiac impulse. External cardiac massage as well as mouth to mouth respiration may be initiated. Moist 0_2 inhalation at the rate of 4-6 litres/minute is started.

2. Before inserting temporary pacemaker, following drugs can be given :
   a) Inj. isoprenaline sulphate—Direct I.V injection of 01-0-4 mg of the drug, or 2 mg dissolved in 540 ml of 5% dextrose solution to be infused at the rate of 1-10 (xg/min (by drip rate

approximately 15 drops/mlnute) so as to keep the heart rate between 70-80/minute. Afterwards, tablet isoprenaline (20 mg) may be prescribed 1 tab thrice daily to be taken orally, or tablet orciprenaline (10 mg) 1 tab thrice daily to be taken orally.

b) Inj. sodium bicarbonate — 50 ml of 7-5% $NaHC0_3$, I.V is given immediately and may be repeated (to combat acidosis).

c) Inj. hydrocortisone hemisuccinate—100 mg I.V may be given stat to relieve oedema around the AV node, if any (not advocated by all). The drug may be repeated, if necessary.

d) Inj. adrenaline—0-2-0-5 ml of 1 : 1000 solution of the drug may be given I.M, I.V or even in intracardiac route (be sure by ECG that the asystole is not due to ventricular fibrillation). Few clinicians try inj. atropine 0-6 mg, I.V stat.

e) It is better to transfer the patient in ICU for further management.

f) Immediate implantation of permanent pacemaker, if facilities are available.

* **Sequence of events in Stokes-Adams syndrome :**

Vertigo and headache—at 3 seconds; fainting—at 6 seconds; unconsciousness—at 9 seconds; convulsions—at 12 seconds; death—if cardiac asystole persists for > 2 minutes.

Sudden loss of consciousness may occur without any warning and often result in a fall. During the attack, pallor is observed and flushing appears after recovery; in prolonged bradycardia, pallor may change over to cyanosis. Stokes-Adams syndrome is manifested by sudden loss of consciousness (or syncope or black-out due to ventricular asystole) unrelated to posture and may arise from complete heart block, ventricular tachycardia or fibrillation, Mobitz type II block, profound bradycardia or sinoatrial disease.

** Most of the attacks are very brief and may disappear before the physician arives. The future plan should be to prevent such attacks.

(B) Increased intracranial tension—

—See afterwards.

(C) Sick sinus syndrome—

1. Inj. isoprenaline—Direct I.V injection of 0T-0-4 mg of the drug; or Inj. atropine—0-6 mg, I.V stat given. In structural disease of the SA node, both the drugs are unlikely to be successful.
2. Permanent pacemaker (demand type) is the answer of the 'bradycardia-tachycardia syndrome'. As associated disease of the AV conduction system is not infrequent, pacing from the ventricles is commonly indicated; pacing of the atrium may prevent episodes of atrial fibrillation.

(D) Myxoedema coma—

1. Triiodothyronine—20 (xg 1 .V bolus is followed by 20 (ig every 8 hourly until there is sustained clinical improvement. If thyroxine (TJ is available, it is given as I.V bolus in a dose of 200- 300 mg and may be continued in a dose of 100 |ig/day by I.V or orally.
2. Hydrocortisone hemisuccinate—100 mg I.V stat and continued every 8 hourly. It is followed by tapering doses of oral steroids when consciousness is regained.
3. I.V saline infusion to combat hypotension.
4. Combat hypothermia with 'slow rewarming' of the patient by wrapping with a blanket in a warm room.
5. High-flow oxygen or assisted ventilation.
6. Treatment of arrhythmia and heart failure accordingly. Preferably management should be done in an ICU.
7. Inj. ampicillin 500 mg, I.M, 6 hourly, or any broad-spectrum antibiotic since many a time infection in a common precipitating factor.
8. Blood should be sent for T_3, T_4, TSH, Na^+, $Pa0_2$, $PaC0_2$, p^H and R/E (TC/DC).
9. Try to correct hypotension, hypothermia, hypoglycaemia, electrolyte imbalance and respiratory failure.

* As injection of T_3 and T_4 are not always available, attending physician is often compelled to give :

a) Tab triiodothyronine (50 pg/tab)—2 tab stat, then 1 tablet 4 times daily until clinical improvement occurs (pulse, BP, temperature are the guidelines), or

b) Tab levothyroxine (100 |ig/tab)—2 tab stat and then 1 tab daily to continue until clinical improvement occurs.

** It is a life-threatening emergency. As T_3 is biologically more active than T_4, most physicians recommend I.V T_3 over T_4.

(E) Hepatic coma from obstructive jaundice—

—See before.

(F) Hypothermia (temp < 95°F)—

* Mild 95°F-89-6°F, moderate 89-6°F-82-4°F and severe hypothermia < 82-4°F.

** Possible causes are :

a) Accidental exposure to cold weather (specially in alcoholics, elderly, babies, diabetics, street beggars and in mountain climbers).
b) Malnutrition, sepsis.
c) Myxoedema coma, hypothalamic lesions, hepatic coma, Addisonian crisis, hypoglycaemia, CVA.
d) Drug-induced e.g., phenothiazines, ethanol, opiates, lithium, benzodiazepines.
e) Immersion hypothermia.
f) Artificial hypothermia induced in open heart surgery.

Management :

1. Cover the patient with blankets in a warm environment (room). A plastic sack or 'space blanket' may be used (if available) if no shelter is available. Gradual warming is done with an aim to increase core temperature by l°C/hour. Keep the patient horizontal or slightly head down.
2. O_2 inhalation (warm)—4-8 litres/min.
3. 5% dextrose drip (I.V) or warm isotonic saline is started immediately (in an attempt to maintain the blood volume).
4. Internal rewarming technique—Extracorporeal rewarming by haemodialysis and cardiopulmonary by-pass; inhaled humidified air or peritoneal lavage may be done.
5. Inj. sodium bicarbonate—50 ml of 7.5% of the solution may be given I.V, if p^H is < 7-2.
6. Erythromycin 250 mg, 4 times daily, is started orally to prevent pneumonia.
7. Blood should be drawn for serum Na^+, K^+, $HC0_{3^-}$, $Pa0_2$, $PaC0_2$. ECG (arrhythmia) and a chest X-ray (pneumonia) should be done. Always monitor the vital functions with special reference to arrhythmias. Treat in the line of myxoedema coma if found to be hypothyroid.
8. Arrhythmias are treated in ICU. Bretylium tosylate is the drug of choice in ventricular fibrillation. Ventricular tachycardia/fibrillation, or asystole is the usual cause of death. So long the patient is unresponsive to CPR and rewarmed to 89.6°F (32°C), the patient should not be declared dead.

MANAGEMENT OF A PATIENT OF HYPERPYREXIA (>106.7°F)

The probable causes of hyperpyrexia are :

1. Malaria.
2. Septicaemia.
3. Encephalitis.
4. Pontine haemorrhage.
5. Lobar pneumonia.
6. Heat stroke.
7. Malignant hyperthermia (halothane-induced).
8. Thyroid storm.
9. Neuroleptic malignant syndrome (haloperidol-induced).
10. Rabies.

Malaria will be described in 3 parts, i.e., benign tertian malaria (P. vivax), malignant tertian malaria (P. falciparum) and cerebral malaria (P. falciparum).

(A) Benign tertian malaria—

* Usually caused by Plasmodium vivax and rarely by Plasmodium ovale or malariae type.

1. Tab chloroquine phosphate (one tablet contains 250 mg of drug, and 150 mg of base)— One of the two schedules may be followed.
   a) 1st day—4 tab stat (600 mg base), followed by 2 tablets (300 mg base) after 6 hours, 2nd day onwards—1 tab (150 mg base) twice daily for 2 more days.
   b) 10 mg base/kg stat and followed by 10 mg base/kg at 24 hours and 5 mg base/kg at 48 hours (i.e., 4 tab on the 1st day, 4 tab on the 2nd day and 2 tab on the 3rd day).

** Minimally 3 days treatment should be done.

2. Tab primaquine phosphate—Usually each tablet contains 7-5 mg of base. The recommended dose is 1 tab twice daily for 14 days (radical cure). Transfusion-induced malaria need not receive treatment for radical cure. Tab primaquine is started after completion of the course of chloroquine.
3. Treatment is possible at home. Diet should be adequate with plenty of fluids (glucose-drink is preferred). Use blankets during cold stage and tepid sponging in high rise of temperature. Tab paracetamol (500 mg/tab)l tab used sos, if the temperature shoots > 102°F.

Dose in children :

< 5 kg = 1/4 th of adult dose

5 - 20 kg = 1/2 of the adult dose

20 - 40 kg = 3/4 th of the adult dose

> 40 kg = Adult dose

*** Before giving primaquine, the patient should be screened for G_6PD deficiency. *In mild deficiency,* dose of primaquine will be 45 mg once weekly for 6 weeks. Primaquine is absolutely contraindicated in pregnancy and severe G_6PD deficiency.

(B) Malignant tertian malaria (uncomplicated Plasmodium falciparum infection)—

1. Tab chloroquine phosphate—As used in B. T. malaria (see no. 1 of previous prescription). If no response occurs within 3 days, probably it is a case of chloroquine-resistant falciparum malaria (chloroquine resistance is being reported from most of the states of India) and start.

Tab quinine sulphate (300 mg/tab) in the dose of 2 tab 3 times daily for 7 days. This regimen should be followed by,

   a) Combined tablet of sulfadoxine-pyrimethamine (500 mg + 25 mg in a single tablet) to be taken, 3 tablets at a time as single dose therapy, or
   b) Cap. tetracycline 250 mg 4 times daily, orally for 7 days or cap doxycycline 200 mg daily orally for 7 days (used in sulphonamide sensitivity).

2. Alternative to quinine are :
   a) Atovaquone 250 mg + proguanil 100 mg—4 tab once daily for 3 days, or
   b) Artemether 200 mg/day orally for 5 days, followed by mefloquine 500 mg in 2 doses at 2 hours apart.
3. Diet and general treatment are same as done in B. T. malaria. Few clinicians prefer hospital treatment as the patient may be deteriorated at any moment.

* Dose of quinine sulphate in children is 10 mg/kg given three times daily.

** In pregnancy, chloroquine is the safest antimalarial drug; quinine may be used with caution. Tetracycline is contraindicated in pregnancy and children < 8 years of age.

*** Primaquine phosphate may-given 45 mg *as a single dose* for gametocidal therapy of P. falciparum, afterthe remission of fever. P. falciparum has no persistent exo-erythrocytic cycle; recrudescence occurs due to incomplete elimination of parasite from RBC.

**** The terminology of 'malignant' malaria is going to be obsolete now-a-days.

***** As most of the P. falciparum infected patients are resistant to chloroquine, one may start oral quinine from the very beginning.

****** Mefloquine or halofantrine may be used. The dose of mefloquine (250 mg/tab) is 15-25 mg base/kg, single dose (maximum dose 1500 mg); and that of halofantrine is 8 mg base/kg every 6 hours for 3 doses, and may be repeated after 7 days in non-immune subjects.

(C) Cerebral malaria (P. falciparum induced encephalopathy)—

*It is **a medical emergency** and needs urgent treatment. Cerebral malaria is **defined as** diffuse symmetric encephalopathy in a patient with falciparum malaria which is manifested by diminished consciousness, confusion and convulsions, often progressing to unarousable coma and death; and the encephalopathy is not attributable to any other cause e.g., metabolic, dyselectrolytaemic or any other inflammation.*

1. a) Inj. quinine dihydrochloride—600 mg (2 ml) of the drug is dissolved in 300 ml of 5% or 10% dextrose solution for slow I.V infusion (loading dose) to run over a period of 2 hours. The drug is repeated in the same dose (600 mg) every 8 hours till the patient is conscious. The loading dose is avoided if the patient has received quinine, quinidine or mefloquine in previous 24 hours. Quinine hydrochloride may be given by I.M. injection though there is a chance of muscle necrosis. After regaining consciousness, oral medication with quinine sulphate is started as,
   b) Tab quinine sulphate (300 mg/tab)—600 mg (2 tab) to be continued 3 times daily for minimally 7 days; plus,
   c) Sulfadoxine-pyrimethamine combination (500 mg + 25 mg in a single tablet)—3 tablets orally as a single dose, or cap tetracycline 250 mg, 4 times daily orally for 7 days, or cap doxycycline 200 mg daily orally for 7 days may be given.
2. Fluid and electrolyte balance—5% dextrose drip should run alternating with dextrose-normal saline solution. The volume of fluid should be calculated according to urine output and state of dehydration.
3. Control of cerebral oedema—Inj. mannitol (20%) 100 ml, 8 hourly, I.V rapidly over 30 minutes may be tried (not advocated by all). *Dexamethasone (corticosteroid) should not be given.*
4. Control of hypoglycaemia—This is corrected by 5% or 10% dextrose solution (hypoglycaemia results from glucose consumption by malaria parasite and the host, and hyperinsulinaemia as a result of quinine therapy; there is also failure of neoglucogenesis).
5. Control of convulsions—Diazepam is the drug of choice (0.2 mg/kg) and may be repeated every 4 hours. Drip of phenytoin sodium (13-18 mg/kg) at the rate of 50 mg/min, mixed with normal saline solution may be started.
6. Acute pulmonary oedema (acute lung injury)—managed by propped-up position, 0_2 inhalation, inj. frusemide I.V, and stoppage of I.V fluid. In moribund patients, intubation and addition of continuous positive airways pressure (CPAP) / positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) are advocated (in life threatening hypoxia).
7. Plasmapheresis is done in elderly with severe malaria, pregnant woman and >30% parasitaemia.
8. Follow the 'general care of the comatosed patient'.
9. Feeding is continued through Ryle's tube or I.V route.
10. Pulse, BP, respiration, temperature, pupil check up are done hourly. Blood should be sent for sugar, urea, creatinine, Na^+ and K\ malaria parasite, lactate and arterial blood gas analysis.
11. Follow 'to combat hyperpyrexia' mentioned in heat stroke (see below).
12. Supportive care is given for severe anaemia, renal failure (haemodialysis is effective in a desperate situation), hypotension, thrombocytopenia, DIC and hyponatraemia.

* As P. falciparum may be chloroquine-resistant, one can not take the risk of giving chloroquine in cerebral malaria. Hence, always quinine is started at the first chance (as the patient is in coma or in a stuporose stage, parenteral route is chosen). It is better to have the cardiac monitoring while the patient is on I.V quinine therapy as the drug is myocardial depressant (at least, ECG should be done; and look for wide QRS and QT-prolongation). Few clinicians advocate I.V loading dose of quinine dihydrochloride by 20 mg/kg in 500 ml of 5% or 10% dextrose solution to run for 4 hours, and then followed by 600 mg 8 hourly, I.V as described in point No. la).

** In uncomplicated P. falciparum infection (without pernicious features), chloroquine is the first drug to be used. In cerebral malaria (chloroquine-sensitive), chloroquine sulphate I.V infusion in a dose of 5 mg/kg may be given (with normal saline) every 12-24 hours and substituted by oral medication afterwards.

*** In a desperate situation, halofantrine/mefloquine/artesunate may be used. Toxicity of mefloquine is neuropsychiatric reactions and convulsions, while halofantrine may give rise to cardiac arrhythmias. Corticosteroids are of no value, rather they increase the chance of infection and G.I. bleeding.

**** This is the treatment of pernicious malaria/severe malaria/complicated malignant malaria.

***** Though passive resistance to head flexion is present in cerebral malaria, signs of meningeal irritation are absent.

****** Vomiting induced by chloroquine or quinine should be treated by inj. ondansetron (lml = 2 mg), 4 mg, I.V as and when necessary. Metoclopramide should better be avoided as extrapyramidal syndrome may develop.

******* Convulsions are managed by I.V inj. diazepam (0.2 mg/kg/dose), and may be repeated every 4 hourly. Inj. phenytoin sodium (13-18 mg/kg) by I.V bolus may be an alternative.

******** Multidrug-resistant (MDR) P. falciparum malaria may be treated by artemether-lumefantrine combination (1.5 mg/9 mg)/kg BD, orally with food for 3 days.

N.B. : Parasitaemia is cleared rapidly by **artemisinin derivatives** e.g., artesunate or artemether. Artemisinin (qinghaosu) is the active component of an herbal medicine, which is being used in China for over 2000 years. They may be used as first-line drug (e.g., cerebral malaria) or after failure of quinine (e.g., severe falciparum infection). The dose of artesunate is 2.4 mg/kg, I.V stat followed by 2.4 mg/kg at 12 and 24 hours, and then daily if necessary. The dose of artemether is 3.2 mg/kg, I.M stat followed by 1.6 mg/kg daily to total dose of 640 mg. Few clinicians prefer artesunate 4 mg/kg daily by I.V route for 3 days along with mefloquine 8 mg/kg daily for 3 days.

(D) Heat stroke—

1. Remove clothings. Take the patient to ITU or in a cool and well-ventilated room (air conditioned room).
2. Vigorous massaging of the body (chiefly the neck and torso) and allow the patient to bath repeatedly in tepid water. For rapid cooling immerse the patient in ice water, or arrange fanning (to increase convection heat loss), or start gastric lavage with iced saline. The goal is to reduce the core temperature to 102.2° F within 30-60 minutes.
3. Application of ice over the lateral aspect of the trunk.
4. 5% dextrose-saline I.V drip (i.e., cold crystallod I.V replacement) should be started immediately and to continue by the guidance of dehydration and central venous pressure.
5. Follow the 'general care of the comatosed patient'.
6. Repeated checking of the rectal temperature (by thermocouple), pulse, BP, respiration and •other vital signs. Send the blood sample for estimation of urea, creatinine, sugar, Na^+, K\ BT and CT, INR, aPTT, platelet count (coagulation profile), Ca", CK, AST and ALT. Record ECG.
7. **To combat hyperpyrexia** :
   a) Ice water enema. Antipyretics are ineffective as the hypothalamic set point remains normal.
   b) Ice-cap application over forehead.
   c) 0_2 at a flow rate of 6-8 litres/min.
   d) Lytic cocktail—Pethidine 100 mg, promethazine 50 mg and chlorpromazine 50 mg in I.M route.
   e) Inj. analgin—0.5 g, I.M stat and may be repeated, if necessary.
   f) Convulsions—Inj. diazepam 10 mg, I.V stat and may be repeated, if necessary.
   g) Acidosis—inj. $NaHCo_3$, 50 ml of 7.5% of the drug may be given I.V.

MANAGEMENT OF A PATIENT PRESENTING WITH FEVER, UNCONSCIOUSNESS AND NECK STIFFNESS

The probable possibilities strike in mind are,

1. Meningitis of any aetiology (pyogenic, tuberculous or viral).
2. Cerebral malaria.
3. Meningoencephalitis.
4. Typhoid meningism.
5. Subarachnoid haemorrhage (with some cause of pyrexia).

Note : Palpate for splenomegaly (malaria/typhoid). Plantar response may be extensor in meningoencepalitis and cerebral malaria (even in semicoma stage).

(A) Pyogenic meningitis (meningococcal)—

1. Immediate hospitalisation, preferably in isolation ward. Recording of vital signs with ophthalmoscopic examination is done. If papilloedema is absent, lumbar puncture is performed and the CSF sample is sent for cell count and type, biochemical, bacteriological and serological examinations.
2. Follow the 'general care of the comatosed patient'.
3. Start normal saline drip; Inj. crystalline penicillin is started as follows :

   4 megaunits of the drug is infused I.V every 4 hourly (after proper skin test),

   or

   Inj. cefotaxime 1-2 g, I.V, 4-6 hourly according to severity (maximally 12 g of the drug can be given daily) or inj. ceftriaxone 2 g, I.V, 12 hourly may be started. The drug should be continued minimally for 10 days.

* Inj. cefotaxime/inj. ceftriaxone **plus** vancomycin (2 g/day, 12 hourly, I.V) may be started as empirical therapy in community-acquired suspected bacterial meningitis.

4. Daily monitoring of pulse, BP, respiration, temperature, sensorium, neck rigidity and plantar response should be done. Blood should be sent for TC, DC, electrolytes, urea, creatinine and sugar estimation. CT or MRI scan of brain may be performed, if facilities are there.
5. Management of complications—
   a) High fever—Tepid sponging with 1 tablet of paracetamol (500 mg) through Ryle's tube.
   b) Convulsions—Inj. diazepam 10 mg, slow I.V or injection phenytoin sodium 5 mg/kg/hour in I.V route is given.
   c) Cerebral oedema—Usually 100 ml of inj. mannitol (20%) is given I.V, 8 hourly.
   d) Hypotension and shock (adrenal crisis)—Inj. hydrocortisone hemisuccinate 100 mg, I.V, 8 hourly till hypotension persists.
   e) Respiratory failure—Needs assisted ventilation.
   0 If hydrocephalus develops as a sequelae, consult neurosurgeon for ventriculo-atrial shunt.

Table 15 : Chemotherapy of bacterial meningitis

Organism	Drugs	Dose	Alternative drugs	Duration
Meningococcus	Benzyl penicillin	See the above prescription	Chloramphenicol, Ceftriaxone, Cefotaxime	**10** d
Pneumococcus	Cefotaxime	>-	Ceftriaxone, Chloramphenicol	**10-14** d
H. influenzae	Chloramphenicol	**1** g, I.V, **6-8** hourly	Cefotaxime	**7-10** d
L. monocytogenes	Ampicillin + Gentamicin	**1-2** g, I.V, **4** hrly + **80** mg, I.V, **8** hrly	Rifampicin, Co-trimoxazole	**10** d
S. aureus	Oxacillin	**12-18** g, I.V in divided doses	Nafcillin, Vancomycin	**10** d
Pseudomonas	Ceftizidime	**1-2** g, I.V, **6-8** hrly	Cefoperazone, Gentamicin	**21** d
Unknown cause	Benzyl penicillin + Cefotaxime	See the prescription above	Chloramphenicol + Gentamycin	**10** d

Dose in children :

a) Ciystalline penicillin—300000 units/kg/day in I.V route.
b) Cefotaxime— 200 mg/kg/day in I.V route.

* '\ Treatment of pyogenic meningitis should be started very promptly. Final drug of choice will be dictated by the culture-sensitivity report of CSF.

** Drugs acting against **Pseudomonas aeruginosa** are ciprofloxacin, aminoglycosides, carbenicillin, third generation (cefoperazone and ceftizidime) and fourth generation (cefepime) cephalosporins, tricarcillin, piperacillin, aztreonam, azlocillin, mezlocillin, imipenem and meropenem.

*** As per available evidence, adjunctive dexamethasone therapy (10 mg, I.V, 6 hourly for 4 days) may have some benefit in meningitis caused by H. influenzae and S. pneumoniae in reducing sensorineural deafness and death.

(B) Tuberculous meningitis—

1. Follow No. 1, 2 and 4 of previous prescription (pyogenic meningitis).
2. In an unconscious patient, all the drugs should be given through Ryle's tube.
   a) Cap rifampicin—450 mg/day if < 50 kg and aged; 600 mg/day if > 50 kg.
   b) Tab INH—5 mg/kg/day (adult).
      10 mg/kg/day (children).
   c) Tab pyrazinamide—20-35 mg/kg/day (maximally 2.5 g).
   d) Inj. streptomycin—1 g/day, I.M if > 45 kg; and 0-75 g/day, I.M if < 45kg.
   e) Tab prednisolone (5 mg/tab)—Initiated by 8 tablets daily for 6 weeks and then tapered off by 5 mg/week, and ultimately stopped at 3 month.

* a + b + c + d for 2 months (initial phase), and a + b for 7 to 10 months more (continuation phase) according to discretion of the physician.

   f) Tab pyridoxine (40 mg/tab)—1/4 of a tablet to be continued along with INH.

3. Management of complications—
   a) Convulsions >
   b) High fever > as done in pyogenic meningitis
   c) Cerebral oedema J
   d) Headache— Paracetamol (500 mg/tab) 1 tab to be given as and when necessary.
   e) Vomiting—Inj. metoclopramide 10 mg, I.M as and when necessary.
   f) If hydrocephalus develops as a sequelae, consult neurosurgeon (not uncommon) for ventriculo-atrial shunt.

(C) Viral meningitis—

1. Specific treatment ;
   a) HSVj and HSV_2—Acyclovir 10 mg/kg, 8 hourly in I.V infusion with normal saline is started immediately and continued for 10 days; may be followed by oral acyclovir (800 mg, 5 times daily). Instead famcyclovir (500 mg tds) or valacyclovir (1000 mg tds) may be given for 7-14 days.
   b) HIV—Zidovudine 200 mg, 6 times daily in I.V infusion with normal saline/orally through Ryle's tube. Actually, the patient should receive highly active anti-retroviral therapy.
2. General and symptomatic treatment—
   As done in pyogenic and tuberculous meningitis.

* SIADH may develop in the course of the disease of meningitis (any type). So physician should be careful for the development of hyponatraemia (water restriction and hypertonic saline are the mainstay of treatment of SIADH).

(D) Cerebral malaria—

Though passive resistance to head flexion is present (not true neck rigidity), signs of miningeal irritation are absent here.

See before for management.

(E) Meningoencephalitis—

Along with the signs of meningitis one may get altered level of consciousness, altered mental state.

H/O seizures (focal or generalised), focal or diffuse neurological signs (cranial nerve palsy, aphasia, hemiplegia, Babinski's sign) and involuntary movements (myoclonic jerks).

For management, follow the regimens given in the management of viral meningitis (see above).

(F) Typhoid meningism—

1. Specific treatment :
   a) Inj. chloramphenicol—50 mg/kg/day in I.V route (in shot push within the plastic tube of the dextrose-normal saline drip) in 4 divided doses for 3-7 days. Then cap chloramphenicol (250 mg/cap) 2 cap. 6 hourly is continued for another 7-11 days, or
   b) Inj. ciprofloxacin—200 mg (200 mg/100 ml) I.V, 12 hourly for 3-7 days and then followed by oral ciprofloxacin tablet (750 mg/tab) as 1 tab twice daily for another 7-11 days, or
   c) Inj. ceftriaxone 2 g, I.V, 12 hourly may be used for 10-14 days (probably, the drug of choice),

   plus

   Inj. hydrocortisone hemisuccinate—100 mg, 8 hourly along with the I.V infusion (charged in the bottle) till the patient regains consciousness.
2. Follow the 'general care of the comatosed patient'.

* I.V ciprofloxacin 200 mg BD for at least 10 days is a good alternative in MDR typhoid fever.

*(G) Subarachnoid haemorrhage —*See afterwards.

RAISED INTRACRANIAL TENSION (ICT)

Treatment of raised intracranial tension should be started immediately in patients with cerebral haemorrhage or massive infarction, producing midline shift.

1. Propped-up position at 30° (improves jugular venous outflow without impairing cerebral perfusion).
2. Mannitol (20%)—100 ml (1-2 g/kg), 8 hourly rapidly over 15 minutes in I.V route, or 300 ml rapidly over 1-2 hours in 24 hours. Rebound cerebral oedema may pose a problem following cessation of the drip. Mannitol should preferably be continued till regaining of consciousness.
3. Inj. dexamethasone—4-6 mg, I.M or I.V, 4-6 hourly. It may aggravate hypertension and diabetes, if there is any. *Corticosteroid is contraindicated in cytotoxic oedema, head injury and CVA* but reduces vasogenic reactive oedema surrounding a tumour, an abscess or brain metastases.
4. Inj. frusemide—40 mg, I.V stat, and as and when necessary.
5. Oral glycerol—1-2 g/kg/day in 3 divided doses. Usually it corresponds to 6 tsf three times daily (given with fruit juice). I.V glycerol may be given in a dose of 1.5 g/kg as a bolus followed by 50 g in 500 ml of normal saline every 4 hourly (may produce haemoglobinuria). Glycerol is not a very good drug for reduction of ICT.
6. Retention enema of magnesium sulphate (not used now-a-days).
7. Hyperventilation, lowering $PaCO_2$ around 25-30 mm of Hg decreases cerebral blood flow by cerebral vasoconstriction and reduces intracranial tension.
8. Treat hypoxia, hypothermia. High-dose barbiturate therapy is adviced for 'refractory' ICT.

* This is the management of **cerebral oedema** too; drugs are used singly or in combination.

** Cerebral oedema is of three types :

a) Vasogenic—e.g., tumour, abscess, CVA, purulent meningitis.
b) Cytotoxic—e.g., hypoxia, Na^+ depletion in SIADH, dialysis disequilibrium syndrome.
c) Interstitial—e.g., increase water content of brain in hydrocephalus.

*** Acetazolamide and/or repeated lumbar puncture may help to lower ICT in idiopathic intracranial hypertension (benign intracranial hypertension or 'pseudotumour cerebri').

**** **Surgical management** is done by treating underlying cause, ventriculo-atrial or ventriculo-peritoneal shunt in hydrocephalus, removal of space occupying lesion or surgical decompression by limited lobectomies in selected cases.

CEREBROVASCULAR ACCIDENTS (CVA)

(.A) Cerebral thrombosis—

1. Complete bed rest. Draw blood for Hb, TC, DC, sugar, urea, creatinine, Na^+, K^+ and lipid profile (cholesterol, LDL, HDL, VLDL and triglyceride). Place the patient in a railed cot. Introduce Ryle's tube and Foley's catheter. About 2000 calories should be provided daily. Start with liquid diet and gradually change over to normal diet, as the patient recovers.
2. Follow the 'general care of the comatosed patient'.
3. Treat 'raised intracranial tension' (see before).
4. Antiplatelet drugs are advised—aspirin (75-300 mg/day orally), dipyridamole (50 mg, 8 hourly, orally daily) or ticlopidine (250 mg, 12 hourly, orally daily) for long term prophylaxis. Tab pentoxifylline (400 mg, 8 hourly), the haemorrheology modifier may be used for few weeks. Clopidogrel (75 mg) - 1 tablet, orally daily is an alternative to aspirin, or may be combined with aspirin.
5. Reduce hypertension by nifedipine (10 mg/cap) 1 cap, 8 or 12 hourly, orally or amlodipine (5 mg/tab) - 1-2 tab, once daily, orally. Diuretics or ACE-inhibifors may be used. BP should be kept at or just below $^{180}/_{115}$ mm of Hg.
6. Control of other co-morbid conditions like diabetes mellitus, hyperlipidaemia, obesity. Oral contraceptives should be discontinued.
7. Arrangement should be made to perform an early CT scan of the brain.

(B) Cerebral embolism—

1. Follow No. 1, 2 and 3 of previous prescription (cerebral thrombosis).
2. Specific treatment—
   a) Inj. heparin sulphate—5000 units, I.V infusion, 6-12 hourly for 5 days along with,
   b) Tab warfarin sodium (5 mg/tab)—usually started from the second day as 2 tab daily for 2 days and then 1 tab daily to be continued for 6 months. Inj. heparin sulphate should be withdrawn after 5 days and let warfarin to be continued alone.
3. Treatment of the underlying cardiac disorder (e.g., tablet digoxin in atrial fibrillation).

* Early CT scan should rule out cerebral haemorrhage or tumour before giving inj. heparin. Heparin and warfarin are specially indicated in an 'evolving stroke' when the patient have atrial fibrillation, paroxysmal arrhythmia or cardiac valve lesions. Anticoagulants have no role in completed stroke.

** *In cerebral infarction (cerebral thrombosis or embolism), maintain the BP at or just below* $^{180}/_{115}$ *mm of Hg.* **Reduction of BP should be gradual and should be tried when the acute stage is over.**

*** In acute ischaemic strokes, thrombolysis by alteplase (rTPA) is done in few sophisticated centres within first 3 hours of onset.

(C) Cerebral haemorrhage—

1. Follow No. 1, 2 and 3 from the prescription of cerebral thrombosis.
2. Inj. sodium nitroprusside (for reduction of blood pressure)—50 mg dissolved in 500 ml of 5% dextrose (100 fig/ml) and infused in the dose of 20 (ig/min. Usually the I.V infusion dose is 0.25-8.0 (xg/kg/min. Protect the bottle from light (to prevent the production of toxic thiocyanates). Many neurologists do not agree to administer sodium nitroprusside *Maintain the blood pressure just below* $^{180}/_{115}$ *mm of Hg* to preserve the cerebral autoregulatory mechanism.
3. If CT scan shows > 3 cm haematoma or the patient progressively deteriorates, consult neuro-surgeon for surgical drainage of the haematoma (evacuation of deep cerebral haematoma is rarely beneficial rather surgical consultation is indicated for cerebellar haematoma).

* Early CT scan is advisable in all of the above cases. Physiotherapy should be started in (A), (B) and (C) as soon as the patient recovers from the neural shock stage. Subsequently speech therapy, dysphagia care and occupational therapy are looked for.

** Aspirin and clopidogrel are absolutely contraindicated in cerebral haemorrhage and very big cerebral infarction.

*** In cerebral ischaemia try to avoid hypoxia, dehydration, corticosteroid and 5% dextrose infusion.

(D) Subarachnoid haemorrhage—

1. Follow No. 1, 2 and 3 from the prescription of cerebral thrombosis.
2. Nimodipine—Tablets (30 mg/tab) should be crushed and introduced through Ryle's tube. Recommended dose is 2 tab 4 hourly to be started within 3-4 days of subarachnoid haemorrhage and usually continued for 3 weeks,

   or

   Epsilon amino-caproic acid (EACA)—The drug was previously used. The usual dose is 24-48 g/day by I.V infusion in 5% dextrose-saline infused over 24 hours with the help of a micro-drip apparatus. EACA is a fibrinolytic inhibitor.
3. Hypertension is controlled by diuretics, ACE-inhibitors.
4. MR angiography should be performed in patients 'potentially fit for surgery (< 65 years) and neurosurgeon may be called for surgical treatment (clipping of the neck of aneurysm, embolisation).

* Nimodipine (calcium channel blocker) prevents vasospasm and EACA prevents rebleeding.

** According to few clinicians, anticonvulsants are used for prophylaxis, and inj. dexamethasone for reduction of cerebral oedema as well as for stabilization of blood-brain barrier.

(E) Hypertensive encephalopathy—

1. Follow No. 1, 2 and 3 from the prescription of cerebral thrombosis.
2. Sodium nitroprusside or diazoxide is the drug of choice (see the doses from the section on 'Drug therapy in hypertensive emergencies').
3. Inj. diazepam 10 mg, I.V slowly is used for convulsions and may be repeated, if necessary.

CONVULSIONS

(A) Febrile convulsion—

1. Place the patient in prone or lateral position. Prevent aspiration and guard against tongue bite by a rubber oropharyngeal tube. Start tepid sponging to bring down the raised temperature.
2. Syrup paracetamol (125 mg/ml)— ˣ/„ to 2 ml, orally, according to body weight.
3. Diazepam— Inj. diazepam (0.2-0.5 mg/kg/dose in shot push I.V; maximum of 5 mg/dose) or solution of diazepam may be given per rectally in a dose of ₀.₂-₀.4 mg/kg, or phenobarbitone (60 mg/tab) — $^{1}/_{2}$ to ₁ tab stat.
4. Antibiotics may be prescribed, if indicated.

* The age limit of febrile convulsion is ₆ months to 5 years. Few pediatricians continue phenobarbitone (30 mg at bedtime) till 5 years of age. An EEG should be done afterwards.

(B) Status epilepticus—

When convulsions (seizures) and unconsciousness recur wihout any intervening normal period in between, it is known as status epilepticus. Actually, it is the occurence of prolonged serial seizures (two or more) without the patient regaining consciousness between the attacks over a period of 15-30 minutes (recent definition). Practically, it is a serious conditions where the duration of seizure, which is more than 5 minutes, demands promt use of anticonvulsants. It is a life-threatening medical emergency (cardio-respiratory embarrassment, metabolic derangement, hyperpyrexia) and an ITU is essential for optimal management.

1. Railed cot; mouth gag to prevent tongue bite. Avoid head-pillow. Place in any lateral position with foot end raised (to prevent aspiration pneumonia) and head turned sideways. Try to listen the H/O past illness from patient's relatives.
2. Maintain the airway by repeated suction of mouth, nose and throat. Insert one rubber oropharyngeal tube.
3. Do not try to draw blood samples during convulsions. Blood samples can be taken (sugar, urea, creatinine, glucose, calcium, electrolytes, LFT and for toxicology) afterwards when the patient becomes totally sedated. Take care of BP, acidosis and ventilation.

4. Anticonvulsants—
   a) Start I.V lorazepam (0.1 mg/kg. I.e., 3-6 mg) at the rate of 2 mg/min; may be repeated after 5 minutes,

      or

      I.V diazepam (0.2 mg/kg, i.e., 10 mg) at the rate of 5 mg/min — the short duration of action of lorazepam or diazepam needs concomitant administration of maintenance anticonvulsants, i.e.,

      immediately after the first lorazepam/diazepam dose, start I.V phenytoin drip (always in normal saline; phenytoin precipitates in 5% dextrose solution; fosphenytoin has no such problem which is a pro-drug of phenyton where the risk of hypotension is less in comparison to phenytoin, and 1.5 mg fosphenytoin = 1 mg phenytoin), 13-18 mg /kg to run at the rate of 50 mg/min. Pediatric dose of the drug is 5 mg/kg to run at the rate of 25 mg/min. Monitoring of BP and ECG should be done (EEG, if possible) during infusion of phenytoin.
   b) Consider sodium valproate, I.V, 25 mg/kg if seizures continue in spite of inj. phenytoin.
   c) Inj. chlormethiazole 0.5" 1.2 g/hour, I.V by infusion may be tried in diazepam-failure patients.
   d) Thiopentone sodium 100-250 mg, I.V slowly may be started and followed by 90-120 mg/ hour infusion or phenobarbitone is started 20 mg/kg I.V at 50-75 mg/min. These drugs need assisted ventilation.
   e) Lastly, I.V anaesthesia with propofol or midazolam may be considered.
5. Moist 0_2 inhalation at the rate of 4-6 litres /min.
6. Maintenance drip by normal saline (to act as a route of emergency).
7. 50 ml of 50% inj. glucose, I.V often aborts an attack as hypoglycaemia as this may be an aggravating factor.
8. Discharge the patient from the hospital with tab phenytoin (100 mg/tab)- 1 tab three times daily, orally, regularly till further instruction; follow-up at regular interval.
9. Treatment of acidosis (50 ml of 7.5% sodium bicarbonate) and hyperpyrexia (see before) are done accordingly as these may complicate the course of status epilepticus.

* EEG (mandatory) and CT scan should be done as soon as the acute stage is over.

** *A continuous infusion of diazepam (2-4 mg/hr) is often beneficial* over phenytoin drip in some patients.

*** Lorazepam and diazepam may produce respiratory depression and hypotension.

**** Read different drugs for epilepsy form the section on 'Drugs'.

ACUTE ATTACK OF MIGRAINE

1. Rest. Reassurance.
2. Avoid stress. Chocolate, cheese, alcohol should be prohibited. Avoid oral contraceptive pills (in future). Oral fluid intake is encouraged.
3. Tab ergotamine tartarate (1 mg/tab) —1 tab to be taken orally and may be repeated at $^1/_2$ hour interval, not exceding 3 mg/day (should be taken in the aura stage to abort the attack),

   \- or

   Tab'sumatriptan (25/50/100 mg per tablet)—50-100 mg, orally to be taken 'soon after the onset of headache', and may be repeated, not exceeding 300 mg/day, or inj. sumatriptan (6 mg/0.5 ml) 6 mg, S.C, not more than 2 injections in 24 hours may be given. Sumatriptan is a 5-HTj agonist. Zolmitriptan, almotriptan, rizatriptan or naratriptan may be used instead by S.C route for promt relief of headache.
4. *Prevention for future attacks* (any one or combination):
   a) Flunarizine (5/10 mg per tablet)— 10 mg daily, orally in single or divided doses to continue till further advice.
   b) Tab propranolol (40 mg/tab)— 1-2 tab, orally three times daily to continue till further advice. Start initially as $^1/$ tab twice daily and then increase the dose gradually.
   c) Tab amitriptyline (25/50/75 mg per tablet)—25-100 mg, orally at bed time to continue till further advice.

d) Tab sodium valproate—500-1500 mg, orally in 2 divided doses.
e) Pizotifen—0.5-1.5 mg daily at bed time.
f) Methysergide—1-2 mg, thrice daily in resistant cases.
g) SSRI (serotonin-selective reuptake inhibitor), verapramil or topiramate may be used.

* Ergotamine is strictly contraindicated in pregnancy, peripheral vascular disease (e.g., Raynaud's phenomenon) and IHD.

** Sumatriptan is contraindicated in IHD, severe uncontrolled hypertension and with previous H/O myocardial infarction.

*** Acute attack may also be treated by aspirin (325-625 mg), ibuprofen (400-800 mg), naproxen (375-750 mg) or paracetamol (500 mg), orally. Prochlorperazine (12.5 mg) I.M, metoclopramide (10-20 mg) I.V or domperidone 2 mg I.V may be used as antiemetic.

**** **'Triggering factors'** ('anything under the sun including the sun' may be the precipitating factor though it differs from person to person) for migraine are : stress, noise and irritating lights, premenstrual tension, lack of sleep/meals and variations in daily routine, perfumes, caffeine, tobacco, alcohol, chocolate, cheeze, food additives e.g., monosodium glutamate, oral contraceptive pills and a time of relaxation (week-end migraine).

A BOY OF 8 YEARS WITH TWO DAYS H/O PUFFY FACE AND OLIGURIA SUDDENLY BECOMES DYSPNOEIC. HOW TO MANAGE THIS PATIENT ?

Most probably the boy is suffering from acute left ventricular failure developing from **acute glomerulonephritis** (the other acute complications of AGN are hypertensive encephalopathy and acute renal failure). At first, urgent treatment of LVF is done which is followed by treatment of acute poststreptococcal glomerulonephritis.

Management:

1. Treatment of acute LVF—See before.
2. Treatment of AGN :
   a) Complete bed rest until the signs of glomerular inflammation (proteinuria, RBC in urine) and circulatory congestion (oedema, hypertension) subside.
   b) Mild protein restriction in azotaemic patients. Salt free foods are given. The fluid intake is restricted to previous days output plus 500 ml of fluid. Check blood urea, creatinine and electrolytes regularly.
   c) Maintenance of intake-output chart; regular checking of BP and other vital signs.
   d) Tab frusemide (40 mg/tablet)—1 tab daily; the dose may be increased according to necessity (to relieve oedema and hypertension).
   e) Tab nifedipine (5 mg/tab)—1 tab 8-12 hourly according to the height of BP. Other calcium-channel blockers (e.g., amlodipine), hydralazine or diazoxide may be of help.
   f) Inj. crystalline penicillin—5 lakhs, I.M twice daily for 7-10 days (after proper skin test) to eradicate residual infection.
   g) Dialysis, if ARF or fluid overload develops.
   h) Tonsillectomy may be done after recovery.

* The prognosis of AGN in children is usually good. A small number of adults may develop hypertension and renal impairment later in life.

MANAGEMENT OF ACUTE PYELONEPHRITIS (E. COLI)

The treatment of urinary tract infection (UTI) is as follows :

1. Co-trimoxazole (trimethoprim + sulphamethoxazole = 80 mg + 400 mg/tab)—2 tab twice daily orally for 14 days, or cap ampicillin or amoxycillin (500 mg/cap)—1 cap $_8$ hourly, orally for 10 days, or cap cefuroxime (250 mg/cap)—1 cap 12 hourly for 10 days, or tab norfloxacin (400 mg/tab) or tab ciprofloxacin (500 mg/tab)—1 tab 12 hourly for 10 days, or nitrofurantoin 50 mg $_8$ hourly for 10 days. In severe infection (high fever, loin pain and tenderness), aminoglycosides e.g., inj. gentamycin I.M/I.V 3-5 mg/kg/day is given in 3 divided doses for 7-10 days, or inj. amikacin I.M/I.V 15 mg/kg/day is administered in 2 divided doses for 7-10 days.

2. Rest in bed. Normal diet. Plenty of fluid (at least two litres/day) to be taken by mouth to initiate water diuresis.
3. Ideally, urine sample should be sent for culture-sensitivity test and colony count, before initiating treatment. As soon as the result of sensitivity test is available, treatment is started (or changed, if already started) according to maximum sensitivity. Severe cases may require intravenous therapy. After recovery, often monthly culture of urine is advised.
4. Factors predisposing to infection e.g., obstruction, neurogenic urinary bladder, calculus, catheterisation, diabetes mellitus etc. should be properly identified and treated, if possible. Regular complete bladder emptying, maintenance of adequate perineal hygiene and application of 0.5% cetrimide cream peri-urethrally before intercourse often reduce the incidence of UTI in females.
5. If Blood urea and creatinine value rise, modification of dose of antibiotics is necessary.
6. In dysuria—
   a) Tab flavoxate (200 mg/tab)—1 tab 8 hourly for 10 days,

   or

   b) Tab phenazopyridine (200 mg/tab)— 1 tab 8 hourly for 10 day (produces red urine).
7. To prevent recurrent infection, suppressive antibiotic therapy by single nightly oral dose of trimethoprim 100 mg, ampicillin/ amoxycillin 250 mg, cephalexin 250 mg or nitrofurantoin 100 mg may be continued for few weeks (upto 6-12 months in recurrence).

* Renal parameters should be normal (i.e., normal urea and creatinine) in patients who are advised aminoglycosides.

INTRACTABLE HICCOUGH

Hiccough in an abrupt, involuntary, synchronous contraction of the diaphragm and the inspiratory intercostal muscles, followed by immediate closure of the glottis. The glottic closure is responsible for the production of characteristic inspiratory sound and associated discomfort. The synonyms of hiccough are hiccup or singultus. Hiccough is now-a-days considered as myoclonus of diaphragm.

Management :

Recurrent hiccough is very distressing and difficult to manage.

1. Reassurance : the patient as well as the relatives should be reassured.
2. Simple household remedies : Divert patient's attention (e.g., by conversation, sudden slapping), intake of ice-cold water, breath holding, Valsalva manoeuvre, lifting uvula with cold spoon, breathing in and out in a paper or plastic bag for 5 minutes, induction of vomiting by stimulation of the pharynx, spraying of ethyl chloride under the costal margins, swallowing rapidly one teaspoon of 'dry' granulated sugar, drinking water without taking any breath, coughing, sneezing (nasopharyngeal stimulation often aborts hiccough of postoperative origin).
3. Local measures : Intake of local anaesthetic viscus e.g., xylocaine, nasogastric suction followed by ice-cold stomach wash or alkaline stomach wash through a Ryle's tube.
4. Antacids/H_2-receptor blocker/proton pump inhibitor : Any liquid antacid (preferably containing local anaesthetic oxethazaine) is given 2-4 tsf, 6-8 hourly daily, orally, or ranitidine 150 mg BDAC or omeprazole 20 mg ODAC, orally. It is often advised to take the tablets with little water, and thus irritation of the pharynx may terminate a bout of hiccough.
5. Drugs : Chlorpromazine (probably best tried first, as an intravenous bolus; 25 mg, orally, tds or 25 mg I.V bolus stat), metoclopramide (10 mg, I.M, tds), baclofen (10 mg, orally, tds), haloperidol (5 mg, I.M stat or 0.25 mg, orally, tds), clonazepam (2 mg, orally, tds), amitriptyline, amantadine, quinidine (200 mg, orally, qds), ondansetron (4 mg, I.V, tds), anticonvulsants like phenytoin sodium, carbamazepine, valproic acid are worth trying in resistant cases. *Baclofen (beta agonist) is an effective drug in the treatment of intractable hiccough.*
6. Surgery ; In stubborn cases, phrenic nerve block by bupivacaine or nerve section is done surgically.
7. Treatment of the underlying cause.

* **Common causes of hiccough in clinical practice are :**

1. Overdistention of stomach.
2. Acute gastritis.
3. Uraemia.
4. Diaphragmatic pleurisy.
5. CVA.
6. Idiopathic.

MANAGEMENT OF HAMATEMESIS AND/OR MELAENA

1. Complete bed rest. Record pulse, BP, respiration, temperature and any sign of shock.
2. Introduce Ryle's tube. 0_2 is given through nasal catheter, if the patient is in shock. Try to assess the amount of blood loss from history and orthostatic haemodynamic changes (see below).
3. Make an I.V channel. Blood is sent for grouping and cross-matching, and for biochemical tests i.e., urea, creatinine, sugar and for LFT.
4. Nothing per mouth should be given if the bleeding continues. Liquid and then semisolid diet of low residue may be given when the bleeding has stopped. Tea, coffee, alcohol and smoking are strictly prohibited.
5. Start Ryle's tube suction intermittently and note the character of the aspirate. Gastric lavage is usually done with isotonic saline (ice cold).
6. I/V fluid therapy goes like this :

   Dextrose solution (10 %_)— 1 bottle

   i T

   Ringer's lactate— 1 bottle

Total 4-5 bottles will run in 24 hours depending upon the amount of blood loss. Rate of fluid infusion will be guided by the patient's vital signs. Type of fluid regimen may be changed according to need (electrolyte imbalance) of the patient. Plasma expanders like low molecular weight dextran is infused to maintain the BP till blood is available for transfusion.

7. Inj. ranitidine (50 mg/2ml)—50 mg, I.V, 3-4 times daily should be given till recovery. As soon as the vital signs improve and active bleeding stops, start tablet ranitidine (150 mg/tab) 1 tab twice daily before meal to continue till further advice. PPI (omeprazole, pantoprazole or rabeprazole) may be used instead.
8. Inj. promethazine—25-50 mg, I.M stat for restless patients; may be repeated, if necessary.
9. Now-a-days upper G. I. endoscopy can be done at the bedside. It yields high 'diagnostic accuracy', therapeutic capability, and low morbidity. When the patient becomes haemodynamically stable after receiving volume resuscitation, upper G. I. endoscopy should be performed early in the clinical course. Though it does not reduce the mortality, therapeutic endoscopy definitely reduces transfusion requirements, need for surgery and length of hospital stay.

10. a) *For bleeding peptic ulcer :*

(i) Blood should be transfused as soon as it is available (blood transfusion is required if the nasogastric aspiration shows active bleeding, the patient is in persistent shock, Hb% is <10 g/dl, systolic BP is <100 mm of Hg and the pulse rate is consistently >100 / minute). Maintain the fluid drip after the transfusion is over.

• (ii) Liquid antacid containing aluminium hydroxide and magnesium trisilicate is given 4-6 tsf every two hourly daily through the Ryle's tube.

(iii) Upper G.I endoscopy (if not done initially) is done as soon as the patient becomes stable.

(iv) If the above measures fail, consider surgical intervention.

b) *For rupture of oesophageal varices :*

(i) Blood should be transfused as soon as it is available (indications for transfusion are same as in bleeding peptic ulcer). Maintain the fluid drip after the transfusion is over (if blood is transfused in late hours, patient may precipitate hepatic pre-coma).

(ii) Vasopressin (pitressin)— 20 units to be dissolved in 200 ml of 5% dextrose. This will run as a seperate drip over 20 minutes and will be repeated again (may repeat hourly). It will continue for another 12-24 hours after the bleeding stops (note facial pallor, abdominal colic and bowel evacuation as indicators of active drug molecule; IHD is a contraindication for its use). The therapeutic dose of vasopressin is 0.1-0.5 units/ min. Vasopressin constricts the splanchnic arterioles, and thereby reduces portal pressure and portal blood flow.

* Inj. terlipressin 2 mg, 6 hourly by I.V route, followed by (till bleeding stops) 1 mg, 6 hourly for 24 hours may be used instead of vasopressin. Now-a-days, somatostatin infusion (250 |ig I.V stat followed by 250 (xg/hrly/I.V) is given in few sophisticated centres. Inj. octreotide (somatostatin analogue) 50 |ig, S.C, 8 hourly or infusion at the rate of 50-100 (ig/hour may be tried. Somatostatin and octreotide increase splanchnic arterial resistance.

(iii) If bleeding still continues or recurs, introduce a Sengstaken-Blakemore tube (balloon tamponade). The Minnesota modification is preferred because it contains aspiration facility from stomach and oesophagus.

(iv) If bleeding continues after tamponade, emergency endoscopic sclerotherapy or variceal ligation/banding is tried, if feasible.

(v) If bleeding is still not controlled, surgical assistance e.g., oesophageal transection or TIPSS (transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic stent shunting) is tried, if in a specialised centre.

(vi) Inj. Vit K - 10 mg, I.M/I.V daily for consecutive 3 days. Platelet transfusion may be done.

(vii) All cirrhotics are to be graded on Child's criteria as early as possible. Lactulose and neomycin (see the section on 'Management of hepatic pre-coma/coma') may be started.

11. Follow-up:

a) *Bleeding peptic ulcer—*

Follow the 'Eradication of H. pylori' described in 'Gas under the diaphragm' in 'Radiology' section.

b) *Rupture of oesophageal varices—*

(i) Endoscopic confirmation and grading of varices (if not done initially).

(ii) Endoscopic sclerotherapy, banding/ligation or TIPSS.

(iii) Tab propranolol (40 mg/tab)—1 tab, 8-12 hourly or isosorbide dinitrate (5 mg/tab)—1 tab twice daily, orally may be continued (both are portal hypotensive agents).

(iv) Porto-systemic shunt surgery may be done afterwards.

* Variceal bleeding is a life-threatening medical emergency.

** For other causes of haematemesis/melaena, primarily treat in the line of bleeding peptic ulcer. Do specific management when upper G.I. endoscopy clinches the diagnosis.

** **Orthostatic haemodynamic changes** : Drop in systolic BP of >10 mm of Hg, rise in pulse rate of >15 beats/min are seen with loss of 20% of the circulatory volume.

DYSENTERY

It is characterised by diarrhoea where stool is mixed with blood and mucus as a result of acute inflammation of large gut (colicky pain abdomen and tenesmus are associated with dysentery).

(A) Acute amoebic dysentery—

1. Bed rest. Liquid diet. To consume boiled drinking water.
2. Tab metronidazole (400 mg/tab)— 2 tab 3 times daily for 7 days; or metronidazole (500 mg/100 ml) I.V infusion may be given, as 100 ml 3 times daily till the acute stage subsides; or tab tinidazole (300 mg/600 mg per tablet)— 600 mg 2 times daily for 7 days or 2 g single daily dose for at least 3 days. These drugs are *followed by,*
3. Tab diloxanide furoate (500 mg/tab)— 1 tab 3 times daily for 10 days (to eradicate intestinal cyst), after the treatment with metronidazole or tinidazole is over. Alternative 'luminal agents' are iodoquinol (650 mg tds for 20 days) or paromomycin (500 mg tds for 10 days).
4. Cap tetracycline (250 mg/cap)— 1 cap 4 times daily for 5 days along with any one of the drugs described in No. 2 may be prescribed to eradicate luminal amoebae or to treat secondary bacterial infection.
5. Oral rehydration therapy (see afterwards), if dehydration develops.
6. Tab dicyclomine hydrochloride (10 mg/tab)— 1 tab stat and sos to be used in colicky abdominal pain. Drotaverine hydrochloride (40 mg/tab) may be used instead.
7. Stool examination should be done after 1 month to confirm eradication of Entamoeba histolytica.

* The patient should be warned about the side effects (nausea, vomiting, metallic taste, disulfiram-like reactions, abdominal discomfort) of imidazole compounds.

(B) Acute bacillary dysentery (shigellosis)—

1. Complete bed rest in isolation. Liquid diet till acute stage subsides.
2. Record vital signs at $^{1}/_{2}$ hourly interval. Ensure normal urine output.

3. Assess hydration. Oral rehydration therapy (see afterwards), if dehydration develops.
4. Stool should be sent for culture-sensitivity test, but it is not always possible to get the report of stool before initiating specific antimicrobial therapy.
5. Trimethoprim-sulphamethoxazole (80 mg + 400 mg/tab)— 2 tab twice daily for 5 days,

   or

   Tab ciprofloxacin (500 mg/tab)— 1 tab 12 hourly for 5 days,

   or

   Tab norfloxacin (400 mg/tab)— 1 tab 12 hourly for 5 days,

   or

   Tab nalidixic acid (500 mg/tab)— 2 tab 6 hourly for 5 days in adults (specially used in children; in the dose of 55 mg/kg/day in divided doses).
6. Tab dicyclomine hydrochloride (10 mg/tab)— 1 tab stat and sos to be used in colicky abdominal pain. Drotaverine hydrochloride (40 mg/tab) may be used instead.
7. Loperamide (2 mg/tab or cap)— 1 such stat and 1 tab/cap is used sos with each motion (use cautiously in children and aged; it may precipitate paralytic ileus).
8. In high fever, paracetamol (500 mg/tab)— 1 tab stat and sos is used.

Avoid milk and milk products in dysentery.

AMOEBIC LIVER ABSCESS

1. Complete bed rest. High calorie nutritious diet. Advise the patient to consume boiled drinking water. Cysts present in water are disinfected by iodination.
2. I.V metronidazole— 100 ml (containing 500 mg of the drug) to be infused thrice daily till definite clinical improvement occurs; followed by tab metronidazole (400 mg/tab)— 800 mg thrice daily for 7 days,

   or

Inj. dehydroemetine (previously used when metronidazole was not available)— 60 mg, deep I.M daily for consecutive 6 days, gap for 3 days, and again injected I.M for consecutive 3 days. Strict bed rest and ECG monitoring is a must during treatment. Emetine is more cardiotoxic than dehydroemetine. Three days gap is given to avoid drug cumulation within the body. These agents are toxic and thus rarely used at present. Their toxic effects are arrhythmia, chest pain, muscle weakness, myalgia, nausea/vomiting, diarrhoea, hypotension and pain at site of infection.

3. If parenteral therapy is not employed, one may start oral treatment with tab metronidazole (400 mg/tab)— 2 tab 8 hourly for 10 days, or

   Tab tinidazole (300 mg/600 mg per tablet)— 600 mg 8-12 hourly for 10 days or 2 g single daily dose for 3-5 days.
4. Cap tetracycline (250 mg/cap)— 1 cap 4 times daily for 5 days as luminal antiamoebic drug or to control secondary bacterial infection.
5. Tab chloroquine (250 mg/tab)— 2 tab twice daily for 2 days, and 1 tab twice daily for next 19 days.

* No. 4 and No. 5 are used along with No. 2 or 3.

6. To eliminate intestinal luminal cyst, tab diloxanide furoate (500 mg/tab) 1 tab, orally, 8 hourly to be given for 10 days after the treatment with metronidazole is over.
7. Indications of aspiration (under USG or CT guidance)—
   a) Clinical lack of response to 3-5-days metronidazole treatment.
   b) Very large abscess (>10 cm in diameter).
   c) Abscess in the left lobe likely to rupture into the peritoneum or pericardium.
   d) To rule out pyogenic abscess (specially in patients with multiple lesions).
   e) Threat of imminent rupture.
8. Maintain nutrition by I.V normal saline or dextrose-saline infusion.
9. If the abscess ruptures, immediately resuscitate the patient by parenteral fluid therapy, which is *followed* by open surgical drainage.

* Few physicians prefer inj. ciprofloxacin infusion (200 mg/100 ml), 200 mg, 12 hourly infused over 60 minutes to combat secondary pyogenic infection within the abscess. Tablet domperidone (10 mg/tab) 1 tab, 8 hourly, orally in empty stomach for 2-3 days may be advocated in nausea/vomiting.

ACUTE VIRAL HEPATITIS

1. *There is no specific treatmentfor acute viral hepatitis.* Rest in bed till the patient is symptom-free (physical well-being with return of appetite), the liver is no longer tender, and the serum bilirubin becomes less than 1.5 mg/dl; gradual ambulation.
2. A diet containing 2000-3000 Kcal daily is given. Low-fat and high-carbohydrate diet is preferred. The food must be palatable. Plenty of fluid should be taken.
3. Blood should be sent for estimation of serum bilirubin (conjugated and unconjugated fraction), AST, ALT, alkaline phosphatase, serum albumin and prothrombin time. Blood biochemistry e.g., urea, creatinine and glucose should be estimated. Tests of IgM anti-HAV, Australia antigen (HBsAg), anti-HCV, IgM anti-HEV should be advised.
4. During the acute stage, close physical contacts should be avoided. Avoid sharing comb, rajor etc with the patient (specially in type B and C hepatitis). Alcohol, sedatives, oral contraceptive pills are to be totally avoided. Reassurance, as recovery is the rule in majority.
5. Regular surveillance on clinical parameters and close observation regarding development of hepato-cellular failure (abnormality in higher function, pedal oedema, ascites, asterixis etc).
6. Symptomatic treatment (keep the patient on minimum drugs) :
   a) Nausea and vomiting—Domperidone 10 mg, three times daily before meal.
   b) Severe vomiting and fluid loss—Inj. metoclopramide 10 mg, I.M stat; 10% dextrose drip should be started and maintained (4 bottles/day) for 2-3 days. In severe vomiting, ondansetron may be given orally (2 and 4 mg/tab) or preferably parenterally (2 ml inj. containing 2 mg/ml).
   c) Pain in the right hypochondrium—Tab paracetamol (500 mg/tab), 1 tab sos.
   d) Pruritus (in prolonged cholestatic variety)—Read the chart on 'Cholestasis'. Chiefly UDCA, antihistaminics or cholestyramine is advocated.
   e) Weakness—Reassurance; routine vitamins supplement are not necessary. Parenteral injection of vitamin K, 10 mg by I.M route may be given daily for consecutive 3 days if prothrombin time is high.
   f) Hepatic pre-coma/coma (from fulminant hepatitis)—Read the 'Management of hepatic pre-coma/coma' from early part of 'Emergency medicine'.

* Admission to hospital is rarely necessary (except in clinically severe disease and fulminant hepatitis). Corticosteroids have no benefit. There are no controlled data on the efficacy of lamivudine in acute type B hepatitis.

ENTERIC FEVER

1. Bed rest with isolation till fever subsides. Care of the mouth, eyes and skin; high calorie, semisolid, low roughage diet with plenty of fluid by mouth should be taken. Tepid sponging is advised in high rise of temperature. Tab paracetamol (500 mg/tab) 1 tab used sos, if the temperature shoots > 102°F.
2. Tab ciprofloxacin (500 mg/tab)—1 tab twice daily for 10-14 days.

Other drugs (any one may be used)

- Cap chloramphenicol (250 mg/cap)— 3 cap 4 times daily till fever persists; then 2 cap 4 times daily is continued upto 14 days (now-a-days, chloramphenicol-resistant S. typhi is not uncommon; moreover, there is chance of development of aplastic anaemia. So many physicians avoid this drug). Pediatric dose is 30-50 mg/kg of body weight/day.
- Cap amoxycillin (500 mg/cap)—2-3 cap 4 times daily for 14 days. Pediatric dose is 100 mg/kg of body weight/day.

- Co-trimoxazole (160 mg trimethoprim + 800 mg sulphamethoxazole/tab)—2 tab twice daily for 14 days.
- Ofloxacin (200 mg/tab)—2 tab twice daily for 7 days.
- Inj. ceftriaxone—2 g twice daily I.V or 3-4 g once daily I.V for 10-14 days. Pediatric dose is 75 mg/kg of body weight, once daily for 7-10 days.

3. If typhoid state develops, start inj. hydrocortisone hemisuccinate—Read "Typhoid meningism' from early part of 'Emergency medicine'.
4. For chronic carrier :
   Tab ciprofloxacin (500 mg/tab)—1 tab twice daily continued for 4 weeks or advise cholecystectomy.

* In **multidrug-resistant (MDR) S. typhi infection,** the bacteria is resistant to chloramphenicol, co-trimoxazole, ampicillin or amoxycillin, streptomycin, sulphonamides and tetracycline. The drugs used in MDR disease are :

(A) MDR S. typhi infection—
   a) Ciprofloxacin — 500 mg BD, orally x 10-14 days
   b) Ceftriaxone — 4 g/d in d/d I.V x 10-14 days
   c) Azithromycin — 1 g/d, orally x 5 days
   d) Cefixime — 400 mg BD, orally x 10-14 days

(B) NARST (Nalidixic acid-resistant S. typhi) strain—
   a) Ceftriaxone — 1-2 g/d, I.V x 10-14 days
   b) Azithromycin — 1 g/d. orally x 5 days
   c) Ciprofloxacin — 750 mg, BD, orally x 10-14 days

MDR infection as well as quinolone resistance are found in India.

ACUTE PANCREATITIS

It is an acute abdominal medical emergency. Though it is a self-limiting disease, support through a) analgesia, b) avoidance of oral alimentation, and c) I.V fluid therapy to maintain intravascular volume are targetted for a fruitful outcome.

1. Urgent hospitalisation with absolute bed rest.
2. No oral intake until the patient is free of pain abdomen and nausea.
3. Intermittent nasogastric suction (prevents abdominal distension and vomitus, and reduces the risk of aspiration pneumonia) through Ryle's tube at 15 minute interval.
4. Catheterisation of urinary bladder by Foley's catheter.
5. Moist 0_2 inhalation by nasal catheter at the rate of 4-6 litres/min.
6. I.V drip to continue with normal saline or plasma expanders as hypovolaemic shock is very common and early fluid loss may be enormous.
7. Inj. pethidine— 100 mg, I.M, 8 or 12 hourly or inj. tramadol 100 mg, I.M, 12 hourly for analgesia (do not use morphine as it causes contraction of sphincter of Oddi; inj pentazocine should also be avoided).
8. Blood sample is drawn and sent for haematocrit, TC, DC, amylase, lipase, sugar, calcium, bilirubin, albumin, lipid profile, arterial blood gases, and grouping and cross-matching. Record the vital signs at regular interval.
9. Inj. ranitidine (50 mg/2 ml)— 50 mg, I.V/I.M, 8 hourly to continue till recovery. Acid suppression should be done in critically ill patients with risk of stress ulcer bleeding.
10. Blood transfusion may be required in haemorrhagic pancreatitis.
11. Antibiotics (prophylactic)— Inj. cefotaxime, 1 g, I.V, 6 hourly or inj. aztreonam 1-2 g, I.V/I.M 6-12 hourly for 7 days to reduce the risk of infective complications. Use of antibiotic in acute pancreatitis still remains controversial.
12. Inj. trasylol— 5 lacs units as I.V bolus may be tried.
13. Inj. glucagon— 1 mg, S.C may be given.
14. Inj. calcium gluconate— 10 ml (10%) by I.V route in shot push and may be repeated.

15. Inj. octreotide—50-200 ng, S.C, 8 hourly may be of some help.
16. Diet— Liquid diet is started on the 3rd to 6th day and a regular diet by the 5th to 7th day.
17. Fulminant and necrotising pancreatitis— Peritoneal lavage / laparotomy with adequate drainage and removal of necrotic tissue are done.

* An urgent USG or CECT scan (preferable) of the abdomen is required to confirm the diagnosis, to exclude other diagnosis (e.g., perforation of viscus) or to see whether phlegmon/abscess has formed or not.

** No. 12, 13, 14, 15 may be given empirically.

*** Inj. insulin is given for hyperglycaemia, I.V calcium for hypocalcaemia and ventilatory support for ARDS. Low molecular weight heparin (LMWH) is given for prophylaxis of deep vein thrombosis (DVT).

N.B : An ITU set up is necessary for porper treatment. In the management of acute pancreatitis APACHE II (acute physiology and chronic health evaluation) or CECT scoring system should be carried out to assess the severity of the attack. Now-a-days, enteral nutrition (by a nasojejunal tube, which crosses stomach and pancreas, and thereby prevents gastric paresis and pancreatic stimulation) is preferred over total parenteral nutrition (associated with a high risk of infection). Lexiplafant, a platelet-activating factor is advocated by few clinicians though not every effective.

Serum amylase value > 150 Somogyi unit/dl should raise the question of acute pancreatitis. Levels > 300 units make the diagnosis more likely, and values > 3 times normal virtually clinch the diagnosis. Serum amylase is usually elevated within 24 hours and the level gradually falls back towards normal over the next 3-5 days. Serum lipase levels remain elevated for a longer period of time than amylase.

CHOLERA WITH SEVERE DEHYDRATION

Cholera is a severe acute G.I. infection, caused by Vibrio cholerae (serotype 01) and is characterised by acute onset of diarrhoea (exotoxin-mediated), vomiting, fluid and electrolyte loss, dehydration and acidosis. Renal failure may complicate the situation. The patient remains mentally clear*till to the end. Death is usually as a result of acute circulatory failure.

Management :

1. Complete bed rest *in isolation.* The excreta of the patient should be properly disposed off. Notify the municipality/corporation.
2. Record vital signs, i.e., pulse, respiration, temperature (rectal), BP, intake-output chart carefully.
3. Nothing should be given by mouth except the oral rehydration salt.
4. A quick clinical assessment of state and degree of dehydration is made by assessing general appearance, pulse, BP, skin turgor (elasticity), eyes, tears, mucous membrane, thirst, urine output and anterior fontanelle (in infants).
5. I.V fluids should be immediately started with Ringer's lactate solution (fluid of choice in cholera) at the rate of 50-100 ml/min. A large bore needle (e.g., No. 18) is inserted for this purpose. Ringer's lactate will continue till Dacca solution is available.
6. *Dacca solution—*

Nacl — 5g
$NaHC0_3$ — 4g
Kcl — lg
Distilled water — 1 litre

To start with, 4/5 litres of solution is prepared. This is the recommended fluid for treatment of cholera. The fluid required is calculated every 8 hourly from urinary output, vomitus, stool and estimated insensible loss, which may be upto 5 litre/24 hours in hot and humid climate. The Dacca solution replaces running Ringer's lactate solution till the peripheral pulse are palpable. Then the drip rate is reduced at the rate of 30 ml/min. When the pulse, BP become near normal (i.e., severe dehydration has been corrected), oral rehydration therapy replaces I.V fluid treatment.

7. Oral rehydration therapy by oral rehydration salt (ORS)—As suggested by WHO, the 'universal formula' is :

Nacl	3.5 g/1
$NaHCo_3$	2.5 g/1
Kcl	1.5 g/1
Glucose	20 g/1

The content of the packet is dissolved in one litre of sterile drinking water. It should be taken frequently as directed by the physician (depends on degree of dehydration). It should be used for next 48 hours or till diarrhoea persists.

8. Cap tetracycline (250 mg/cap)— 1 cap 6 hourly for 3 to 5 days. Other antimicrobials like ampicillin, fluoroquinoles, trimethoprim-sulphamethoxazole or azithromycin may be used.
9. If vomiting is incessant—- Inj. metoclopramide (5 mg/ml), 10 mg, I.M or inj. promethazine hydrochloride 25-50 mg, I.M as and when required. Inj. ondansetron 2 ml (4 mg), I.V may be given instead.
10. Acidosis is corrected by 50-100 ml of inj. sodium bicarbonate (7.5%) given I.V in shot push, according to the necessity.
11. If acute renal failure develops, send the patient for peritoneal or haemodialysis.

* In severe dehydration, total fluid deficit is usually 100-110 ml /kg.

** If Ringer's lactate is not available : 2 litres of isotonic saline is alternated with 1 litre of isotonic sodium lactate/bicarbonate, and potassium is added to it. Accurate fluid loss may be recorded by the use of 'cholera cot' (hole is made in the cot under patient's buttocks, and a graded bucket is placed there).

*** Convulsions (febrile convulsions) in children is treated by inj. diazepam (0.2 mg/kg/I.V dose).

**** i_nj chlorpromazine—50 mg, 6 hourly may be helpful in reducing intestinal secretion and fluid loss.

***** **Calculation of rate of fluid to be infused :**

1 ml = 15 drops.

Infusing 540 ml (1 bottle) in 8 hours, give fluid at the rate of 1 drop/4 sec. i.e., 15 drops/min (approx).

Infusing 540 ml (1 bottle) in 6 hours, give fluid at the rate of 1 drop/3 sec. i.e., 20 drops/min (approx).

Infusing 540 ml (1 bottle) in 4 hours, give fluid at the rate of 1 drop/2 sec. i.e., 30 drops/min (approx).

HAEMOPTYSIS

Usually haemoptysis is scant and stops spontaneously. If haemoptysis is prolonged, massive (> 100-600 ml/24 hours) or alarming, the following treatment should be instituted immediately.

1. Reassurance. Complete bed rest in semi-reclined position with leaning on the affected side (if chest pain or chest X-ray indicates the side of lesion); this posture is maintained to prevent asphyxiation due to aspiration of blood into normal lung. Only liquid diet is allowed.
2. Advise for chest X-ray (PA and lateral view), if feasible. Blood should be sent for TC, DC, ESR, sugar, BT, CT, grouping and cross-matching; CT scan of thorax, if feasible.
3. Inj. diazepam—5-10 mg, I.M stat given.
4. I.V drip of normal saline is started as a 'route of emergency' and let the fluid run at the rate of 15-20 drops/min.
5. Record vital signs repeatedly. Thorough and meticulous general survey, and examination of chest and CVS (with special reference to mitral stenosis) to come to an aetiological diagnosis, should always be tried.
6. If shock supervenes, treat by :
   a) I.V normal saline infusion.
   b) Head-low position with intermittent 0_2 therapy at the rate of 4-6 litres/minute.
   c) Blood transfusion, as early as possible.
   d) Frequent bronchial aspiration to prevent collapse of the lung.
7. Cough suppression —Small and repeated dose of linctus codeine may be given in harassing or troublesome cough as coughing may prevent normal clotting after haemorrhage.
8. Inj. ethamsylate (125 mg/ml)—2 ml, I.M/I.V stat in severe haemoptysis, as a coagulant. Tab tranexamic acid (500 mg/tab) may be added, 1 tab 3 times daily as fibrinolytic inhibitor.
9. Syrup amoxycillin (125 mg/5 ml)—2 tsf 8 hourly to prevent secondary infection.
10. Treatment of the cause, i.e., antituberculosis drugs for pulmonary tuberculosis, antibiotics with higher doses in pneumonia, specific drugs for complicated mitral stenosis should be started.
11. If respiratory distress starts, think of asphyxiation due to aspiration. Intubation and suctioning are done by sending the patient to 'Respiratory Care Unit' (RCU). Endotracheal intubation is also indicated in ongoing bleeding, poor gas exchange and haemodynamically unstable patients.

A Fogarlty balloon catheter passed through bronchoscope may stop bleeding with tamponade technique. Removal of the clot may be done under bronchoscopic supervision. Lastly, surgical help may be sought. Few pulmonologists prefer bronchial artery catheterisation and embolisation in uncontrolled haemoptysis.

*** Haemoptysis according to age and time :**

- Young — tuberculosis, bronchiectasis, mitral stenosis, bronchial adenoma, arteriovenous malformations
- Around 40 years — Bronchogenic carcinoma
- Recurrent — Chronic bronchitis, bronchial adenoma, bronchiectasis

SEVERE ANAEMIA

Anaemia is the qualitative or quantitative diminution of RBC and/or haemoglobin concentration in relation to standard age and sex, and clinically manifested by pallor. When the haemoglobin concentration goes below 40%, i.e., Hb < 6 g/dl, it is designated as severe anaemia.

The patient usually complains of severe weakness, fatigue, light-headedness, giddiness, pre-syncope or fainting, lassitude, anorexia, palpitation, breathlessness, anginal pain, tingling sensation in the extremities (paraesthesia), insomnia and irritability, or dysphagia (Plummer-Vinson syndrome).

Causes :

1. Acute haemorrhage : Haematemesis and/or melaena, haemoptysis, menorrhagia, epistaxis, haematuria, bleeding haemorrhoids or road-traffic accident.
2. Acute haemolysis : Sickle cell crisis, thalassaemia.
3. Deficiency of iron, folic acid, vitamin B_{12} : Iron dificiency anaemia, megaloblastic anaemia.
4. Failure or depression of bone marrow : Aplastic anaemia, chronic infection, long-continued rheumatoid arthritis, chronic renal failure, lymphoma, disseminated carcinomatosis.

Management :

In the presence of cardiac or cerebral symptoms, emergency treatment by blood transfusion is necessary.

1. packed cell transfusion : One unit of packed red cell transfusion (450 ml) usually raises the haemoglobin concentration by about 1 g/dl in an average adult. Transfuse cautiously at the rate of 10-15 drops/minute. If the patient is in cardiac failure, always give I.V frusemide 20-40 mg before transfusion. In a suspected patent of IHD, keep the rate of transfusion at 10 drops/ minute. More then one unit of blood should not be transfused in 24 hours. In non-availability of packed cell, transfuse whole blood and discard the plasma. It is better to transfuse packed cell when Hb concentration is < 7g/dl.
2. Treatment of the underlying cause : This should be started simultaneously. Treat anaemia by replacement of iron, vitamin B_{12}, folic acid; combat CRF by drugs and haemodialysis, leukaemia by specific chemotherapy, aplastic anaemia by oxymetholone or bone marrow transplant.

- Other indications of blood transfusion are : (1) Hypertransfusion therapy—to block production of defective cells e.g., thalassaemia (2) Exchange transfusion e.g., haemolytic disease of the newborn.

** In India, one pouch usually contains 350 ml of blood (300 ml blood and 50 ml anticoagulant).

Hazards of transfusion :

About 5% patients receiving blood transfusion will have some reaction. The complications arising out of transfusion are often classified into acute (< 72 hrs) and delayed (> 72 hrs), but this results in a degree of overlap; thus an alternative is to consider them dividing into two broad groups, immune and non-immune reactions. Antibody-mediated reactions are directed against RBC, WBC, platelet, and immunoglobulins (e.g., IgA). The non-immune reactions are circulatory overload, thrombophlebitis, air embolism, iron overload and transmission of infectious agents.

The major hazards of transfusion are :

1. Febrile or pyrogen reactions with rigors (non-haemolytic).
2. Allergic reactions (urticarial and anaphylactoid).
3. Haemolytic reactions.
4. Circulatory overload.
5. Thrombophlebitis.
6. Air embolism.
7. Transmission of infection.
8. Complications of massive transfusion.
9. Transfusion haemosiderosis.
10. Dilutional coagulation defects.
11. Immunological sensitisation by compatible blood (eg, Rh-isoimmunisation).
12. Transfusion-related acute lung injury.
13. Hypothermia, plasticizers (components of bag get eluted, into bag's content and enter recipient's body).

Individual complications are analysed below :

(A) Febrile reactions (pyrogens, antibodies against donor's plasma protein or leucocytes antigens are thought to be responsible) : fever, chills, urticaria, pruritus etc.

Rx : 1. Slow the drip rate.

2. Cover with blanket; hot drinks.
3. Tab paracetamol (500 mg)—1 tablet orally.
4. Inj. promethazine or inj. diphenhydramine or inj. chlorpheniramine—1 amp, I.M, stat.
5. In recurrent febrile episodes—transfuse WBC-free and plasma-free red blood cells.
6. If rigor occurs—inj. diazepam, 1 amp (10 mg), I.M may be given. Keep the patient under close vigilance. Ralely, glucocorticoids or adrenaline may be required.

(B) Anaphylactic reaction : Read 'Syringe (5 ml/50 ml)' in 'Instruments and procedures' section.

(C) Haemolytic reaction (as a result of transfusing incompatible blood group/haemolysed blood/ improper storage of donor's blood) : Features—

1. Fever
2. Chill
3. Aching loin pain
4. Chest pain
5. Nausea, vomiting
6. Tachycardia
7. Hypotension
8. Throbbing of head
9. Breathlessness
10. Pallor

This is the 'stage of shock'. In the post-shock stage, haemoglobinuria develops; jaundice may develop after 12 hours. Ultimately, acute renal failure (ARF as a result of acute tubular necrosis) sets in.

Rx : 1. Immediately stop the transfusion.

2. Collect the clotted and EDTA-treated samples of patient's blood along with the remainder of the suspected unit and send them to the blood bank to repeat the cross-matching.
3. Blood should be examined for serum bilirubin and test of DIC (disseminated intravascular coagulation); plasma and freshly voided urine should be tested for free haemoglobin.
4. Management is targetted for preservation of intravascular volume and protection of normal renal function :
   a) Urine output should be 100 ml/hour or greater—by diuretics (inj. frusemide 40 mg, I.V), I.V fluid (normal saline) or mannitol (300 ml of 20%) infusion.
   b) 7.5% inj. $NaHCo_3$ (1 amp = 10 ml) may be added to I.V fluid to alkalinize the urine which will help in excretion of free haemoglobin.
   c) Treat DIC and ARF, accordingly.
5. Inj. hydrocortisone hemisuccinate 100-200 mg, I.V stat may be of some help.

(D) Circulatory overload : Features—

1. Breathlessness
2. Tightness of chest
3. Cough (dry)
4. Basal crepitations
5. Raised jugular venous pressure
6. Facial puffiness (late feature)

Rx : 1. Slow the rate of transfusion (stop transfusion, if required).

2. Propped-up position with moist 0_2 inhalation.
3. Inj. morphine—slow I.V injection in a total dose of 5-10 mg, at a rate of 2 mg/min.
4. Inj. frusemide—20-40 mg, I.V stat and may be repeated after 30 minutes.
5. Digitalis—0.5 mg in 10 ml normal saline, I.V, given over 10 minutes.
6. The patient may be transferred to ICU for continuous monitoring of pulse, BP, respiration and cardio-respiratory status. In disperate situation, intubation and positive-pressure ventilation may be required.

(E) Thrombophlebitis :

1. Tab paracetamol (500 mg, thrice daily) or aspirin (325 mg, thrice daily) or aceclofenac (100 mg, once daily after meal).
2. Elevation of the limb; application of crepe bandage.
3. In severe infection, antibiotics may be required.
4. Tab serratiopeptidase (10 mg, thrice daily) or trypsin-chymotrypsin preparation (thrice daily).
5. Ointment containing heparin and benzyl nicotinate (e.g., thrombophob) to apply locally.

(F) Air embolism : The incidence is less with collapsible plastic bags.

Features : Breathlessness, tachycardia, hypotension, cyanosis and syncope.

Rx : 1. The patient is placed on left lateral position.

2. Head-end down with foot-end up position.
3. Help of cardio-thoracic surgeon is sought for.

If these positions are adopted, air may be disloged/displaced from the outflow tract of right ventricle.

(G) Transmission of infection :

1. Hepatitis B virus
2. Hepatitis C virus
3. HIV-I and HIV-2
4. HTLV-1
5. West Nile virus
6. Malaria
7. Syphilis
8. Cytomegalovirus
9. Brucellosis
10. Yersinia
11. Trypanosomiasis
12. Toxoplasmosis

(H) Complications of massive transfusion :

Administration of blood products in 24 hours of greater than the normal volume of blood of the patient (e.g., > 5 litre) may be associated with (massive transfusion)—

1. Hypothermia—Rapid infusion of chilled blood may produce cardiac dysrrhythmias. So, prevent the situation by warming the blood before transfusion.
2. Citrate intoxication—Patient may develop hypocalcaemia (paraesthesia, tetany, hypotension and low cardiac output) and is usually seen in patients with hepatic dysfunction. Calcium gluconate, I.V, 10 ml of a 10% solution may prevent the situation.
3. Hyperkalaemia and acidaemia may occur—usually not significant.
4. Bleeding complications—this may happen as a result of dilution of platelet and coagulation factors. Transfusion of fresh blood may tackle the situation.
5. Microembolism—may lead to acute lung injury.

(I) Iron overload—As each unit of RBC contains 200-250 mg of iron, iron overload features (i.e., endocrine, hepatic and cardiac dysfunction) occur after 100 units of RBC transfusion. So, judicious transfusion is preferable.

(J) Transfusion-related acute lung injury :

Antileucocyte antibodies present in donor's blood are responsible; usually develops within 4 hours of transfusion and often indistinguishable from ARDS (adult respiratory distress syndrome).

Features—Breathlessness, hypotension, fever, chills and hypoxaemia.

Rx : by ventilatory support. Usually diuretics are of no help.

MANAGEMENT OF CARDIAC ARREST (CPR)

Cardiac arrest is the sudden and complete loss of cardiac function where the pulse is not palpable, BP can not be recorded, respiration stops and the patient becomes unconscious. Unless promt treatment is started within 4-5 minutes, the patient dies. Ventricular fibrillation, pulseless ventricular tachycardia, cardiac asystole or electromechanical dissociation is responsible for cardiac arrest. **Cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR)** should be immediately instituted to rescue patients with acute circulatory or respiratory failure or both, followed by implementation of advanced life support measures.

(Causes of cardiac arrest :

1. Ventricular fibrillation (VF) or pulseless ventricular tachycardia—acute myocardial infarction (AMI), drugs (e.g., quinidine or digitalis toxicity), electrical shock, dyselectrolytaemia ($1K^+$ or TK^+, $4Ca^{++}$, 4-Mg**).
2. Ventricular asystole—massive AMI, failure of conduction.
3. Electromechanical dissociation—rupture of the heart, massive pulmonary thromboembolism.]

Basic life support (BLS) starts immediately :

1. Check the patient's responsiveness-—Shake and shout.
2. Airway : The patient should be placed on a firm, flat surface in face up, i.e., in an extended supine position with elevated legs. Extend the neck (head tilt) and raise the chin (chin lift). Remove visible vomitus debris or dentures after opening the mouth. If any foreign body is suspected, the patient is rolled over to one side and 4-5 forceful blows are delivered rapidly between two shoulder blades by the heel of the palm; again the patient is placed in supine position. Oropharyngeal aspiration may be needed.
3. Breathing : Mouth to mouth breathing (direct or indirectly via a ventilation tube) should be started immediately at the rate of 12/minute. Extending patient's neck, pinching patient's nose by index finger and thumb, and placing a gauge piece on patient's mouth, start mouth to mouth respiration. First, take a deep inspiration and then exhale totally on the patient's mouth. Always look at the patient's chest for signs of expansion (i.e., for signs of adequate ventilation). If facilities are available, ventilate with Ambu bag, face mask. Start 100% 0_2. In foreign body obstruction within larynx or trachea, *Heimlich's manoeuvre* should be attempted to relieve the obstruction (standing behind the patient, encircle the waist with your arms. A clenched fist is placed against the epigastrium, above umbilicus but below the xiphistemum. After grasping the fist with the other hand, quick upward thrusts are applied into the patient's abdomen several times necessary to clear the airway).
4. Circulation : If carotid or brachial pulse is still not palpable, deliver a blow over the chest and start closed cardiac massage immediately. With the heel of both hands (one placed above the other), the lower part of the body of sternum is compressed vertically (depresing sternum by 3-5 cm) at the rate of 60-100/ minute after placing the patient on a hard surface. For one rescuer, ventilate twice after 15 chest compressions; and for two rescuers ventilate once after 5 chest compression. Cardiac massage should be gentle, rhythmic and smooth.

[5. Automated external defibrillator (AED); Since VF is the major cause of cardiac arrest, application of early defibrillation by paramedical staffs or doctors is of paramount importance.]

6. Try to record an ECG of the patient to come to an aetiological diagnosis. The BLS should be stopped for 5 seconds at the end of first minute (and thereafter every 2-3 minutes) to assess whether spontaneous breathing or circulation has resumed or not. The BLS should be continued till ALS is made available for revival. Now start **advanced life support (ALS)** as follows ;

(A) Cardiac asystole —

Precordial thump or blow; if vital signs do not return

i

Inj. adrenaline—5-10 ml of 1 ; 1000 aqueous solution by I.V route

I

Inj. atropine 3 mg, I.V, once only

I

Inj. calcium chloride (10%)—5-10 ml of the solution is given, I.V slowly

i

If electrical activity is yet to be evident, support life by transvenous or transthoracic pacemaker

(B) Ventricular fibrillation—

' Precordial thump or blow

i

Defibrillate by DC shock with 200 Joules initially

I

Repeat DC shock with 360 Joules

i

Inj. adrenaline—5-10 ml of 1 : 1000 aqueous solution by I.V route

I

Mouth to mouth breathing with simultaneous closed cardiac massage

1

If this fails, start lignocaine 75 mg bolus in I.V shot push; then continue 50 mg, I.V every 5 minutes upto a maximum dose of 225 mg

I

Inj. bretylium 5 mg/kg bolus in I.V shot push

I

Defibrillation by DC shock with 360 Joules

* Intubate the patient and resuscitate by assisted ventilation; always try to correct acidosis.

** VF is the most common and easily treatable cause of cardiac arrest.

(C) Electromechanical dissociation—

Inj. adrenaline— 5-10 ml of 1 : 1000 aqueous solution by I.V route

4-

Try to correct acidosis, hypoxia, hypovolaemia, hypothermia, electrolyte imbalance, pulmonary embolism (if present)

I

Mouth to mouth breathing with simultaneous closed cardiac massage

7. Acidosis—Inj. sodium bicarbonate (7.5%) 50 ml, I.V stat and 30-50 ml to be repeated every 10 minutes till circulation is restored.

8. Hypotension—Start dopamine infusion (2-20 (ig/kg/min) by mixing 200 mg of inj. dopamine in 540 ml of normal saline and to run at the rate of 10-12 drops/min. Try to adjust the systolic BP near about 100 mm of Hg.

9. Cerebral oedema—Inj. hydrocortisone hemisuccinate 500 mg, I.V stat.

10. Termination of CPR—If pulse is absent, BP is non-recordable, spontaneous respiration is lacking and the patient remains unconscious for 30 minutes with fixed and dilated pupils—terminate CPR. A flat ECG diagnoses cerebral death.

* ALS targets to restore normal cardiac rhythm and give support to circulation by defibrillation, I.V drugs, positive pressure ventilation etc.

PAROXYSMAL ATRIAL TACHYCARDIA (PAT)

In PAT, the pulse rate is usually 160-220/min and the rhythm is regular. It is thought to be due to a run of rapidly repeated atrial premature beats.

1. Non-pharmacological (mechanical) measures to increase the vagal tone :
   a) Valsalva manoeuvre in supine position (most effective way),
   b) Carotid sinus massage (after excluding occlusive carotid disease),
   c) Self-induced gagging,
   d) Pressure over the eyeballs, coughing, breath holding, stretching the arms and body, lowering the head between two knees.

* These physical measures delay the AV conduction, blocks the re-entry phenomenon and may terminate the attack.

2. Drugs (if mechanical measures fail) :
   a) Adenosine—It is a very short-acting naturally occuring purine nucleoside and a first-choice drug for PAT. The dose is 6 mg given as a rapid I.V bolus followed by a 10 to 30 ml saline flush; if necessary, may repeat with 12 mg, I.V bolus. Contraindications for its use are 2° or 3° AV block, atrial fibrillation, sick sinus syndrome and ventricular tachycardia. It may produce bronchospasm in asthmatics; other side effects are flushing, cheat pain, heaviness in the limbs, transient hypotension or atrial standstill. Usually the attack of PAT is terminated within a few seconds.
   b) Verapramil—If adenosine is not effective, inj. verapramil 5-10 mg, I.V is given over 5 minutes which may terminate the attack; if no effect, the drug may be repeated after 30 minutes.
   c) Other drugs—
      Metoprolol (5 mg, I.V bolus upto 15 mg),
      Esmolol (500 **Mg/kg** I.V bolus, **then** 50 **|ig/kg/min),**
      Digitalis (0.75-1 mg, I.V loading),
      Amiodarone (200 mg) or disopyramide (200 mg) orally may be effective.
3. DC shock :
   If drugs fail or the patient shows signs of cardiogenic shock (haemodynamically unstable), heart failure or angina—synchronized DC shock (150 Joules) may prove effective.
4. Follow-up—Avoid tea, coffee, smoking, alcohol, exclude underlying valvular heart disease or thyrotoxicosis. Advice tab. verapramil (80 mg) 1 tab thrice daily to continue.

* Ideally, the carotid massage, antiarrhythmic treatment and DC shock should be done in an ICU under ECG monitoring.

ACUTE RHEUMATIC FEVER

1. Complete bed rest till fever, arthritis, carditis, WBC count, ESR and tachycardia subside. Prolonged bed rest is necessary for 2-6 weeks in **rheumatic carditis.**
2. High calorie, salt restricted diet.
3. Chorea—is being treated by reassurance, clonazepam, chlorpromazine or haloperidol.
4. Symptomatic treatment :
   a) Arthritis, arthralgia, fever—aspirin (0.3 g/tab; acetyl salicylic acid) is started in a dose of 80-120 mg/kg/day in children and 4-8 g/day in adults in 4-6 divided doses, and continued for 2 weeks. If symptoms subside, a lower dose of 60-70 mg/kg/day (in children) is continued for a further 2-4 weeks. Gastric intolerance may be combated by giving antacid 15-30 min after each dose of aspirin, or proton-pump inhibitor. Typically, aspirin should be continued until ESR becomes normal, and then tapered off gradually.
   b) Patient without carditis—aspirin is preferred.
   c) Patient with carditis but without heart failure—aspirin + glucocorticoid (role of corticosteroids are doubtful in carditis but majority of cardiologists opine that they help in rapid resolution of heart failure). Prednisolone (5 or 10 mg/tab) 1-2 mg/kg/day (maximum of 80 mg) is given orally for a period of 2 weeks and then tapered off over next 2 weeks.
   d) Patient with carditis and heart failure—majority opine that corticosteroid is mandatory over and above aspirin. Treatment of CCF is done accordingly (see before).
   e) Antibiotics—Single injection of 1.2 million units of benzathine penicillin, I.M is given to eradicate Group A streptococcus, if present (after proper skin test). Oral penicillin V (phenoxymethyl penicillin) 500 mg twice daily, orally for 10 days or erythromycin 40 mg/kg/day, orally may be used for 10 days (in patients allergic to penicillin).
5. Secondary prevention of acute rhumatic fever : The mainstay of controlling rheumatic heart disease is secondary prevention. The dose of inj. benzathine penicillin is 1.2 million units, I.M given at 3 weekly interval (in endemic areas and high-risk cases, the interval is 2-3 weeks).
   Dose of penicillin in children is 0.6 million units. Instead oral penicillin V may be used 250 mg

twice daily or oral erythromycin 250 mg twice daily (in penicillin allergy). Controversies exist regarding duration of therapy and the guideline is—

a) Rheumatic fever without proven carditis—5 years after the last attack or until the age of 18 years, whichever is longer.

b) Rheumatic fever with carditis but having minimal residual valve damage—10 years after the last attack or 25 years of age, whichever is longer.

c) Rheumatic fever with carditis along with residual heart disease—10 years after the last episode or until the age of 40, whichever is longer. Few clinicians prefer to give penicillin life long in this situation.

d) If valvular surgery is done—penicillin prophylaxis is continued life long.

6. Follow up :

Echocardiographic evaluation in assessing subsequent valve lesions, specially in patients with carditis.

* Prophylaxis against infective endocarditis is needed in valve damage.

** 'Post-steroid rebound' may be prevented by an 'overlap' course of aspirin when the corticosteroid is being tapered over a 2 week period. Aspirin in then continued for 2-3 weeks more.

TETANUS

The diagnosis of tetanus is made on clinical grounds. The disease is characterised by muscular rigidity, spasm of muscles, trismus, risus sardonicus (facial grimace), neck rigidity, opisthotonus (forward bending of the body like an arc), autonomic disturbances but the consciousness and mental clarity remain intact till to the end.

Management :

1. Isolation; preferably transfered to 'Infectious diseases' ward or hospital.
2. Complete bed rest in a railed cot in a noise-free (quiet), dark room. There should not be any undue light, sound or cutaneous stimulation for the patient.
3. If oral feeding is possible, give liquid feed orally. If not possible, insert Ryle's tube. In its failure, maintain nutrition by I.V fluid therapy.
4. Skilled nursing is necessary. Check vital signs repeatedly. Maintain intake-output chart. Cleanse the wound (if any) with soap-water/povidone-iodine/normal saline-20% hydrogen peroxide solution; debridement, if necessary.
5. Maintain airway.
6. Inj. Human Tetanus Immunoglobulin (HTIG)—I.M injection of 500 units of antitoxin; single dose. It should be given after proper skin test though hypersensitivity reaction is rare. HTIG is administered before manipulating the wound. Pooled IVIG may be an alternative to HTIG.
7. Inj. crystalline penicillin—2 million units, I.V, every 4-6 hourly after proper skin test, for 10 days. Metronidazole (500 mg/100 ml)—500 mg, I.V, 6 hourly; erythromycin or clindamycin may be given in penicillin allergy.
8. Inj. diazepam (5 mg/ml)—10 mg is given I.V stat and may be repeated, if necessary in muscle spasm/convulsions. Larger doses of diazepam may be required (> 250 mg/day); lorazepam and midazolam are other options. Chlorpromazine, baclofen or tizanidine may also be used in muscle spasm. Neuromuscular blockade may be necessary.
9. Labetalol, esmolol, clonidine or verapramil may be considred in autonomic dysfunction.
10. Tracheostomy and assisted ventilation are necessary in asphyxia due to laryngeal spasm or hypoventilation from oversedation.
11. I.V fluid therapy is done by 5% dextrose (1 bottle), dextrose-normal saline (2 bottles) and amino acid (1 bottle) infusion. Total 4 bottles/day are required.
12. Inj. tetanus toxoid—ft should be given I.M (0.5 ml) at a different site of HTIG, and should be repeated (0.5 ml, I.M) after 1 month and 6 month.

ORGANOPHOSPHORUS COMPOUND POISONING

These insecticides are potent inhibitors of cholinesterase. They are absorbed quickly after ingestion, inhalation or through the intact skin. Inactivation of acetylcholinesterase allows accumulation of excessive acetylcholine at different neurosynaptic sites like CNS, autonomic ganglia, parasympathetic and motor nerve endings. The **organophosphorus compounds** are malathion, parathion, guthion, chlorothion and diazinon; common **carbamate insectisides** are carbaryl, propoxur and aldicarb.

Management :

1. Gastric lavage with normal saline in a hospital. The first sample should be kept fpr toxicology. Change the soiled clothings and preferably, wash the contaminated skin with soap and water. Wash the contaminated eyes with normal saline.
2. 100 g of activated charcoal is mixed in 1/2 bottle of normal saline and introduced into the stomach through Ryle's tube. This is done after a satisfactory stomach wash.
3. Inj. atropine sulphate (0-6 mg/amp)—4-5 amp. I.V stat and 1-2 amp. to be given by slow I.V route at every 5-10 min interval till full atropinization is achieved, i.e., the mouth is dry, pulse becomes >100/min and pupil becomes fully dilated. Afterwards, 1 amp. to be given I.V, 8 hourly for next 2-3 days. Atropine counteracts the *muscarinic effects* of organophosphorus poisoning.
4. Inj. pralidoxime (PAM)—1 g in aqueous solution to be given I.V stat over 5-10 minutes, and to be repeated 3 to 4 times daily (maximum total dose is 4 g) for 2-5 days. Alternatively, an infusion of PAM may be given at the rate of 8-10 mg/kg/hour. PAM counteracts the *nicotinic effects* as well as the muscarinic effects of organophosphorus poisoning. PAM is a cholinesterase reactivator and should be started as early as possible.
5. Moist 0_2 inhalation at the rate of 4-6 litres/min; if required (respiratory failure), ask for assisted ventilation. Place the patient in a railed cot.
6. Suction of the mouth, oropharynx and nose repeatedly.
7. Inj. diazepam—5 mg, I.V slowly, if convulsions appear.
8. Inj. frusemide (20 mg/amp)—20 mg, I.V stat and may be repeated in non-cardiogenic pulmonary oedema. Few clinicians advocate inj. hydrocortisone hemisuccinate 100-200 mg, I.V stat in this situation.
9. Maintain an I.V drip with dextrose (5%)-normal saline solution at the rate of 15 drops/min.

* Upto 100 amp. (60 mg) or even more of atropine may be given in quick succession in moribund patient of poisoning by organophosphorus compound.

** PAM is of little value if started after 24 hours of incidence of poisoning.

*** Signs of **atropinisation**—Tachycardia, dry mouth (can not spit), fixed and dilated pupil, rise of surface temperature. Signs of over-atropinisation—Restlessness, disorientation, delirium, hyperpyrexia, subsultus tendinum (involuntary movements of fingers) and irrelevant talks. In over-atropinisation, give inj. haloperidol 1 ml (5 mg), I.M stat.

**** $p_a$tients of **organophosphorus poisoning** show following features : Nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, blurring of vision as a result of miosis, sweating, lacrimation, salivation, bradycardia, hypotension, involuntary urination and defecation (muscarinic *effects).* They may also have muscular twitching, fasciculations, tachycardia, hypertension, extreme weakness and flaccid paralysis *(nicotinic effects).* The *CNS effects* are anxiety, restlessness, tremor, convulsions, confusion and coma.

SNAKE BITE

Venomous snakes are basically of three families :

a) Viperidae—Crotalinae (pit vipers, rattle snakes) and Viperinae (Russell's viper). This group is vasculotoxic and presents with haemorrhages from different sites like haematuria and haemoptysis, vomiting, shock, intense local reaction and acute renal failure.

b) Elapidae (cobras, kraits, mambas, coral snakes)—This group is neurotoxic and produces ptosis, facial palsy, bulbar palsy, muscle weakness, paralysis of respiratory muscles, blurred vision and slurred speech.

c) Hydrophiidae (sea snakes)—This group is myotoxic and produces myoglobinuria, acute renal failure. In majority of sea snakes, no venom is released (dry bites).

* There are two other venomous snake family called Colubridae which includes mongoose snakes, and Atractaspididae (Natal black snake) which gives rise to coronary vasoconstriction or AV conduction defects.

Management :

1. First aid measures— Reassurance; if necessary, mild sedation (alprazolam 1 tablet, i.e., 0-25 mg) is given to allay apprehension. Firm and wide pressure bandaging is applied 5 cm above the bite area, preferably with 'immobilisation' by a splint. The tourniquet (even a handkerchief will do) should be so tight (lympho-occlusive dressings) that it would allow the tip of one finger only to pass through, and will obstruct the lymph flow and not the arterial or venous circulation. The tourniquet should be released at 20 minutes interval for 1-2 minutes and reapplied just proximal to the progressing oedematous area.

   Now-a-days, application of tourniquet seems to be controversial. It may be used if the transit period is > 60 minutes from the time of bite to application of antivenin. In fact, it worsen local tissue necrosis. According to recent trend, tourniquets should not be used as it leads to higher rates of amputation of limb.
2. Try to identify the snake and refer the victim to nearby hospital.
3. Inj. polyvalent antivenin serum (AVS)—First do the intradermal test by 01 ml of the solution (after mixing 1 unit in 10 ml of distilled water). Inj. adrenaline (1 : 1000 solution) must be kept ready in hand to combat anaphylaxis. If there is absence of any skin reaction, mix 10 vials (each vial containing 1 unit of antivenin are made into 10 ml solution) in 400 ml normal saline and let it run at the rate of 50-100 drops/min, I.V according to severity. Again, 10 vials may be repeated, if necessary. AVS gives maximum benefit, if given within 24 hours.
4. Inj. benzathine penicillin—1.2 million units I.M stat after proper skin test to check secondary infection of the devitalised bitten area.
5. Inj. diclofenac (25 mg/ml)—2 ml, deep I.M stat in severe local pain.
6. Inj. Human Tetanus Immunoglobulin (HTIG)—If the patient did not receive full course of inj. tetanus toxoid earlier, give 250 units stat by I.M route (after proper skin test).
7. Inj. tetanus toxoid—0-5 ml, I.M stat and to be repeated after 1 month (0-5 ml, I.M) and 6 month (0-5 ml, I.M).
8. Blood transfusion, if the patient is in shock or there is profuse internal haemorrhage.
9. *Shock and hypotension*—Albumin (5%) infusion is better than dextrose or normal saline. Dopamine infusion (2-20 mg/kg/min) or even inj. hydrocortisone hemisuccinate 200 mg, I.V slowly or fresh frozen plasma (FFP), may be started. Moist O_a inhalation is given at the rate of 4-6 litres/min.
10. *Acute renaljailure*—Try to correct the electrolyte imbalance and give sufficient fluid parenterally. Inj. mannitol (20%) 300 ml is infused over 3 hours or large dose of frusemide (100-200 mg) I.V is given. If not corrected by above measures, the patient may require *peritoneal or haemodialysis.*
11. In Elapidae (cobra) group of snake bite—Inj. neostigmine 0-5 mg (1 ml) is given, I.V every half an hour for 4-6 injections until the ptosis or neurodeficit is corrected (here, the toxin blocks neuromuscular junction). Then injection neostigmine is given every one hourly and ultimately to be given at 2-3 hours interval till all signs of paralysis have disappeared.

    Every injection of I.V neostigmine should be preceded by 0-6 mg (1 amp) of inj. atropine given by I.V route.
12. *Respiratoryfailure*—In respiratory muscle paralysis (by Elapidae group), ventilation by a respirator and proper control of blood gases should be employed.
13. Lately surgical debridement, fasciotomy or skin grafting may be needed.

* As the outcome of snake bite is unpredictable in the initial stage, all cases should be carefully monitored for at least first 12 hours. Dose of antivenin serum (AVS) in children is either equal or a bit more than the adult dose. Antibiotics covering gram-negative organisms and anaerobes are advocated in local infection.

** Spreading blisters suggest a massive dosage of venom. Vomiting, hypotension, bleeding from different sites are signs of systemic envenomation. Wound debridement and skin grafting afterwards may be required, specially in cobra and viper bites. If no pulse is felt in a bitten limb, 'compartment syndrome' should be suspected and surgical help should be immediately sought for.

*** *Conventional dosage schedule of* AVS :

a) Only local swelling, no systemic symptoms—2-5 units.
b) Systemic symptoms/haemorrhagic abnormalities—5-9 units.
c) Severe systemic manifestations/shock—10-15 units.

**** **Do not do** : cruciate incision and suction over the fang marks, applying ice packs, tight ligatures and local antivenin infiltration, giving the victim alcoholic beverage or applying electric shock.

***** In positive antivenin (AVS) skin test, pretreat with H_1 and H_2 blockers and dilute the antivenin. Treat anaphylaxis with inj. adrenaline and inj. hydrocortisone. In spite of reactions, in a desperate situation, start the 'diluted' antivenin in a 'slow' infusion.

N.B. : Do it 'RIGHT' in snake bite : reassurance, immobilization of the extremity, go to the hospital and tell the doctor telltale symptoms and signs.

DOG BITE

1. Immediately cleanse and scrub the wound vigorously with soap water; then flush with normal saline solution. Chemical treatment with any virucidal agent e.g., alcohol, tincture iodine or povidone-iodine may now be done. Chemical cleansing with 1-4% benzalkonium chloride or 1% centrimonium bromide may be effective in inactivating the virus. If necessary, debride surgically. Do not put any suture to close the wound (i.e., left open).
2. Confine the dog and observe for at least 10 days, if possible.
3. Inj. Human Rabies Immunoglobulin (HRIG) 10 IU/kg is infiltrated around the bite and another 10 IU/kg is given by I.M route in the gluteal region. If hyperimmune animal serum is available, double the dose. Always do intradermal test for any hypersensitivity reaction.
4. Inj. Human Diploid Cell Vaccine (HDCV)—It is the safest and recommended vaccine, and 1 ml is given I.M in the deltoid, on days 0, 3, 7, 14, 28 and 90. The dose on the day 90 is the booster dose. Local reactions, e.g., swelling, erythema and induration at the injection site are not uncommon. This vaccine is costly.
5. Inj. Human Tetanus Immunoglobulin (HTIG)—250 units by I.M route stat (after skin test).
6. Inj. tetanus toxoid— 0-5 ml, I.M stat and to be repeated after 1 month (0-5 ml, I.M) and 6 month (0-5 ml, I.M).
7. Inj. crystalline penicillin—10 lac units, I.M twice daily for 7 days after proper skin test. Co-amoxyclav (amoxycillin 500 mg + clauvulinic acid 125 mg) 625 mg, tds for 5 days is an alternative to penicillin. Moxifloxacin 400 mg, once daily, orally may be given in suspected mixed aerobic and anaerobic infection.
8. Observe the patient for development of any neurological abnormality. Allow normal diet.
9. If the dog dies or is killed, the brain should be examined for Negri bodies by immunofluorescence test in a specialised centre. In this situation, report to the concerned physician.

* HRIG is not given in every case. If the dog may ue suspected to be rabid, immediately start HRIG.

** If the dog is found to be healthy even after 10 days, probably it does not have rabies.

*** Pre-exposure prophylaxis by HDCV in I.M route may be given (persons at risk) on days 0,7, and 21 or 28.

**** jf 7 days have elapsed after dog bite, it is not necessary to give HRIG because endogenous antibodies have already being produced.

SCORPION BITE

Scorpion stings pose a big problem in many regions of the world, often reported from rural areas, specially in developing countries like India. Common poisonous scorpions in India are black scorpion (Palamneus) and red scorpion (Mesobuthus).

1. Apply ice packs to wound. Apply tourniquet proximal to the site of bite. Reassurance.
2. Inj. pheniramine maleate 15 mg, I.M stat or inj. promethazine hydrochloride 50 mg. I.M stat is given.
3. Inj. tetanus toxoid—0-5 ml, I.M stat and to be repeated after 1 month (0.5 ml, I.M) and 6 month (0-5 ml, I.M).
4. Local infiltration (ring block) by inj. lignocaine hydrochloride (2%) usually ameliorates the severe local pain. The usual dose is 2-5 ml which may repeated after 1/ hour. Local emetine or dehydroemetine also relieves pain but may produce tissue necrosis. NSAID may be used to relieve pain.
5. Inj. antivenin (serotherapy)—May be given I.V in cranial nerve dysfunction and increased involuntary activity in sketetal muscles. Practically, this is not required in most of the patients. Specific antivenin, if available, should be administered at the earliest.
6. Inj. diazepam—5-10 mg, I.M stat if the patient becomes restless.
7. Prazosin (1 mg/tab), 1 tab stat and 0.25-0.5 mg every 4-6 hourly may be administered to control hypertension. It is the sheet-anchor and most promising drug in the prevention of cardio-pulmonary complications (e.g., pulmonary oedema). Prazosin is usually indicated in extremes of ages and severe poisoning.
8. Corticosteroid may be given in severe cases. Management of DIC (disseminated intravascular coagulation) should be done, if present. Infusion of glucose-insulin solution may be beneficial in systemic envenomation.
9. Others—dopamine infusion for hypotension, intubation for respiratory failure, and frusemide for acute pulmonary oedema. Always monitor the patient for arrhythmia, conduction abnormalities and arterial 0_2 saturation.

CHAPTER VI : DRUGS

DRUGS ON AUTONOMIC NERVOUS SYSTEM :

Drugs Oral	Dosage Parenteral	Indications	Contraindications	Adverse effects
ADRENALINE	0.2-0.5 ml, S.C/I.M (1 in 1000 in 1ml)	1. Anaphylaxis 2. Cardiac resuscitation 3. Bronchial asthma 4. Arrest of haemorrhage in epistaxis or after tooth extraction	1. IHD 2. Systemic hypertension 3. Tachycardia 4. Cardiac dysrrhythmia	1. Pain chest(angina) 2. Pallor, palpitation, tremor, headache 3. Sudden elevation of BP 4. Ventricular dysrrhythmia in patients with infarction
DOPAMINE —	2.5-5 (ig/kg/ min (diuresis) 5-10 |xg/kg/ min (stimulates cardiac contraction)	1. Cardiogenic shock 2. Hypotension 3. Cardiac arrest 4. Refractory heart failure	Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy	1. Nausea, vomiting 2. Chest pain 3. Palpitation 4. Arrhythmias
DOBUTAMINE	2.5-10 ng/kg/min	Same as dopamine	Same as dopamine	Same as dopamine
BETA-BLOCKERS a) (eardioselective : atenolol, metoprolol, and acebutol, bisoprolol, with betaxolol, celiprolol) e.g., beta-blocker b) (Beta-blockers used in heart failure : carvedilol, metoprolol. bisoprolol, bucindolol)	Widely varies accor-■ — ding to aetiology different mode of action propranolol 10-320 mg, labetalol 200-800 mg	1. Migraine (prophylaxis) 2. Anxiety neurosis 3. Thyrotoxicosis 4. Glaucoma (open angle) 5. Portal hypertension (variceal bleeding) 6. Angina, systemic hypertension, SVT, anoxic spells of Fallot's tetralogy, IHSS, AMI 7. Pheochromocytoma 8. Essential tremor 9. Reduction of infarction (myocardial) size	1. Bronchial asthma 2. CCF 3. Heart block 4. Cardiogenic shock 5. Bradycardia 6 Patients on oral hypoglycaemic agents 7. Peripheral vascular disease	1 Bradycardia, heart block 2. Bronchospasm 3. CCF 4. Hypoglycaemic unresponsiveness in diabetes mellitus 5. Fatigability, depression 6. Constipation 7. Cold extremities 8. Nightmare, skin rash 9. Impotence

ono

Drugs	Dosage: Oral	Dosage: Parenteral	Indications	Contraindications	Adverse effects
ATROPINE	—	0.6-12 mg (0.6 mg/ml)	1. Organophosphorus poisoning 2. dysmenorrhoea and intestinal colic 3. Complete heart block 4. Pre-anaesthesia 5. For mydriasis and cycloplegia 6. For ophthalmoscopy 7. As an antidote to neostigmine	1. Glaucoma 2. Enlarged prostate 3. Psychosis 4. Pyloric stenosis 5. Paralytic ileus	1. Palpitation 2. Retention of urine 3. Blurring of vision 4. Psychosis 5. Precipitation of glaucoma 6. Paralytic ileus 7. Dry mouth
NEOSTIGMINE	15-30 mg	0.5-2 mg, S.C or I.M	1. Myasthenia gravis 2. Snake bite (Elapidae gr.) 3. Supraventricular tachycardia 4. Retention of urine, paralytic ileus 5. Curare poisoning	1. Hypersensitivity 2. Peritonitis	1. Salivation, sweating 2. Pain abdomen or diarrhoea 3. Pain chest 4. Tremor 5. Fasciculations
OXIMES (pralidoxime)	—	lg, 8 hourly. I.V slowly	Organophosphorus poisoning (malathion, parathion)	1. Hypersensitivity 2. Carbamate poisoning	1. Thrombophlebitis 2. Drowsiness 3. Diplopia 4. Palpitation 5. Giddiness
EPHEDRINE	30 mg	30 mg, S.C or I.M	1. Bronchial asthma 2. As a nasal decongestant 3. As a mydriatic 4. Nocturnal enuresis	Same as adrenaline	Same as adrenaline
EDROPHONIUM	—	10 mg, I.M	To diagnose myasthenia	Same as neostigmine	Same as neostigmine

Drugs	Dosage Oral Parenteral	Indications	Contraindications	Adverse effects
DRUGS USED IN BRONCHIAL ASTHMA / AIRWAYS OBSTRUCTION :				
SALBUTAMOL	4 mg, 8 hourly 100-200/mg by inhalation	1. Bronchial asthma 2. Hyperkalaemic periodic paralysis	1. Cardiac tachyarrhythmia 2. Narrow angle glaucoma	1. Tremor 2. Palpitation 3. Nervousness 4. Hypokalaemia
TERBUTALINE	5 mg, 8 hourly 0.5 mg S.C	Bronchial asthma	Same as salbutamol	Same as salbutamol
ISOPRENALINE	5-20 mg, sublingually 0.5 ml of 1 : 200 solution by inhalation. 1-10 mg/min by I.V route	1. Bronchial asthma 2. Stokes-Adams syndrome 3. Heart block 4. Severe bradycardia 5. Shock	1. IHD 2. Tachycardia	1. Tremor 2. Arrhythmia 3. Chest pain 4. Anxiety 5. Headache
AMINOPHYLLINE	— Loading dose : 6 mg/kg Followed by : 0.5-1 mg/kg/hr (mixed with N. saline or 5% dextrose)	1. Bronchial asthma 2. Cardiac asthma 3. As a diuretic 4. Sometimes in heart failure 5. Sometimes in COPD	1. Convulsion 2. Arrhythmia 3. Vomiting 4. Palpitation	1. Vomiting 2. Collapse 3. Convulsion 4. Headache
EPHEDRINE		See drugs on autonomic nervous system		
THEOPHYLLINE	100-600 mg 3-5 mg/kg, I.M or I.V	Bronchial asthma	Same as aminophylline	Same as aminophylline
DISODIUM CROMOGLYCATE OR NEDOCROMIL SODIUM	— 20 mg, 6 hourly by inhalation	1. Prophylaxis for acute episode of br. asthma 2. Allergic rhinitis	1. Acute asthmatic attacks 2. Status asthmaticus	1. Local irritation 2. Wheezing, breathlessness
IPRATROPIUM BROMIDE	— 20 mg/puff by inhalation, 8 hourly	1. COPD 2. Acute bronchial asthma, specially where the patient suffers from coexistent cardiac disorders 3. Acute attack of chronic bronchitis	1. Very old age 2. Where rapid action with highest potency is required	Mild anticholinergic side effect may occur

Drugs	Dosage Oral Parenteral	Indications	Contraindications	Adverse effects
KETOTIFEN	1-2 mg. — 12 hourly /day	I. Prophylaxis of bronchial asthma 2. Allergic rhinitis or conjunctivitis	1. Hypersensitivity 2. Glaucoma	1. Drowsiness 2. Increased appetite 3. Weight gain 4. Thrombocytopenia (rare)
DRUGS USED IN SYSTEMIC HYPERTENSION :				
ALPHA METHYLDOPA	250-750 mg, 8 hourly —	1. Syst. hypertension 2. Malignant hypertension 3. Hypertension with pregnancy	CVA (the drug produces drowsiness)	1 Sedation 2. Haemolytic anaemia 3. Diarrhoea 4. Gynaecomastia 5. Chronic active hepatitis 6. Lupus-like syndrome
CLONIDINE	0.1-0.6 mg, — 2 to 4 times/day	1. Syst. hypertension 2. Prophylaxis of migraine 3. Autonomic neuropathy in diabetes mellitus (nocturnal diarrhoea)	1. Hepatic coma 2. Sick sinus syndrome 3. Pheochromocytoma with hypertension	1. Postural hypotension 2. Drowsiness 3. Impotence 4. Dry mouth 5. Rebound hypertension after abrupt withdrawal
NIFEDIPINE	5-20 mg, — 8 hourly	1. Syst. hypertension 2. Hypertensive emergencies (rarely used) 3. IHD (chronic stable angina, Prinzmetal's angina) 4. Raynaud's phenomenon	1. Hypotension 2. Cardiogenic shock 3. Acute myocardial infarction 4. 2nd or 3rd degree heart block	1. Tachycardia 2. Ankle oedema 3. Flushing 4. Hyperplasia of gum 5. Hyperkalaemia 6. Headache 7. Constipation

Drugs	Dosage *Oral Parenteral*	*Indications*	*Contraindications*	*Adverse effects*
AMLODIPINE	2.5-10 mg, 12-24 hourly —	Same as nifedipine	Same as nifedipine	Same as nifedipine
CAPTOPRIL	12.5-75 mg, 12 hourly —	1. Systemic hypertension 2. CCF 3. Crisis of scleroderma 4. Diabetic nephropathy 5. Postmyocardial infarction	1. Pregnancy 2. Renal failre 3. Bilateral renal artery stenosis 4. Aortic stenosis	1 Cough (dry) 2. Hyperk^laemia 3. Pancytopenia 4. Disturbance of taste 5. Fever, pruritus, rash
* Other ACE inhibitors are ramipril (1.25, 2.5, 5, 10 mg), perindopril (2, 4, 8 mg), lisinopril (5, 10, 20, 40 mg), benazepril (5, 10, 20, 40 mg), fosinopril (10, 20 mg), quinapril (5, 10, 20, 40 mg)				
ENALAPRIL	2.5-40 mg daily —	Same as captopril		
BETA-BLOCKERS		See autonomic nervous system (atenolol and metoprolol mainly)		
INDAPAM1DE	2.5 mg/day —	Essential hypertension	1. Severe renal or hepatic failure 2. Hypokalaemia	1. Hyperuricaemia 2. Na+, K+ & H20 depletion 3. Dizziness
PRAZOSIN (alpha-blocker)	1-10 mg. 12 hourly —	1. Syst. hypertension 2. CCF 3. Pheochromocytoma 4. Benign hypertrophy of prostate	1. CCF due to mechanical obstruction 2. Hypotension	1. Postural hypotension 2. Dry mouth 3. Sudden syncope 4. Palpitation 5. Dizziness
RESERPINE (not used now)	0.05-0.25 mg 0.5-2.5 mg. daily I.V or I.M	1. Syst. hypertension 2. Hypertensive emergencies	1. Peptic ulcer • 2. Depression 3. Suicidal tendency 4. Epilepsy	1. Nasal congestion 2. Depression 3. Diarrhoea 4. Dyspepsia 5. Parkinsonism 6. Postural hypotension 7. Impotence

Drugs Oral	Dosage Parenteral	Indications	Contraindications	Adverse effects
HYDRALAZINE 10-75 mg, 6 hourly	10-50 mg, I.V or I.M	1. Syst. hypertension 2. Renal diseases with hypertension 3. Malignant hypertension	1. Severe IHD 2. SLE	1. Angina pectoris 2. Lupus-like syndrome (SLE) 3. Headache 4. Dizziness 5. Palpitation
SODIUM — NITROPRUSSIDE	0.5-8 jag/ kg/min, I.V	1. Malignant hypertension 2. LVF, not responding to other drugs	Hypersensitivity	1. Sweating 2. Cyanide toxicity 3. Apprehension
DIAZOXIDE —	1-5 mg/kg upto 150 mg rapidly repeated after 5 min.	1. Malignant hypertension ; 2. Hypertensive emergencies	1. Severe IHD 2. SLE 3 CVA	1. Angina pectoris 2. Hirsutism 3. Hyperuricaemia 4. Hyperglycaemia 5. Fluid retention
LOSARTAN POTASSIUM 25-50 mg, (specific angiotensin-II receptor antagonist) once daily	—	Systemic hypertension	1. Pregnancy 2. Hypersensitivity 3. Renal failure	1. Dizziness 2. Orthostatic hypotension 3. Palpitation 4. Dry mouth 5. Cough (rare) 6. Skin rash
* Other drugs in this group are candesartan (4, 8, 16, 32 mg), irbesartan (75, 150, 300 mg), valsartan (80, 160 mg), telmisartan (40, 80 mg), eprosartan (400, 600 mg)				
LABETALOL 200-400 mg/day	—	1. Hypertensive emergencies 2. Syst. hypertension 3. Hypertension with pregnancy 4. Clonidine withdrawal	1. 2nd and 3rd degree heart block 2. Bronchospasm 3. Cardiogenic shock	1. Headache 2. Postural hypotension 3. Nightmares

Drugs	Dosage: Oral	Dosage: Parenteral	Indications	Contraindications	Adverse effects
DIURETICS :					
FRUSEMIDE	20-80 mg, 8 or 12 hourly/day (40 mg/tab)	Same as oral dosage (20 mg/2 ml)	1. Mild syst. hypertension 2. Oedematous states 3. CCF 4. Acute pulm. oedema (LVF) 5. Cerebral oedema 6. Forced diuresis 7. Hypertensive emergencies	1. Hypotension 2. Hypokalaemia 3. Hepatic precoma	1. Hyponatraemi a 2. Hypokalaemia 3. Hyperglycaemia 4. Pancreatitis 5. Noise in ears (high dose) 6. Hyperuricaemia 7. Weakness
BUMETANIDE	1 mg/day	—	Same as above but it is more potent (1 mg bumetanide		= 40 mg frusemide)
HYDROCHLOR-THIAZIDE	12.5-25 mg. 8 or 12 hourly/day	—	Same as above. Acts best in cardiac oedema		
SPIRONOLACTONE	100-400 mg/day	—	1. Cirrhosis of liver 2. Renal oedema 3. Congestive cardiac failure 4. Primary hyperaldo-steronism 5. To counteract K+ loss due to loop diuretic and thiazides	1. Hperkalaemia 2. Addison's disease	1. Gynaecomastia 2. Hyperkalaemia 3. Diarrhoea 4. Menstrual irregularities 5. Confusion
TRIAMTERENE	100-200 mg/day	—	Same as spironolactone	Same as spironolactone	1. Leg cramps 2. Nephrolithiasis 3. Hyperkalaemia 4. Diarrhoea 5. Dry mouth
AMILORIDE	5-10 mg/day	—	Same as spironolactone	Same as spironolactone	1. Dry mouth 2. Hyperkalaemia 3. Muscle cramps
ACETAZOLAMIDE	250-500 mg/day in divided dosage	—	1. As diuretic 2. Glaucoma 3. Resistant epilepsy 4. Periodic paralysis	1. Hepatic disorders 2. Hyperchloraemic acidosis	1. Hypokalaemia 2. Acidosis (metabolic) 3. Bone marrow depression 4. Drowsiness 5. Paraesthesia

Drugs	Dosage Oral	Parenteral	Indications	Contraindications	Adverse effects
MANNITOL (20%)		1.5-2 mg/kg, I.V very rapidly	1. Cerebral oedema 2. Poisoning (e.g., barbiturate) 3. Acute renal failure (pre-renal shutdown) 4. Hepatic pre-coma 5. To reduce intraocular tension (when others fail) 6. Forced diuresis in haemolytic reaction after blood transfusion	1. Cerebral haemorrhage 2. Electrolyte disturbance	1. Electrolyte disturbance (hyponatraemia, hypokalaemia) 2. Rebound increase in intracranial tension 3. Pulmonary oedema
ANTI-ANGINAL DRUGS :					
NITRATES :					
a) Glycerol trinitrate	0.2-0.6 mg, sublingual 2.5-6.5 mg, oral	2% skin ointment	1. Angina pectoris 2. LVF 3. Pulmonary hypertension 4. Unstable angina 5. Cyanide poisoning	1. Glaucoma 2. Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy 3. Hypotension	1. Headache 2. Flushing 3. Dizziness 4. Syncopal attack
b) Isosorbide dinitrate	2.5-5 mg, sublingual 10-40 mg, oral	—	1. As above 2. Portal hypertension	As above	As above
c) Isosorbide mononitrate	10-20 mg, orally at 8 A.M and 3 P.M — eccentric dosage schedule	—	1. As isosorbide dinitrate 2. Pulmonary hypertension 3. Postmyocardial infarction	As above	1. As above 2. Sweating 3. Palpitation 4. Throbbing headache
d) Pentaerythritol tetranitrate	40-80 mg/day, orally	—	Same as above (principally used in IHD)	As above	As above
OXYFEDRINE	24-48 mg/day	—	1. Angina pectoris 2. Acute myoc. infarction	1. Obstructive cardiomyopathy 2. Aortic incompetence	1. Giddiness 2. Nausea 3. Constipation 4. Headache
NIFEDIPINE			Vide antihypertensive drugs		
AMLODIPINE			Vide antihypertensive drugs		

Drugs	Dosage Oral Parenteral	Indications	Contraindications	Adverse effects
ATENOLOL	50-100 mg/day, — single daily use	Vide drugs on autonomic nervous system		
PROPRANOLOL	80-240 mg/day in divided dosage	Vide drugs on autonomic nervous system		
TRIMETAZIDINE	40-60 mg /day in divided dosage	1. Angina pectoris (stable) 2. Unstable angina 3. Postmyocardial infarction	Hypersensitivity	1. Headache 2. Nausea & vomiting 3. G. I. disturbance
VERAPRAMIL	40-80 mg, 8 hourly 10 mg, I.V in PSVT	1. Angina pectoris 2. PSVT, atrial fibrillation or flutter 3. Extrasystoles 4. Hypertensive emergencies 5. Portal hypertension 6. Angina due to obst. cardiomyopathy	1. 2nd and 3rd degree heart block 2. CCF 3. Sick sinus syndrome 4. Hypotension 5. AMI	1. Headache 2. Palpitation 3. Hypotension 4. Constipation
DILTIAZEM	30-240 mg/day 20 mg, I.V in divided doses bolus in PSVT 60-120 mg, 12 hourly in sustained release form	As above	1. As above 2. WPW syndrome	1. Dry mouth 2. Headache 3. CCF 4. Bradycardia 5. Flushing
NICORANDIL (K^+ channel activator)	10-30 mg in twice — daily dose	Angina pectoris	1. Hypotension 2. LVF 3. Cardiogenic shock	1. Headache 2. Flushing 3. Tachycardia 4. Vomiting
RANOLAZINE (inhibitor of late inward Na* current)	500-1000 mg in twice daily dose	Chronic angina pectoris who continue to be symptomatic despite a standard medical treatment	1. Hepatic failure 2. Renal failure 3. Drugs producing QT-prolongation (quinidine) and with ketoconazole	QT-prolongation in ECG

* Ivabradine is another novel anti-anginal drug

**** The WHO classification of calcium-channel blockers :**

- Class I — Verapramil
- Class II — Nifedipine, nicardipine, amlodipine
- Class III — Diltiazem

Drugs	Dosage Oral Parenteral	Indications	• Contraindications	Adverse effects
ANTIARRHYTHMIC DRUGS :				
QUINIDINE	200-400 mg, I.V, 800 mg diluted 4 to 6 in 50 ml of 5% dextrose hourly and given at 1 ml/min	1. Atrial fibrillation and flutter 2. PSVT 3. Ventricular premature beats 4. VT, ventricular fibrillation 5. Hiccough (intractable) 6. Malaria	1. Heart block 2. Hypotension 3. Myasthenia gravis	1. Bradycardia 2. Hypotension 3. Vomiting, diarrhoea 4. Cinchonism 5. Convulsion 6. Thrombocyto-penia, anaemia
PROCAINAMIDE	250-500 mg, I.V : 500 mg loading dose. 4 to 6 followed by hourly 2 mg/kg/hour I.M : 100-500 mg	Same as quinidine	Same as quinidine	1. Pancytopenia (especially agranulocytosis) 2. Lupus-like syndrome (SLE) 3. Psychosis 4. QT-prolongation in ECG
DISOPYRAMIDE	100-300 mg 6-8 hourly —	Same as quinidine	Same as quinidine	1. Blurred vision 2. Constipation 3. Retention of urine 4. Feeling faint 5. Myoc. depression 6. Dry mouth
LIGNOCAINE (LIDOCAINE)	— 1 mg /kg as bolus dose followed by 0.5 mg/kg bolus at 8-10 min interval to 3 mg/kg, I.V in 5% dextrose	1. Ventricular premature beats. 2. VT, ventricular fibrillation (specially in the setting of AMI) 3. Nerve block, anaes-	1. Heart block 2. Cardiac decompensation	1. Confusion 2. Convulsion 3. Respiratory arrest 4. Drowsiness 5. Hypotension

Drugs	Dosage Oral	Parenteral	Indications	Contraindications	Adverse effects
MEXILETINE	400 mg initially ; then 200-250 mg, 6-8 hourly	250 mg, I.V slowly	Same as 1 and 2 of lignocaine	1. Heart block 2. Cardiogenic shock	1. Nausea, vomiting, bad taste 2. Drowsiness, confusion, blurred vision 3. Hypotension, bradycardia
PHENYTOIN SODIUM	100-200 mg, 6 hourly	100 mg, slow I.V, in every 5 minutes	1. SVT and VT 2. Ventricular extrasystoles 3. Digitalis-induced arrhythmias	1. Sinus bradycardia 2. SA block 3. Stokes-Adams syndrome	1. Gum hypertrophy 2. Megaloblastic anaemia 3. Cerebellar ataxia 4. Hirsutism 5. Hypotension 6. Confusion
PROPRANOLOL	10-200 mg, 6 hourly	I.V : 0.5 - lmg/ min to 0.15-0.2 mg/kg	Vide autonomic-nervous system		
VERAPRAMIL	40-80 mg,- 8 hourly	—	Vide anti-anginal drugs		
AMIODARONE	200-600 mg, 6 hourly	I.V given for VT -15 mg/min as infusion for 10 min followed by 1 mg/min for 6 hrs for next few days	1. Vent, arrhythmias refractory to other treatment 2. VT 3. Tachyarrhythmia due to WPW syndrome 4. Atrial fibrillation and	1. Heart block 2. Cardiogenic shock	1. Hepatitis 2. Pulmonary fibrosis 3. Microdeposits in cornea 4. Bluish skin 5. Bradycardia

Drugs Oral	Dosage Parenteral	Indications	Contraindications	Adverse effects
DIGOXIN 0.25-1.5 mg over 24 hrs	0.5-1 mg	1. CCF 2. Atrial fibrillation and flutter 3. PSVT 4. Sometimes in LVF 5. As an inotropic drug	1. AMI 2. Partial heart block 3. Myocarditis 4. Ventricular tachycardia , 5. High output failure	1. All types of cardiac arrhythmia except Mobitz type II block and parasystole 2. Especially, ventricular bigeminy 3. Anorexia, nausea, vomiting 4. Yellow vision 5. Gynaecomastia
ADENOSINE — .	I.V : 6 mg bolus; if no response, give 12 mg bolus	Supraventricular tachyarrhythmias	1. Hypotension 2. Br. asthma 3. 2°/3°AV block 4. Atrial fibrillation	1. Transient atrial standstill 2. Hypotension 3. Flushing 4. Chest pain
ANALGESICS, ANTIPYRETICS AND ANTI-INFLAMMATORY DRUGS :				
ACETYL SALICYLIC ACID (aspirin) 300-500 mg, 8 hourly ; upto 4-8 g/day	–	1. Analgesic 2. Antipyretic 3. Anti-inflammatory 4. IHD (75-300 mg/day) 5. TIA (75-300 mg/day) 6. Rheumatic fever	1. G. I. bleeding 2. Gout 3. Bronchial asthma 4. Bleeding tendency	1. Nausea, vomiting, G. I. bleeding 2. Salicylism (vertigo, tinnitus) 3. Wheeze and breathlessness 4. Reye's syndrome 5. Bleeding tendency
PARACETAMOL 500-lg/day ; upto 4g/day	—	Analgesic and antipyretic actions	Hepatic pre-coma	1. Skin rash 2. Nausea and vomiting 3. Large doses (1 Og) produce hepatic failure 4. Leucopenia (rare)

Drugs	Dosage: Oral	Dosage: Parenteral	Indications	Contraindications	Adverse effects
NIMESULIDE (not recommended in children)	100 mg, 12 hourly	–	1. 1, 2 and 3 of aspirin 2. Any painful condition in the body	1. Active peptic ulcer 2. Severe hepatic impairment	1. Heartburn and epigastric distress 2. Nausea and vomiting 3. Dizziness 4. Pruritus
INDOMETHACIN	50-200 mg/day in divided doses	—	1. Acute gout 2. Rheumatoid arthritis 3. Osteoarthritis 4. Ankylosing spondylitis 5. Dysmenorrhoea 6. Bartter's syndrome 7. PDA in neonates	1. Active peptic ulcer 2. Bronchial asthma	1. Pain abdomen 2. Haematemesis, melaena 3. Breathlessness 4. Giddiness, blurred vision 5. Skin rash
PENTAZOCINE	25-100 mg	60-120 mg, I.M or I.V	Chronic/recurrent pain associated with : 1. Surgery, colic, burn. trauma 2. Pre-anaesthesia 3. Intense headache 4. Often used in the place of morphine in acut LVF or AMI	1. Respiratory depression 2. Head injury 3. Raised intracranial tension *	1. Respiratory depression 2. Hallucination ad nightmares 3. Dizziness, confusion and drowsiness 4. Nausea & vomiting
MORPHINE	10-15 mg	10-15 mg, I.M or S.C	1. Analgesic, hypnotic and sedative 2. Antitussive 3. Acute LVF 4. Pre-anaesthesia 5. Relief of prolonged and intractable pain	1. Acute hepatic disorder 2. Respiratory depression 3. Paralytic ileus 4. COPD or bronchial asthma	1. Respiratory depression 2. Bronchocon-striction 3. Constipation 4. Drug dependence and tolerance 5. Retention of urine

Drugs	Dosage: Oral	Dosage: Parenteral	Indications	Contraindications	Adverse effects
PETHIDINE	—	50-100 mg I.M or I.V	Same as morphine	Same as morphine	Same as morphine
ANTIHISTAMINICS AND ANTI-5HT DRUGS :					
(A) Antihistaminics :					
1. Chlorpheniramine maleate	5-20 mg	5-20 mg, I.M	1. Allergic disorders : Pruritus,.urticaria, rhinorrhoea. hay fever, angio-oedema, drug rash, common cold 2. Motion sickness (diphenhydramine) 3. As hypnotic 4. Pre-anaesthesia	1. Hypersensitivity 2. Skillful work like drivers, machine operators, pilot	1. Sedation, fatigue 2. Dry mouth, blurred vision 3. Excitation (children) 4. Urinary difficulty
2. Promethazine	10-25 mg	25-50 mg, I.M			
3. Diphenhydramine	25-75 mg	10 mg, I.M			
4. Pheniramine maleate	25-75 mg	—			
5. Dimethindene maleate	1-2 mg, 8 hourly	—			
6. Hydroxyzine	10-25 mg, 8 hourly	—			
7. Azatadine	1 mg, 12 hourly	—			
8. Clemastine	1 mg, 8 or 12 hourly	—			
9. Mizolastine	10 mg	—			
10. Ketotifen	1-2 mg, 12 hourly	—			
(B) ANTIHISTAMINICS (non-sedative effect)					
1. Astemizole	10 mg	—			
2. Terfenadine	60 mg, 12 hourly	—	Same as above	—	As above (less or no sedation)
3. Loratidine	10 mg	—			
4. Cetrizine	5-10 mg	—			
5. Fexofenadine	120 mg	—			
6. Desloratadine	5 mg	—			
7. Levocetrizine	5 mg	—			
(C) ANTI-5HT :					
1. Cyproheptadine	4-20 mg	—	1. As above 2. For stimulation of appetite 3. Prophylaxis of migraine 4. Diarrhoea in carcinoid syndrome	As above	As above
2. Methysergide	6-8 mg	—	As cyproheptadine	As cyproheptadine	As cyproheptadine

Drugs Oral	Dosage Parenteral	Indications	Contraindications	Adverse effects
SEDATIVES AND ANTIPSYCHOTIC DRUGS :				
PHENOTHIAZINES 100-800 mg	25 mg/ml, I.M	1. Schizophrenia 2. Anxiety, mania 3. Hyperexcitability 4. Aggressive disorder 5. Hiccough 6. Peri-operative 7. Nausea 8. Hyperpyrexia 9. Tetanus	1. Coma 2. Along with other CNS depressants 3. Bone marrow depression	1. Drowsiness 2. Obstructive jaundice 3. Leucopenia and thrombocytopenia 4. Tardive dyskinesia 5. Skin pigmentation 6. Hypotension
HALOPERIDOL 0.25-20 mg, 8 hourly	2-10 mg, I.M or I.V	1. Schizophrenia 2. Manic disorders 3. Organic psychosis 4. Highly agitated patients	Same as above but with less sedative effect	
DIAZEPAM 5-10 mg, 8 hourly	10-20 mg, I.V	1. Tranquilliser 2. Pre-anaesthesia 3. Muscle relaxant 4. Sleep disorder, anxiety. delirium tremens 5. Convulsive disorders 6. Tetanus 7. Ecclampsia 8. Status epilepticus	1. Respiratory depression 2. Acute narrow angle glaucoma 3. Myasthenia gravis	1. Drowsiness 2. Respiratory depression 3. Ataxia 4. Blurred vision 5. Slurred speech 6. Confusion 7. Change in libido 8. Addiction
ZOPICLONE 3.75-7.5 mg at bed time	—	1. Transient, situational or chronic insomnia 2. Physical and mental	1. Myasthenia gravis 2. Severe sleep apnoea syndrome	1. Metallic after-taste 2. Impaired judgement

Drugs	Dosage Oral Parenteral	Indications	Contraindications	Adverse effects
IMIPRAMINE	50-150 mg —	1. Depression 2. Nocturnal enuresis 3. Narcolepsy 4. Diabetic neuropathy 5. Migraine 6. Bulimia 7. Irritable bowel syndrome	1. Manic phase of MDP 2. Acute myocardial infarction 3. Benign hypertrophy of prostate	1. Drowsiness 2. Dry mouth and other anti-cholinergic effects 3. Palpitation 4. Weight gain 5. Constipation
AMITRIPTYLINE	75-150 mg	same as imipramine	same as imipramine	same as imipramine
FLUOXETINE (SSRI)	20 mg	1. Drepression (where sedation is not wanted) 2. Obsessive compulsive disorders	1. Mania 2. Severe renal impairment	1. Insomnia 2. Fatigue 3. Sexual dysfunction
SERTRALINE	25-100 mg	1. Drepression with anxiety 2. Panic disorders 3. Obsessive compulsive disorder	1. Hepatic insufficiency 2. Concurrent administra-tion of MAOI	1. Dry mouth 2. Tremor 3. Dizziness 4. Rash 5. Insomnia
LITHIUM	900-1500 mg (therapeutic blood level : 0.6-1.2 meq/I)	1. Acute hypomania, mania 2. Recurrent depression 3. SIADH 4. Cluster headache 5. Prophylaxis of MDP 6. Idiopathic thrombocy-topenic purpura	1. Electrolyte disturbance 2. Dehydration 3. Severe renal impairment	1. Confusion and incoordination 2. Blurred vision 3. Nausea and diarrhoea 4. Ataxia, slurred speech b. Goitre 6. Diabetes insipidus
OLANZAPINE	5-20 mg	1. Schizophrenia and related psychosis 2. Acute mania in bipolar disorder	1. Narrow-angle glaucoma 2. Lactation	1. Somnolence 2. Weight gain 3. Akathisia 4. Tardive dyskinesia
ESCITALOPRAM (SSRI)	10-20 mg once daily	1. Depression 2. Panic disorder with or without agoraphobia 3. Obsessive compulsive disorder	1. Pregnancy & lactation 2. <18 yrs of age 3. Serotonin syndrome 4. Within 14 days of use of MAOI	1. Suicidal tendency 2. Worsening of depression 3. Acute psychosis 4. Sexual dysfunction

Drugs	Dosage: Oral	Dosage: Parenteral	Indications	Contraindications	Adverse effects
THIORIDAZINE	150-600 mg		1. Schizophrenia 2. Mania 3. Behavioural disturbances	1. Extrapyramidal reactions 2. Severe hepatic or renal dysfunction	1. Drowsiness, dry mouth 2. Retinal damage 3. Unsteadiness 4. Sexual dysfunction
ALPRAZOLAM	0.25-0.5 mg, 8 or 12 hourly	—	1. Anxiety disorders 2. Panic and phobic disorders	1. Acute narrow angle glaucoma 2. Myasthenia gravis	1. Drowsiness 2. Lack of coordination 3. Impairment of memory
BARBITURATES			See antiepileptic drugs		
ANTIEPILEPTIC DRUGS :					
PHENOBARBITONE	60-180 mg in divided doses	60-400 mg, I.V	1. Epilepsy (tonic-clonic and focal) 2. Ecclampsia 3. Mania 4. As sedative and hypnotic 5. In jaundice to increase conjugation of bilirubin 6. Pre-anaesthesia	1. Sinus bradycardia 2. AV block 3. Acute porphyria	1. Drowsiness 2. Confusion 3. Fixed drug eruption 4. Addiction 5. Megaloblastic anaemia
PHENYTOIN SODIUM	300-400 mg, usually in divided doses	13-18 mg/kg, I.V (in N. saline)	1. Epilepsy (tonic-clonic. focal, complex partial) 2. Trigeminal neuralgia 3. Cardiac arrhythmia 4. Diabetic neuropathy 5. Chorea	1. SA block, Stokes-Adams syndrome 2. Acute porphyria	1. Gum hyperplasia 2. Lymphadenopathy 3. Megaloblastic anaemia 4. Hirsutism 5. Osteomalacia 6. CNS depression 7. Ataxia, incoordination,. confusion

Drugs	Dosage Oral Parenteral	Indications	Contraindications	Adverse effects
CARBAMAZEPINE	100-200 mg, — 8 hourly	1. Epilepsy (tonic-clonic, focal, complex partial) 2. Trigeminal neuralgia 3. Diabetic neuropathy 4. Post-herpetic neuralgia 5. Lightening pain of tabes 6. Movement disorders 7. Diabetes insipidus	1. Bone marrow depression 2. Jaundice	1. Bone marrow Depression 2. Stevens-Johnson syndrome 3. Vertigo 4. Ataxia, diplopia, dizziness 5. Hepatotoxicity
SODIUM VALPROATE	750-1250 mg/day —	1. Epilepsy (absence. atypical absence attack, psychomotor and myoclonic epilepsy) 2. To prevent febrile convulsion in children	1. Hepatic disorder 2. Thrombocytopenia	1. Sedation 2. Fulminant hepatitis 3. Alopecia 4. Bone marrow depression
GABAPENTIN	300 mg on 1st day, — 600 mg on 2nd day 900 mg on 3rd day and continued as 900 mg/day	1. Adjunctive therapy of partial seizures. not controlled by other drugs 2. Neuropathic pain	Hypersensitivity	1. Somnolence 2. Ataxia 3. Tremor 4. Nystagmus 5. Headache
CLONAZEPAM	1-12 mg/day —	Epilepsy e.g., infantile spasm, myoclonic, atonic, absence seizures; panic attacks	1. Respiratory depression 2. Hypersensitivity	1. Drowsiness 2. Unsteadiness 3. Forgetfulness 4. Confusion 5. Lethargy
DIAZEPAM	5-40 mg 10 mg, I.V bolus	Vide sedatives and antipsychotic drugs		
PREGABALIN	75-600 mg daily — (usually 75-150 mg) in divided doses	1. Adjunctive therapy in partial seizures 2. Neuropathic pain (e.g., carpal tunnel syndrome, root pain) 3. Fibromyalgia	1. Lactation 2. Skillful works, e.g., pilot	1. Somnolence, euphoria, confusion, decreased libido, fatigue

Drugs	Dosage Oral Parenteral	Indications	Contraindications	Adverse effects
ANTI PARKINSONIAN DRUGS :				
LEVODOPA	2-8 g/day —	Parkinsonism	1. Closed angle glaucoma 2. Melanoma 3. Hypertension 4. Severe psychosis	1. Nausea and vomiting 2. Dyskinesia 3. Postural hypotension 4. 'On-off phenomenon' 5. Hallucinations 6. Palpitation
SELEGILINE	10 mg/day in — divided doses	Parkinsonism	1. Epilepsy 2. Tardive dyskinesia	1. Confusion 2. Involuntary movements 3. Palpitation 4. Psychosis 5. Sexual dysfunction
AMANTADINE	100 mg daily — or 12 hourly	1. Parkinsonism (except drug-induced) 2. Post-encephalitic sequelae 3. Prophylaxis of influenza A	1. Epilepsy 2. Renal disorder	1. Mental confusion 2. Ankle oedema 3. Oculogyric episode 4. Suicidal tendency 5. Livedo reticularis
BENZHEXOL	2 mg, 8 or 12 hourly —	Parkinsonism (even in the presence of IHD or hypertension)	1. Glaucoma 2. Enlarged prostate 3. Paralytic ileus	See the adverse reaction of atropine
BROMOCRIPTINE	2.5 mg, 8 hourly — (upto 50-100 mg/day)	1. Parkinsonism 2. Galactorrhoea 3. Inhibition of lactation 4. Acromegaly 5. Premenstrual syndrome 6. Prolactinoma	1. Uncontrolled hypertension 2. Ecclampsia	1. Headache 2. Constipation 3. Abnormal movements 4. Nausea and vomiting 5. Digital vasospasm 6. Alcohol intolerance 7. Postural hypotension

Drugs	*Dosage* *Oral Parenteral*	*Indications*	*Contraindications*	*Adverse effects*
ANTITUBERCULOUS DRUGS :				
INH	Adult : 300 mg (5 mg/kg) — Children : 10 mg/kg	Tuberculosis	1. Hypersensitivity 2. Severe jaundice 3. Convulsion	1. Drug fever 2. Peripheral neuropathy 3. Hepatitis 4. Convulsion 5. Psychosis
RIFAMPICIN	Adult (< 50 kg) : 450 mg — Adult (> 50 kg) : 600 mg Children : 10-20 mg /kg	1. Tuberculosis 2. Leprosy 3. Prophylaxis of meningitis against H. influenzae, Legionellla, N. meningitidis 4. Meningococcal carrier	1. Severe hepatic disorder 2. Severe vomiting	1. Flu-like syndrome 2. Hepatitis 3. Vasculitis 4. Nausea,, vomiting 5 Purpura (rare) 6. Orange-red coloured urine
ETHAMBUTOL	25 mg/kg for 2 months, — 15 mg/kg thereafter	Tuberculosis	1. Hypersensitivity 2. Optic neuritis	1. Optic neuritis 2. Nausea and vomiting 3. Hypersensitivity reaction
PYRAZINAMIDE	Adult : 35 mg/kg — (max - 2.5 g) Children : 40 mg/kg (max - 2 g)	Tuberculosis	1. Hepatitis 2. Gout	1. Hepatitis 2. Hyperuricaemia 3. Fever 4. Skin rash 5. Arthralgia
STREPTOMYCIN	— Adult : 0.75-lg, I.M Children : 20 mg /kg, I.M	1. Tuberculosis 2. Plague, brucellosis, tularaemia 3. UTI, RTI 4. Chancroid and granuloma inguinale 5. SBE, meningitis	1. Diseases in the ear e.g., CSOM 2. Hypersensitivity	1. Giddiness 2. Deafness 3. Loss of renal function 4. Exfoliative dermatitis

* INH, rifampicin, ethambutol, pyrazinamide and streptomycin are first line drugs. Rest are included in the second line

Drugs	Dosage: Oral	Dosage: Parenteral	Indications	Contraindications	Adverse effects
CYCLOSERINE	Adult ; 1 g/day Children : 10 mg/kg/day	—	Tuberculosis	1. Epilepsy 2. Psychosis 3. Depression	1. Depression 2. Convulsion 3. Psychosis 4. Megaloblastic anaemia 5. Tremor
PARA-AMINO SALICYLIC ACID (PAS)	10-15 g/day Children-300 mg/kg	—	Tuberculosis (specially multi-drug resistant)	1. Hypersensitivity 2. Goitre	1. Nausea, vomiting diarrhoea 2. Hypothyroidism, goitre 3. Leucopenia, eosinophilia 4. Acute renal failure
CIPROFLOXACIN	250-750 mg, 12 hourly	100-200 mg, I.V, 12 hourly	1. UTI, prostatitis. ear infection 2. Enteric fever, septicaemia, gonorrhoea 3. 2nd line of anti-tuberculosis drug 4. Skin and soft tissue infection, pyogenic liver abscess, intra-abdominal infection 5. Diarrhoea	1. Convulsion 2. Patient receiving theophylline (relative contra-indication)	1. Arthralgia 2. Convulsion 3. Stevens- Johnson syndrome 4. Tremor 5. Insomnia
ETHIONAMIDE/ PROTHIONAMIDE	0.75 - 1 g/day	—	2nd line of drug against tuberculosis	1. Hypersensitivity 2. Gout	1. Nausea 2. Jaundice 3. Metallic taste in mouth 4. Neuropathy 5. Gout

Drugs	Dosage Oral Parenteral	Indications	Contraindications	Adverse effects
ANTILEPROSY DRUGS :				
DAPSONE	2 mg/kg (not exceeding 100 mg/day)	1. Leprosy 2. Dermatitis herpeteformis 3. Vasculitis	Hypersensitivity to sulpha drugs	1. Rash, drug fever 2. Exfoliative dermatitis 3. Agranulocytosis, haemolytic anaemia 4. Psychosis 5. Hepatitis 6. Hypoproteinaemia
RIFAMPICIN	600 mg, once or twice monthly	See antituberculous drugs		
CLOFAZIMINE	50 mg/day —	1. Leprosy 2. Chronic skin ulcer (Buruli ulcer) 3. Erythema nodosum leprosum	Hypersensitivity	1. Brown discolouration of skin 2. Abdominal pain 3. Pruritus 4. Anorexia, nausea, vomiting 5. Phototoxicity
THIACETAZONE	150 mg/day —	1. Tuberculosis 2. Leprosy	1. Hypersensitivity 2. Immunodeficiency (e.g., AIDS)	1. Skin rash, Stevens-Johnson syndrome 2. Nausea, vomiting 3. Bone marrow depression
PROTHIONAMIDE		See antituberculous drugs		
OFLOXACIN	200-400 mg/day —	1. Similar to ciprofloxacin (Ref: antitubercu-lous drugs) 2. Leprosy	1. Hypersensitivity 2. Convulsion	1. Similar to ciprofloxacin 2. Pseudomembra-nous colitis

Drugs	Dosage: Oral	Parenteral	Indications	Contraindications	Adverse effects
DRUGS FOR KALA AZAR :					
SODIUM ANTIMONY GLUCONATE	—	20 mg/kg, I.V or deep I.M daily for 28 days ; 1 ml of inj. contains 100 mg of drug	Kala-azar	1. G_6PD deficiency 2. Hepatic and renal impairment	1. Nausea, vomiting diarrhoea 2. Anaphylaxis 3. Hepatitis 4. 'Nitritoid crisis' 5. Renal failure 6. Arthralgia
MEGLUMINE ANTIMONIATE	—	50 mg/kg/day, for 15 days	Same as above		
PENTAMIDINE ISETHIONATE	—	2-4 mg/kg, thrice weekly for 10-12 days	1. Kala-azar 2. Blastomycosis	1. Hypersensitivity 2. Hypoglycaemia	1. Hypoglycaemia 2. Hypotension 3. Peripheral neuropathy 4. Fever, rigor
AMPHOTERICIN-B	—	0.5-1 mg/kg, I.V on alternate days (total 1-3 g)	1. Systemic mycoses 2. Fatal fungal infection and intestinal moniliasis 3. Resistant kala-azar	Hypersensitivity	1. Pain at inj. site 2. Renal impairment 3. Cardiovascular toxicity (arrhythmia) 4. Convulsion, deafness, diplopia
MILITEFOSINE	2.5 mg/kg/day in dividied doses for 28 days	—	Resistant kala-azar	1. Pregnancy 2. Lactation	1. Mild and transient G.I. disturbances 2. Motion sickness 3. Reversible elevations of creatinine, AST and ALT
ALLOPURINOL	20-30 mg/kg/day	—	1. Chronic gout, urate nephropathy, recurrent urate stone formation 2. In anti-cancer therapy 3. In resistant kala-azar with sodium antimony gluconate 4. American trypanosomiasis	1. Hypersensitivity 2. Recent acute attack of gout	1. Fever, chill 2. Headache 3. Vasculitis 4. Rash

*

Drugs	Dosage Oral Parenteral	Indications	Contraindications	Adverse effects
ANTIMALARIAL DRUGS :				
QUININE	Q. sulphate Q. dihydrochloride 300-600 mg. 8 hourly (300 mg/ml) for 7 days 10 mg/kg, I.V, 8 hourly	1. Chloroquine resistant malaria (p.v. or p.f.) 2. Cerebral malaria 3. Nocturnal muscle cramp 4. Quinidine-like effect on heart	1. Hypoglycaemia 2. G6PD deficiency 3. Pregnancy (relative contraindication)	1. Cinchonism, tinnitus, vertigo, deafness 2. Nausea, vomiting 3. Haemoglobinuria and ARF 4. Idiosyncrasy (pruritus) 5. Photosensitivity 6. Hypoglycaemia 7. Arrhythmias 8. Psychosis
CHLOROQUINE	10 mg base/kg 5 mg/kg followed by 5 mg base/kg at 6, 24 and 48 hours (in malaria)	1. Treatment and prophylaxis of malaria 2. DLE	1. Psoriasis 2. Porphyria 3. G_6 PD deficiency 3. Hepatic amoebiasis 4. Rheumatoid arthritis 5. Photoallergic reaction	1. Nausea, vomiting 2. Blurred vision 3. Retinopathy 4. Ototoxicity 5. Psychosis and convulsion
PRIMAQUINE	15 mg daily for 14 days —	1. Radical cure of p.v. or p.o. 2. Gametocidal for p.f.	1. SLE 2. G6PD deficiency 3. Pregnancy	1. Abdominal discomfort 2. Methaemoglobinaemia 3. Anaemia and leucopenia
PROGUANIL	200 mg/day, continued — for 6 weeks	1. Prophylaxis of p.f. malaria 2. Suppression of transmission of malaria	1. G_bPD deficiency 2. SLE	1. Gastric intolerance 2. Mouth ulcer 3. Reversible alopecia 4. Renal impairment 5. Skin reaction

Drugs	Dosage: Oral	Dosage: Parenteral	Indications	Contraindications	Adverse effects
MEFLOQUINE	15/kg, in 1-2 doses, 6-8 hourly	—	1. Chloroquine sensitive/ resistant malaria due to p.v. or p.f. 2. Prophylaxis against p.v or p.f.— 250 mg (1 tab) weekly	1. Convulsion 2. Psychosis 3. Hypersensitivity to quinine 4. Pregnancy	1. Neuropsychiatric dysfunction 2. Vomiting, diarrhoea 3. Rash, itching 4. Convulsion
AMODIAQUINE	10 mg/kg on 1st day, —* 5 mg/kg/day for next two days		Treatment and prophylaxis of malaria	1. G6PD deficiency 2. Hypersensitivity	1. Nausea and vomiting 2. Agranulocytosis 3. Skin rash 4. Headache
ARTEMETHER	—	Loading dose of 3.2 mg/kg, I.M, then 1.6 mg/kg, I.M daily to a total of 640 mg	1. Multidrug resistant p.v. / p.f. malaria 2. Malaria with end-organ damage	1. Hypersensitivity 2. Prolonged QT on the ECG	1. Bradycardia, 1° AV block 2. Leucopenia 3. Nausea, vomiting, abdominal cramps 4. Neurotoxicity
ARTEETHER	—	150 mg, I.M once a days for 3 days	Same as artemether	Same as artemether	Same as artemether
ARTESUNATE	Day 1: 100 mg BD Day 2-5 : 50 mg BD Total : 600 mg	2.4 mg/kg, I.V stat followed by 2.4 mg/kg at 12 and 24 h, and then daily if necessary	Same as artemether	Hypersensitivity	1. Bradycardia, 1° AV block 2. Transient elevation of transaminases
HALOFANTRINE	500 mg at 6 hours interval for 3 doses in a day; with fatty meal	—	Same as artemether	1. Cardiac arrhythmias 2. Hypersensitivity 3. Pregnancy	1. Diarrhoea 2. Abdominal pain 3. QT prolongation in ECG 4. Arrhythmias

* Artemether-lumefan trine combination (1.5 mg/9 mg/kg BD for 3 days with food) is effective in multidrug-resistant falciparum malaria.

Drugs	Dosage: Oral	Dosage: Parenteral	Indications	Contraindications	Adverse effects
PYRIMETHAMINE	25 mg per dose (for malaria)	—	**I.** Treatment and prophylaxis of malaria (along with sulphadoxine 500 mg) 2. Toxoplasmosis 3. Actinomycetomas 4. Prophylaxis of p. carinii pneumonia	1. Megaloblastic anaemia 2. Hypersensitivity	1. Agranulocytosis 2. Megaloblastic anaemia 3. Sore throat 4. Loss of appetite
LIPID LOWERING AGENTS :					
LOVASTATIN	10-80 mg/day at bed time	—	1. Primary hypercholesterolaemia 2. Combined hypercholesterolaemia and hypertriglyceridaemia	1. Active liver disease 2. Hypersensitivity ■	1. Nausea 2. Myopathy 3. Headache 4. Sleep disorder 5. Fatigue 6. Memory loss 7. Progression to cataract
SIMVASTATIN	10-40 mg/day at bed time	—	Hypercholesterolaemia	Same as lovastatin	Same as lovastatin
ATORVASTATIN	10-80 mg/day at bed time	—	1. Hypercholesterolaemia 2 Mixed hyperlipidaemia	Same as lovastatin	Same as lovastatin
ROSUVASTATIN (super-statin)	10-20 mg/day at bed time	—	1. Hypercholesterolaemia 2 Mixed dyslipidaemia	1. Severe renal disease 2. Same as lovastatin	Same as lovastatin
FENOFIBRATE	200 mg once daily with food	—	1. Hyperlipidaemia (e.g., hypertriglyceridaemia) 2 Dislipidaemia in diabetes	1. Renal or hepatic disease 2. Gall bladder disease 3. Pancreatitis	1. Elevated liver enzymes 2. Muscle toxicity 3. Gall stones 4. Photosensitivity

Drugs	*Dosage* *Oral Parenteral*	*Indications*	*Contraindications*	*Adverse effects*
EZETIMIBE	10 mg/day —	1. Adjunct to diet in hypercholesterolaemia 2 With a statin or as monotherapy	Hepatic impairment	1. Myalgia 2. t in serum transaminases 3. Nausea 4. Angio-oedema
GEMFIBROZIL	600 mg BD, 30 — min before meal	1. Hypertriglyceridaemia 2. T VLDL	Sever hepatic or renal dysfunction	1. G.I. upset 2. Myopathy 3. Gall stone formation 4. Blurred vision 5. Headache
NICOTINIC ACID	500 mg at betime, — gradually increasing to 1-2 g at bedtime	1. Hypercholesterolaemia (T LDL) 2. T VLDL 3. i HDL	Hyperuricaemia	1. Gout 2 Flushing 3. G.I. upset 4. LFT abnormalities
CHOLESTYRAMINE	4-24 g/d in — divided doses	T LDL	1. Hypertriglyceridaemia 2. Autonomic neuropathy 3. Constipation	1. G.I. upset 2. t VLDL

* Hypersensitivity may develop in any drug; thus, hypersensitivity is the common contraindication of all

— o —

CHAPTER VII : CHARTS (DATA ANALYSIS)

CHARTS ON HAEMATOLOGY

PREFACE:

RBC :

(A) Total count (TC)—

a) Male : 4.5-6.3 millions/mm^3

b) Female : 4.2-5.4 millions/mm^3

(B) Haemoglobin (Hb)—

a) Male : 14.6-15.5 g/dl

b) Female : 13.3-14.6 g/dl

(C) Reticulocyte count— 0.2-2% of RBC. Increased reticulocyte count indicates bone marrow stimulation with new red cells production, e.g., haemolytic anaemia or acute blood loss.

$$\text{Reticulocyte index} = \text{Reticulocyte \%} \times \frac{\text{Patient's PCV}}{\text{Normal PCV}}$$

(D) Haematocrit or packed cell volume (PCV)—

a) Male : 42-52%

b) Female : 37-47%

(E) Haemoglobin content of RBC is assessed by—

Mean corpuscular haemoglobin (MCH) - 29.5 ± 2.5 pg

Mean corpuscular haemoglobin concentration (MCHC) - 35 ± 3 g/dl

The term 'colour index' is obsolete now-a-days rather the 'chromicity' of RBC is assessed by MCH and MCHC.

(F) Size of RBC—

Anisocytosis — Change in size

Mean diameter — 7.2 micron, and the normal shape is biconcave

Mean corpuscular volume (MCV) — 87 ± 7 cubic micron

Macrocyte >100 cubic micron

Microcyte < 70 cubic micron

* Anaemia with normal MCV suggests acute blood loss or anaemia of chronic disease (e.g., any chronic disease like tuberculosis, chronic inflammation or malignancy).

Anaemia with low MCV suggests iron deficiency anaemia or thalassaemia.

Anaemia with high MCV suggests vitamin B_{12} or folate deficiency.

(G) Shape of RBC —

Variations in shape is known as *poikilocytosis.* Target cell, spur cell, helmet cells are examples of change in shape of RBC. Distortion of size and shape indicates dyshaemopoiesis.

(H) Life span - 120 days.

(I) Anaemia - It is qualitative or quantitative diminution of RBC and/or haemoglobin concentration in relation to standard age and sex, and clinically manifested by pallor. Anaemia is divided into mild (9-12 g/dl), moderate (6-9 g/dl), and severe (< 6 g/dl) types clinically.

WBC :

(A) Total count (TC) - 4.3-10.8 x 10^9/L or 4300-10800/mm^3

Leucopenia < 4000/mm^3

Leucocytosis > 11000 / mm^3

(B) Differential count (DC) -

Neutrophils	45-74%
Lymphocytes	16-45%
Monocytes	4-10%
Eosinophils	0-7%
Basophils	0-1%

(C) Half life-

Neutrophils	8 hours
T lymphocytes	100 days
B lymphocytes	10 days

Platelets :

(A) Total count - 1.5-4 lacs/mm^3

Critical Count < 10000/mm^3 (recent view)

Thrombocytopenia < 1 lac/mm^3

Thrombocytosis > 4 lacs/mm^3

(B) Half Life - 3 days (life span 10 days)

Coagulation profile :

Bleeding time (BT) : 2.5-10 minutes (Ivy)

Clotting time (CT) : 9-15 minutes (glass tubes)

Prothrombin time (PT) : 12-16 seconds

Activated partial thromboplastin time (aPTT) : 32-46 seconds

* Anticoagulants used while collecting blood sample for different examinations are :

a) Oxalate (mixture of ammonium oxalate and potassium oxalate in a ratio of 3:2)
b) Citrate (trisodium citrate solution)—Useful for ESR estimation and coagulation study
c) EDTA (ethylenediamine tetra-acetic acid)—For cellular morphology and platelet count
d) Heparin (used for osmotic fragility test and electrolyte estimation)
e) ACD (acid citrate dextrose) solution (used in blood banking)

** Haemoglobin is estimated by,

a) Sahli or acid-haematin method
b) Cyanmethaemoglobin method
c) Alkali-haematin method, or
d) Oxyhaemoglobin method

ESR is estimated by,

a) Wintrobe's, or
b) Westergren's method

RBC and platelet are counted by,

a) Visual method, or
b) Electronic cell counters

WBC count is done in Neubauer's chamber

*** Extrinsic coagulation pathway is assessed by PT and intrinsic coagulation pathway by aPTT. Heparin therapy is monitored by aPTT and that of warfarin by PT.

**** For haematological investigations, venous blood is collected usually from the antecubital vein. Blood smear is then prepared on a clean slide with the help of another slide. To prevent haemolysis of RBC, the air-dried blood smear may be 'fixed' by covering the film with acetone-free methyl alcohol for 1 minute. The slide is now stained with Romanowsky dyes (e.g., Leishman's, Giemsa's stain) and lastly examined under the microscope. Thick smear is required for detection of malaria parasites and microfilaria.

IRON DEFICIENCY ANAEMIA

Hb	5.4 g/dl
RBC	4.4 millions/mm^3
WBC	8700/mm^3
Polymorphs	62%
Lymphocytes	35%
Monocytes	**2%**
Eosinophils	1%
Basophils	0%
Reticulocytes	1%
Anisocytosis	++
Poikilocytosis	++
Platelets	3 lacs/mm^3
MCH	22 pg
MCHC	24 g/dl
MCV	68 cubic micron

Interpretation :

1. Anaemia - Severe (Hb 5.4 g/dl, i.e., approximately 35%); RBC count is reduced to 90% approximately (slight reduction). So the cells are likely to be hypochromic.
2. MCH is low, MCHC is diminished; MCV is less too.
3. Anisocytosis and poikilocytosis indicate marrow stimulation e.g., haemolytic anaemia, deficiency disorder or infiltration of marrow by malignant cells.
4. WBC series, platelet and retie count show no abnormality.

Inference :

It is a case of microcytic hypochromic anaemia probably iron deficiency anaemia (IDA).

POSSIBLE CAUSES WITH RATIONAL APPROACH :

1. Iron deficiency anaemia (all features present).
2. Thalassaemia (reticulocyte count will be high).
3. Sideroblastic anaemia (dimorphic picture with sideroblasts seen).
4. Lead poisoning (basophilic stippling noted).
5. Anaemia due to chronic infection (WBC series show changes in TC and DC).

* Common causes of IDA are nutritional deficiency, chronic blood loss and increased demand due to pregnancy, lactation. Acute blood loss usually produces normocytic normochromic anaemia or macrocytic anaemia.

** Causes No. 1-4 produce microcytic hypochromic anaemia.

WHAT IS MENTZER INDEX ?

Mentzer index (MCV/RBC) is :

a) > 13 = Iron dificiency anaemia.
b) < 13 = p-thalassaemia trait.

CAUSES OF CHRONIC BLOOD LOSS :

1. Pediatric age group - Hookworm infestation, polyp.
2. Adult :
   a) Males - Haemorrhoids, peptic ulcer, oesophageal varices.
   b) Females - Menorrhagia, uterine fibroid.
3. Elderly patient :
   a) Males - Carcinoma of G. I. tract.
   b) Females - Dysfunctional uterine haemorrhage.

FERROKINETICS :

Serum iron : 70 - 140 pg%

Total iron binding capacity (T1BC) : 270 - 335 jig%

Serum ferritin : 30 - 300 ng/ml

Total body iron content:

Males - 50 mg/kg of body wt

Females - 35 mg/kg of body wt

Daily intake : 10-20 mg (1-2 mg/day is absorbed)

* It is assumed that 250 mg of iron is required to increase the Hb level by 1 g/dl. One unit of blood (450 ml) supplies 250 mg iron.

N.B. : MCH, MCHC and MCV may not be supplied in all haematological data analysis.

CLASSICAL PICTURE OF IRON DEFICIENCY ANAEMIA :

Haemoglobin is reduced. It is a microcytic hypochromic anaemia with low MCV, MCH and MCHC. Anisocytosis, poikilocytosis or target cells are seen in severe cases. Usually retie count is normal but if increased, one should think of blood loss where the patient has enough iron stores in body. Serum iron is low and TIBC is raised; plasma transferrin level is elevated but serum ferritin level is reduced. Bone marrow study reveals moderate erythroid hyperplasia and marrow iron stores (stained by Prussian blue technique) are found to be reduced or absent.

N.B. : In 'acute' blood loss, Hb and haematocrit remain normal in early stages but haemodilution usually prevails after 24-36 hours resulting in anaemia.

MEGALOBLASTIC ANAEMIA

Hb	5.9 g/dl
RBC	1.5 millions/mm^3
WBC	7500/mm^3
Polymorphs	55%; hypersegmentation +
Lymphocytes	38%
Monocytes	3%
Eosinophils	4%
Basophils	0%
Reticulocytes	1%
Anisocytosis	++
Poikilocytosis	++
Platelets	2 lacs/mm^3
MCH	33 pg
MCHC	39 g/dl
MCV	102 cubic micron

Interpretation :

1. Anaemia - Severe (i.e., Hb is 40%); RBC count is reduced to 30% and thus the cells are likely to be hyperchromic.
2. MCH, MCHC and MCV are increased (i.e., the cells are larger than normal and a bit hyperchromic)..
3. Anisocytosis and poikilocytosis point towards dyshaemopoiesis.
4. WBC series, platelet count and retie count are within normal limit.

Inference :

It is a case of macrocytic anaemia probably megaloblastic anaemia (hyperchromic RBC and hypersegmentation of polymorphs with six or more lobes in the nucleus also point towards this diagnosis).

CAUSES OF MACROCYTIC ANAEMIA :

Macrocytic anaemia is of two types, megaloblastic and non-megaloblastic, depending on the bone marrow *findings.*

1. Megaloblastic anaemia (mainly vitamin B_{12} and folic acid deficiency).
2. Liver diseases (needs liver function tests).
3. Aplastic anaemia (WBC count and platelets will be reduced).
4. Haemolysis or acute blood loss (leucocytosis, thrombocytosis and increased reticulocyte will be present).

So, the present chart probably deals with megaloblastic anaemia.

* Cause No. 2, 3, and 4 produce macrocytic anaemia which is normoblastic. Other causes are alcoholism, hypothyroidism, pregnancy, myelodysplastic states and drug-induced (e.g., zidovudine).

ADDISONIAN PERNICIOUS ANAEMIA :

It is a special variety of megaloblastic anaemia which results from a failure of secretion of intrinsic factor by the stomach, other than from total gastrectomy done in the past.

SOURCES AND DAILY REQUIREMENTS OF VITAMIN B,$_{2}$ AND FOLIC ACID :

a) Vitamin B_{12} - Meat, egg, liver and dairy products.
Daily requirement is 1-2 jag.

b) Folic acid - Fruits, green leafy vegetables and animal protein.
Daily requirement is 100 (xg.

COMMON CONDITIONS ASSOCIATED WITH VITAMIN B_{12} AND FOLIC ACID DEFICIENCY :

(A) Vitamin B_{12} deficiency - True vegetarians, tropical sprue, blind loop syndrome, fish tapeworm infestation, pernicious anaemia, Crohn's disease, gastrectomy.

(B) Folate deficiency - Poor intake of vegetables, pregnancy, chronic haemolytic anaemia, coeliac disease, phenytoin or methotrexate-induced, myeloproliferative disorders.

N.B. : Neurological manifestations of vitamin B_{12} deficiency are peripheral neuropathy, subacute combined degeneration (SCD) and dementia. It is known that folate appears as methyl tetrahydrofolate in plasma, which is converted into tetrahydrofolate with the help of vitamin B_{12}. So, clinically, folic acid should not be used simultaneously to treat vitamin B_{12} deficiency anaemia because it may precipitate severe neurological damage like SCD (by utilising residual vitamin B_{12} for conversion of folate, and resulting in its absolute deficiency).

TREATMENT OF VITAMIN B,$_{2}$ AND FOLIC ACID DEFICIENCY :

(A) Vitamin B_{12} deficiency—Hydroxycobalamin 1000 jxg, I.M, in 5 doses at 2-3 days apart (i.e., a total of 5 mg), followed by maintenance therapy of 1000 |xg every 3 months for rest of the life. Alternatively, oral B_{12} 2 mg/day can be given as per recent recommendation.

(B) Folate deficiency—Oral folic acid 5 mg daily for 3 weeks cures acute deficiency, while 5' mg once weekly is sufficient for maintenance therapy.

ENUMERATE THE INVESTIGATIONS PERFORMED TO DIAGNOSE MACROCYTIC ANAEMIA :

1. Peripheral blood film (hypersegmented polymorphs are early changes).
2. ESR (increases in malignancy).
3. Thyroid function tests (for hypothyroidism).
4. Serum B_{12} level (normally 200-600 pg/ml).
5. Red cell folate level (normal value is 150-450 ng/ml).
6. Bone marrow study :
   a) Megaloblastic—Vitamin B_{12} or folate deficiency.
   b) Normoblastic—Liver diseases, hypothyroidism.
   c) Abnormal erythropoiesis—Aplastic anaemia, leukaemia.
   d) Increased erythropoiesis—Haemolysis, acute blood loss.
7. Schilling test (helps to identify the cause of vitamin B_{12} deficiency.

* ESR is increased in anaemia due to any aetiology except sickle cell anaemia.

ACUTE LEUKAEMIA

Hb	7.5 g/dl
RBC	2.5 millions/mm^3
WBC	48000 /mm^3
Polymorphs	43%
Lymphocytes -	26%
Monocytes -	0%
Eosinophils -	1%
Basophils	0%
Blast cells	30%
Reticulocytes -	1%
Anisocytosis	+
Poikilocytosis -	+
Platelets -	68000/mm^3

Interpretation :

1. Anaemia is moderate and seems to be normochromic. RBC count is proportionately reduced. Anisocytosis and poikilocytosis suggest dyserythropoiesis. Retie count is normal.
2. WBC count reflects marked leucocytosis. The DC is distributed amongst polymorphs, lymphocytes and blast cells. Huge number of blast cells (30%) in peripheral blood indicate either acute leukaemia (AML/ALL) or blast crisis of chronic leukaemia (CML mainly/rarely CLL).
3. Platelet count is markedly reduced.

Inference :

Probably it deals with a chart of acute leukaemia.

OTHER PROBABILITIES WITH RATIONAL APPROACH :

This chart may well fit in patients; with (a) Leukaemoid reaction, and (b) Blast crisis of CML.

Leukaemoid reaction - TC of WBC matches with leukaemoid reaction but presence of anaemia, absence of polymorphonuclear leucocytosis, presence of a large number of blast cells and low platelet count, and absence of metamyelocytes or myelocytes point against the diagnosis.

Blast crisis of CML - 30% blast cells match the diagnosis but absence of myelocytes, metamyelocytes, basophilia do not corroborate with the diagnosis. In blast crisis of CML, a higher total count of WBC is usually present.

* Leucocyte alkaline phosphatase (LAP) score is high in leukaemoid reaction but low in blast crisis of CML.

** The blast cells of AML contain Auer rods which are not seen in blast crisis of CML or leukaemoid reaction.

CLASSIFICATION OF ACUTE LEUKAEMIAS :

(A) Acute myeloid leukaemia (AML) : The French-American-British (FAB) classification :

MO :, Minimally differentiated leukaemia

M1 : Without maturation

M2 : With fnaturation

M3 : Hypergranular promyelocytic

M4 : Myelomonocytic

M5 : Monocytic

M_6 : Erythroleukaemia (Di Guglielmo's disease)

M7 : Megakaryocytic

(B) Acute lymphoblastic leukaemia (ALL) : The French-American-British (FAB) classification :

LI : Small cells which are usually homogeneous with scanty cytoplasm

L2 : Large cells which are heterogeneous with more cytoplasm

L3 : Large cells which are homogeneous with prominent cytoplasmic vacuolization (also known as 'Burkitt cell leukaemia')

Now-a-days, ALL is classified as :

Common type (Pre-B; 75%) — FAB subtype L_{1f} L_2

T Cell (20%) — FAB subtype $L_{,}$, L_2

B Cell (5%) — FAB subtype L_3

Undifferentiated (rare)

* WHO classification of acute leukaemia is a bit different. Read from any standard text book of medicine.

Table 16 : Differentiation between myeloblast and lymphoblast

	Features	Myeloblast	Lymphoblast
1.	Nuclear-cytoplasm ratio	Low	High
2.	Number of nucleoli	3 or more	1 or 2
3.	Auer rods in cytoplasm	Present (10-20%)	Absent
4.	Cytochemical staining :		
	a) Myeloperoxidase	+ ve	- ve
	b) Sudan Black B	+ ve	- ve
	c) Chloracetate esterase	+ ve	- ve
	d) Periodic Acid Schiff (PAS)	+ ve in < 25% cells	+ ve in > 50% cells

CHRONIC MYELOID LEUKAEMIA

Hb	10 g/dl
RBC	2.7 millions/mm^3
WBC	- 2.2 lacs/mm^3
Myelocytes	26%
Metamyelocytes	- 20%
Promyelocyte	2%
Polymorphs	40%
Lymphocytes	4%
Monocytes	1%
Eosinophils	- 3%
Basophils	- 2%
Myeloblasts	2%
Anisocytosis	+
Poikilocytosis	+
Platelets	- 4.8 lacs /mm^3

Interpretation :

1. There is mild anaemia which seems to be normochromic. Anisocytosis and poikilocytosis indicate some amount of dyserythropoiesis.
2. The total amount of WBC is much increased with large number of myelocytes and metamyelocytes. There is presence of 2% myeloblast too. Basophilia is present.
3. The platelet count is increased.

Inference :

The marked leucocytosis with presence of myelocytes and metamyelocytes, associated with basophilia in the peripheral blood smear virtually clinch the diagnosis of chronic myeloid leukaemia (CML). Platelet count may be high initially but ultimately the count falls gradually.

* In CML, the peripheral blood film may contain upto 10% myeloblasts.

WHAT IS LEUKAEMOID REACTION ?

It is the extreme degree of elevation of WBC count (usually 30000-50000/mm^3 with many immature cells; rarely > 50000/mm^3) which is composed of mature and/or immature neutrophils, is known as leukaemoid reaction. It reflects the response of normal healthy bone marrow to various stresses.

The common causes are :

1. Disseminated tuberculosis (specially in children) or any severe infection.
2. Malignant infiltration of bone marrow (breast, lung, kidney).
3. Severe haemolysis.
4. Application of cytokines (G-CSF or GM-CSF).

There may be presence of myelocyte or few myeloblasts in the peripheral blood. RBC, eosinophil, monocyte, basophil and platelet counts usually remain normal in leukaemoid reaction. The leucocyte alkaline phosphatase (LAP) score is high; there is absence of splenomegaly. Bone marrow is hyperplastic.

ENUMERATE DIFFERENT HAEMATOPOIETIC GROWTH FACTORS :

(A) Factors work early in stem cell differentiaton ; interleukin (IL)-l, IL-3, IL_{-6}, IL-7 and IL-11.

(B) Factors work later in cellular differentiation cascade : erythropoietin (EPO), granulocyte colony-stimulating factor (G-CSF), granulocyte macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF) and thrombopoietin (TPO). These are used therapeutically in different diseases.

WHAR ARE MYELOPROLIFERATIVE DISEASES ?

These are chronic interrelated conditions associated with proliferation of erythroid precursors, myeloid cells or megakaryocytes in the marrow. There may be progression from one disease to another disease process. The conditions are :

1. Chronic myeloid leukaemia.
2. Polycythemia vera.
3. Essential thrombocythemia.
4. Myeloid metaplasia (myelofibrosis).

These conditions may give rise to acute leukaemia.

CLASSIFY CHRONIC LEUKAEMIAS :

(A) Chronic myeloid leukaemia : The FAB classification :

- Ph^a + ve
- Ph^a - ve, BCR^b + ve
- Ph^a - ve, BCR^b - ve
- Eosinophilic leukaemia

a = Philadelphia chromosome

b = Breakpoint clusture region

(B) Chronic lymphocytic leukaemia : The FAB classification :

- Common B cell
- Rare T cell
- Hairy cell
- Prolymphocytic

CAUSES OF BASOPHILIA :

Basophilia = abolute basophil count > 100/mm^3. This is commonly found in,

1. Myeloproliferative disorders (specially, CML).
2. Allergic disorders.
3. Chronic inflammatory disorders.
4. Malignancy, myxoedema, post-splenectomy.

LEUKAEMOID REACTION INDUCED BY VARIOUS BACTERIAL INFECTIONS :

1. The smear shows large number of immature neutrophils (non-segmented neutrophils), i.e., there is a 'shift to the left'.

2. Toxic granulations appear within the cytoplasm of the neutrophils.
3. Often small, oval bodies appear within the neutrophils, and is known as Dohle bodies.

PANCYTOPENIA

Hb	7.8 g/dl
RBC	2.6 millions /mm^3
WBC	2500/mm^3
Polymorphs	28%
Lymphocytes	70%
Monocytes	2%
Eosinophils	- 0%
Basophils	0%
Reticulocytes	1%
Platelets	40000/mm^3

Interpretation :

1. Moderate anaemia, probably normochromic in type. Retie count is normal (i.e., haemolysis or marrow infiltration is absent).
2. Marked leucopenia is noted. There is presence of neutropenia, eosinopenia, monocytopenia and lack of basophil associated with relative lymphocytosis.
3. The platelet count is very low.

Inference :

Presence of anaemia, leucopenia and thrombocytopenia constitutes the diagnosis of pancytopenia.

CAUSES OF PANCYTOPENIA :

(A) Aplastic anaemia - Idiopathic, chemical and physical agents (benzene, ionising radiation, alkylating agents, chloramphenicol), immunologically-mediated, infections like hepatitis, chronic kala-azar or overwhelming sepsis.

(B) Pancytopenia associated with increased or normal bone marrow cellularity — Hypersplenism, myelodysplastic syndromes, vitamin B_{12} and folic acid deficiency.

(C) Paroxysmal nocturnal haemoglobinuria (PNH).

(D) Bone marrow infiltration like carcinomatosis, lymphoma, disseminated tuberculosis, myelofibrosis.

(E) Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE).

* Combination of pancytopenia with fatty and empty bone marrow clinch the diagnosis of aplastic anaemia.

DRUGS RESPONSIBLE FOR APLASTIC ANAEMIA :

1. Chloramphenicol.
2. Phenylbutazone.
3. Sulphonamides.
4. Phenytoin sodium.
5. Alkylating agents (cyclophosphamide).
6. Chlorpropamide.
7. Carbamazepine.
8. Zidovudine.
9. D-penicillamine.
10. Ticlopidine.

OUTLINE OF MANAGEMENT OF APLASTIC OR HYPOPLASTIC ANAEMIA :

The treatment depends on providing 'supportive care' while awaiting for bone marrow recovery and 'specific therapy' to accelerate recovery of marrow.

1. General measures : withdrawal of aetiologic agent, strict aseptic precautions, prophylactic use of oral antibiotics; cautious use of razors; avoidance of intramuscular injections and drugs like aspirin. Barrier nursing is strictly employed (shifting the patient to intensive Therapeutic Unit, if necessary).

2. Packed red cells transfusion (to keep haematocrit above 25%), granulocyte transfusion (in < 200/mm³ granulocyte count), and platelet transfusion (in < 20000/mm³ platelet count).
3. Broad-speetrum antibiotic therapy is started in the presence of fever or any sign of infection anywhere in the body.
4. Androgen therapy (e.g., oxymetholone in a dose 3-5 mg/kg/day for 3-6 months) in a target to increase the erythropoietin production may be initiated.
5. Haematopoietic growth factors (GM-CSF, G-CSF or erythropoietin) may be tried.
6. Immunosuppression by :
   a) Antilymphocyte/antithymocyte globulin (ALG/ATG) - Horse ATG (40 mg/kg/day for 4 days) or rabbit ALG (3.5 mg/kg/day for 5 days), given in I.V route may help in haematological recovery in 50% cases.
   b) Cyclosporine orally in a dose of 12 mg/kg/day with subsequent adjustment (if the patient can not afford ALG or ATG).
   c) Combination of ALG or ATG, with cyclosporine (standard medical treatment).
   d) ALG/ATG + androgens + corticosteroids (specially in females with severe disease).
7. Allogenic bone marrow transplantation : the only curative treatment for patients under 40 years of age. Patients over 40 years of age have a high risk of graft-versus-host disease as a complication.
8. Miscellaneous : Corticosteroids (controversial; to treat serum sickness due to ALG; in children with pure red cell aplasia); splenectomy may be tried in cases with pancytopenia.

AGRANULOCYTOSIS

Hb	14.5 g/dl
RBC	5.2 millions/mm³
WBC	1600/mm³
Polymorphs	12%
Lymphocytes	- 88%
Monocytes	- 0%
Eosinophils	- 0%
Basophils	- 0%
Platelets	3 lacs/mm³

Interpretation :

1. There is no anaemia. Hb content and RBC count are within normal limit.
2. The WBC count shows gross reduction, i.e., leucopenia is present (< 4000/mm³)
3. Differential count reflects reduction of granulocyte series. Marked neutropenia is present. The absolute count of neutrophil in this chart is 192/mm³ which is much below the expected lower limit (2000/mm³) of neutrophil count. Though the lymphocyte count shows lymphocytopenia (1408/mm³), in this chart it reflects relative lymphocytosis.
4. The platelet count is within normal limit.

Inference :

There is leucopenia as well as neutropenia. Anaemia and thrombocytopenia are absent. This is a chart of agranulocytosis.

CAUSES OF AGRANULOCYTOSIS :

1. Drugs like chloramphenicol, sulphonamides, chlorpropamide, chlorpromazine, propylthiouracil, cytotoxic drugs or antimetabolites, oxyphenbutazone, phenytoin, carbimazole, gold salt (used in rheumatoid arthritis).
2. Ionising irradiation.

3. As an integral part of pancytopenia.
4. Idiopathic agranulocytosis (rare), and cyclic neutropenia.

* In acute leukaemia, neutropenia is associated with low haemoglobin and low platelet count.

SALIENT FEATURES IN AGRANULOCYTOSIS :

1. H/O exposure to one of the drugs or agents.
2. The onset may be acute (sudden) or chronic (gradual). Acute patients present with sore throat (agranulocytic angina), fever with chill and rigor, severe prostration associated with malaise and weakness. The throat and mouth reveal multiple necrotic ulceration with little evidence of pus formation; there is halitosis. The fulminating cases die of septicaemia and toxaemia.
   The chronic patients present with recurrent malaise, fatiguability, low grade fever and sore throat.

HOW WILL YOU MANAGE A CASE OF AGRANULOCYTOSIS ?

1. Immediate stoppage of the offending drug or agent.
2. Transfer the patient in Intensive Therapeutic Unit (ITU) and start barrier nursing.
3. Blood culture should be done but usually it comes out to be sterile. Prophylactic antibiotic therapy may be started. If the absolute neutrophil count is less then 200/mm^3, parenteral antibiotic therapy using an aminoglycoside together with mezlocillin, and judicious administration of corticosteroid may be employed. If anaerobic infection is suspected, metronidazole may be given.
4. White blood cell transfusion from a compatible adult relative donor often relieves fever dramatically.
   Candidiasis in the mouth, if present, may be dealt with gention violet, nystatin; for systemic candidiasis, parenteral therapy with amphotericin B, fluconazole, voriconazole or caspofungin is employed. Oral hygiene should be properly maintained.
   N.B. : Actually, patients taking the drugs mentioned above (chloramphenicol, carbimazole etc) should be repeatedly warned to report the physician if any fever or sore throat appears.

WHAT TO DO IN CARBIMAZOLE-IND UCED AGRANULOCYTOSIS ?

Carbimazole is used in thyrotoxicosis. Though mild transient leucopenia (10%) may occur with carbimazole, agranulocytosis (0.2%) is rarely seen. Usually these effects are observed within 7-28 days of starting treatment. As agranulocytosis can not be predicted by routine blood count, *patients should always be warned for the development of sore throat, fever and mouth ulcers.* If the absolute neutrophil count goes below 1500/mm^3, antithyroid medication should be stopped.

ABSOLUTE COUNT OF DIFFERENT CELLS OF WBC SERIES :

Polymorphs	-	2000-7500/mm^3
Lymphocytes	-	1500-4000/mm^3
Monocytes	-	80-200/mm^3
Eosinophils	-	40-500/mm^3
Basophils	-	10-100/mm^3

CAUSES OF LYMPHOCYTOSIS AND MONOCYTOSIS :

(A) Lymphocytosis :

1. Infections e.g., tuberculosis, whooping cough, brucellosis, viral infections, infectious mononucleosis.
2. ALL and CLL; NHL.
3. Thyrotoxicosis.
4. Adrenal insufficiency.
5. Serum sickness.

(B) Monocytosis :

1. Chronic infections like tuberculosis, syphilis, kala-azar, brucellosis.
2. Collagen vascular diseases.
3. Acute monocytic and myelomonocytic leukaemia, Hodgkin's lymphoma.
4. Sarcoidosis.
5. Inflammatory bowel disease.

TROPICAL EOSINOPHILIA

Hb	–	14 g/dl
RBC	–	5 millions/mm^3
WBC	–	19000/mm^3
Polymorphs	–	42%
Lymphocytes	–	25%
Monocytes	–	1%
Eosinophils	–	32%
Basophils	–	0%
Platelets	–	2.6 lacs/mm^3

Interpretation :

1. There is no anaemia. Hb content and RBC count are within normal limit.
2. The WBC count sho<vs leucocytosis. The absolute eosinophil count is 6080/mm^3 which is much above the expected maximum value (500/mm^3).
3. The platelet count is within normal limit.

Inference :

This is a chart of eosinophilia, probably tropical eosinophilia.

WHAT IS TROPICAL EOSINOPHILIA ?

When the absolute eosinophil count goes above 500/mm^3, it is known as eosinophilia. The diagnosis of tropical eosinophilia is confirmed by :

1. Patient is a prolonged habitat of an endemic area (e.g., Asian subcontinent).
2. Absolute eosinophil count in blood is above 3000/mm^3.
3. Absence of microfilariae in peripheral blood, examined by concentration technique both in day and night.
4. Presence of filarial antibodies in high titre. The filarial complement fixation test is positive in almost every patient.
5. Plasma level of IgE is high (at least 1000 U/ml).
6. Response to diethylcarbamazine citrate (DEC) therapy within 7 to 10 days when the drug is continued in a dose of 100 mg tds for 14 days.

* Tropical eosinophilia is an atypical host response to different filariae including Wuchereria bancrofti, Brugia malayi, Loa loa, Brugia pahangi, Dirofilaria immitus.

FEATURES OF TROPICAL EOSINOPHILIA :

1. Paroxysmal dry cough with wheezing which is often nocturnal (commonest presentation).
2. Low grade pyrexia, loss of weight, lassitude, myalgia.
3. Splenomegaly and lymphadenopathy, rarely (Meyers-Kouwenaar syndrome).
4. Male : female ratio is 4 : 1; cough with nocturnal bronchospasm and wheeze, where the chest X-ray shows miliary mottlings (Weingarten syndrome) — mid and lower zones are mostly affected with prominent bronchovascular markings.
5. Treatment is done by DEC with 4-6 mg/kg of body weight/day for at least 14 days.

COMMON CAUSES OF EOSINOPHILIA :

1. Allergic disorders like bronchial asthma, hay fever, urticaria, angioneurotic oedema, eczema, pemphigus, allergic vasculitis, serum sickness.
2. Parasitic infestations like hookworm, schistosomiasis, toxocariasis, ascariasis, strongyloidiasis, filariasis, trichinosis, cysticercosis and tropical eosinophilia.
3. Drug like aspirin, iodides, penicillin, nitrofurantoin, sulphonamides.
4. Hypereosinophilic syndromes like Loeffler's syndrome, eosinophilic leukaemia.

5. Malignancy like Hodgkin's disease, mycosis fungoides, CML.
6. Collagen vascular diseases like polyarteritis nodosa, Churg-Strauss syndrome (vasculitis).

WHAT IS HYPEREOSINOPHILIC SYNDROME ?

It is a heterogeneous group of disorder with the common features of prolonged eosinophilia (absolute eosinophil count may go upto 50000-100000/mm^3) of unknown cause and usually associated with dysfunction of organs like heart, kidney, lungs, gastrointestinal tract, CNS, skin and even bone marrow. Patients commonly complain of pyrexia, weight loss, non-productive cough and respiratory distress. They usually die of congestive cardiac failure. Treatment by glucocorticoids may be of value in some cases.

THALASSAEMIA

Hb	7.2 g/dl
RBC	3 millions/mm^3
WBC	12700 /mm^3
Polymorphs -	63%
Lymphocytes -	32%
Monocytes -	2%
Eosinophils -	3%
Basophils	0%
Reticulocytes -	11%
Anisocytosis	++
Poikilocytosis	++
Target cells	+
Tear-drop cells	+
Normoblasts	+
Platelets	2.2 l'acs/mm^3
MCH	21 Pg .
MCHC	22 g/dl
MCV	66 cubic micron

Interpretation :

1. There is moderate anaemia (Hb 7.2 g/dl, i.e., approximately 50%). RBC count is reduced to 60% approximately). So the cells are likely to be hypochromic.
2. Moreover MCH, MCHC and MCV are low, reflecting microcytic hypochromic anaemia.
3. The WBC count shows leucocytosis. The differential count is within normal limit.
4. Reticulocyte count is high (normal value 0.2-2%). Reticulocytosis and presence of normoblasts probably indicate either erythroid hyperplasia or bone marrow infiltration.
5. Anisocytosis and poikilocytosis indicate dyserythropoiesis.
6. Target cells and tear-drop cells are abnormal findings, and indicate either erythroid hyperplasia or infiltration of bone marrow. The platelet count is within normal limit.

Inference :

Common causes of microcytic hypochromic anaemia are :

1. Iron deficiency anaemia.
2. Chronic haemolytic anaemia (e.g., thalassaemia).
3. Sideroblastic anaemia.
4. Sometimes seen in lead poisoning.

In sideroblastic anaemia, very often normocytes predominate; reticulocyte count is normal and sideroblasts are seen in peripheral blood. Absence of these facts negate the diagnosis of sideroblastic anaemia.

Again, erythroid hyperplasia (as there is presence of reticulocytosis and normoblasts) and dyshaemopoiesis (as there is presence of anisocytosis and poikilocytosis) point towards chronic haemolytic anaemia or iron deficiency anaemia with recent iron therapy.

The patients of lead poisoning will have specific occupational history like inhalation of fumes as from burning storage batteries, solder or paint spraying, or H/O ingestion of lead-containing material like paint. These patients reveal mild anaemia and basophilic stippling in the peripheral blood.

In iron deficiency anaemia (with iron therapy), usually reticulocyte count is not too high and leucocytosis is seldom present. Rather leucocytosis (often indicates pulmonary infection) may be present in chronic haemolytic anaemia.

So, this chart is probably dealing with chronic haemolytic anaemia. Presence of hypochromia as well as the grade of anaemia indicate the aetiology of anaemia towards thalassaemia major.

WHAT IS A RETICULOCYTE ?

These are premature or young red cells, which are disc-shaped and contains ribosomal material (RNA). Condensation of the ribosomes to form reticular material (for identification) is best observed by,

a) Supravital stain (cresyl blue, new methylene blue), or

b) Romanowsky stain.

Normal reticulocyte count is 0.2-2% of RBC. An absolute increase in reticulocyte count (reticulocytosis) usually reflects 'increased erythropoiesis' or haemolytic anaemia. Rarely, when under stress, reticulocyte count may increase (released from marrow) without having increased erythropoiesis. Low retie count is seen in aplastic anaemia and megaloblastic anaemia.

* The normoblasts in a blood film usually indicate excessive or abnormal blood formation, or irritation of bone marrow by infiltration.

** *In clinical practice, reticulocytosis commonly indicates haemolytic anaemia. Retie count is also increased following therapy in iron/Jolic acid/vitamin B_{12} deficiency anaemias, and in acute blood loss.*

*** **Sideroblasts** : the mitochondria, surrounding the nucleus of a normoblast, becomes iron-laden and appears as rings (known as ring sideroblast) with Prussian blue staining. Ring sideroblasts are seen in bone marrow.

**** **Corrected reticulocyte count in anaemia**—suppose, the retie count in an adult patient with 10 g Hb is 2% -> it does not reflect a true marrow response—

Corrected retie count will be :

Patients' Hb x estimated retie count

Normal Hb for that age and sex

$$= \frac{10 \times 2}{15} = 1.3\%$$

CAUSES OF TARGET CELLS IN PERIPHERAL BLOOD FILM :

1. Thalassaemia.
2. Iron deficiency anaemia.
3. Cholestatic jaundice.
4. Post-splenectomy.

HOW THE TARGET CELLS LOOK LIKE ?

These are flat red blood corpuscles with a central mass of haemoglobin (dense zone) surrounded by a ring of pallor (pale zone) and an extreme outer ring of haemoglobin (dense zone).

CLINICAL TRIAD OF CHRONIC HAEMOLYTIC ANAEMIA :

They are :

1. Anaemia,
2. Jaundice, and
3. Splenomegaly.

WHAT IS MEANT BY PUNCTATE BASOPHILIA OR BASOPHILIC STIPPLING ?

With Romanowsky staining, scattered deep-blue dots may be seen in the cytoplasm of abnormally damaged red cells. This type of basophilic stippling is commonly seen in chronic lead poisoning, beta-thalassaemia major and in any patient with severe anaemia (e.g., megaloblastic anaemia).

* Read Thalassaemia' from 'Bedside Clinics in Medicine, Part I' for further details.

THROMBOCYTOPENIA

Hb	- 8.8 g/dl
RBC	3.1 millions/mm^3
WBC	8200/mm^3
Polymorphs	- 55%
Lymphocytes	- 35%
Monocytes	- 6%
Eosinophils	- 4%
Basophils	- 0%
Reticulocytes	1%
Anisocytosis	- Nil
Poikilocytosis	- Nil
Platelets	- 68000/mm^3
Bleeding time	- 13 min
Clotting time	- 5 min.

Interpretation :

1. There is moderate anaemia which seems to be normochromic. Anisocytosis and poikilocytosis are absent (i.e., no dyshaemopoiesis).
2. Total and differential count of WBC, and reticulocyte count are within normal limit.
3. There is thrombocytopenia. Bleeding time (BT) is increased in the presence of normal clotting time (CT).

Inference :

Presence of anaemia (probably due to bleeding), normal leucocyte count, thrombocytopenia, increased BT and normal CT clinch the diagnosis of thrombocytopenia, probably immune or idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP).

CRITICAL PLATELET COUNT:

It is 20,000/mm^3 (old view); the recent view is 10000/mm^3 and platelet count below this level may endanger the life of the patient by spontaneous haemorrhage in vital organs.

HOW A PATIENT OF ITP PRESENTS ?

Women usually between 20-40 years of age (the acute form affects children between 2-6 years of age) present with gradually developing petechiae-purpura over skin, bleeding from gum, menorrhagia, epistaxis or haematuria (easy bruisability and spontaneous subcutaneous haemorrhage are most common). Pyrexia and malaise are not uncommon.

On examination, bleeding spots over the skin is noted, There is neither any lymphadenopathy nor any sternal tenderness present. The spleen is not palpable in 90% patients. Hess' capillary test (tourniquet test) may be positive.

[Bone marrow shows normal or increased numbers of megakaryocytes, which are otherwise normal],

POSSIBLE CAUSES OF THROMBOCYTOSIS :

1. Post-splenectomy.
2. Malignancy, Hodgkin's disease, chronic inflammatory disorders.
3. After severe haemorrhage, tissue damage.
4. Myeloproliferative disorders (CML, polycythemia vera etc).

SIGNIFICANCE OF BT, CT, PT, PTT AND TT :

(I) Bleeding time (BT) : Increased in thrombocytopenia and platelet functional defect (thrombasthenia); von Willebrand (vW) disease.

(II) Clotting time (CT) : Increased in coagulation disorders (e.g., haemophilia) and afibrinogenaemia.

(III) Prothrombin time (PT) : Increased in factor VII deficiency (extrinsic pathway); factors II, V and X deficiency (common pathway); commonly seen in obstructive jaundice, haemorrhagic disease of the newborn, liver diseases, coumarin therapy, vitamin K deficiency.

(IV) Activated partial thromboplastin time (aPTT) Commonly seen in haemophilia, Christmas disease, heparin or kaolin cephalin clotting time (KCCT) : Increased in factors XII, XI, IX and VIII deficiency (intrinsic pathway); factors II, V and X deficiency (common pathway), therapy, DIC, vW disease.

(V) Thrombin time (TT) : Increased in afibrinogenaemia or dysfibrinogenaemia.

NON THROMBOCYTOPENIC PURPURA :

(A) Vessel wall abnormalities, i.e., vasculitis, Henoch-Schonlein purpura, senile purpura, scurvy, uraemia, meningococcaemia, paraproteinaemia and drugs (e.g., sulphonamides); BT is usually normal, rarely increased. Platelet count is normal.

(B) Platelet functional defect (thrombasthenia) — BT is increased though platelet count remains normal.

* **Platelet functional defects** are of two types :

(A) Inherited—Glanzmann's thrombasthenia, Bernard-Soulier syndrome and storage pool disease.

(B) Acquired—Myeloproliferative disease, renal and liver disease, paraproteinaemias, drugs (e.g., NSAIDS).

MODALITIES OF TREATMENT ADOPTED IN ITP :

The patients usually require no treatment as long as the platelet count is > 30000/mm^3 unless they undergo a surgical procedure.

1. Platelet or fresh blood transfusion. Children usually do not require treatment. Supportive care.
2. Prednisolone (1 mg/kg of body weight/day).
3. I.V immunoglobulin (1 g/kg of body weight for 2 days) —Used temporarily to raise the platelet count (e.g., before surgery).
4. Rho (D) immune globulin therapy in a dose of 25 ng, I.V for 3 days are helpful.
5. Splenectomy (with pneumococcal, H. influenzae and meningococcal vaccination).
6. Vincristine, cyclophosphamide, cyclosporine, azathioprine or mycophenolate mofetil; danazol, dapsone are also tried.
7. Specific monoclonal antibodies e.g., rituximab [anti CD-20 (B cell) antibody], and recombinant thrombopoietin are promicing.
8. Eltrombopag (thrombopoietin receptor agonist) and romiplostin (a novel thrombopoiesis protein) have shown encouraging results.

* Read the chapter on 'Haemorrhagic spots' from 'Bedside Clinics in Medicine, Part I'.

CHARTS ON GLUCOSE TOLERANCE TEST (GTT)

PREFACE:

Diabetes mellitus is a clinical syndrome characterised by high blood sugar level (hyperglycaemia) and glycosuria due to relative or absolute deficiency of insulin secretion and/or action, or insulin resistance that leads to disturbances in carbohydrate, protein and fat metabolism, as well as disturbance of water and electrolyte homeostasis.

Oral GTT is an estimation of the capacity of a person to dispose off orally administered glucose (i.e., the glycaemic response). Now-a-days, it is not regarded as a very sensitive test to diagnose diabetes mellitus as several large studies suggest that most of the patients (approximately 75%) with impaired GTT do not develop diabetes mellitus. GTT has a tendency to overdiagnose diabetes mellitus though it may still have a place in research works. However, GTT may be indicated in 1) diagnosis of gestational diabetes mellitus (GDM), 2) diagnosis of pre-diabetes i.e., IFG (impaired fasting glucose) and IGT (impaired glucose tolerance), and 3) evaluation of unexplained nephropathy, neuropathy or retinopathy when random glucose concentration is < 140 mg/dl.

Procedure of the test :

1. The patient is starved overnight (at least 8 hours) after 3 days of unrestricted carbohydrate diet (at least 150 g/day).
2. The patient should take 1/2 an hour rest in the laboratory and abstain from smoking but is allowed to drink water; 2 ml of fasting venous blood is drawn, and urine is collected before the test ('zero hour').
3. Now 75 g of glucose dissolved in 300 ml of water is taken by mouth in 5 minutes in a case where the patint is non-diabetic or not on any therapy. For treated diabetic patients, postprandial blood should be drawn 2 hours after his recommended diabetic meal at scheduled time with usual drugs or insulin.
4. Thereafter blood and urine samples are collected every half-hourly for at least 2 hours. Quantitative estimation of sugar in blood and qualitative estimation of sugar in urine are performed.
5. A curve is now plotted on a white paper by time in hours against blood level of sugar in mg/dl or mmol/l.

- So, 5 samples of blood and urine each are required for the test.

** While performing GTT, a diabetic patient on drugs or insulin need not take 75 g of glucose, instead he can consume his usual diet in which he is accustomed in his day to day life. The patient must receive his drugs as per schedule on the day of the test.

Diagnostic criteria for diabetes mellitus :

- Symptoms of diabetes plus 'random' blood glucose concentration > 200 mg/dl, or
- 'Fasting' plasma glucose >126 mg/dl, or
- '2-h postload' plasma glucose > 200 mg/dl during an oral GTT.

The **new diagnostic criteria for pre-diabetes and diabetes are** :

In the new criteria, the categories of FPG are :

FPG < 100 mg/dl = Normal fasting glucose

FPG > 100 mg/dl and < 126 mg/dl = Impaired fasting glucose (IFG)

FPG >126 mg/dl = Provisional diagnosis of diabetes (on more than one occasion)

The corresponding categories when the oral GTT is used, are as follows :

2 hPG <140 mg/dl = Normal glucose tolerance

2 hPG > 140 mg/dl and < 200 mg/dl = Impaired glucose tolerance (IGT)

2 hPG > 200 mg/dl = Provisional diagnosis of diabetes (must be confirmed on a subsequent day)

* FPG = Fasting plasma glucose; 2 hPG = 2-h postload glucose

** The prognostic significance and outcome (i.e., accuracy) are same whether it is FPG > 126 mg/dl or 2 hPG > 200 mg/dl (i.e., in diabetics). This is why, in clinical practice, the FPG test is now-a-days mostly preferred because of ease of administration, convenience, acceptibility to patients and its lower cost.

*** Venous blood glucose < capillary blood glucose; and whole blood glucose < plasma glucose.

**** Blood glucose concentration in mg/dl should be divided by 18 to get the value in mmol/1, e.g., 110 mg/dl = 6.1 mmol/1, 126 mg/dl = 7 mmol/1, 140 mg/dl = 7.8 mmol/1, and 200 mg/dl =11.1 mmol/1.

***** 'Fasting' is defined as no calorie intake (i.e., overnight) for at least 8 hours. 'Random' is defined as any time of the day without regard to time since the last meal.

****** In most laboratories, plasma or serum is used for glucose estimation whereas most methods for self-monitoring of blood glucose (SMBG), the whole blood is used (by glucometer).

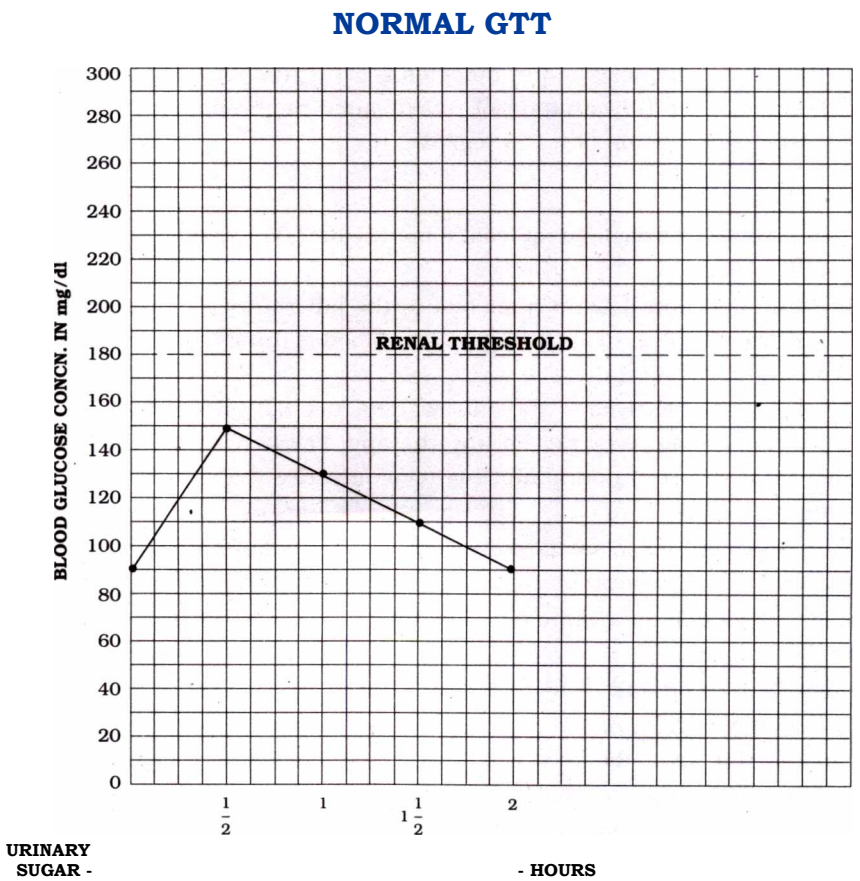


Fig. 7.1 : Normal curve

Interpretation :

1. The fasting plama glucose level is below 100 mg/dl (i.e., normal).
2. The highest level is reached near 150 mg/dl. All the 1/2, 1, 1 1/2 and 2-hour levels are below 180 mg/dl (normal renal threshold is 180 mg/dl).
3. The baseline is reached within 2 hours.
4. All the urine samples are sugar-free.

* **'Renal threshold'** is the capacity of the renal tubules to reabsorb glucose from the glomerular filtrate; if the plasma glucose concentration exceeds renal threshold, glycosuria occurs. Normal renal threshold is approximately 180 mg/dl but wide individual variation may exist.

Inference :

This is a normal curve following a glucose tolerance test.

IMPAIRED GTT/IFG

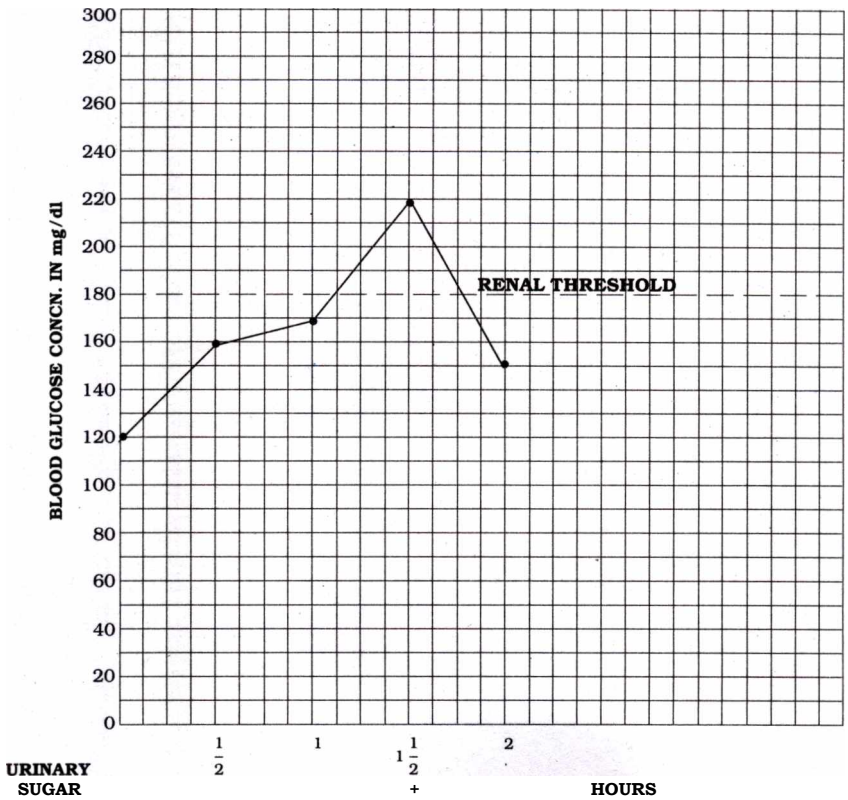


Fig. 7.2 : Impaired glucose tolerance with impaired fasting glucose

Interpretation :

1. The fasting plasma glucose level is above 100 mg/dl but below 126 mg/dl (i.e., IFG present)
2. The 1/2 and 1-hour levels are below the renal threshold but the $1^1/_2$-hour level has crossed 180 mg/dl and is near about 220 mg/dl.
3. Renal threshold is normal, i.e., 180 mg/dl.
4. The 2-hour level is 150 mg/dl (i.e., in between 140-200 mg/dl).
5. The $1^*/_2$-hour urine sample contains sugar. Other samples are sugar-free.

Inference :

As the 2-hour test value is 150 mg/dl (i.e., in between 140-200 mg/dl) and FPG is 120 mg/dl (i.e., > 100 mg/dl but < 126 mg/dl), the chart is dealing with both IGT and IFG.

IMPORTANCE OF IMPAIRED GTT :

Patients with impaired glucose tolerance (IGT) and/or impaired fasting glucose (IFG) are now referred to as having '**pre-diabetes*** which indicates the relatively high risk for development of diabetes in these patients. Though they are not diabetic at the present moment, pre-diabetes indicates the need for further evaluation (future surveillance). Proper history taking is important and the patient may be kept under observation; the test may be repeated on a later date.

RENAL GLYCOSURIA

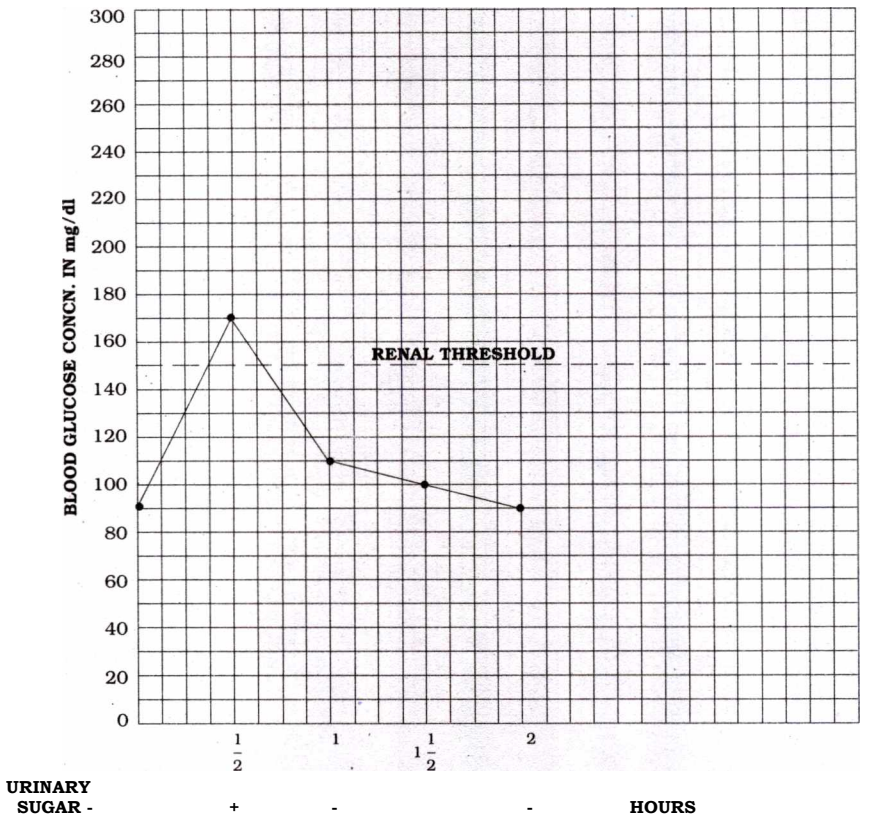


Fig. 7.3 : Renal glycosuria

Interpretation :

1. The fasting plasma glucose level is 90 mg/dl. The 1/2, 1, $1^1/_2$ and 2-hour level is below 180 mg/dl i.e., the normal level of renal threshold.
2. Renal threshold is 150 mg/dl (i.e., lower than normal).
3. Though the 1/2-hour level is 170 mg/dl, the urine sample shows presence of sugar, probably due to presence of low renal threshold for glucose.
4. The 2-hour level has touched the baseline.

Inference :

It is a curve of renal glycosuria.

WHAT IS RENAL GLYCOSURIA ?

It is a cause of glycosuria due to lowered renal threshold. There is absence of both hyperglycaemia and the classical symptoms of diabetes mellitus (polyuria, polyphagia and polydipsia). This is a benign condition and is often temporarily *seen in pregnancy.* Renal glycosuria is diagnosed by **Marble's criteria** (glycosuria in the absence of hyperglycaemia, normal oral GTT, identification of urinary reducing substance as glucose and constant glycosuria with little fluctuation related to diet). Probably it is a genetic disorder (autosomal recessive). Rarely, glycosuria may be severe enough to produce polyuria and polydipsia.

ALIMENTARY GLYCOSURIA

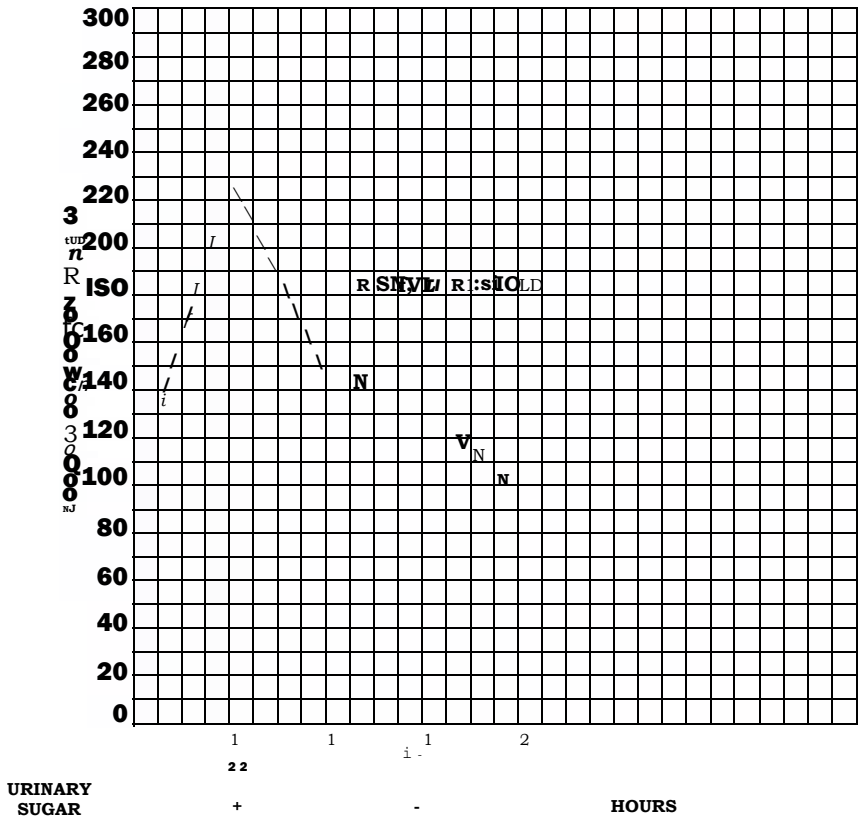


Fig. *7.4 : Alimentary glycosuria*

Interpretation :

1. The fasting plasma glucose level is 102 mg/dl (i.e., IFG present).
2. The 2-hourly level is 100 mg/dl and thereby excludes the diagnosis of diabetes mellitus.
3. The renal threshold is normal (180 mg/dl) and thus the urine sugar is absent in 0, 1, 1[1]/ and 2-hour samples.
4. As the 1 /2-hour blood glucose level is 230 mg/dl (urine sample contains sugar), the possibilities of impaired GTT and alimentary glycosuria come in mind. As the 2-hourly blood level of glucose touches the baseline, question of impaired GTT does not arise. So, probably this is a curve of alimentary glycosuria.

Inference :

The GTT deals with alimentary glycosuria or 'lag storage curve'.

WHAT *IS ALIMENTARY GLYCOSURIA OR LAG STORAGE CURVE* ?

It is seen that in some persons there is rapid but temporary rise in blood glucose level following a meal and the level usually exceeds the normal renal threshold, and thus the urine sample contains sugar too; the fasting and 2-hour values remain normal. This benign condition is not related to diabetes mellitus. Lag storage is due to defective glycogen synthesis in the liver or some defect lying in the G.I. tract, and is commonly found in hepatic disorders. Alimentary glycosuria is a better term than 'lag storage'.

* This patient has incidental impaired fasting glucose (IFG).

CONDITIONS ASSOCIATED WITH ALIMENTARY GLYCOSURIA :

1. Normal Individual.
2. After gastric surgery (e.g., partial gastrectomy leads to rapid gastric emptying and *thereby* facilitate increased glucose absorption).
3. Hyperperistalsis due to any cause (e.g., peptic ulcer).
4. Hepatic disorders (e.g., hepato-cellular failure).
5. Hyperthyroidism.

* Remember, *damping syndrome* may produce sudden hyperglycaemia as is seen in alimentary glycosuria (partial gastrectomy -> rapid emptying of sugar containing meals into proximal small intestine -> abrupt increase in blood glucose concentration -> release of excess insulin stimulated by high blood sugar level -» subsequent hypoglycaemia with vasomotor symptoms) but in that situation, the 1 $^{1}/_{2}$ to 3-hour samples will show low blood glucose level (hypoglycaemia). However, the GTT may have to be continued for 3 hours instead of 2 hours to diagnose late dumping syndrome.

WHAT *IS GLYCOSURIA OF PREGNANCY* ?

Glycosuria is a common finding in pregnancy because of drop in renal threshold for glucose as a result of increase in GFR. Sometimes, lactose is found in urine in late pregnancy. As high blood sugar level in pregnancy is associated with increased perinatal morbidity and mortality, all patients with glycosuria of pregnancy should be properly screened to exclude **gestational diabetes mellitus (GDM).**

GDM is **defined as** diabetes with first onset or recognition during pregnancy. This includes pre-existing type 1 or type 2 DM (may be clinically undiagnosed); and the majority of women can expect to go back to normal glucose tolerance immediately after pregnancy. GDM is associated with an increased risk of later development of T_2DM. Approximately, *4%* of pregnant mothers may develop GDM. A high maternal blood glucose promotes fetal insulin production which stimulates fetal growth. Macrosomia of the fetus may complicate labour and delivery. GDM is treated with insulin as oral hypoglycaemic drugs cross the placenta and may be a potential risk for the fetus.

The European criteria for diagnosis of GDM in venous plasma glucose after a 75 g oral GTT is ;

Fasting > 99 mg/dl, or

2 hPG > 162 mg/dl

REDUCING AGENTS IN URINE (POSITIVE BENEDICT'S TEST) :

(A) Glucose (commonest) —Diabetes mellitus, impaired GTT, renal glycosuria, alimentary glycosuria, Fanconi's syndrome.

(B) Non-diabetic melituria —Lactose (pregnancy and during lactation), fructose (fructosuria), galactose (galactosuria), pentose (pentosuria after consumption of grapes, cherries, plums), homogentisic acid (found in alcaptonuria, a rare inborn error of metabolism).

(C) Spurious —Patient treated with ascorbic acid, nalidixic acid, cephalosporins or aspirin.

* Sucrose is not a reducing agent. Galactosuria and fructosuria may result from inborn error of metabolism.

POSITIVE ROTHERA'S TEST (NITROPRUSSIDE TEST) IN URINE :

1. Ketone bodies.
2. Cystinuria.
3. Homocystinuria.
4. False positive (spurious)—Drug treatment with salicylates, levodopa, captopril, penicillamine.

DIABETIC CURVE

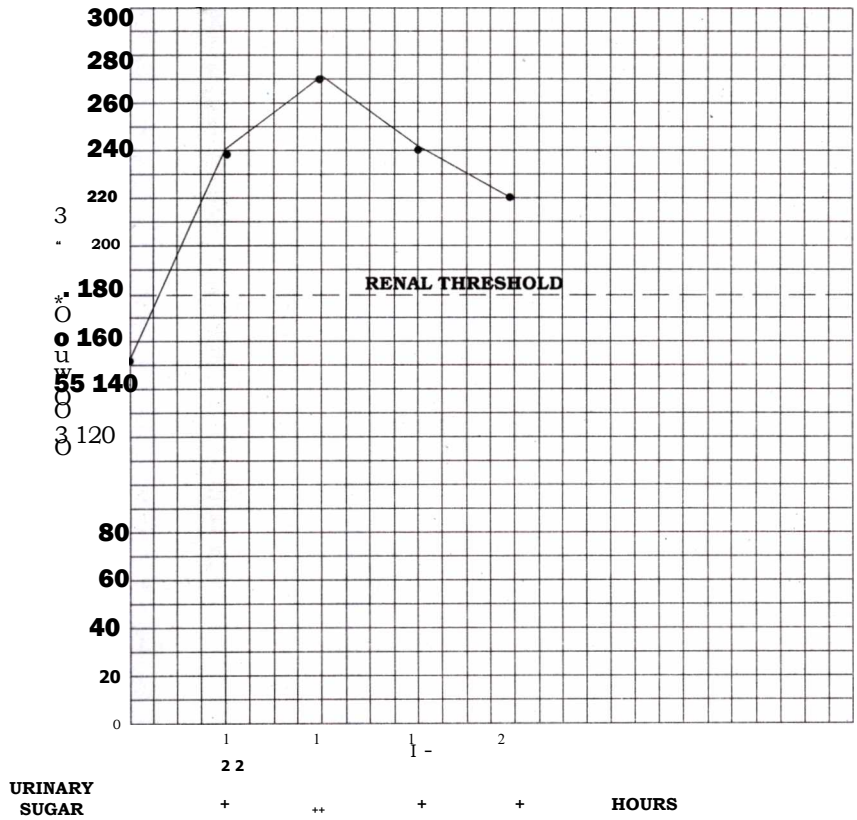


Fig. 7.5 : Diabetic curve

Interpretation :

1. The fasting plasma glucose level is 150 mg/dl and that of 2-hour postprandial (PP) level recorded is 220 mg/dl (i.e., > 200 mg/dl). The 1/2,1 and 1 1/2-hour levels are well above the renal threshold level (i.e. > 180 mg/dl), and virtually above 200 mg/dl.
2. The 1/2, 1, 1 1/2 and 2-hourly urine samples show presence of sugar (all the corresponding blood glucose level is above the renal threshold).

Inference :

This is the curve of a patient who is sufferring from diabetes mellitus of moderate severity.

AETIOLOGICAL CLASSIFICATION OF DIABETES MELLITUS (1997) :

I. Type 1 diabetes ((3-cell destruction leading to absolute insulin deficiency)
   a) Immune-mediated
   b) Idiopathic
II. Type 2 diabetes (insulin resistance ranging from deficiency to secretory defect)
III. Other specific types :
   (A) Genetic defects of P-cell function — Chromosome 12, *HNF- la (formerly MODY 3); chromosome 7, glucokinase (formerly MODY 2); chromosome 20, HNF-4a (formerly MODY 1); mitochondrial DNA, mutant insulins, hyperproinsulinaemia
   (B) Genetic defects in insulin action — Lipoatrophic diabetes, leprechaunism
   (C) Endocrine disorders — Acromegaly, Cushing's syndrome, pheochromocytoma, hyperthyroidism, glucagonoma, somatostatinoma, aldosteronoma
   (D) Disease of exocrine pancreas — Pancreatitis, trauma, pancreatectomy, cystic fibrosis, haemochromatosis, fibrocalcific pancreatic disease (FCPD), neoplasia

(E) Drug- or chemical-induced — Vacor (rat poison), thiazides, glucocorticoids, phenytoin, nicotinic acid, pentamidine, a-interferon, diazoxide

(F) Infections — Congenital rubella, cytomegalovirus

(G) Uncommon immune-mediated disorders — Anti-insulin receptor antibodies, 'stiff-man' syndrome

(H) Genetic syndromes associated with diabetes—Down's syndrome, myotonic dystrophy, Klinefelter's syndrome, Turner's syndrome, Friedreich's ataxia, Prader-Willi syndrome.

IV. Gestational diabetes mellitus (GDM)

* HNF = Hepatocyte nuclear factor; MODY — Maturity-onset diabetes of the young

** In this classification, the terms like IDDM and NIDDM are eliminated because many patients with NIDDM eventually would require insulin.

CHARTS ON STOOL / FAECES

PREFACE:

(A) ***Naked-eye examination or macroscopic examination :***

1. Amount — Copious or scanty.
2. Colour — Yellowish-brown due to the presence of stercobilinogen/stercobilin (normal), black (melaena, ingestion of bismuth, iron or licorice), red (ingestion of beets/mixed with blood/ haematochezia), pale (absence of bile, rapid passage through the intestine in diarrhoea, high fat content due to malabsorption), green (in the presence of diarrhoea, unaltered bile m^y be there due to rapid passage).
3. Consistency—Well-formed stool (normal), harder than normal (constipation), liquid or watery (diarrhoea), tarry or sticky (melaena), slimy or jelly like (due to the presence of excess mucus), soft and frothy (steatorFhoea).
4. Odour—Normal faecal odour (due to aromatic substances indole and skatole etc, and H_2S), odourless (cholera, acute bacillary dysentery), offensive (acute amoebic dysentery, malabsorption syndrome, melaena, jaundice, giardiasis, partial gut obstruction). In nursing in- ■ fants, stool gives a sour odour due to presence of fatty acids.
5. Parasites—Worms or segments of worms may be present e.g., roundworm, threadworm, tapeworm.

(B) Chemical examination :

1. Reaction—Usually it is neutral or slightly acidic (normal); alkaline stool may be found in acute bacillary dysentery, salmonella enteritis etc. Highly acidic stool may be present in lactase deficiency, after lactulose ingestion in hepatic pre-coma, or in sprue.
2. Orthotoluidine test—Detects presence of blood (occult or overt). Before performing this test, patient should have been on a meat-free diet for 3 days and should not have been taking vitamin C and aspirin (NSAID).

(C) Microscopic examination :

1. RBC (presence of blood, overt or occult).
2. WBC (acute bacillary dysenteiy; Campylobacter, enteroinvasive or enterohaemorrhagic E.coli, Clostridium difficile, salmonella infection).
3. Macrophages—Acute bacillary dysentery, acute infectious colitis, pseudomembranous colitis.
4. Eosinophils—Acute amoebic dysentery, eosinophilic enteritis.
5. Parasites, cyst—Intestinal amoebiasis, giardiasis or helminthiasis.
6. Bacteria—Acute bacillary dysentery (shigellosis), acute infectious colitis.
7. Flakes of mucus—Acute amoebic dysentery, acute bacillary dysentery, ulcerative colitis, irritable bowel syndrome, infection by Campylobacter jejuni, cholera, malabsorption syndrome.
8. Epithelia—Found in tropical sprue, acute bacillary dysentery.
9. Pus Cells—In dysentery of any aetiology.
10. Charcot-Leyden crystals—Acute amoebic dysentery.
11. Undigested food material—Malabsorption syndrome.

* Rice-watery stool—Cholera; pea-soup diarrhoea—Enteric fever; china-clay stool—Obstructive jaundice.

** Small bowel diarrhoea—High volume diarrhoea with uniform watery consistency; colonic diarrhoea—Low volume diarrhoea, the stool usually contains numerous small pieces of faeces.

*** During microscopic examination, a small portion of faeces is taken on the glass slide with the help of a broom-stick and emulsified with a drop of isotonic saline, and lastly coverslip is applied over it *(saline preparation).*

*** *Hanging-drop preparation :* A bit of diluted faecal matter is taken on a coverslip and the coverslip is then inverted on a slide, and examined under a microscope. By this way, darting motility of Vibrio cholerae can be nicely seen.

**** j_n health, osmolality of stool is 290 mosmol/kg of water.

ACUTE AMOEBIC DYSENTERY

Naked-eye examination :

Amount — Relatively copious

Colour — Dark red; faecal matter seen

Consistency — Liquid yellow stool; faecal matter streaked with blood and mucus. Faecal matter is not adherent to the bottom of the container

Odour — Offensive

Chemical examination :

Reaction — Acidic

Orthotoluidine test — ++

Microscopic examination :

RBC	- +, in clumps
WBC	- Very few
Macrophages	- Nil
Eosinophils	- Present
Parasite/cyst	- Trophozoites of E. histolytica, often with ingested RBC
Bacteria	- Few
Pus cells	- Scanty
Epithelia	- Absent
Charcot-Leyden crystals	- Present

Interpretation :

1. Liquid stool mixed with blood and mucus points towards acute dysentery. Infection by some organism is suggested by the presence of offensive odour. Formation of mild inflammatory exudate (pus cells and WBC are scanty) is indicated by the presence of very low fibrin content and thus the stool is not adherent to the container.
2. With the above features, presence of Charcot-Leyden crystals suggest acute amoebic dysentery. Positive orthotoluidine test confirms presence of blood in the stool.
3. Trophozoites (vegetative form) of E. histolytica confirms the diagnosis of acute amoebic dysentery.

Inference :

This is a chart of acute of amoebic dysentery.

DESCRIBE AN AMOEBIC ULCER IN INTESTINE :

Usually superficial (does not extend beyond muscularis mucosae), round or oval, from a pin's head to one inch or more, with ragged and undermined margin having overhanging mucous membrane (appearance of flask-shaped ulcer in vertical section), and the base of the ulcer is filled-up by necrotic material and yellowish slough.

ORGANS INVOLVED IN AMOEBIASIS :

(A) Intestine—Mainly the ileo-caecal region, rarely the sigmoido-rectal region.

(B) Extraintestinal sites—Liver, lung, brain (acanthamoeba and Naegleria fowleri), spleen, skin and cornea (keratitis caused by acanthamoeba).

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS OF AMEOBIASIS :

(A) Stool examination :
1. Naked-eye examination.
2. Microscopic examination (4-6 specimens should be examined). Microscopic examination of fresh stool or colonic exudate revealed by sigmoidoscopy is the simplest way to diagnose colonic affection by amoebiasis. Motile trophozoites containing RBCs confirm the diagnosis.

(B) Blood examination—May show moderate leucocytosis (in symptomatic patients).

(C) Serological tests :
1. Indirect haemagglutination test.
2. Fluorescent antibody test (for amoeba).
3. Complement fixation test.
4. Elisa (Dot ELISA is often preferred).
5. Counterimmunodiffusion.
6. Agar gel diffusion.

* Remember, the 'trophozoite or vegetative' form of E. histolytica is the infective form, while the 'cystic' form is present in the carriers.

PATHOLOGICAL SITUATIONS WITH 'ULCERS IN INTESTINE' :

Amoebiasis, typhoid fever, tuberculosis, ulcerative colitis, Crohn's disease, malignancy, Zollinger-Ellison syndrome, bacillary dysentery, drug-induced (e.g., entetic-coated potassium tablet), ischaemic colitis and mesenteric artery occlusion (abdominal angina).

PRESENCE OF MUCUS IN THE STOOL :

1. Acute amoebic dysentery, acute bacillary dysentery.
2. Ulcerative colitis.
3. Irritable bowel syndrome.
4. Malabsorption syndrome.
5. Small amount may be present in normal person.

ACUTE BACILLARY DYSENTERY

Naked-eye examination :

Amount — Scanty
Colour — Bright red
Consistency — Liquid, mainly blood, mucus and pus. Scanty faecal matter which is adherent to the bottom of the container
Odour — Non-offensive (odourless)

Chemical examination :

Reaction — Alkaline
Orthotoluidine test — ++

Microscopic examination :

RBC	+++; discrete
WBC	+++
Macrophages	Numerous and many of them have RBC within
Eosinophils	Virtually absent
Parasite/cyst	Absent
Bacteria	Plenty of motile bacteria
Pus cells	Plenty
Epithelia	Present
Charcot-Leyden crystals	Absent

Interpretation :

1. Liquid stool mixed with blood and mucus points towards acute dysentery. Presence of RBC, WBC, pus cells, macrophages indicate massive inflammatory exudate and thus the faecal matter is adherent to the container as a result of high fibrin content.

2. Scanty faecal matter, presence of blood, mucus and pus, and alkaline reaction (as a result of presence of frank blood) are highly suggestive of acute bacillary dysentery. Positive orthotoluidine test confirms presence of blood in stool.
3. Presence of plenty of motile bacteria are probably due to shigella (producing acute bacillary dysentery) or E.coli (may be present normally). Absence of parasite/cyst as well as vegetative form of E. histolytica denies acute amoebic dysentery.
4. Other features are also corroborative of acute bacillary dysentery.

Inference :

This chart deals with acute bacillary dysentery (shigellosis).

COMMON CAUSES OF DYSENTERY (ACUTE DIARRHOEA WITH BLOOD AND MUCUS IN STOOL) :

1. Acute bacillary dysentery (there are four main pathologic strains of Shigella like S. dysenteriae, S. flexneri, S. boydii and S. sonnei).
2. Acute amoebic dysentery (E. histolytica).
3. Infection of large gut by Campylobacter jejuni, Salmonella enteritidis or Yersinia enterocolitica.
4. Enteroinvasive and enterohaemorrhagic E.coli.
5. Dysentery caused by Schistosoma mansoni.
6. Ulcerative colitis, Crohn's disease.
7. Pseudomembranous colitis caused by Clostridium difficile.
8. Mesenteric vascular disease.
9. Intestinal tuberculosis.
10. Diverticulitis.
11. Carcinoma of the large intestine (lower).

INVESTIGATIONS PERFORMED IN CHRONIC LOSS OF BLOOD AND MUCUS IN STOOL :

1. Stool examination (naked-eye and microscopic) with culture and sensitivity.
2. Proctoscopy, sigmoidoscopy/colonoscopy, and barium enema examination.
3. Biopsy of the intestine.

COMPLICATIONS OF ACUTE SHIGELLOSIS :

1. Haemorrhage, perforation, toxic dilatation of colon.
2. Bacteraemia.
3. Endotoxic shock.
4. Haemolytic-uraemic syndrome.
5. Pneumonia, meningitis, seizures (rarely seen).
6. Reactive arthritis and even the full spectrum of Reiter's syndrome.

* Diagnosis of bacillary dysentery depends on isolation of the organism from stool cultures.

** Read the treatment of 'Shigellosis' from the section of 'Emergency medicine'.

Table 17 : Differentiation between amoebic and bacillary dysentery

	Features	Amoebic dysentery	Bacillary dysentery
1.	Number of motions/day	6-8	> 10
2.	Amount	Copious	Small
3.	Colour	Dark red	Bright red
4.	Odour	Offensive	Odourless
5.	Faecal matter	Present	Minimal
6.	Reaction	Acidic	Alkaline
7.	Consistency	Non-adherent to the container	Adherent to the container
8.	RBC	Clumps	Discrete
9.	Pus cells	Scanty	Plenty
10.	Macrophage	Very few	Numerous
11.	Eosinophils	Present	Absent
12.	Charcot-Leyden crystals	Present	Absent
13.	Parasites	E. histolytica	Absent
14.	Bacteria	Nil	Motile bacteria

GIARDIASIS

Naked-eye examination:

Amount	Sufficient for examination
Colour	A bit whitish
Consistency	Greasy
Odour	Offensive

Chemical examination :

Reaction	—	Acidic
Orthotoluidine test	—	-ve

Microscopic examination

RBC	–	Nil
WBC	–	+
Macrophages	–	+
Eosinophils	–	Present
Parasite/cyst	–	Giardia lamblia present
Bacteria	–	Few
Pus cells	–	Absent
Epithdia	–	Absent

Interpretation with inference :

Presence of Giardia lamblia in a specimen of stool which is greasy, a bit whitish and offensive clinches the diagnosis of 'giardiasis'.

DESCRIBE THE CLINICAL FEATURES OF GIARDIASIS :

Commonly it affects the children in endemic areas (tropics), tourists, persons with poor hygiene, immunosuppressed individuals (e.g., IgA deficiency), male homosexuals and persons with achlorhydria. Mode of spread is through faecal-oral route (ingestion of cysts) and the incubation period is 1-3 weeks. The sites of involvement are duodenum and jejunum. The clinical manifestations range from asymptomatic carriage to fulminant diarrhoea and malabsorption. The patient may complain of abdominal pain, anorexia, nausea, vomiting, weakness and loose offensive stools; there may be abdominal tenderness with distension. There is acquired lactose intolerance. These features may continue for weeks or months, and the patient loses weight, becomes lethergic and complains of flatulent dyspepsia.

HOW TO INVESTIGATE THIS PATIENT ?

1. Examination of stool (at 2-3 days "interval on 3 seperate occasions) for cysts.
2. Doudenal or jejunal fluid is aspirated through Ryle's tube or endoscope, and examined for parasites/cyst.
3. Jejunal biopsy (the mucus should be examined fresh)—shows G. lamblia over the surface of the epithelium.
4. Tests to detect G. lamblia antigen in the stool—may be done.
5. Other investigations to exclude different causes of malabsorption (e.g., tropical sprue, coeliac disease).

TREATMENT:

1. Single dose of tinidazole 40 mg/kg in the range of 0.5-2 g, may be repeated after 1 week, or
2. Metronidazole 2 g daily for consecutive 3 days, or
3. Quinacrine hydrochloride 0.1 g, thrice daily for 5 days.

OCCULT BLOOD IN STOOL

Naked-eye examination :

Amount	Sufficient for examination
Colour	Yellowish
Consistency	Semisolid
Odour	Faecal odour

Chemical examination :

Reaction —

Haemoccult test —

Microscopic examination :

RBC, WBC, macrophages - Absent

Ova, parasite, cyst - Absent

Interpretation :

All the features indicate normal stool except the presence of positive haemoccult test. As the colour and consistency of the stool is not black, tarry, and the odour is not very offensive, it is not the stool of melaena. So there is presence of occult blood in stool specimen.

Inference :

This is a chart of stool containing occult blood.

COMMON CAUSES OF OCCULT BLOOD IN STOOL :

1. Chronic duodenal or gastric ulcer.
2. Erosive gastritis (commonly from NSAID, corticosteroids).
3. Variceal bleeding.
4. Carcinoma of the stomach.
5. Hookworm infestation.
6. Colo-rectal malignancy.
7. Mesenteric ischaemia.
8. Angiodysplasia of the colon.

* Intake of NSAID, hookworm infestation and colo-rectal cancer are common causes of occult blood in stool.

DESCRIBE STOOL OF MELAENA (ALTERTED BLOOD IN STOOL) :

1. Black tarry stool (due to production of acid haematin); sticky too.
2. Offensive (acid haematin is alteread by bacteria).
3. Semisolid in consistency.
4. Red-coloured fluid comes out from the stool after addition of water in it.
5. Usually associated with vertigo, dizziness or syncopal attack during defecation.

* Approximately 60 ml of blood is required to produce a single black stool and blood should remain for at least 8 hours within the gut lumen to produce melaena.

IN WHICH FORMS BLOOD MAY BE PRESENT IN THE STOOL ?

1. Frank blood or haematochezia.
2. Altered blood or melaena.
3. Invisible or occult blood (detected chemically).

PREREQUISITES FOR OCCULT BLOOD TEST IN STOOL (GUAIAC TEST; :

As bleeding from G.I. tract may be intermittent, the test should be performed for several (usually three) consecutive days.

1. To avoid false-positive results, 3 days high-fibre and meat-free diet is advocated.
2. To avoid false-negative result, patient should not have been taking vitamin C.
3. NSAID should not be taken (may produce erosive gastritis). Tooth-brush may be avoided for 3 days. *Medicinal iron should be stopped.*

* In modem haemoccult test, medicinal iron does not interfere with the test. Upto 2.5 ml of 'normal' faecal blood loss may be measured by radioactive chromium.

HOW DO YOU PROCEED TO DIAGNOSE A CASE WITH POSITIVE OCCULT BLOOD IN STOOL ?

1. Details history taking (intake of NSAID, anorexia for gastric malignancy etc.) and meticulous clinical examination (degree of iron deficiency anaemia suggests the duration of illness, lymphadenopathy to exclude carcinoma, abdominal mass indicating G.I. malignancy, splenomegaly for portal hypertension).
2. Stool examination for hookworm ova/parasite.
3. To diagnose the site of blood loss sigmoidoscopy, colonoscopy or barium enema should be followed by upper G.I. endoscopy.

4. Barium follow-through examination of the G.I. tract.
5. If diarrhoea or steatorrhoea is present, investigations for malabsorption is performed.
6. USG or CT scan of whole abdomen.
7. Angiography; radiolabeled erythrocyte scanning.

* Digital examination, proctoscopy and sigmoidoscopy are important manoeuvres/investigations in the aetiological diagnosis of haematochezia.

CHARTS ON URINE

PREFACE:

(A) *Routine examination (R/E)* of urine consists of :

I. Naked-eye examination, macroscopic examination or physical examination :

a) Volume or quantity per day
b) Colour and transparency
c) Odour
d) Specific gravity

Chemical examination :

a) Reaction or p^H
b) Proteins
c) Sugars
d) Ketone bodies
e) Blood and haemoglobin
0 Bile pigments and bile salts

Microscopic examination :

a) RBC
b) WBC and pus cells
c) Epithelial cells
d) Casts
e) Crystals
f) Microorganism, spermatozoa

* For microscopical examination, urine is centrifused at a speed of 1000-1500 rpm. for at least 3 minutes, and the deposit is examined under microscope.

(B) *Special examination* of urine consists of :

Culture and sensitivity tests (bacteriological examination) : > 100 000 bacteria/ml of mid-stream urine indicates urinary tract infection. Antibiotic sensitivity is known as 'antibiogram'.

Each component is discussed below in a nutshell :

1. Volume of urine in 24 hours ; The normal daily urinary output is 400 ml-3 litres, depending on the fluid intake. Average output in a healthy adult is 1.5 litre per day. Urine volume < 400 ml per day is **oliguria** and no urine formation for 12 hours is **anuria,** while **polyuria** is urinary output > 3 litres per day.
2. Colour and transparency : Normally fresh urine is clear to straw-yellow coloured. The colour varies from person to person and from day to day. Colour changes may occur in diseases or after ingestion of drugs, like—
   a) Red—Blood, haemoglobin, myoglobin, ingestion of beet roots, phenolpthalein in alkaline medium, drug like penazopyridine, and porphobilinogen (porphyria).
   b) Pink or dark orange—Rifampicin, senna.
   c) Milky white—Chyluria.
   d) Black—Alkaptonuria (darkens on standing due to presence of homogentisic acid), intake of methyl dopa, iron therapy (I.M), melanoma (melanogen), tyrosinosis.
   e) Yellowish-brown—Furazolidone, nitrofurantoin, tetracyclines, riboflavin, sulfasalazine.
   f) Greenish—Pseudomonas infection in urine, durgs (amitriptyline, methylene blue, propofol).
   g) Cloudy—Presence of pus, blood, cellular debris or crystals (phosphates or urates).

* *The colour of the normal urine is given by urochrome and uroerythrin. Normally urine darkens* on *standing because of oxidation of colourless urobilinogen to coloured urobilin.*

3. Odour : Normally urine has ammoniacal smell due to bacterial decomposition. E.coli infection gives rise to fishy smell, and smell of acetone may come out from the urine of a pateint having diabetic ketoacidosis; diabetics have 'fruity' odour in their urine.
4. Specific gravity : Minimally 50 ml of urine is required to measure the specific gravity. The specific gravity varies from 1002-1035 in a healthy person, depending on the state of hydration. Usually it is within 1015-1025, signifying *normal tubular ability* for concentrating urine. Normal osmolality of urine is 400-750 mosmol/kg of water.

   Very high specific gravity—Diabetes mellitus, severe dehydration, massive proteinuria.

   Very low specific gravity—Diabetes insipidus, psychogenic polydipsia.

   Fixed specific gravity at 1010 — End-stage renal disease.
5. Reaction or p^H : Normal urine is nearly always acidic in reaction (p^H 5-7.2). If the urine reaction repeatedly becomes neutral or alkaline, think of consumption of alkali, alkalosis, loss of tubular function to eliminate acid, patient on high vegetarian diet or UTI by organism other than E.coli (specially Proteus).
6. Protein : Presence of protein in urine signifies defect in the *glomerular Junction.* Normal adult may excrete upto 150 mg of protein in 24 hours. Proteinuria can be divided into mild (150-500 mg/day), moderate (500 mg-2 g/day) and massive types (> 2 g/day). Proteinuria is in the 'nephrotic range' when crosses 3.5 g/day.

   Proteinuria is divided into selective (steroid-responsive) and non-selective types.

   Selectivity is estimated by comparing the clearance of IgG with that of transferrin. If the clearance of IgG is > 20% of transferrin, it represents 'non-selective' proteinuria. If the value is < 10%, it indicates 'highly selective' proteinuria. The range between 10-20% is of little discriminatory value. 'Highly selective' proteinuria is found in minimal lesion nephropathy. The degree of selectivity gives an indication of the amount of glomerular damage.
7. Sugars ; Several reducing sugars may be found in urine sample (glucose, lactose, fructose, pentose, galactose) of which glucose is the most improtant. Presence of glucose in urine is known as glycosuria (e.g., alimentary glycosuria, renal glycosuria, diabetes mellitus). Sucrose is a non-reducing sugar.
8. Ketone bodies ; Ketone bodies are acetone, acetoacetic acid and p-hydroxybutyric acid. Ketone bodies may be found in urine in conditions like starvation, diabetic ketoacidosis, severe vomiting, diet enriched in fat and very low in carbohydrate, acute hepatic necrosis, and in alcoholic ketoacidosis.
9. Blood and haemoglobin : Haematuria.
10. Bile pigments and bile salts : In jaundice.
11. RBC ; Normal urine contains < 1 red cell per high power field (HPF) of centrifuged urine and not more than 3 red cells/mm^3 of uncentrifuged urine. Urine collection in menstruating female petients should be done cautiously to avoid contamination. Patients on anticoagulant therapy may have RBC in urine.
12. WBC : Normally uncentrifuged urine in men may contain < 3 leucocytes/HPF and females may have <10 leucocytes/HPF. If number of WBC is increased above the aforesaid level, think of urinary tract infection (UTI), renal calculi, renal tuberculosis, and send the urine for culture and sensitivity tests.

    A positive leucocyte esterase test results from the presence of WBC either as whole cells or as lysed cells. A negative test means that UTI is unlikely.

    Even a single eosinophil in urine reflects interstitial nephritis.
13. Epithelial cells : Size and shape of the cells often indicate the site of origin but otherwise they are not of much significance. Normal uncentrifuged urine contains not more than 3 cells/HPF.
14. Casts : Casts are coagulated protein (inside the tubules) and their presence indicate that the proteinuria has its origin in the kidney. Hyaline casts (the basic cast) are found in normal persons or in heavy proteinuria, RBC cast in acute glomerulonephritis, fatty cast in nephrotic syndrome, and granular cast may signify acute or chronic inflammation of the kidney (usually CRF).
15. Crystals : Calcium oxalate crystals are often found in normal acidic urine and tripple phosphate (ammonium magnesium phosphate) may be present in alkaline urine. Uric acid and

urates, cysteine, leucine and tyrosine crystals may be found in acidic urine. Usually crystals are of no pathological significance.

* Read proteinuria, haematuria, anuria, oliguria, polyuria from 'Bedside Clinics in Medicine, Part I'.

CHEMICAL EXAMINATION OF URINE :

1. Test for protein (Heat coagulation test) :

Three-fourth of a test tube is filled-up with the urine. Now holding the bottom, incline the test tube slightly and boil the top 2 cm over a flame. A white cloudy precipitate indicates the presence either of protein or of phosphates. On addition of 10% acetic acid drop by drop, the precipitate due to phosphates disappear; if it persists on adding 10% acetic acid, it is precipitated protein.

2. Test for sugar (Benedict's test) :

(This is not a specific test for glucose and any reducing substance like lactose, pentose, fructose or galactose present in the urine sample gives positive reaction).

5 ml of Benedict's reagent is taken in a test tube. It is heated to boiling point and then allowed to cool. To It, 8 drops of urine Is added. The test tube is now boiled for 2 minutes and then allowed to cool in running tap water. If the urine sample does not contain sugar, the colour of the solution remains unchanged (blue) but a precipitate appears in the presence of reducing substance (sugar), varying from light green turbidity—green precipitate—yellow precipitate—to brick red precipitate (these colour changes of precipitates indicate the approximate concentration of sugar as 0.1 tc 0.5 g/dl—0.5 to 1.0 g/dl—1.0 to 2.0 g/dl—to 2.0 g/dl or more, respectively).

3. Test for ketone bodies (Rothera's test) :

10 ml of urine is taken in a test tube and saturated with ammonium sulphate by adding excess of Its crystals. Then 3 drops of freshly prepared solution of sodium nitroprusside Is added to It. Now 2 ml of strong ammonia solution is poured very gently by the side of the inclined'test tube. A deep purple ring appears at the junction of the two fluids if the urine sample contains ketone bodies. If ketone bodies are absent, Rothera's test becomes negative.

* (Ketone bodies are acetone, acetoacetic acid and (3-hydroxy butyric acid. Positive Rothera's test Is given by the first two Ingredients and not by p-hydroxybutyric acid).

4. Test for bile salts (Hay's surface tension test) :

10 ml of urine Is taken in a clean test tube and finely powdered sulphur particles are sprinkled over it. If the urine sample contains bile salts, sulphur powder sinks at the bottom of the test tube but the sulphur powder remains on the surface of the urine if the sample does not contain bile salts.

* (Bile salts lower surface tension and hence cause sulphur powder to sink).

5. Test for blood :

a) Benzidine test — 2-3 ml of urine sample is mixed with an equal amount of saturated solution of benzidine In glacial acetic acid. Now, hydrogen peroxide Is added to the mixture when a blue colour denotes the presence of blood.

b) Orthotoluidine test — Similar to benzidine test; here, instead of benzidine in glacial acetic acid, 0.5 ml of 1% orthotoluidine solution In glacial acetic acid is used.

ACUTE GLOMERULONEPHRITIS

Naked-eye examination :

Quantity	—	350 ml/24 hrs.
Colour	—	Smoky
Specific gravity	—	1028

Chemical examination :

pH	**6.6**
Albumin	++
Blood	++
Sugar	Nil
Ketone bodies	Nil
Bile	Nil

Microscopic examination :

RBC	- Plenty in number
WBC/pus cells	- 2/HPF
Casts :	
Hyaline cast	- +
RBC cast	- ++
Epithelial cast	- + '
Bacteria	- Nil
Crystals	- Nil

Interpretation :

1. Quantity indicates oliguria (< 400 ml/24 hrs). Smoky urine points towards microscopic haematuria. High specific gravity reflects normal functioning renal tubules.
2. Moderate proteinuria (glomerular dysfunction), RBC and RBC casts (inflammatory basis of the disease process), presence of blood (injury to glomerulus) suggest acute glomerulonephritis. Presence of pus cells may reflect an inflammatory procedure.

Inference :

Presence of,

1. Oliguria,
2. Smoky urine,
3. RBC and RBC cast, and
4. Moderate albuminuria, all together confirm the diagnosis of acute glomerulonephritis (AGN).

HOW WILL YOU ASSESS THE 'RENAL FUNCTION' IN A PATIENT ?

(A) The **'glomerular function'** is assessed by :

a) Glomerular filtration rate (GFR)—The usual GFR in average adult is near about 120 ml/minute. Glomerular function is best assessed by renal clearance, where clearance C = UV + P; now, U and P are respectively the urinary and the plasma concentration of a specific substance, and V is the urine volume formed per minute. Classically the substance used are inulin or ^{51}Cr-EDTA but practically the clearance of creatinine is used in clinical practice.

Calculation of *creatinine clearance (CCr)* may be done by (ml/min) * :

$$\text{CCr (male)} = \frac{(140 - \text{age}) \times \text{body weight (in kg)}}{\text{Serum creatinine (mg/dl)} \times 72}$$

CCr (female) = 0.85 x CCr (male)

* This is 'Cockcroft-Gault equation' of CCr

b) Serum concentration of urea and creatinine (normal level of urea and creatinine are respectively 20-40 mg/dl and 0.6-1.2 mg/dl).

c) Glomerular damage is often indicated by significant proteinuria.

(B) The **'tubular function'** is assessed by :

a) Change in the urinary specific gravity by water deprivation test or administration of vasopressin.

b) Renal acidifying ability is judged by ammonium chloride test.

c) Conservation of electrolytes after administration of fludrocortisone.

COMMON COMPLICATIONS OF ACUTE GLOMERULONEPHRITIS :

1. Acute renal failure (ARF).
2. Hypertensive encephalopathy.
3. Acute left ventricular failure (LVF).
4. Infections — Urinary tract, respiratory tract etc.

TYPES OF ARF :

ARF is of two types : oliguric and non-oliguric.

(A) 'Oliguric'—has three phases like,

a) Oliguric phase (1-2 weeks),

b) Diuretic phase (1 week), and

c) Recovery, phase (2-3 weeks).

(B) 'Non-oliguric'—having features like,

a) No oliguria. Usually the urine output is > 1 litre/day.
b) Low urinary osmolality e.g., 350 mosmol/kg of water.
c) 25-50% patients of ARF suffer from non-oliguric type.
d) Diuretic phase is usually short (average. <1 week).
e) Dyselectrolytaemia is less common.
f) Progressive rise in urea and creatinine level.

* **Acute renal failure** (ARF) is a syndrome mainfested by abrupt deterioration of renal function with rapid decline of GFR (within hours to days) with retention of nitrogenous waste products and disturbance of extracellular fluid balance, electrolyte, and acid-base homeostasis, which is usually reversible within days or weeks.

METABOLIC ALTERATIONS IN ARF :

(A) Increased serum concentration of urea, creatinine, potassium, magnesium, phosphate, uric acid, H^+ concentration and fluid volume. Though there is sodium retention, increased fluid volume leads to dilutional hyponatraemia.

(B) Low serum level of calcium.

* Read AGN in details from 'Bedside Clinics in Medicine, Part I'.

NEPHROTIC SYNDROME

Naked-eye examination :

Quantity	—	1500 ml/24 hrs.
Colour	—	Clear
Specific gravity	—	1016

Chemical examination :

p^H	-	6.4
Albumin	-	+++
Blood	-	Nil
Sugar	-	Nil
Ketone bodies	-	Nil
Bile	-	Nil

Microscopic examination :

RBC	-	Nil
WBC/pus cells	-	1 / HPF
Casts :		
Hyaline cast	-	+
RBC cast	-	Absent
Fatty cast	-	++
Bacteria	-	Nil
Crystals	-	Nil

Interpretation :

1. Quantity, colour and specific gravity of urine shows no abnormality.
2. Massive proteinuria points the disease process towards nephrotic syndrome.
3. Hyaline cast may be a normal finding but presence of fatty cast (glomerular dysfunction) is highly suggestive of nephrotic syndrome.

Inference :

Presence of,

1. Macroscopically normal urine,
2. Massive albuminuria, and
3. Fatty cast, all together suggest the diagnosis of nephrotic syndrome.

DEFINE NEPHROTIC SYNDROME :

It is a clinical syndrome characterised by,

a) Massive proteinuria (albuminuria),

b) Hypoalbuminaemia (hypoproteinaemia),
c) Generalised oedema or anasarca, and
d) Hyperlipidaemia (hypercholesterolaemia).

* Proteinuria > 3.5 g/1.73 m^2 per day is considered to be in the nephrotic range. Normal body surface for a reference man is 1.73 m^2. According to few clinicians, lipiduria and hypercoagulability are new additions in the clinical complex of nephrotic syndrome.

** *Proteinuria is the hallmark of nephrotic syndrome.*

CLASSIFY PROTEINURIA :

Mild — 150-500 mg/day (+)
Moderate — 500 mg-2 g/day (++)
Massive — >2 g/day (+++); if the amount crosses 3.5 g/day, it is designated as 'nephrotic range'.

* Normally, upto 150 mg of protein may be excreted in 24 hours. Proteinuria often makes the urine frothy.

LIPIDS ALTERATION IN NEPHROTIC SYNDROME :

All types of lipid fraction are altered in nephrotic syndrome. Total cholesterol (both free and ester form), triglyceride, phospholipid and even chylomicron levels are elevated. Free fatty acid levels are usually reduced. LDL, VLDL are increased but HDL level may be normal, elevated or diminished (low HDL level is associated with severe nephrotic syndrome). Lipiduria is common and it is why fatty casts in urine are a characteristic feature.

WHY THE PATIENT SUFFERS FROM ANASARCA ?

Fluid comes out from the vascular compartment (due to low oncotic pressure as a result of hypoproteinaemia) into the tissue spaces and makes the patient oedematous.

* Read 'Nephrotic syndrome' from 'Bedside Clinics in Medicine, Part I'.

CHRONIC GLOMERULONEPHRITIS OR CHRONIC KIDNEY DISEASE

Naked-eye examination :

Quantity	4 litre/24 hrs.
Colour	Clear
Specific gravity	1010

Chemical examination :

PH	**6.2**
Albumin	+
Blood	Nil
Sugar	Nil
Ketone bodies	Nil
Bile	Nil

Microscopic examination :

RBC	Nil
WBC/pus cells	2/HPF
Casts :	
Hyaline cast	+
RBC cast	Absent
Granular cast	**++**
Bacteria	Nil
Crystals	Nil

Interpretation :

1. Quantity indicates polyuria (> 3 litre/24 hrs). Specific gravity is lower than normal (1015-1025) indicating tubular dysfunction.
2. Presence of proteinuria may suggest glomerular dysfunction.

3. p^H is normal. Other biochemical findings are within normal limit.
4. Presence of granular cast suggests chronic glomerulonephritis i.e., renal parenchymal involvement.

Inference :

Presence of,

1. Low specific gravity at 1010.
2.. Albuminuria, and
3. Granular cast, all together suggest chronic glomerulonephritis [or chronic kidney disease (CKD)].

As the chart shows,

4. polyuria, it may be concluded that chronic glomerulonephritis has progressed to chronic renal failure (CRF).

* 'Broad casts' (casts of unusual width presumed to arise from dilated tubules) are often found in CRF.

WHY THE SPECIFIC GRAVITY IN CRF IS FIXED AT 1010 ?

Normally, the concentration of the urine (reflected by specific gravity) changes from time to time. As the patient progresses to CRF, the kidneys lose their ability to concentrate and dilute the urine; thus the specific gravity becomes lower, and approximates more and more to 1010, i.e., equivalent to the specific gravity of the glomerular filtrate. Thus, ultimately the urine becomes isotonic with plasma water (isosthenuria).

DIFFERENT CASTS IN URINE :

1. Hyaline cast - Normal persons, pyrexia, strenuous exercise, heavy proteinuria, concentrated urine, dehydration.
2. RBC cast - Acute glomerulonephritis.
3. Fatty cast - Nephrotic syndrome.
4. Granular cast - Chronic glomerulonephritis, may be non-specific.
5. WBC cast - Pyelonephritis, interstitial nephritis, transplant rejection.
6. Broad cast - Chronic renal failure.
7. Crystals In cast - Hypercalcaemia, hyperuricosuria.

CAUSES OF CRF :

1. **Chronic glomerulonephritis.**
2. **Malignant hypertension.**
3. **Diabetes mellitus.**
4. **Chronic pyelonephritis.**
5. **Nephrotic syndrome.**
6. **Polycystic kidney disease.**
7. **Collagen vascular diseases (e.g., SLE, scleroderma).**
8. **Obstructive uropathy.**
9. **Interstitial nephritis.**
10. **Analgesic nephropathy.**
11. **Gout, multiple myeloma, amyloidosis.**

* **Chronic renal failure (CRF) refers to long-standing, progressive and irreversible deterioration in renal function.**

CRF WITH ENLARGED KIDNEYS :

1. **Polycystic kidney.**
2. **Hydronephrosis (bilateral).**
3. **Diabetes mellitus with CRF.**
4. **Amyloidosis.**
5. **Multiple myeloma.**

* **CRF patients usually have bilateral small and contracted kidneys.**

Table 18 : Stages of chronic kidney disease (CKD)

Stage	Description	GFR (ml/min/1.73 m^2)
1	Kidney damage with normal or T GFR	> 90
2	Kidney damage with slightly *I* GFR	60-89
3	Moderalely 4- GFR	30-59
4	Severe i GFR	15-29
5	Kidney failure	< 15 (or dialysis)

* **Stage 5 Is *known* as end-stage renal disease (ESRD)**

MENTION THE COMMON COMPLICATIONS/ABNORMALITIES SEEN IN CRF ;

1. Haematologic and immunologic :
   a) Refractory anaemia.
   b) Lymphocytopenia; abnormality in WBC formation and function.
   c) Bleeding tendency.
   d) Increased susceptibility to infection.
2. G. I. tract :
   a) Uraemic fetor.
   b) Uraemic gastritis (nausea, vomiting).
   c) Peptic ulcer and G. I. tract haemorrhage.
   d) Ascites.
3. Cardio-pulmonary :
   a) Systemic hypertension.
   b) Acute left ventricular failure.
   c) Accelerated atherosclerosis.
   d) Pericarditis.
   e) Uraemic lung (pulmonary oedema).
4. Neuromuscular :
   a) Peripheral neuropathy.
   b) Convulsions.
   c) Coma.
   d) Flapping tremor.
   e) Encephalopathy.
   n Myopathy.
   g) 'Restless leg syndrome'.
   h) Dialysis dementia and dialysis disequilibrium syndrome (dialysis-induced).
5. Endocrine and metabolic :
   a) Secondary hyperparathyroidism.
   b) Renal osteodystrophy.
   c) Hyperuricaemia.
   d) Amenorrhoea, loss of libido, infertility.
6. Fluid and electrolytes :
   a) Metabolic acidosis.
   b) Hypocalcaemia.
   c) Volume contraction from polyuria. Na^+ level may be high, normal or low.
   d) K* level is usually high.
   e) Oedema.
7. Dermatological :
   a) Pallor.
   b) Hyperpigmentation.
   c) Ecchymosis.
   d) Generalised pruritus.
   e) Uraemic frost.

ANAEMIA IN CRF:

Anaemia in CRF is due to :

1. Decreased erythropoiesis due to relative deficiency of erythropoietin.
2. Reduced dietary intake due to loss of appetite.
3. Decreased red cell survival.
4. Diminished erythropoiesis due to uraemic toxins.
5. Reduced intestinal iron absorption.
6. Increased blood loss due to abnormal platelet function and increased capillary fragility.
7. Hypoproteinaemia leading to decreased transferrin level.
8. Vitamin B_{12} and folic acid deficiency.

OUTLINE OF TREATMENT IN RENAL FAILURE :

Renal replacement therapy is done by haemodialysis/haemofiltration, peritoneal dialysis and renal transplantation.

(A) Acute :
   a) Conservative treatment.
   b) Continuous arterio-venous or veno-venous haemofiltration.
   c) Haemodialysis.
   d) Peritoneal dialysis.

(B) Chronic :
   a) Conservative treatment.
   b) Haemodialysis.
   c) Continuous ambulatory periotoneal dialysis (CAPD).
   d) Renal transplantation.

D/D BETWEEN ARF AND CRF AT THE BEDSIDE :

A provisional diagnosis may be done by,

1. History (short in ARF and prolonged in CRF; ARF is often precipitated by diarrhoea, snake bite, septic abortion, pre-eclampsia or drugs (e.g., aminoglycosides)].
2. Patient is bloated (oliguric phase of ARF); patient of CRF is usually volume depleted from polyuria.
3. Severe anaemia clinches the diagnosis of CRF.
4. Though systemic hypertension may be present in both the types, target organ damage due to hypertension is evident in CRF only, e.g.,
   a) Cardiomegaly,
   b) Retinopathy,
5. Presence of bone pain (renal osteodystrophy) and peripheral neuropathy suggest CRF.
6. Ultrasonography shows bilateral contracted kidneys with loss of cortico-medullary differentiation in CRF; kidneys are usually of normal size in ARF.
7. A very rapid rate of rise in serum urea and creatinine suggests ARF. A report of previous urinalysis (normal in ARF) is also helpful for diagnosis.

* Acute on chronic renal failure' is precipitated by infection, obstruction (stone, blood clot), dehydration and nephrotoxic drugs (e.g., aminoglycosides).

INDICATIONS OF DIALYSIS IN ARF OR CRF :

1. Progressive metabolic encephalopathy.
2. Uncontrolled hyperkalaemia.
3. Intractable overload of fluid.
4. Uraemic pericarditis (most important clinical indicator).
5. Very high urea (usually above 300 mg/dl) and creatinine (usually above 7 g/dl) levels.
6. Creatinine clearance <15 ml/minute.
7. Refractory metabolic acidosis (p^H < 7.2), pulmonary oedema not responding to medical treatment, high catabolic state with rapidly progressive renal failure, significant bleeding diathesis, hypertension poorly-responsive to non-dialytic therapy.

N.B. : Most useful marker of renal function is serum creatinine as it is primarily eliminated by glomerular filtration. Blood urea is modified independent of renal function e.g., t **urea or BUN** is seen in high protein diet, catabolic states, G. I. bleeding, and i **urea or BUN** is observed in liver disease, malnutrition etc.

URINARY TRACT INFECTION

Naked-eye examination

Quantity	—	1600 ml/24 hrs.
Colour	—	Cloudy
Odour	—	Fishy
Specific gravity	—	1016

Chemical examination :

PH		6.1
Albumin		Trace
Blood		Nil
Sugar	-	Nil
Ketone bodies	-	Nil
Bile		Nil

Microscopic examination :

RBC	–	2/HPF
WBC/pus cells	–	40/HPF
Casts	–	Nil
Bacteria	–	Few motile organism
Crystals	–	+

Interpretation :

1. Parameters in macroscopic examination reveals fishy odour which probably reflects the presence of sulphides in urine as a result of urinary tract infection (UTI), and cloudy appearance as a result of plenty of pus cells.
2. Trace protenuria may be a normal finding or due to UTI. p^H reflects the acidic reaction of urine.
3. The presence of plenty of pus cells, few RBC and moreover few motile bacteria indicate an inflammatory basis of the disease process.
4. Presence of motile bacteria (commonly due to E.coli) along with plenty of pus cells suggest urinary tract infection.

Inference :

Urinary tract infection (UTI) probably due to E. coli.

REACTION IN URINE :

(A) Acidic :
   a) Commonly a normal finding.
   b) Urinary tract infection with E. coli.
   c) Acidification of urine done by vitamin C or NH_4C1.
   d) Acidosis (e.g., diabetic ketoacidosis, uraemia).

(B) Alkaline :
   a) Consumption of alkali.-
   b) Alkalosis.
   c) Urinary tract infection with Proteus.
   d) Loss of tubular function to eliminate acid (e.g., renal tubular acidosis).
   e) Patient is on high vegetarian diet.

ORGANISMS RESPONSIBLE FOR UTI:

1. E. coli (commonest; found in 75% cases; usually derived from faecal reservoir).
2. Streptococci.
3. Staphylococcus epidermidis.
4. Klebsiella.
5. Proteus.
6. Pseudomonas.
7. Chlamydia trachomatis.
8. Enterobacter.
9. Serratia
10. Candida (rare).

* Outside hospital — E.coli is commonest; nosocomial infection - Klebsiella, streptococci, E. coli.

PREDISPOSING FACTORS IN UTI :

1. Obstructive uropathy, renal stone, self-retaining catheter, neurological disorders (e.g., spinal cord injury), cystic kidney, vesico-ureteric reflux, impaired renal function.
2. Impaired body resistance due to diabetes mellitus, immunodeficiency, immunosuppressive therapy.
3. Females are more susceptible to males because of short length of urethra (4 cm), close proximity of urethra with anus, pregnancy (chance of retention), absence of bactericidal prostatic secretions, and urethral trauma during sexual intercourse.

TYPES OF UTI:

(A) Lower tract infection : Urethritis, cystitis and prostatitis.
(B) Upper tract infection : Acute pyelonephritis.

INVESTIGATIONS TO BE PERFORMED IN SUSPECTED UTI:

1. Routine examination (R/E) of urine.
2. Urine for culture and sensitivity test (C/S) along with colony count.
3. Blood for TC, DC, ESR.
4. Blood for sugar (fasting and postprandial), urea and creatinine.

5. Ultrasonography (USG) to exclude calculi, cyst, obstruction, congenital anomaly, anatomical abnormality. Now-a-day USG is preferred to IVP.
6. IVP, micturating cysto-urethrography and cystoscopy in selected cases.

WHAT SHOULD BE THE 'COLONY COUNT' IN A SYMPTOMATIC UTI ?

Golony count = Number of bacteria present per millilitre of urine sample examined.

Demonstration of > 100000 organism/ml grown from a properly collected mid-stream 'clean catch' urine sample strongly suggests infection (100000 organism = 10^5 organism).

Usually, colony count < 10000/ml does not signify any infection but there is no absolute rule of thumb regarding the colony count as in a symptomatic patient, a smaller number of bacteria (1000 to 10000/ml of mid-stream urine) may indicate infection.

CLINICAL FEATURES OF UTI:

(A) Urethritis : Burning pain during micturition (due to acid reaction of urine), increased frequency of micturition, dysuria.

(B) Cystitis : Dysuria, increased frequency, urgency, strangury (due to spasm of the internal sphincter), haematuria, incontinence or retention of urine, suprapubic pain and tenderness. Renal angles may be tender in ascending infection to kidneys.

(C) Systemic : Fever with chill and rigor, nausea, vomiting.

* In febrile UTI in male : think of acute epididymitis, acute prostatitis, or acute pyelonephritis.

WHAT IS ACUTE URETHRAL SYNDROME' ?

When dysuria, urgency and increased frequency of micturition are not accompanied by significant bacteriuria, it is known as acute urethral syndrome. It is commonly seen in women. Antibiotics are usually not indicated.

HOW TO COLLECT URINE FOR CULTURE AND SENSITIVITY TEST ?

Mid-stream urine is taken for examination in both the sexes. First, clean the external genitalia with distilled water and then collect the urine aseptically in a sterile container after discarding the first part of urine. Do not touch the container in the genitalia, particualrly in case of female patients. In a special situation, catheterised specimen or urine collected by suprapubic puncture may be taken for examination.

WHAT ARE THE DIFFERENT TYPES OF 'URINARY PAIN' ?

1. Renal pain—It is dull aching or boring in character, and present in the flanks or renal angle and extends along the rib margin towards the umbilicus. It is usually due to distension or irritation of renal capsule (e.g., AGN or big oxalate stone in the kidney).
2. Ureteric pain—If is acute, severe, colicky in nature and often associated with nausea, vomiting, chill and rigor, excessive perspiration and rigidity of abdominal muscles. Ureteric pain is due to smooth muscle spasm or distension.
   a) High ureteric pain—characteristically radiates to groin, testicles (or vulva) and inner aspect of thigh (i.e., along distribution of genitofemoral nerve, $L_{1,2}$).
   b) Mid uretric pain—usually felt in the lower quadrant of the abdomen on the affected side; may radiate upto groin.
   c) Low ureteric pain—Felt deep into the pelvis.
3. Vesical pain—It is usually due to overdistension of a normal bladder, A dull aching pain is felt in the hypogastrium which is relieved by micturition. A stone impacted in the intramural part may have referred pain to the tip of the penis.

COMPLICATIONS OF ACUTE AND CHRONIC PYELONEPHRITIS :

(A) Acute pyelonephritis :
1. Acute papillary necrosis.
2. Septicaemia.
3. Chronic pyelonephritis.
4. Chronic renal failure.

(B) Chronic pyelonephritis :
1. Hypertension.
2. CRF.
3. Pyonephrosis.
4. Renal calculi.

CAUSES OF INCREASED FREQUENCY OF MICTURITION :

1. Cystitis, urethritis, small contracted bladder, vesical calculus, benign hypertrophy of prostate.
2. Balanitis, pinhole meatus, phimosis.
3. Polyuric conditions, pregnancy, psychogenic, pressure in the bladder from adjacent structures.

* Diabetics also suffer from increased frequency of micturition to clean-up the polyuria or as a complication of UTI.

CAUSES OF STERILE PYURIA (PYURIA ASSOCIATED WITH STERILE CULTURE) :

1. Incompletely treated UTI.
2. Infections e.g., M. tuberculosis.
3. Calculi.
4. Interstitial nephritis.
5. Chemical cystitis.
6. Prostatitis.
7. Papillary necrosis.
8. Analgesic nephropathy.
9. Pregnancy.
10. Glucocorticoid therapy.

DIABETIC KETOACIDOSIS

Naked-eye examination:

Quantity — 3800 ml/24 hrs.
Colour — Clear
Odour — Smell of acetone
Specific gravity — 1038

Chemical examination :

p^H - 4.9
Albumin - +
Blood - Nil
Sugar - +++
Ketone bodies - +++
Bile - Nil

Microscopic examination :

RBC - Nil
WBC/pus cells - 2/HPF
Casts - Hyaline cast present
Bacteria - Nil
Crystals - Nil

Interpretation :

1. The chart reflects polyuria and high specific gravity as well as smell of acetone in the macroscopical examination of urine.
2. Reaction of urine is acidic. Ketonuria associated with glycosuria virtually diagnostic of diabetic ketoacidosis. Mild proteinuria indicates development of early diabetic nephropathy.
3. Microscopical examination is within normal limit, except the presence of hyaline cast (indicate glomerulopathy).

Inference :

It is a chart of diabetic ketoacidosis in a patient of early diabetic nephropathy.

DEFINITION OF DIABETIC NEPHROPATHY :

It is the presence of persistent proteinuria (> 500 mg protein/24 hrs; > 300 mg albumin/24 hrs) in a patient sufferring from diabetes mellitus in the absence of other renal disease, UTI or heart failure. Diabetic nephropathy (microvascular complication) includes all the lesions occuring in the kidneys of patients suffering from DM (e.g., glomerulosclerosis, interstitial nephritis etc.)

WHAT IS MICROALBUMINURIA ?

By convention, it is defined as urinary albumin excretion ratio (UAER) between 20-200 pg/min (i.e., 30-300 mg/day) in an overnight or 24-hour urinary collection demonstrated in at least 2-3 occasions within a period of 6 months. Microalbuminuria in diabetes mellitus usually develops around the 5th-10th year. *In type 1 DM, it is an early predictor of nephropathy and in type 2 DM, it usually predicts future development of malignant angiopathy and cardiovascular complications.* It is measured by radioimmunoassay. Microalbuminuria responses well with drugs like ACE-inhibitors.

Instead of 24-hours urine collection, a random sample is used in clinical practice where albumin concentration is related to urinary creatinine concentration. An **albumin** : **creatinine ratio** of 2.5 to 20 corresponds to albuminuria of 30 to 300 mg daily respectively.

The causes of microalbuminuria are :

1. DM with early renal involvement (indicates endothelial dysfunction).
2. Systemic hypertension.
3. Congestive cardiac failure.
4. Urinary tract infection.
5. Moderate to strenuous physical exercise.
6. As an acute phase response.

CONDITIONS ASSOCIATED WITH REDUCING SUBSTANCES AND KETONE BODIES IN URINE :

Read the 'Preface' of 'Charts on urine', and page 250.

* Read 'Management of diabetic ketoacidosis' from the 'Emergency medicine' section.

CHARTS ON CSF

PREFACE:

Initially, read the 'CSF DYNAMICS AND OTHER DETAILS' of CSF from 'Lumbar puncture needle' under 'Instruments and procedures' section.

(A) Naked-eye (macroscopic) examination :

1. Pressure — 60-150 mm of CSF (lying position), and
   150-250 mm of CSF (sitting position)

   Pressure may be,

   a) High—Cerebrovascular accidents (CVA), intracranial tumour, meningitis, meningism, encephalitis, cerebral abscess, benign intracranial hypertension, circulatory block like aqueduct stenosis or hypertensive hydrocephalus, head injury, hypoxic encephalopathy.

   b) Low—Spinal subarachnoid block, severe dehydration, thick CSF (e.g., in pyogenic meningitis), partially blocked needle, after repeated lumbar puncture, bad needle placement.

2. Colour or appearance — Crystal clear or colourless.

   The common variations in appearance are,

   a) Clear—Normal, tuberculous and viral meningitis, meningism.

   b) Turbid—Turbidity usually indicates high leucocyte count and is seen in pyogenic meningitis, rarely in carcinomatous meningitis and subarachnoid haemorrhage.

   c) Straw-coloured—Tuberculous meningitis.

   d) Haemorrhagic or red—Subarachnoid haemorrhage, trauma, extensive cerebral haemorrhage; rarely due to haemorrhagic encephalitis, bleeding diathesis.

   e) Xanthochromia—See the chart on 'Xanthochromia'.

3. Coagulum formation on standing —

   Normally, the CSF does not clot on standing and if it happens so, one should think of presence of high protein and fibrinogen in the CSF. Traumatic puncture clots on standing.

   a) Cobweb coagulum (forms after few hours; indicates mild to moderate rise of protein along with fibrinogen in CSF)—Tuberculous meningitis (most important cause, and the coagulum is a rich source of tubercle bacilli), acute anterior poliomyelitis and neurosyphilis.

   b) Big coagulum (forms immediately or shortly after withdrawal; indicates very high protein in CSF) — Spinal subarachnoid block, G. B. syndrome.

(B) Chemical (biochemical) examination :

1. Total protein : 20-40 mg%

   Normally the ratio of albumin and globulin in CSF is 8 : 1; the total protein may be 'very high' in conditions like G. B. syndrome, total spinal block, meningitis (specially tuberculous) and acoustic neurofibroma.

   Normally CSF IgG is < 15% of the total protein concentration. IgG is increased in multiple sclerosis, neurosarcoidosis, neurosyphilis and in some connective tissue diseases. CSF globulin can be detected by different tests like Pandy's test, Nonne-Apelt reaction, Noguchi's test, Lange's colloidal gold curve reaction and immunoelectrophoresis.

2. Sugar : 40-80 mg% (usuallyl/2 to 2/3rd of the random blood sugar concentration).
3. Chloride : 720-750 mg% (120-170 mmol/1). Normal plasma chloride value is 98-106 mmol/1. CSF chloride becomes markedly reduced in tuberculous meningitis (probably due to fall in the plasma level as a result of prolonged vomiting) and slightly reduced in pyogenic meningitis. CSF chloride is increased in uraemia.
4. p^H : 7.31 to 7.34

(C) Microscopic examination :

Normally the cells are mononuclear cells (70% lymphocytes and 30% monocytes).in the range of 0-5 cells/mm^3. There are no polymorphs.

If the increased cell count shows polymorphs and is above 75% of the total, it is known as *polymorphonuclear pleocytosis-,* and if more than 90% lymphocytes are found, it is designated as *lymphocytic pleocytosis.*

(D) Bacteriological (includes staining and culture): Normally CSF is sterile. Pathogens can be isolated by different staining techniques (Gram stain, Ziehl-Neelsen stain, India ink preparation) or cultures.

(E) Serological : VDRL, Kahn test, Wassermann reaction help in the diagnosis of neurosyphilis. Now-a-days, different serological tests are available for bacterial, mycobacterial and fungal infections.

(F) Special: Lange's colloidal gold curve reaction—a positive reaction (indicating high globulin in CSF) is found in tabes dorsalis (tabetic curve), GPI (paretic curve), and meningitis (meningitic curve). Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) to identify bacteria are available.

* To diagnose and interpret CSF study, a close liaison between physician and microbiologist is essential. Adenosine deaminase (ADA) activity in CSF in tuberculous meningitis is > 10 U/L.

ACUTE PYOGENIC MENINGITIS

Naked-eye examination :

Pressure - ++
Appearance - Turbid/cloudy
On standing - No coagulum formation

Chemical examination :

Protein - 180 mg%
Sugar - 12 mg%
Chloride - 695 mg%

Microscopic examination :

Total cells - 4000/'mm^3
Polymorphs - 90%
Lymphocytes - 10%

Bacteriological examination :

Gram +ve cocci seen in pairs or short chains

Interpretation :

1. CSF pressure is high indicating abnormality in CSF. Turbidity is probably due to large number of polymorphs.
2. Total protein is 'moderately' increased, sugar content is much reduced and the chloride concentration is a bit lower than normal.
3. High total count of cells with polymorphonuclear pleocytosis suggests pyogenic infection of the central nervous system (CNS).
4. Presence of gram +ve cocci in pairs or short chains indicates infection produced by pneumococcus.

Inference :

The CSF chart deals with acute pyogenic meningitis probably caused by pneumococcus (S. pneumoniae).

ORGANISMS INVOLVED IN ACUTE PYOGENIC MENINGITIS :

Worldwide, the three major pathogens are H. influenzae, N. meningitidis and S. pneumoniae which account for approximately 70-80% cases of pyogenic meningitis.

(A) Neonates (< 1 month) — gram -ve bacilli (E. coli), streptococci.
(B) Children (1 month to 15 years) — H. influenzae, N. meningitidis, S. pneumoniae, M. tuberculosis.
(C) Adults — N. meningitidis, S. pneumoniae, staphylococcus, M. tuberculosis, gram -ve bacilli.

CAUSES OF ALTERATION IN SUGAR CONTENT OF CSF :

(A) High : Diabetes mellitus and other hyperglycaemic states, rarely in cerebral haemorrhage.
(B) Low (hypoglycorrhachia) :
   a) Marked reduction - Pyogenic meningitis.
   b) Moderate reduction - Tuberculous, fungal and carcinomatous meningitis, neurosarcoidosis, lymphomatous infiltration, hypoglycaemia.
(C) Normal : In health, viral meningitis, encephalitis.

CLASSICAL FEATURES OF ACUTE PYOGENIC MENINGITIS :

1. Intense headache (generalised/nuchal), high fever, meningismus, nausea, vomiting, profuse sweating, rigors, myalgia and photophobia may be present.
2. The meningismus is accompanied by **positive neck rigidity (stiffness), Kernig's sign, and Brudzinski's sign (specially in children).** Fever, nuchal headache and neck rigidity are the classical triad of meningitis.
3. Features of cerebral dysfunction (mental obtundation) like altered sensorium, confusion, delirium or coma are not uncommon.
4. Convulsions, bilateral VIth nerve palsy as a false localising sign due to raised intracranial tension; focal neurodeficit evidenced by dysphasia, visual field defects, hemiparesis, extensor plantar response may be present.
5. Meningococcal meningitis may be suggested by the presence of skin rash (erythematous -> macular -> petechial -» purpuric) mainly present over the extremities (may be present over the conjunctiva). Herpes labialis may be found. Acute adrenal failure (Waterhouse-Friderichsen syndrome) may be noted as a complication.
6. Special features in neonates and young infants :
   a) Neck rigidity (stiffness) and Kernig's sign may be absent.
   b) Listlessness, high-pitched cry, refuse to suck, irritability.
   c) Fever may be absent.
   d) Poor muscle tone, persistent vomiting, a vacant state, circulatory collapse.
   e) Anterior fontanelle may or may not be bulging.

COMPLICATIONS OF ACUTE PYOGENIC MENINGITIS :

(A) Systemic—Waterhouse-Friderichsen syndrome, SIADH, septicaemia, acute renal failure, circulatory collapse, disseminated intravascular coagulation.
(B) Neurological—Focal fits, mental retardation, neurodeficit (aphasia, blindness, deafness), brain abscess, auditory impairment, internal hydrocephalus, subdural effusion, cranial nerve palsy.

CLINICAL ASSOCIATIONS IN DIFFERENT TYPES OF PYOQENIC MENINGITIS :

1. Pneumococcal : Pneumonia, mastoiditis, sinusitis, otitis media, endocarditis, splenectomised patients, multiple myeloma, head injury with basilar fracture of the skull, hypogammaglobulinaemia.
2. Meningococcal : Usually occurs in epidemics; fulminant; children living in overcrowded houses are predisposed.
3. Staphylococcal : Neonates (umbilical infection, pyoderma, septicaemia); older children (otitis media, mastoiditis, fracture of the skull, septic lesion in scalp).
4. H. influenzae : Convulsions are commonly seen. Auditory impairment is a residual complication.

POSSIBLE CAUSES OF ASEPTIC AND RECURRENT MENINGITIS :

(A) **Aseptic meningitis** : Meningitis induced by Echovirus, Coxsackievirus , HSV-2, HIV and Arbovirus; Weil's disease, carcinomatosis, drugs or contrast medium, subarachnoid haemorrhage, neurosarcoidosis.
(B) **Recurrent meningitis** : Herpes simplex virus (commonest), chemical meningitis due to leakage into CSF of contents from an epidermoid tumour, craniopharyngioma; due to primary inflammatory conditions like SLE, Behcet's syndrome, drug hypersensitivity, Mollaret's meningitis or Vogt-Koyanagi-Harada syndrome.

* Vide the management part from 'Emergency medicine' section of this book.

NON RESPONSE IN CNS INFECTIONS—PROBABILITIES :

(A) Recrudescence—during treatment by the same organism -> probably due to wrong treatment.

(B) Relapse—after stopping treatment by the same organism -> due to parameningeal focus of infection.

(C) Recurrence -»late or delayed by the same or other organism -> due to congenital or acquired defects the dura matter.

TUBERCULOUS MENINGITIS

Naked-eye examination :

Pressure - ++

Appearance - Clear

On standing - Formation of cobwe'b coagulum (fine clot)

Chemical examination :

Protein - 600 mg%

Sugar - 30 mg%

Chloride - 580 mg%

Microscopic examination :

Total cells - 450/mm^3

Polymorphs - 8%

Lymphocytes - 92%

Bacteriological examination :

Ordinary culture shows no growth (sterile)

Interpretation :

1. The CSF pressure is raised indicating abnormality in CSF. The clear appearance may be due to tuberculous or viral meningitis, or meningism. Cobweb coagulum strongly suggests meningitis due to tuberculous aetiology.
2. Total protein is 'much' raised, sugar content is slightly reduced and the chloride content is very much reduced.
3. High total cell count with lymphocytic pleocytosis seen.
4. Ordinary culture is sterile (probably needs special and appropriate culture media).

Inference :

High CSF pressure, clear appearance, very low chloride content, cobweb coagulum with lymphocytic pleocytosis strongly indicate tuberculous meningitis (TBM). Though lymphocytic pleocytosis is often observed in viral meningitis, it is not associated with low sugar content in CSF. Moreover, sterile ordinary culture points towards tuberculous aetiology too.

* Very high level of protein often indicates block to CSF flow due to tuberculous meningitis.

PLEOCYTOSIS :

(A) Polymorphonuclear pleocytosis—Acute pyogenic meningitis.

(B) Lymphocytic pleocytosis—Meningitis of tuberculous or viral aetiology, syphilitic or fungal meningitis, multiple sclerosis, viral encephalitis, neurosarcoidosis, rarely in partially treated pyogenic meningitis.

(C) Mixed pleocytosis—Early phase of viral meningitis (often the first 36 hours), sometimes in tuberculous meningitis.

COMMON CLINICAL FEATURES OF TBM :

This condition commonly occurs shortly after a primary infection in childhood or as a part of miliary tuberculosis.

(A) Children—Lassitude, anorexia, constipation, headache, lack of interest in toys or talking.

(B) Adults—Low grade pyrexia, malaise, intense headache, vomiting, convulsions, coma.

HOW WILL YOU INVESTIGATE A CASE OF TBM ?

1. Lumbar puncture : CSF for macroscopic, chemical and microscopic examination (sometimes repeated CSF examinations are necessary). Detection of AFB (tubercle bacilli) from the centrifused deposit of CSF or from the testing of cobweb smear—examination by Ziehl-Neelsen stain is done. CSF may be cultured in Lowenstein-Jensen (L-J) media. Guineapig inoculation test takes much time to give result. As culture in L-J media may take more than 6 weeks time, BACTEC system of culture technique may be adopted which gives the result within 7 days.

   Newer modes of diagnostic avenues may be of some help in quicker diagnosis from CSF:

   a) Adenosine deaminase assay (> 10 U/L).
   b) Polymerase chain reaction (PCR).
   c) Detection of tuberculostearic acid.
   d) ELISA (not very sensitive).
   e) Bromide partition test.

2. Blood for R/E (Hb. TC. DC, ESR), chest X-ray (PA view), Mantoux test (may be negative) are done. Lymphocytosis and high ESR may indicate towards tuberculous aetiology. Chest X-ray shows evidences either of primary complex or miliary tuberculosis. Sputum examination for AFB in concomitant pulmonary tuberculosis should be performed.

   Primarily, a high index of suspicion by the attending physician is necessary for a quick diagnosis.

ADENOSINE DEAMINASE ACTIVITY TO DIAGNOSE TUBERCULOUS MENINGITIS :

Adenosine diaminase (ADA), an enzyme associated with disorders that induce cell-mediated responses, in CSF is useful for the diagnosis of tuberculous meningitis. High ADA activity in CSF may found in :

1. Tuberculous meningitis.
2. Lymphoma with meningeal involvement.
3. Neurobrucellosis.
4. Sarcoidosis.
5. Subarachnoid haemorrhage.

* In pleural, pericardial or ascitic fluid ADA activity : 40-60 U/L is borderline activity, whereas > 60 U/L is high activity. In CSF, ADA > 10 U/L favours tuberculous aetiology.

WHAT ARE THE PREDISPOSING FACTORS FOR ACQUIRING TUBERCULOSIS ?

1. HIV infection (risk increases more than 100-times than normal).
2. I.V drug abusers (e.g., heroin addict).
3. Recent infection (probably within the past 2 years) with M. tuberculosis.
4. Diabetes mellitus (risk increases 3-times than normal).
5. Prolonged corticosteroid treatment or Cushing's syndrome, other immunosuppressive therapy.
6. Silicosis.
7. Leukaemias, lymphomas.
8. Gastrectomy or intestinal by-pass surgery.
9. End-stage renal disease.
10. Malignancy of head and neck region.

CLASSIFICATION OF NEUROLOGICAL TUBERCULOSIS ?

1. Tuberculous meningitis.
2. Tuberculous arachnoiditis.
3. Tuberculoma.
4. Tuberculous abscess.
5. Tuberculous encephalopathy.

COMPLICATIONS OF TBM :

Untreated or lately treated cases may prove to be fatal. Mortality ratio is moderately high and the survivors may be left with serious disabling sequelae like mental retardation, epilepsy, blindness, deafness and hydrocephalus.

* Read the 'Management of tuberculous meningitis' from 'Emergency medicine' section.

ACUTE VIRAL MENINGITIS

Naked-eye examination :

Pressure - ++
Appearance - Clear
On standing - No coagulum formation

Chemical examination :

Protein - 150 mg%
Sugar - 65 mg%
Chloride - 730 mg%

Microscopic examination :

Total cells - 140/mm^3
Polymorphs - 10%
Lymphocytes - 90%

Bacteriological examination :

Ordinary culture shows no growth (sterile)

Serological examination :

VDRL and Kahn test of the CSF are negative

Interpretation :

1. High pressure in the CSF indicates some abnormality in CSF. The colour is clear and there is no coagulum formation on standing.
2. Though the total protein content is moderately increased, the sugar and chloride concentration remain unchanged.
3. High total cell count with lymphocytic pleocytosis.
4. Negative serology virtually excludes neurosyphilis.
5. Sterile ordinary culture raises the possibilities of tuberculous, viral or fungal meningitis, or aseptic meningitis.

Inference :

High CSF pressure, clear appearance, absence of cobweb coagulum, moderately high protein with normal sugar and chloride content as well as lymphocytic pleocytosis strongly suggest acute viral meningitis.

Normal sugar and chloride content excludes tuberculous meningitis, and negative serology rules out the diagnosis of neurosyphilis.

Aseptic meningitis is usually due to a viral infection of the meninges, and may often confused with partially treated bacterial meningitis; however, question of bacterial meningitis does not come here (as there is lymphocytic pleocytosis). Fungal meningitis needs special culture medium. Possibility of acute viral meningoencephalitis may be there and can be ruled out after meticulous clinical examination (with added features of encephalitis).

VIRUSES PRODUCING MENINGITIS :

Acute viral infection of meninges is probably the commonest cause of meningitis. Though less serious than acute pyogenic meningitis, it may prove fatal if associated with encephalitis. Usually it is a benign and self-limiting disease.

Viruses responsible :

1. Enteroviruses (Echovirus, Coxsackievirus, Poliovirus)—Commonest.
2. Mumps virus.
3. Arboviruses (Togavirus and Bunyavirus).
4. Herpes simplex virus (HSV).
5. Lymphocytic choriomeningitis (arenavirus).
6. Influenza viruses.
7. HIV.
8. Rabies virus.
9. Epstein-Barr virus.
10. Varicella zoster virus.

Aseptic meningitis commonly occurs due to enteroviruses, arboviruses, HIV and HSV-2 (see the chart of 'Acute pyogenic meningitis' described earlier).

INVESTIGATIONS PERFORMED IN ACUTE VIRAL MENINGITIS :

1. Blood for routine examination (R/E) reveals leucopenia along with relative lymphocytosis.
2. Examination of CSF.
3. Detection of antiviral antibodies in both serum and CSF. Often the ratio of CSF/serum antibody increases the sensitivity of the diagnosis.
4. Amplification of viral-specific DNA or RNA from CSF.
5. Agarose electrophoresis of CSF gamma globulin may reveal oligoclonal bands in HTLV-1, mumps, HIV or rubella meningitis.

CLASSIFY NEUROSYPHILIS :

Nurosyphilis is very rare now-a-days and only considered as a theoretical possibility.

(A) Meningovascular—
- I. Cerebral :
  - a) Asymptomatic neurosyphilis.
  - b) Acute syphilitic meningitis.
  - c) Cerebral pachymeningitis.
  - d) Cerebral leptomeningitis.
  - e) Cerebral endarteritis obliterans (may produce hemiplegia).
  - f) Cerebral gumma (behaves like a SOL).
- II. Spinal :
  - a) Pachymeningitis hypertrophic cervicalis.
  - b) Chronic meningomyelitis.
  - c) Erb's spastic paraplegia.
  - d) Spinal endarteritis obliterans.
  - e) Syphilitic amyotrophy.
  - f) Syphilitic radiculitis.

(B) Parenchymatous—
- a) General paresis of insane (GPI)—Cerebral.
- b) Tabes dorsalis—Spinal.
- c) Taboparesis (tabes dorsalis plus GPI).

CLUE TO DIAGNOSIS OF FUNGAL MENINGITIS

Lymphocytic pleocytosis with low sugar level may suggest fungal meningitis (indicates tuberculous aetiology too). The CSF may show the fungus e.g., it is seen as budding yeast cells and surrounded by a gelatinous capsule in 'India ink preparation' in case of cryptococcus meningitis.

* Remember, in viral meningitis focal neurological signs are rare though high pyrexia is associated with. In comparison to pyogenic meningitis, headache is a prominent feature here.

MENINGISM

Naked-eye examination:

Pressure	-	++
Appearance		Clear
On standing	-	No coagulum formation

Chemical examination :

Protein		35 mg%
Sugar	-	70 mg%
Chloride	-	730 mg%

Microscopic examination :

Total cells	–	4 /mm^3
Polymorphs	–	Nil
Lymphocytes	–	100%

Bacteriological examination:

Ordinary culture shows no growth (sterile)

Interpretation :

All the parameters in macroscopic, chemical, microscopic and bacteriological examination are within normal limits except the raised CSF pressure.

For all probabilities, no specific diagnosis can be given. In the presence of raised CSF pressure, the most likely diagnosis is meningism which requires clinical correlation.

Inference :

The chart deals with meningism.

WHAT IS MENINGISM ?

It is synonymous with meningeal irritation as a result of some local or systemic infection without any direct infection/inflammation of CNS. The symptoms of meningism often mimic meningitis.

Clinical associations :

1. Enteric fever.
2. Pneumonia (commonly atypical variety).
3. Empyema thoracis.
4. Diphtheria.
5. Acute pyogenic tonsillitis.
6. Viral encephalitis.
7. Weil's disease.
8. Non-infectious conditions like leukaemia, lymphoma, subarachnoid haemorrhage, sarcoidosis, malignancy, SLE.

One may find positive neck rigidity in meningism which is usually painless. Meningitis produces painful neck rigidity. Kemig's sign is less pronounced in meningism.

Though passive resistance to head flexion is present in cerebral malaria, signs of meningism are always absent.

SUBARACHNOID HAEMORRHAGE

Naked-eye examination :

Pressure	- ++
Appearance	Blood -stained and uniformly red on standing
On prolonged standing	Supernanent fluid is yellow

Chemical examination :

Protein	500 mg%
Sugar	70 mg%
Chloride	725 mg%

Microscopic examination :

Total cells	Plenty
Polymorphs	few
Lymphocytes	few
RBC	$_{10000}/mm^3$, few are crenated

Bacteriological examination:

Ordinary culture shows no growth (sterile)

Interpretation :

1. CSF pressure is high. The fluid is blood-stained and on prolonged standing, supernatent fluid becomes yellow. These findings are highly suggestive of subarachnoid haemorrhage.
2. Total protein is raised probably due to added protein from blood. Sugar and chloride content are within normal limits.

3. Total cell count is raised. Plenty of RBC are seen of which few are crenated. They indicate the diagnosis of subarachnoid haemorrhage.

Inference :

The chart deals with subarachnoid haemorrhage (SAH).

* D/D of this chart is traumatic haemorrhage in the CSF. In traumatic haemorrhage, CSF pressure is not altered and the CSF protein content is not so high.

CAUSES OF HAEMORRHAGIC CSF :

The common possibilities are,

1. Subarachnoid haemorrhage.
2. Trauma.
3. Extensive cerebral haemorrhage (dissecting).
4. Haemorrhagic encephalitis.
5. Bleeding diathesis.

For *diffemtiation between subarachnoid haemorrhage and trauma,* read the 'Lumbar puncture needle' from the 'Instruments and procedures' section. Extensive cerebral haemorrhage may develop into secondary subarachnoid haemorrhage. CSF shows lymphocytic pleocytosis in haemorrhagic encephalitis. Bleeding diathesis is diagnosed clinically and by coagulation profile.

AETIOLOGY OF SUBARACHNOID HAEMORRHAGE :

(A) Primary : Rupture of,

a) Saccular or berry aneurysm—Congential defect; commonest.
b) Arteriovenous malformations or dural arteriovenous fistula.
c) Mycotic aneurysm (may arise from endocarditis).
d) Traumatic/dissecting aneurysm.
e) Atherosclerotic aneurysm.
f) Neoplastic aneurysm.
g) Angioma.
h) Bleeding diathesis or use of anticoagulants.

(B) Secondary :

a) Dissecting intracerebral bleed—Specially in a hypertensive subject.
b) Haemorrhage into cerebral infarct.
c) Haemorrhage into cerebral tumour.

* The berry aneurysms are commonly located at :

1. Posterior communicating-internal carotid arterty junction.
2. Anterior communicating-anterior cerebral artery junction.
3. Middle Cerebral artery bifurcation region.

CONGENITAL MALFORMATIONS ASSOCIATED WITH BERRY ANEURYSM :

1. Polycystic kidneys.
2. Coarctation of aorta.
3. Arteriovenous malformations.
4. Elhers-Danlos syndrome, Marfan's syndrome.
5. Moya-moya disease.

COMMON CLINICAL FEATURES IN SAH :

1. Sudden onset of excruciating occipital headache.
2. Vomiting.
3. Convulsions, collapse and coma may be present.
4. *Neck rigidity and positive Kemig's sign.*
5. Features of increased intracranial tension.
6. Focal signs e.g., visual field defect, Illrd nerve palsy, hemiplegia etc (not common).
7. Fundoscopy reveals subhyaloid haemorrhage.
8. A bruit may be audible over the eyes or head in arteriovenous malformation.

COMMON COMPLICATIONS OF SAH :

There are four major causes of delayed neurodeficit in SAH.

1. Rebleed — Risk of rebleeding is usual in first 2 weeks (greatest between 5th and 9th day).
2. Vasospasm — May occur between 4-14 days (most frequent at 7 day) of initial event and may predispose to focal ischaemic deficit.
3. Hydrocephalus — Blockage of normal CSF may lead to acute, subacute or chronic hydrocephalus necessitating ventricular drainage.
4. Hyponatraemia — Usually occurs within first 2 weeks as a result of SIADH.

INVESTIGATIONS PERFORMED TO DIAGNOSE SAH :

1. Lumbar puncture and CSF analysis (the hallmark of diagnosis is blood in the CSF).
2. CT scan (high-quality non-contrast).
3. MRI scan.
4. Magnetic resonance angiography (MRA)—usually in patients who are fit for surgery (awake and < 65 years).
5. Digital subtraction angiography (DSA), or cerebral angiography (i.e., four-vessel conventional X-ray angiography involvong both carotids and both vertebral arteries).

* Now-a-days, CT imaging is the first investigation of choice and subsequently lumbar puncture is done if CT remains inconclusive.

WHY THE SUPERNATENT FLUID (CSF) IN SAH IS YELLOW ON PROLONGED STANDING ?

The uniformly sanguinous CSF develops yellow supernatent fluid on prolonged standing or centrifugation. This is known as xanthochromia. In the early stages, it is due to oxyhaemoglobin formation but lately bilirubin is responsible for.

PREVENTION OF VASOSPASM AND REBLEEDING ?

(A) Vasospasm (due to vasoconstrictor substances released from activated platelet, RBC or cerebral tissue)—It is prevented by slow calcium channel inhibitors e.g., nimodipine (30 mg/tab) is given as 2 tab 4 hourly to be started within 3-4 days of SAH and is usually continued for 3 weeks. It reduces mortality.

(B) Rebleeding (due to fibrinolysis)—Use of antifibrinolytic agent e.g., epsilon amino-caproic acid (EACA) is often considered. EACA is infused 24-48 g/day in 5% dextrose-saline over 24 hours with the help of a micro-drip apparatus. It is not routinely used as it increases the risk of delayed cerebral infarction.

XANTHOCHROMIA

Naked-eye examination:

Pressure	-	Nil
Appearance		Yellowish
On standing	-	Formation of big coagulum

Chemical examination :

Protein	-	1200 mg%
Sugar		65 mg%
Chloride		730 mg%

Microscopic examination :

Total cells	4 /mm^3
Polymorphs	Nil
Lymphocytes	100%
RBC	Nil

Bacteriological examination:

Ordinary culture shows no growth (sterile)

Queckenstedt's test :

Positive

Interpretation :

1. Absent pressure in the CSF with yellowish appearance (probably indicates xanthochromia) suggests spinal subarachnoid block.
2. Total cell count is within normal limit though the protein content is high, indicating 'albumlno-cytological dissociation'.
3. Positive Queckenstedt's test, i.e., no rise in CSF pressure on compression of internal jugular vein along with the above features confirm the diagnosis of complete spinal subarachnoid block.

Inference :

This is a chart of complete spinal subarachnoid block.

WHAT IS XANTHOCHROMIA ?

Xanthochromia is yellowish discolouration of the CSF. It is always an abnormal feature in the CSF and is commonly due to,

1. Old subarachnoid haemorrhage (due to oxyhaemoglobin and bilirubin).
2. Guillain-Barre syndrome (due to high protein).
3. Acoustic neurofibroma (due to high protein).
4. Froin's loculation syndrome (spinal block and is chiefly due to high protein).
5. Deep Jaundice (due to high bilirubin).
6. Massive old intracerebral bleed or haemorrhagic infarction (same as subarachnoid haemorrhage).
7. Subdural haematoma (rare).

CAUSES OF SPINAL SUBARACHNOID BLOCK :

1. Spinal tumours e.g., meningioma, neurofibroma.
2. Patchy arachnoiditis.
3. Spinal epidural abscess.

WHAT IS FROIN'S LOCULATION SYNDROME ?

This syndrome develops as a result of spinal cord compression (spinal block). CSF examination shows,

1. Low CSF pressure.
2. Xanthochromia.
3. Clot formation on standing.
4. High protein content.
5. Positive Queckenstedt's test.

WHAT *IS QUECKENSTEDT'S TEST* ?

Vide the chapter on 'Lumbar puncture needle' from 'Instruments and procedures' section.

WHAT DO YOU MEAN BY ALBUMINO CYTOLOGICAL DISSOCIATION ?

It means, there is raised protein content in the CSF without any rise in the total cell count. The probable causes are,

1. Guillain-Barre syndrome.

.2. Froin's loculation syndrome.

3. Acoustic neurofibroma.

HOW *THE PATIENT WITH SPINAL BLOCK PRESENTS* ?

The patient usually presents with features of spastic paraparesis or paraplegia (compressive myelopathy).

CHARTS ON TEMPERATURE

PREFACE:

At first, read the chapter on Abnormal temperature' from 'Bedside Clinics in Medicine, Part I' where the temperature patterns are disscused in details. However, a gist is given below :

Normal body temperature and its variations are :

1. Normal—98°F-99°F (with a diurnal variation of 1.5°F; the temperature is lowest in the morning and is highest in the evening)
2. Subnormal - Below 98°F
3. Pyrexia or febrile - Above 99°F
4. Hypothermia - Below 95°F
5. Hyperpyrexia - Above 106.7°F

Rectal or vaginal temperature > oral temperature > axillary temperature

* Tympanic membrane (TM) thermometers measure radiant heat from the tympanic membrane, and is lower than rectal temperature.

** Recently fever has been defined like this : AM temperature (oral) of > 98.9°F and PM temperature (oral) of > 99.9°F.

Types of fever :

I. Intermittent—Fever is present only for several hours and always touches the baseline sometime during the day. It has three subdivisions :
   a) Quotidian—When the paroxysm of fever occurs daily (i.e., daily rise and daily fall).
   b) Tertian—When the paroxysm occurs on alternate days (i.e., a gap of 48 hours).
   c) Quartan—When two days intervene between consecutive paroxysmal attacks (i.e., a gap of 72 hours).

II. Continued—Fever does not fluctuate more than 1°C (1.5°F) during the 24-hours period and it never touches the baseline.

III. Remittent—Daily fluctuation of fever is more than 2°C (3°F) during the 24-hours period and it never touches the baseline.

Appearance of rash in a febrile patient :

Mnemonics : 'very sick person must take double tea' stands for :

1st day — Varicella (chickenpox)
2nd day— Scarlet fever
3rd day — Pox (small pox; eradicated globally)
4th day — Measles
5th day — Typhus
6th day — Dengue
7th day — Typhoid or enteric fever

Onset of pyrexia may be :

a) Sudden—e.g., Malaria, lobar pneumonia,
b) Gradual—e.g., Enteric fever.

Epidemiological clues to fever/rash :

1. Male homosexuals : HIV, hepatitis B, amoebiasis
2. Travel abroad ; Malaria, typhoid, giardiasis, hepatic amoebiasis
3. Cats : Toxoplasmosis, tularaemia
4. Dogs : Leptospirosis
5. Sewerage workers/water sports : Leptospirosis
6. Hunting : Tularaemia, lyme disease
7. Hiking : Giardiasis, rocky mountain spotted fever
8. Raw meat : Brucellosis
9. Raw milk : Bovine tuberculosis, toxoplasmosis, brucellosis
10. Raw egg : Typhoid
11. I.V drug abuser : HIV, hepatitis B, infective endocarditis

* The term 'fastigium' is the period of highest rise in a temperature curve.

** In the clinical thermometer, an arrow is marked at 98-6°F or 37°C indicating normal body temperature (axillary temperature).

QUOTIDIAN TEMPERATURE

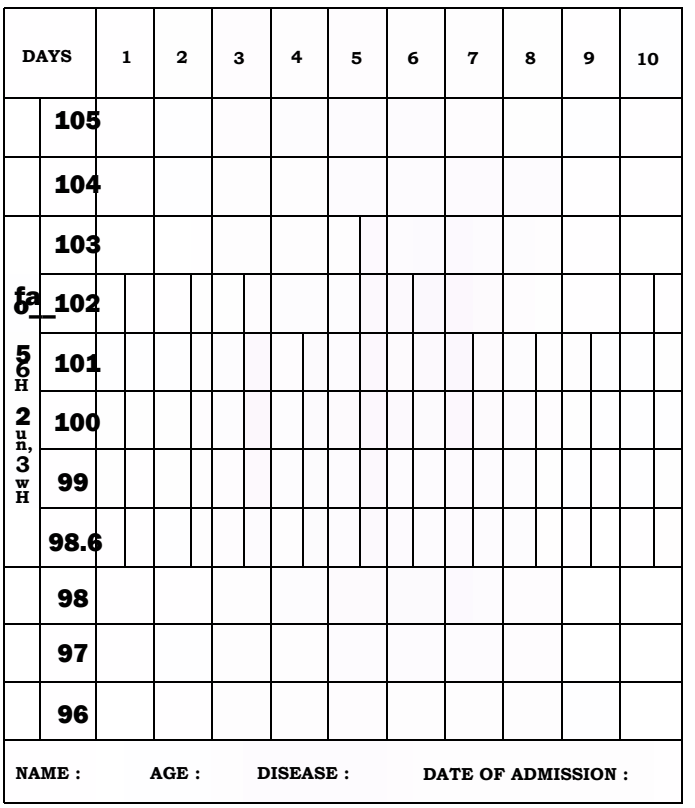


Fig. 7.6 : Quotidian temperature

Inference :

The chart shows daily rise of temperature with daily fall. So. this is the quotidian variety of intermittent temperature.

CAUSES OF QUOTIDIAN TEMPERATURE :

1. Double infection of P. vivax.
2. Pent-up pus anywhere in the body.
3. Tuberculosis.
4. Urinary tract infection.
5. Amoebic liver abscess.
6. Septicaemia.
7. Filariasis.

IS IT THE COMMON TYPE OF TEMPERATURE IN P. VIVAX INFECTION ?

No. Tertian variety of intermittent temperature is commonly seen in P.vivax malaria.

TEMPERATURE PATTERN IN 'PENT-UP PUS' ANYWHERE IN THE BODY ?

It is known as **'hectic' temperature.** There is wide swings in the temperature and the temperature rises with chill and rigor, then persists for few hours, and suddenly falls with profuse perspiration.

Common examples are lung abscess, pyogenic liver abscess, empyema thoracis, empyema of gall bladder, subdiaphragmatic abscess, acute osteomyelitis. Hectic temperature may also be seen in septicaemia or pyaemia.

WHAT IS MEANT BY 'DOUBLE INFECTION' OF P. VIVAX ?

It is the infection by two different P.vivax types having different life cycles.

Often different species of malaria parasites develop in the same mosquito and may transmit the

infection to man giving rise to 'mixed infection', the commonest being P.vivax and P. falciparum species. This type of mixed infection may also give rise to quotidian temperature.

IMPORTANCE OF 'THICK' AND 'THIN' FILM BLOOD SMEAR IN MALARIA :

(A) Thick film :
   a) For screening
   b) Helpful in low parasitaemia

(B) Thin film :
   a) For confirmation of diagnosis
   b) Identification of the species
   c) Quantity load in P. falciparum

WHAT ARE PYROGENS ?

Pyrogens are substances that produce fever. It may be of two types : exogenous and endogenous. The exogenous pyrogens are microorganisms, their products, or toxin; chemically they are lipopolysaccharides. The endogenous pyrogens are chemically polypeptides produced primarily by macrophages/ monocytes. Common examples are interleukin-1, interleukin-6, tumour necrosis factor (TNF) a, interferon a (in *a* general sense, collectively known as *cytokines).*

TERTIAN TEMPERATURE

DAYS		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
	105										
	104										
	103										
	102										
	101										
	100										
	99										
	98.6										
	98										
	97										
	96										
NAME :		AGE :		DISEASE :			DATE OF ADMISSION :				

Fig. 7.7 : Tertian temperature

Inference :

As the temperature comes on alternate days and touches the baseline, this is the tertian variety of intermittent temperature (i.e., the temperature shoots on 1st, 3rd, 5th, 7th, 9th days and so on).

CAUSES OF TERTIAN TEMPERATURE :

1. Benign tertian malaria (commonly by P. vivax and rarely by P. ovale or malariae).
2. Malignant tertian malaria (P. falciparum).

ASEXUAL CYCLE IN DIFFERENT TYPES OF PLASMODIUM :

I. P. vivax and P. ovale — 48 hours.
II. P. falciparum — Less than 48 hours.
III. P. malariae — 72 hours.

This determines the temperature pattern in different types of Plasmodium infection.

DIFFERENT STAGES IN MALARIAL PAROXYSM' :

There are 3 stages :

1. Cold stage (chill, shivering, rigor, teeth chattering, goose flesh),
2. Hot stage (feels hot, hot flush, throbbing headache, prostration, vomiting), and
3. Stage of sweating (drenching sweat, defervescence of fever, exhaustion).

The patient usually remains afebrile in between paroxyams.

* Infected female anopheline mosquito -> sporozoites inoculated in man -> goes into liver -» merozoites leave the liver -> invades RBC -> produce schizonts -> rupture of schizonts releases many merozoites into the blood and produces fever.

PATHOGENESIS OF CHILL, RIGOR AND SWEATING :

Normal temperature is maintained in health by regulating a balance between heat gain and heat loss, governed by the hypothalamus.

It should be looked upon in the setting of 'thermostat'. When the temperature is rising to a higher level, heat is being conserved, the cutaneous vessels are constricted (so the patient feels cold/chill) and the patient may even shiver violently. The shivering is known as 'rigor', and often associated with pilo-erection and teeth chattering.

When the higher temperature is reached, heat loss starts and the cutaneous vessels starts dilating for dissipation of heat. The patient feels hot and sweating starts.

CAUSES OF gUARTAN TEMPERATURE :

It is found in quartan malaria (P. malariae) which is rare in India.

CAUSES OF HYPERPYREXIA :

1. Malaria.
2. Septicaemia.
3. Encephalitis.
4. Pontine haemorrhage.
5. Lobar pneumonia.
6. Heat stroke.
7. Dhatura poisoning.
8. Malignant hyperthermia (halothane-induced).
9. Thyroid storm.
10. Neuroleptic malignant syndrome (haloperidol-induced).
11. Rabies.
12. Drug-induced (e.g., amphetamines).
13. Serotonin syndrome (SSRI/MAOI-induced).

* Fever is due to elevated set-point of the thermostat whereas hyperpyrexia results from inadequate heat dissipation.

ENUMERATE THE CAUSES OF HYPOTHERMIA :

1. Myxoedema coma.
2. Prolonged exposure to cold (in street beggars, accidental or in mountaineering).
3. Peripheral circulatory failure due to any cause.
4. Enteric fever if associated with haemorrhage or perforation (commonly in the 3rd week).
5. Hypoglycaemia.
6. Panhypopituitarism.
7. Adrenal insufficiency.
8. Artificial hypothermia induced in open heart surgery.
9. Extreme wasting as in starvation, terminal stage of malignancy.
10. Near-drowing.

CAUSES OF FEVER WITH CHILL AND RIGOR :

1. Malaria.
2. Urinary tract infection.
3. Pent-up pus anywhere in the body e.g., subdiaphragmatic abscess.
4. Septicaemia or pyaemia.

5. Cholangitis.
6. Subacute bacterial endocarditis.
7. Thrombophlebitis.
8. Acute pyelitis or acute pyelonephritis.
9. Acute lobar pneumonia.
10. Pyrogen reaction after fluid infusion or blood transfusion.
11. Filariasis.
12. Agranulocytosis.

ESSENTIAL INQUIRIES IN A CASE OF 'PYREXIA'

1. Localising symptoms.
2. Loss of weight.
3. Joint pain.
4. Immunosuppression.
5. Substance abuse.
6. Medications.
7. Travel.
8. H/O contact.

CONTINUED TEMPERATURE

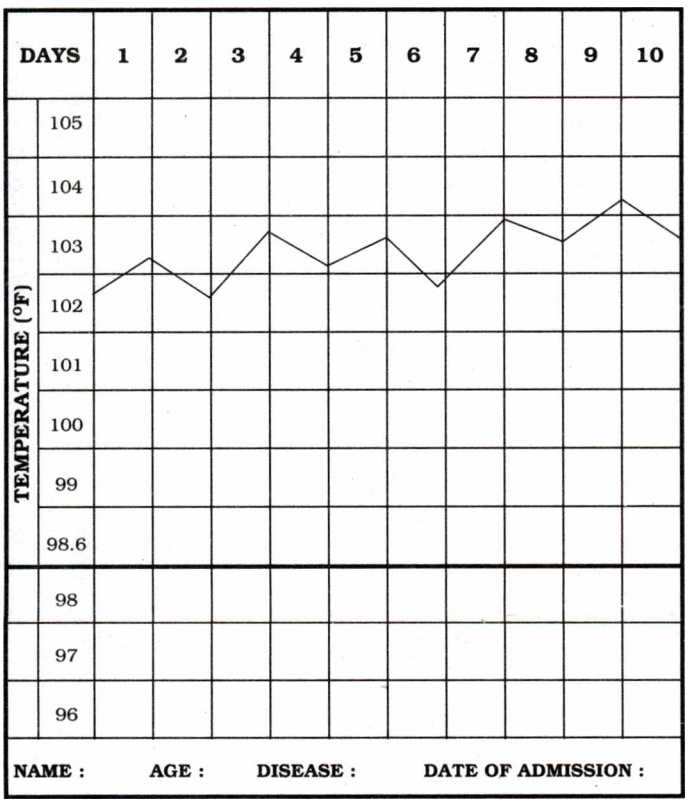


Fig. 7.8 : Continued temperature

Inference :

The fluctuation of temperature is limited within 1.5°F and it does not touch the baseline. This is a chart showing continued type of pyrexia.

CAUSES OF CONTINUED TEMPERATURE :

1. Lobar pneumonia.
2. Second week of enteric fever.
3. Miliary tuberculosis.
4. Meningococcal meningitis.
5. Acute rheumatic fever.
6. Subacute bacterial endocarditis (SBE).
7. Untreated urinary tract infection.
8. Collagen vascular diseases (e.g., SLE).
9. Lymphoma or leukaemias.

FEATURES OF ENTERIC FEVER IN THE SECOND WEEK :

(A) Symptoms :

1. Disappearance of headache.
2. Continued type of high pyrexia.
3. Constipation is usually replaced by 'pea-soup diarrhoea' (loose, greenish stool).
4. Lethargy and apathy appear.
5. Abdominal distention (meteorism).
6. Cough may be present (due to bronchitis).

(B) Signs :

1. Pulse—Tachycardia appears, dicrotic pulse usually disappears. Pulse is of low volume.
2. Tongue remains dry and coated.
3. Soft and mildly tender splenomegaly. Abdomen is distended and may be tender.
4. Rose spots may appear on 7th to 10th day.
5. Lungs may shows features of bronchitis/bronchopneumonia.

WHAT IS TYPHOID FACIES' ?

Classically the description goes like this : the face is thin and flushed; bright eyes and a dull, heavy, staring, apathetic expression. This type of facial appearance is characteristic of a patient of enteric fever who is progressing into the third week.

AETIOLOGY OF ENTERIC FEVER :

1. Transmitted by faecal-oral route through the contamination of milk, food or water.
2. The bacilli may persist in the gall bladder of chronic carriers for months or years.
3. Incubation period is 10-14 days.
4. a) Typhoid fever is caused by Salmonella typhi.
   b) Paratyphoid fever is due to S. paratyphi A and B.

DIAGNOSIS OF ENTERIC FEVER :

(A) First week :

a) Though in most patients the WBC count is normal, 25% patients may have leucopenia and neutropenia.
b) Blood culture (90%)—Often clot culture is done.
c) Culture of bone marrow aspirates will yield the organism (85-95%) even earlier than blood culture—Not used routinely is clinical practice.

(B) Second week :

a) Widal test (95%).
b) Blood culture (60%).

(C) Third week :

a) Stool culture (75%).
b) Widal test (95% in high titre).
c) Blood culture (50%).
d) Urine culture (70%).

(D) Fourth week ;

a) Urine culture (70%).
b) Stool culture (50%).
c) Widal test.
d) Blood culture (25%).

Mnemonics : Basu, i.e., the most efficacious test in first week—Blood culture, second week—Agglutination test (Widal test), third week—Stool culture, and in fourth week—Urine culture. Figure within the bracket indicates positivity in percentage of cases.

* The hallmark of enteric fever is prolonged and persistent pyrexia, if remains untreated. Leucopenia and relative bradycardia are typical.

LEUCOCYTOSIS IN ENTERIC FEVER :

If enteric fever is complicated by perforation or bronchopneumonia, leucocytosis may be observed.

WHAT ARE ROSE *SPOTS :*

These are sparse, small rose-red, blanching, slightly raised macules mainly present over upper abdomen and chest during the end of the first week of illness. It is usually visible only on fair-skinned persons. The lesions last only 2-3 days and result from bacterial embolism. Salmonella can be cultured from the biopsy of rose spots.

WHAT IS WIDAL TEST ?

1. It is an agglutination reaction where agglutinating antibodies develop against O, H and Vi-antigens.
2. It is usually positive from 7-10 days and onwards.
3. *The O-agglutinins are more valuable in active disease* than H-agglutinins which may develop as a result of previous inoculation or there may be an anamnestic rise. Vi-agglutinin develops after 3-4 weeks of illness and thus not used routinely for early diagnosis (important in diagnois of carriers).
4. A four-fold 'rising titre' is very suggestive of enteric fever. The titre has no correlation with the severity of illness.
5. A titre (against O-antigen) above 1:160 is suggestive and a titre above 1 : 640 is often very significant of enteric fever in a non-immunised person.
6. It is not a very reliable test and should be interpreted with caution, specially in typhoid vaccinated patients. Due to high rates of false positivity and false negativity, misinterpretation is very common. Now-a-days, Widal test is not preferred by the clinicians.

WHAT IS TYPHOID STATE ?

The untreated enteric fever patient may enter into severe toxaemic state along with high rise of temperature usually at the end of second week or onset of the third week of illness, and is manifested by some neurological (encephalitis-like) features like,

1. Semiconsciousness or unconsciousness.
2. Low muttering delirium.
3. Coma vigil—Patient lies with half-open eyes but ignorant of his surroundings (staring stupor).
4. Subsultus tendinum—Involuntary movements of fingers and wrists due to muscular twitching.
5. Carphology—Agitated plucking of the bed sheets, and
6. Convulsions rarely.

This is a moribund situation and should be tackled immediately with intravenous dexamethasone or hydrocortisone hemisuccinate along with parenteral antimicrobials (chloramphenicol, ceftriaxone).

* Steroids should not be used in the third or fourth week in classical enteric fever as there is chance of precipitation of intestinal haemorrhage or perforation.

** Features like meningism may be present in typhoid state.

LIFE-THREATENING COMPLICATIONS IN ENTERIC FEVER :

1. Typhoid state.
2. Intestinal haemorrhage or perforation (usually in the 3rd or 4th week).
3. Acute pancreatitis (rare).
4. Acute peripheral circulatory failure: endotoxic shock.
5. Myocarditis.
6. DIC (Disseminated Intravascular Coagulation).
7. Septicaemia, pyaemia.
8. Meningitis.

* Two other important complications (late) are carrier state and chronic cholecystitis.

IMMUNISATION AGAINST ENTERIC FEVER :

(A) Oral : Contain life-attenuated S. typhi. 4 doses : One capsule to be taken 1 hour prior to meal with cold or lukewarm water on every alternate days (on days 1,3,5 and 7). Totally 4 capsules are required (Typhoral). Booster dose to be repeated after every 5 years. The *minimal age for* vaccination is 6 years.

(B) Parenteral : Purified Vi-polysaccharlde inactivated vaccine prepared from bacterial capsule (Vi CPS). Single dose : One injection of 0.5 ml (Typhim VI) given I.M or deep S.C. Booster dose to be repeated every 2 years. The minimum age for vaccination is 2 years.

REMITTENT TEMPERATURE

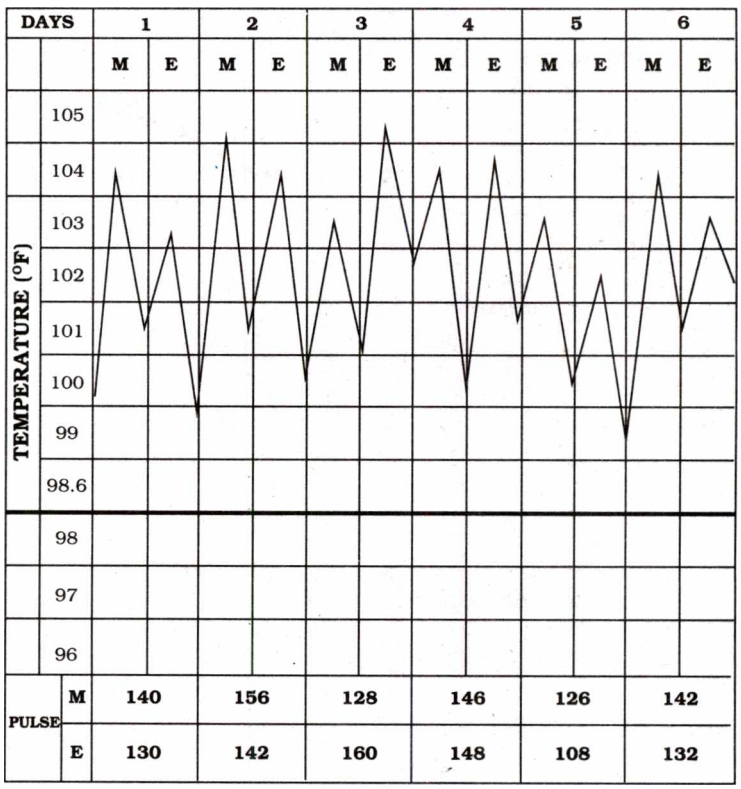


Fig. 7.9 : Remittent temperature

Inference :

The fluctuation of temperature is more than 3°F and it does not touch the baseline. There is a special feature in this chart, i.e., double rise of temperature on the same day and is known as double quotidian temperature. Basically, the chart deals with remittent type of pyrexia.

CAUSES *OF REMITTENT TEMPERATURE :*

1. Amoebic liver abscess.
2. Urinary tract infection.
3. Third week of enteric fever.
4. Acute bronchopneumonia.
4. Acute tonsillitis.
6. Bacteraemia, septicaemia, pyaemia.

PROBABLE CAUSES OF DOUBLE QUOTIDIAN (CAMEL HUMP FEVER) PYREXIA :

It is the double fever spike in a single day and is seen in :

1. Kala-azar (commonest cause).
2. Gonococcal perihepatitis or endocarditis.
3. Sometimes in acute bacterial endocarditis.

* This type of fever is often known as 'rabbit-ear patten' pyrexia.

WHAT IS PUO ?

It is also known as fever of unknown origin (FUO). Criteria to diagnose PUO are (Petersdorf and Beeson, 1961) :

1. Fever higher than 101°F on several occasions.
2. A duration of fever for more than 3 weeks.
3. Failure to reach a provisional diagnosis after one week of inpatient investigations.

Now-a-days PUO is classified as (Durack and Street, 1991) :

1. Classical PUO (as previous definition except the time frame which is 3 outpatient visits or 3 days in hospital without determining the cause, or one week of intelligent and invasive ambulatory investigations). Classical PUO may be due to infections, collagen vascular diseases, inflammatory diseases, malignancy, drug fever, factitious fever, habitual hyperthermia.
2. Nosocomial PUO (hospital-acquired)—Commonly due to septic thrombophlebitis, Cl. difficile colitis, drug fever etc.
3. Neutropenic PUO—The neutrophil count falls below 500/mm^3 and is commonly due to perianal infection, Candida or Aspergillus infection.
4. HIV-associated PUO—As a result of tuberculosis, mycobacterium avium intracellulare (MAI), toxoplasmosis, pneumocystis carinii, cryptococcosis, non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, drug fever.

COMMON CAUSES OF PUO IN INDIA :

1. Tuberculosis, amoebic liver abscess, SBE, chronic kala-azar, malaria, cryptococcosis, cysticercosis, AIDS.
2. Acute rheumatic fever, SLE, vasculitis.
3. Lymphomas, leukaemias, multiple myeloma, hypernephroma.
4. Drug fever, faulty thermometer, factitious fever.

* The success in diagnosing PUO rests on meticulous history taking (with special reference to family, occupational and recent travel history), repeated interview with the patient, thinking about the patient and careful physical examination.

PROBABLE CAUSES OF 'ASEPTIC FEVER' :

1. Heatstroke.
2. Lymphoma, leukaemias or disseminated malignancy.
3. Collagen vascular disease e.g., SLE.
4. Pontine haemorrhage.
5. Thyroid storm.
6. Drug fever, e.g.. rifampicin or sulphonamide-induced.
7. Acute myocardial infarction.
8. Gout.
9. Crush injury.
10. Over-atropinisation.
11. Radiation sickness.

ABSENT FEVER IN SUBACUTE BACTERIAL ENDOCARDITIS (SBE) :

1. Elderly patients.
2. Severe sepsis.
3. Congestive cardiac failure or renal failure.
4. Prior antimicrobial therapy.
5. Fungal endocarditis.

STEP-LADDER PATTERN PYREXIA

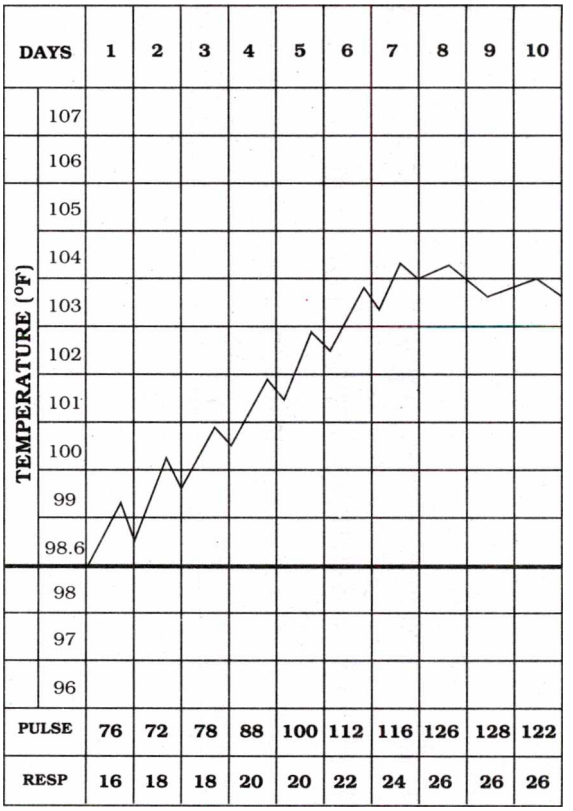


Fig. 7.10 : Step-ladder pattern pyrexia

Inference :

The above chart shows gradually increasing pattern of pyrexia for first 7 days of illness and may be called 'step-ladder pattern' pyrexia. The rise in the pulse rate shown in the chart is not corresponding to the elevated temperature and relative bradycardia is noted. The temperature pattern from 8th to 10th day is of continued in type.

The temperature pattern deals with pyrexia due to enteric fever/typhoid fever.

FEATURES OF ENTERIC FEVER IN ITS FIRST WEEK :

1. Step-ladder pattern of pyrexia.
2. Frontal headache.
3. Constipation (diarrhoea, vomiting and pain abdomen may be seen in children).
4. Anorexia, nausea, cough and epistaxis.
5. Flushed face with toxic look.
6. Angry looking tongue—Central coating with red tip and margins.
7. Caecal gurgling (due to presence of fluid faeces and air).
8. Relative bradycardia and rarely dicrotic pulse.
9. Rose spots appearing on the 7th day (usually appears on 7th-10 day).
10. There may be just palpable, soft and tender spleen at the end of first week.

WHAT IS 'STEP-LADDER PATTERN' PYREXIA ?

1. The temperature of today always exceeds that of previous day.
2. Usually the temperature rises (2°F) in the evening and falls (1°F) in the next morning.
3. It is basically continued or remittent type of pyrexia (i.e., not touching the baseline).

PATTERN OF PYREXIA IN DIFFERENT WEEKS OF ENTERIC FEVER :

1. 1st week — Step-ladder pattern.
2. 2nd week — Continued.
3. 3rd week — Continued or remittent type with fluctuation of 3°-4°F. There may be 'fall by crisis' of temperature as a result of haemorrhage of perforation.
4. 4th week — Reverse step-ladder pattern, i.e., temperature 'falls by lysis'.

WHAT IS RELATIVE BRADYCARDIA ?

It is known that with per degree (°F) rise of temperature in an adult, the pulse rate increases by 10 beats /minute. If the increase in pulse rate is less than 10 beats/minute with per degree (°F) rise of temperature, the condition is known as relative bradycardia. It is commonly found in,

1. Any viral illness (e.g., in yellow fever—known as Faget's sign; dengue).
2. First week of enteric fever.
3. Sometimes in pyogenic meningitis.
4. Brucellosis, psittacosis, Weil's disease.
5. Drug fever, factitious fever.

WHAT IS MEANT BY 'FALL BY CRISIS' AND 'FALL BY LYSIS' ?

Fall of temperature is also known as defervescence. They are :

(A) Fall by crisis—When the pyrexia falls to nornal or subnormal level very quickly within 6-12 hours and is associated with severe sweating, it is known as fall by crisis. It is usually found in,

1. Acute lobar pneumonia.
2. Enteric fever complicated by intestinal haemorrhage or perforation.
3. Adrenal crisis (seen in meningococcal meningitis).
4. Septicaemic shock.
5. Dengue.

(B) Fall by lysis—When the temperature falls gradually in steps over several days, it is known as fall by lysis. It is usually found in,

1. Uncomplicated enteric fever.
2. Rheumatic fever.
3. Acute bronchopneumonia.

* Most of the raised temperature falls by lysis. Use of antipyretics (paracetamol) may precipitate fall by crisis.

NEWER DIAGNOSTIC TESTS IN ENTERIC FEVER :

Slide agglutination test, indirect haemagglutination test, ELISA (IgG and IgM), counterimmunoelectrophoresis, enzyme immunoassay, PCR, IgM capture, monoclonal antibodies, DNA probes etc. Though highly sensitive, the tests are very costly.

TEMPERATURE CHART ON MEASLES

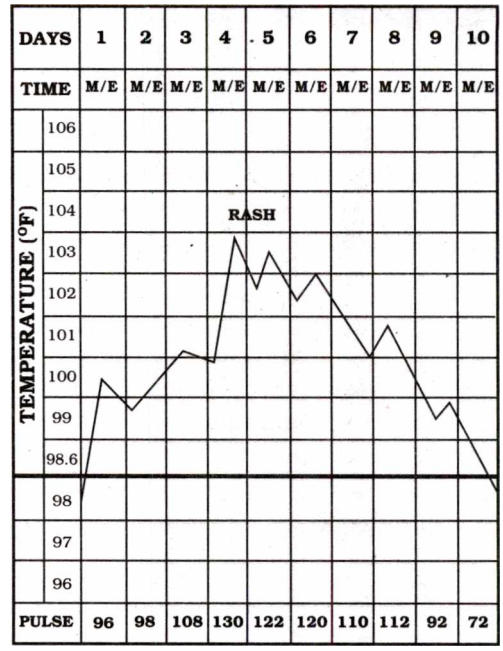


Fig. 7.11 : Temperature chart on measles

Inference :

The temperature shoots upto 100.5°F on the first day and then persists for next 2 days as continued in type. The chart shows that on the 4th day, the temperature again elevates upto 104°F with the appearance of rash in the body. Thereafter, pyrexia gradually **falls by lysis** on next 5 days, making the patient afebrile on the 10th day.

The pattern of pyrexia as well as the *appearance of rash on the fourth day* strongly indicate the diagnosis of measles.

AETIOLOGY:

Synonym — Rubeola.

Infective agent—Paramyxovirus (RNA virus).

Age—Young children are mostly affected.

Spread—By droplet infection.

Route of infection—Nasopharynx.

Incubation period—7-14 days (mean 10 days).

STAGES OF ILLNESS IN MEASLES :

1. Catarrhal stage.
2. Exanthematous stage.
3. Recovery stage.

DESCRIBE THE CHARACTERISTIC RASH IN MEASLES (EXANTHEM) :

1. Usually appears on the fourth day, maculo-papular in type. Rash first appears at the back of the ears, and at the junction of skin and hair on the forehead; ultimately face, neck, trunk, limbs upto palms and soles may be affected. The density of rash is found to be greatest on the forehead.

2. Rashes are discrete, pink, and blanch on pressure. Later they become confluent giving rise to characteristic blotchy appearance. Measle's rash is also known as *morbilliform rash.*
3. Rash disappears in the reverse order of appearance giving rise to a faint brown staining of the skin followed by a fine desquamation.

WHAT IS KOPLIK'S SPOT (ENANTHEM) ?

1. Koplik's spots are virtually pathognomonic of measles. Usually appears on the second day of illness and disappear before the appearance of exanthem (true rash).
2. These are tiny white or bluish-white spots surrounded by a. narrow zone of inflammation around the opening of the parotid duct, i.e., in the buccal mucous membrane (inner aspect of cheek) opposite the crown of upper second molar teeth. This stage is highly infectious.

ATYPICAL MEASLES :

It is seen in persons who has taken formalin-inactivated measles vaccine (not used after 1970) and were subsequently exposed to measles virus. It is believed to be due to hypersensitivity to measles virus induced by inactivated vaccine. The disease is severe with haemorrhagic rashes, oedema, high pyrexia and interstitial pulmonary infiltrates.

ADULT MEASLES :

Like many other viral infections, adult measles is severe in adults than in children. Rash is more severe and confluent, often with bacterial superinfection (e.g.. otitis media, sinusitis, pneumonia). Hepatitis and bronchospasm are more common.

PERIOD OF INFECTIVITY IN MEASLES :

The catarrhal stage and upto 5 days after appearance of morbilliform rash is highly infectious. The total duration of illness in a classical case is 10 days or less.

CHANGES OCCUR WITH MEASLES :

1. Transient loss of PPD (Mantoux test becomes negative).
2. Improvement of eczema and bronchial asthma.
3. Remission of leukaemia, lipoid nephrosis and Hodgkin's disease.

MAJOR COMPLICATIONS OF MEASLES :

(A) Three 'tubes' are mainly affected like,
   1. Otitis media,
   2. Bronchopneumonia, and
   3. Gastroenteritis.

(B) Bronchitis and bronchiolitis, giant cell pneumonia, conjunctivitis, myocarditis, generalised purpura, reactivation of tuberculosis, viral encephalitis, acute encephalomyelitis, subacute sclerosing panencephalitis (SSPE; develops after several years), keratitis.

PROPHYLAXIS AGAINST MEASLES :

(A) Active—Single dose (0.5 ml) of life-attenuated viral vaccine (by Enders and colleagues) given by S.C route at 9 months of age (may be given in combination with mumps and rubella vaccine, as 'MMR' vaccine) with booster dose at $1_{1/2}$ years of age. MMR vaccine is likely to be replaced by MMRV (V for varicella) vaccine. Developing countries recommend measles vaccine at 12-15 months of age.

(B) Passive (post-exposure prophylaxis)—Human normal immunoglobulin is given within 6 days of exposure, by I.M route for attenuation of measles in contacts with the dose of,
   (i) 0.25 ml/kg—for healthy persons, and
   (ii) 0.5 ml/kg—for immunocompromised individuals.

TEMPERATURE CHART ON VARICELLA INFECTION

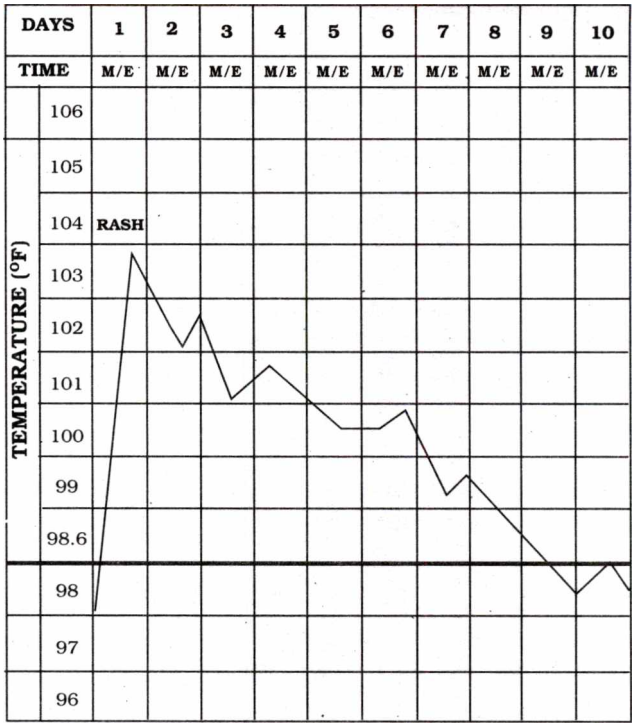


Fig. 7.12 : Temperature chart on varicella

Inference :

There is acute pyrexia on the 1st day reaching 103.8°F with the appearance of rash. Thereafter, pyrexia gradually **falls by lysis** for next 8 days and the patient becomes afebrile on the 9th day.

The pattern of pyrexia as well as the appearance of rash on the first day strongly indicate the diagnosis of varicella infection.

AETIOLOGY:

Infective agent — Varicella-zoster virus (DNA virus).

Spread — By droplet infection.

Route of infection—Nasopharynx.

Incubation period—12-21 days (mean 17 days).

Period of infectivity—Usually about a week, starting probably a day before the appearance of rash and continues upto next 6 days. *The crusts are not infective.* The patients are most infective during the prodromal period.

DESCRIBE THE CHARACTERISTIC RASH IN CHICKENPOX :

1. True rash appears on the first day of the illness. They are more dense on the trunk than on the face and limbs (centripetal). At first, it is macular in type and then rapidly passes over to papule, vesicle or even pustule.
2. Rash is mostly present on flexor surfaces. Axilla may be involved. Palms and soles are seldom affected. They are oval, superficial and likely to be ruptured very easily by simple pressure. *Rash is pleomorphic,* i.e., at a given time, different stages of rash are seen.
3. Vesicular rash are unilocular and not *umbilicated*; often surrounded by erythema. There is complete collapse on pricking. Rise of temperature occurs with appearance of each fresh crop of rash. Scabs begin to form usually 4-7 days after the appearance of rash and totally fall off within 14 days. Scar remains after separation of the crusts, which is usually not permanent.

* Total duration of illness in a classical case is 10 days.

COMPLICATIONS AFTER VARICELLA INFECTION :

1. Secondary bacterial infection of the skin lesion which may lead to septicaemia.
2. Interstitial pneumonia.
3. Encephalitis, transverse myelitis, optic neuritis, cerebellar syndrome, meningitis
4. Orchitis.
5. Myocarditis.
6. Acute glomerulonephritis.

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS OF CHICKENPOX RASH :

1. Herpes zoster.
2. Impetigo contagiosa.
3. Dermatitis herpetiformis.
4. Bullous impetigo.
5. Infected scabies.
6. Rickettsialpox.
7. Disseminated vesiculo-papular lesions associated with echovirus, coxsackievirus and atypical measles.
8. Smallpox (eradicated world-wide).

* Though eradicated, concern about **smallpox** has increased recently because of the threat of bioterrorism. The lesions of smallpox are larger than chickenpox and are monomorphic (all are at same stage of evolution at a point of time).

PROPHYLAXIS AGAINST CHICKENPOX :

(A) Active—0.5 ml of vaccine (varilrix) is given in subcutaneous route. Single dose is required upto 12 years of age. Above 13 years, 2nd dose of vaccine is given at an interval of 6-10 weeks.

(B) Passive—Varicella-zoster Immunoglobulin (VZIG) is given within 72 hours of exposure. A dose of 1.25 ml to 5 ml is administered in I.M route.

VESICLES/BULLAE IN SKIN :

Cutaneous blisters are known as vesicle (< 0.5 cm) or bulla (> 0.5 cm). Blistering (vesicle/bulla) diseases of skin are :

1. Pemphigus vulgaris.
2. Bullous pemphigoid.
3. Dermatitis herpeteformis.
4. Stevens-Johnson syndrome.
5. Toxic epidermal necrolysis.
6. Bullous impetigo.
7. Staphylococcal scalded-skin syndrome.
8. Varicella or herpes zoster infection.
9. Epidermolysis bullosa.
10. Bullosis diabeticorum.
11. Behcet's syndrome.
12. Bullous SLE.

* **Pemphigus**—An autoimmune blistering disease with intraepidermal thin-walled, flaccid, easily ruptured bullae; affects apparently normal skin and mucous membrane with less tendency to heal. Mostly seen in scalp, face and flexures though may be generalised.

Pemphigoid—Subepidermal tense bullae with less chance of rupture, and a positive tendency to heal. Mucosa of mouth and conjunctiva are rarely involved. Mostly seen in trunk, limbs and flexures. Pemphigoid may be associated with (occult) lymphoma.

TEMPERATURE CHART ON LOBAR PNEUMONIA

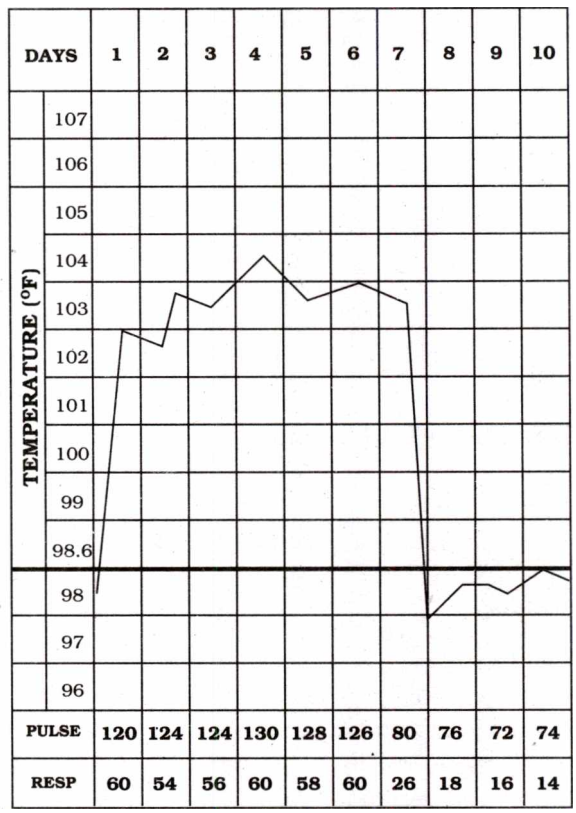


Fig. 7.13 : Temperature chart on lobar pneumonia

Inference :

Acute pyrexia on the 1st day where temperature shoots upto 103°F and remains continued in type for next 6 days. On the 7th day, temperature suddenly **falls by crisis.**

The *pulse : respiration ratio is diminished* as a result of high respiratory rate. The pulse : temperature ratio is not altered (i.e., absence of relative bradycardia or tachycardia).

The pattern of pyrexia is typically seen in acute lobar pneumonia.

WHAT IS PULSE : RESPIRATION RATIO ?

It is seen that with per degree (°F) rise of temperature, there is an increase in respiratory rate by 2 to 3/minute.

a) Normal pulse : respiration = 4:1 (72 : 18).

b) Increased pulse : respiration e.g., 12 : 1 (72 : 6) is seen in narcotic poisoning.

c) Decreased pulse : respiration e.g., 2 : 1 (112 : 56) is seen in acute lobar pneumonia.

* In a treated case of acute lobar pneumonia, temperature may fall by lysis or crisis on the 3rd or 4th day of illness.

CAUSES OF TACHYPNOEA :

1. Nervousness, exertion, anxiety.
2. Fever due to any cause.
3. Acute lobar pneumonia.
4. Left ventricular failure.
5. Acute pulmonary thromboembolism.
6. COPD.
7. Shock.
8. Acidosis.
9. ARDS or acute lung injury.
10. Hysterical hyperventilation.

Tachypnoea is increased rate of respiration (normal respiratory rate is 14-18/min).

TEMPERATURE CHART ON DENGUE

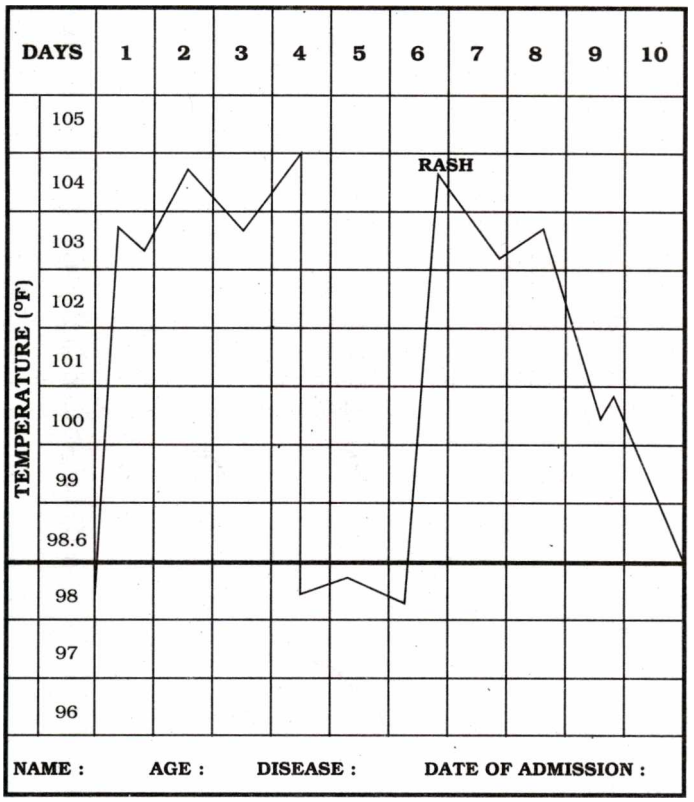


Fig. 7.14 : Temperature chart on dengue

Inference :

There is acute pyrexia on the 1st day which gradually increases on the next 3 days. Then the temperature **falls by crisis** and remains near normal for 2 more days only to reappear on the 6th day along with the development of rash. From 8th day onwards, temperature falls gradually and the patient Is afebrile on the 10th day.

This pattern of biphasic or **'saddle-back' pyrexia** is *classical of dengue.*

TYPE OF PYREXIA IN DENGUE :

It is continued or saddle-back in type, with a break usually on the 4th or 5th day. Fever persists for 7-9 days.

AETIOLOGY:

Causative agent—Arbovirus (flavivirus).

Principal vector—Aedes aegypti (mosquito).

Incubation period—2-7 days

Usual course of the disease—7-9 days (usually does not cross 10 days).

DESCRIBE THE CHARACTERISTIC RASH IN DENGUE :

(A) Primary or initial rash—Appears on the lst-2nd day. Rash is erythematous (diffuse flushing) and present over face, neck and shoulder.

(B) Secondary or true rash—Measly or morbilliform rash which appears on the 6th day of illness and is usually present over the dorsum of hands and feet. Ultimately the rash becomes generalised (mostly over the trunk) including the face. The rash may persist from 2 hours to several days and terminates by desquamation.

OTHER FEATURES IN DENGUE FEVER :

1. Pyrexia, generalised lymphadenopathy, intense headache, severe backache *('break-bonefever'),* retro-orbital pain, scleral injection, cough, epistaxis, scattered petechiae (may be with positive tourniquet test), relative bradycardia, extreme prostration.
2. Delirium, agitation, transient loss of accommodation, G.I. haemorrhage and splenomegaly may be found.

* Severe fatigue and depression are common after remission of fever.

** Chikungunya rash is of similar type but arthralgia or arthritis may be associated with.

TYPES OF DENGUE :

(A) **Classic dengue fever** : described above.

(B) **Dengue haemorrhagic fever (DHF)** : DHF is a severe form of dengue and is believed to be due to two or more sequential infections with different dengue serotypes. DHF is diagnosed on the basis of following triad—haemorrhagic manifestations (into skin, epistaxis, haematemesis, melaena), a platelet count < $100000/mm^3$ and objective evidence of plasma leakage (shown either by fluctuation of packed cell volume > 20%, or evidence of pleural effusion, ascites or hypoproteinaemia). This develops into **'dengue shock syndrome'** which is characterised by a rapid and weak pulse with narrow pulse pressure (< 20 mm of Hg), or profound hypotension. Immediate volume-replacement therapy is mandatory, otherwise the mortality rate is 40%.

IMPORTANT POINTS TO BE REMEMBERED IN THE TREATMENT OF DENGUE :

1. Don't use NSAIDs or aspirin. Paracetamol should be used for bodyache.
2. Volume replacement and blood transfusion in dengue shock syndrome (capillary leak syndrome).
3. Platelet transfusion in thrombocytopenia.

CAUSES OF HAEMORRHAGIC FEVER :

1. Dengue haemorrhagic fever (flavivirus).
2. Yellow fever (flavivirus).
3. Meningococcaemia.
4. Gram-negative septicaemia.
5. Relapsing fever (by Spirochaetes).
6. Rocky Mountain spotted fever (by Rickettsiae).
7. Plague.
8. African trypanosomiasis (protozoa).
9. Viral haemorrhagic fever (Lassa fever, Marburg/Ebola virus)
10. Disseminated gonococcal infection.

WHAT IS PERIODIC FEVER' ?

It is the periodic attacks of pyrexia alternating with a period of apyrexia, and is commonly seen in :

1. Hodgkin's disease (Pel-Ebstein temperature).
2. Brucellosis.
3. Relapsing fever.
4. Malaria.
5. Rat bite fever.
6. Dengue.

CHARTS ON LIVER FUNCTION TESTS (LFT)

PREFACE:

These tests (LFT) do not point to a specific disease but indicate the underlying pathological process. The blood tests for liver function are :

1. Serum bilirubin—The normal serum bilirubin level is 0.3-1.0 mg/dl; the conjugated fraction is
* 0.1-0.3 mg/dl and the unconjugated fraction remains 0.2-0.7 mg/dl.

   When chemical analysis reveals more than 50% conjugated bilirubin, it is considered to have predominantly conjugated hyperbilirubinaemia; and when the unconjugated bilirubin is more than 80% of the total bilirubin, the patient is considered to have primarily unconjugated hyperbilirubinaemia. Majority of hepatobiliary disorders lead to conjugated hyperbilirubinaemia. Conjugated hyperbilirubinaemia indicates impairment of secretion into the bile while unconjugated hyperbilirubinaemia points towards impaired conjugation.

   In hepato-cellular diseases e.g.. viral hepatitis or cirrhosis of liver, usually there is interference in all the three steps of bilurubin metabolism, i.e., uptake, conjugation and excretion. As excretion is the rate-limiting step and usually hampered to the greatest extent, it is the conjugated hyperbilirubinaemia which predominates in hepato-cellular disorders.

   Conventionally, serum bilirubin level upto 6 mg/dl, in between 6-15 mg/dl, and greater than 15 mg/dl are respectively known as mild, moderate and severe jaundice.

2. Aminotransferases (transaminases)—There are two enzymes which indicate hepato-cellular damage or injury to liver. Normal blood level of each enzyme is 10 -40 IU/L.

   SGPT : Serum glutamic pyruvic transaminase is now-a-days known as ALT (alanine aminotransferase).

   SGOT : Serum gluamic oxaloacetic transaminase is now-a-days known as AST (aspartate aminotransferase).

   Although raised SGPT (ALT) and SGOT (AST) levels may be observed in other non-hepatic diseases like acute myocardial infarction or skeletal muscle disorders, *SGPT (ALT) is more specific in hepato-cellular disorders than SGOT (AST).*

   SGPT (ALT) is exclusively found in the cytosol, while SGOT (AST) exists in both mitochondria and cytosol. Elevated levels are found in hepatic necrosis due to any aetiology (viral hepatitis, toxin or drug-induced hepatic injury). Low level may be seen in fulminant hepatitis (due to exhaustion) or uraemia (spurious). AST : ALT > 2 may be found in alcoholic hepatitis.

3. Alkaline phosphatase—Normal serum value is 35-130 IU/L or 3-13 KA unit (King-Armstrong). The enzyme is found in liver, bone, intestine and placenta.

   Mild to moderate elevation : In parenchymal hepatic disorders like hepatitis and cirrhosis of liver.

   Striking increase (3-10 times) occurs in biliary obstruction (extrahepatic or intrahepatic cholestasis).

   Common causes of raised serum alkaline phosphatase are pregnancy, adolescence, rickets, osteomalacia, bony metastasis, fracture of bone, sarcoidosis, hyperparathyroidism, tumours of G.I. tract, Paget's disease of bone and obstructive jaundice. The concomitant elevation of GGT (see below) and 5'-nucleotidase confirm the source of alkaline phosphatase as liver.

4. Serum proteins—They reflect the hepatic transport and synthetic function (serum bilirubin also reflects the same).

   Normal value of serum albumin is 3.5-5.5 g/dl and that of serum globulin is 2-3.5 g/dl. Albumin is synthesized by the liver. Serum globulins include alpha, beta and gamma globulin fractions (seperated on electrophoresis). In cirrhosis of liver, globulin level increases (polyclonal) due to stimulation of recticulo-endothelial system as the Kupffer cells can not clear all the antigens presented to the liver. Though albumin and globulin ratio has no physiologic significance, the ratio is often altered i.e., from 2 : 1, it tends to become 1 : 2 in cirrhosis of liver.

   A falling serum albumin in hepatic disorder is a bad prognostic sign.

5. Prothrombin time—The liver synthesizes six coagulation factors i.e., factor I, II, V, VII, IX and X. Determination of prothrombin time efficiently reflects the abnormality of these factors. As factor VII is the rate-limiting pathway in the coagulation cascade, it has the greatest influence on prothrombin time. *Prothrombin time is a very important 'prognostic marker' of hepato-cellular*

damage (i.e., a sensitive indicator of acute or chronic hepatic disorder). The normal prothrombin time is 12-16 seconds. In hepato-cellular injury, prothrombin time is increased and does not return to normal level with vitamin K therapy. Acutally, prothrombin time assesses the severity of hepatic damage.

6. Serum ammonia—Normal serum ammonia level is 10-80 pg/dl. A very high level reflects severe hepato-cellular damage. Highest level is found in hepatic encephalopathy.
7. Serum lipids—These are sensitive but non-specific indicators of hepato-cellular diseases. In cirrhosis of liver, serum cholesterol level is low. Acute parenchymal liver disorders may have high triglycerides and low cholesterol esters level. Cholestasis (intra- or extrahepatic) is-associated with raised unesterified cholesterol and serum phospholipids.
8. Bromsulphalein (BSP) excretion test—Not used now-a-days and its only value remains in the diagnosis of Dubin-Johnson syndrome (double rise).
9. Other enzymes :
   a) 5'-nucleotidase—Increased in hepatic necrosis. Elevated level of 5'-nucleotidase indicates that raised alkaline phosphatase is of hepatic in origin (elevated alkaline phosphatase level in pregnancy, bone metastasis or of intestinal origin do not have associated raised 5'-nucleotidase level).
   b) y-glutamyl transpeptidase (GGT)—It is the *most sensitive* indicator of hepatobiliary disorders. Though elevated in hepato-cellular damage, it is rather non-specific because elevated GGT level may be found in pancreatic, renal, cardiac or pulmonary disorders. GGT *is a potential marker of alcohol abuse.* GGT level is raised in hepato-cellular damage and cholestasis. The normal serum level is 9-58 U/L.
   c) LDH and OCT (ornithine carbamyl transferase) levels may be elevated in viral hepatitis, cirrhosis of liver and hepatic metastasis. These are not routinely performed.

* Hepato-cellular disease and cholestasis are associated with conjugated hyperbilirubinaemia while haemolysis results in raised level of unconjugated bilirubin. An isolated rise in serum bilirubin without SGPT or SGOT elevation may be due to haemolysis or familial. Increase in SGOT and SGPT level with hepato-cellular injury and a striking elevation of > 1000 IU/L are obtained in extensive hepatic damage by acute viral hepatitis, drug or toxin-induced liver injury, or ischaemic liver injury (e.g., prolonged hypotension or acute heart failure). The alkaline phosphatase rises much in cholestasis and to a lesser extent in hepato-cellular injury.

** **Severity assessment of hepatic injury** is reflected mainly by prothrombin time, and partly by serum albumin and Factor V levels.

*** Prothrombin time (PT) measures the extrinsic pathway while activated partial thromboplastin time (aPTT) reflects the intrinsic pathway of coagulation cascade.

ACUTE VIRAL HEPATITIS

Bilirubin	-	8.6 mg/dl
Conjugated	-	6.2 mg/dl
Unconjugated	-	2.4 mg/dl
SGPT (ALT)	-	296 IU/L
Alkaline phosphatase	-	145 IU/L
Total protein	-	7.4 g/dl
Albumin	-	4.5 g/dl
Globulin	-	2.9 g/dl
Prothrombin time	-	17 seconds
Australia antigen (HB_sAg)	-	Positive

Interpretation :

1. Serum bilirubin level is elevated (moderate jaundice) and the conjugated fraction is raised more. SGPT is raised by more than 7 times of upper limit of normal. Alkaline phosphatase level is slightly raised.

2. Total protein with albumin and globulin fractions are within normal limit (i.e., indicating the absence of chronic hepato-cellular dysfunction). Prothrombin time is a bit high.
3. Australia antigen (HB_sAg) is present.

Inference :

Predominant conjugated hyperbilirubinaemia with raised SGPT level reflects hepato-cellular damage or acute parenchymal liver disease. Presence of Australia antigen suggests acute viral hepatitis due to type B virus infection. The patient is now in the icteric stage.

* Often 'history' is very important to interpret the data.

CAUSES OF CONJUGATED HYPERBILIRUBINAEMIA :

1. Viral or drug-induced hepatitis.
2. Cholestasis (drug-induced or pregnancy-induced).
3. Cirrhosis of liver.
4. Extrahepatic biliary obstruction (gall stones, carcinoma of the head of pancreas).
5. Dubin-Johnson syndrome.
6. Rotor syndrome.
7. Secondary carcinoma of liver.

SEROLOGY IN DIFFERENT TYPES OF ACUTE VIRAL HEPATITIS :

Type A — IgM anti-HAV
Type B — HB_gAg and IgM anti-HBc
Type C — Anti-HCV
Type D —■ Co-infection : Anti-HDV plus IgM anti-HBc
Superinfection : Anti-HDV plus IgG anti-HBc
Type E — IgM anti-HEV

DRUGS PRODUCING HEPATO-CELLULAR JAUNDICE :

1. Rifampicin.
2. INH.
3. Halothane (anaesthetic).
4. Alcohol.
5. Paracetamol overdose (>10 g/day).
6. Phenytoin.
7. Ketoconazole.
8. Zidovudine.
9. Carbamazepine.

UNCONJUGATED HYPERBILIRUBINAEMIA

Bilirubin	5.8 mg/dl
Conjugated	1.1 mg/dl
Unconjugated	4.7 mg/dl
SGPT (ALT)	36 IU/L
Alkaline phosphatase	100IU/L
Total protein	7 g/dl
Albumin	4 g/dl
Globulin	3 g/dl
Prothrombin time	13 seconds
Australia antigen	Negative

Interpretation :

1. Serum bilirubin is elevated (mild jaundice). Unconjugated bilirubin is raised by more than 80% of total bilirubin. SGPT (ALT), alkaline phophatase are within normal limit.
2. Total protein, prothrombin time are normal. Australia antigen is absent.

Inference :

The chart reflects mild, predominantly unconjugated hyperbilirubinaemia without any hepato-cellular damage. The possibilities are **(predominant unconjugated hyperbilirubinaemia)** :

1. Haemolysis (thalassaemia, spherocytosis, immune haemolysis, G_6PD deficiency).
2. Ineffective erythropoiesis.
3. Prolonged fasting (< 300 cal/day).
4. Sepsis.
5. Gilbert's syndrome and rarely, Crigler-Najjar syndrome.
6. Neonatal jaundice.

HOW TO COME TO A DEFINITIVE DIAGNOSIS FROM HERE ?

1. Details history.
2. Meticulous clinical examination : Haemolytic jaundice will have splenomegaly. Gilbert's syndrome shows no physical abnormality except mild jaundice. In the presence of sepsis, patient will present with pyrexia.
3. Blood for routine examination as well as the peripheral blood film will point towards haemolytic jaundice (e.g., thalassaemia). Reticulocytosis suggests haemolysis; Hb concentration will reflect the degree of anaemia in haemolysis.
4. 'Fasting test'—When a patient of Gilbert's syndrome is placed on 300 calorie per day for 2 days, the patient will show increase in bilirubin level by 1.5 mg/dl after 2 days of fasting.

PROGNOSIS IN GILBERT'S SYNDROME :

The disease is benign in nature and the prognosis is good. The life-span is normal.

CONGENITAL NON HAEMOLYTIC HYPERBILIRUBINAEMIA — SPECTRUM OF DISEASES :

1. Gilbert's syndrome (unconjugated).
2. Crigler-Najjar syndrome (type I and type II; unconjugated).
3. Dubin-Johnson syndrome (conjugated).
4. Rotor syndrome (conjugated).

COMMON EXAMPLES OF HAEMOLYTIC JAUNDICE IN CITY HOSPITALS :

1. Thalassaemia.
2. Mismatched blood transfusion.
3. Snake bite (Viperidae group).
4. Malaria (specially falciparum malaria).
5. Rh incompatibility.
6. Drug-induced (primaquine or sulphonamide-induced in G_6PD deficiency).

* In haemolytic jaundice, bilirubin is usually less than 6 mg/dl.

CIRRHOSIS OF LIVER

Bilirubin	4.9 mg/dl
Conjugated	3.1 mg/dl
Unconjugated	1.8 mg/dl
SGPT (ALT)	62 IU/L
Alkaline phosphatase	170 IU/L
Total protein	7.2 g/dl
Albumin	2.9 g/dl
Globulin	4.3 g/dl
Prothrombin time	18 seconds
Australia antigen	Negative

Interpretation :

1. Total bilirubin is high (mild jaundice) and there is conjugated hyperbilirubinaemia. SGPT (ALT) is just elevated and alkaline phosphatase is slightly raised.

2. Total protein is normal with hypoalbuminaemia and hyperglobulinaemia. Albumin and globulin ratio is 1 : 1.5; prothrombin time is raised by 2 second over the highest limit of normal. Australia antigen is negative.

Inference :

High bilirubin level, just raised SGPT (ALT) and alkaline phosphatase (excludes acute hepatic parenchymal injury and cholestasis respectively), low albumin as well as high globulin level clinch the diagnosis of chronic liver disease (e.g., cirrhosis of liver). Increased prothrombin time reflects hepatocellular damage (e.g., failure) and certainly indicates a bad prognostic sign.

CAUSES *OF HYPERGLOBULINAEMIA (POLYCLONAL GAMMOPATHY) :*

1. Chronic liver disease e.g., cirrhosis of liver.
2. Chronic infection e.g., chronic kala-azar.
3. SLE and other collagen vascular diseases.
4. AIDS.

CAUSES OF HYPOGLOBULINAEMIA :

1. Hereditary forms (X-linked hypogammaglobulinaemia, severe combined immunodeficiency).
2. Multiple myeloma.
3. Chronic lymphatic leukaemia.

CART *IT BE A CHART OF CARCINOMA OF LIVER ?*

No. Primary hepato-cellular carcinoma (hepatoma) 'usually' does not raise the bilirubin level. Secondary metastasis in liver may produce jaundice but globulin level remains normal. Moreover, in carcinoma of liver the alkaline phosphatase level would have been more high.

HOW TO CONFIRM YOUR DIAGNOSIS ?

Liver biopsy confirms the diagnosis of cirrhosis of liver.

HOW A PATIENT OF CIRRHOSIS OF LIVER USUALLY PRESENTS ?

Apart from the features peculiar to the aetiology, cirrhosis of liver results in two major events : hepato-cellular failure and portal hypertension, the tempo of which determines the clinical presentation. The patient may be in the 'compensated' or 'decompensated' form.

Usually the patient presents with undue fatiguability, flatulent dyspepsia, anorexia, swelling of legs or abdomen, jaundice, haematemesis or melaena, poor health, or in the stage of hepatic pre-coma.

CHOLESTASIS

Bilirubin	18 mg/dl
Conjugated	14.6 mg/dl
Unconjugated	3.4 mg/dl
SGPT (ALT)	58 IU/L
Alkaline phosphatase	1300IU/L
Total protein	7 g/dl
Albumin	4.2 g/dl
Globulin	2.8 g/dl
Prothrombin time	19 seconds
Australia antigen	Negative

Interpretation :

1. There is very high bilirubin level (severe jaundice) with predominant conjugated hyperbilirubinaemia. SGPT (ALT) level is slightly raised. Alkaline phosphatase is 10 times more than the upper limit of normal.
2. Total protein with albumin and globulin fractions show no abnormality (suggesting absence of chronic hepato-cellular damage as well as reflecting normal protein metabolism). Prothrombin time is raised by 3 seconds above normal. Australia antigen is absent (i.e.. playing no role).

Inference:

Conjugated hyperbilirubinaemia with very high alkaline phosphatase signifies cholestasis. As SGPT (ALT) level is not much altered, probably it is a case of extrahepatic cholestasis.

CAUSES OF OBSTRUCTIVE JAUNDICE :

(A) Intrahepatic (medical) :

1. Viral hepatitis (cholestatic variety).
2. Chronic hepatitis.
3. Cirrhosis of liver (specially primary biliary cirrhosis).
4. Lymphoma.
5. Recurrent cholestasis of pregnancy.
6. Drugs like chlopromazine, chlorpropamide, erythromycin oestolate, oral contraceptive pills, methimazole, anabolic steroids, methyl testosterone.
7. Secondary carcinoma of liver.

Extrahepatic (surgical) :

1. Gall stone impaction in CBD.
2. Carcinoma of the head of pancreas, periampullary carcinoma.
3. Carcinoma of the gall bladder.
4. Enlarged glands at porta hepatis.
5. Stricture of CBD.
6. Sclerosing cholangitis from ulcerative colitis.
7. Cholangiocarcinoma.

HOW THE PROTROMBIN TIME IS CORRECTED IN CHOLESTASIS ?

It is known that vitamin K-dependent coagulation factors are II, VII, IX and X. Vitamin K is a fat-soluble vitamin and its deficiency is seen most commonly as a result of cholestasis, either intra- or extrahepatic. Thus, coagulopathy may occur from cholestasis.

In extrahepatic 'cholestasis', parenteral replacement of vitamin K usually corrects the prothrombin time rapidly to normal (within 24-48 hours). But if the coagulopathy is due to 'hepatic disorders', the prothrombin time may not improve or may improve but not to normal. In the liver, vitamin K is required for a complex conversion to produce the different coagulation factors (II, VII, IX, X), and protein C and protein S. Thus in hepatic disorders (e.g., intrahepatic cholestasis), coagulopathy is usually not corrected after administration of vitamin K (the complex conversion in the liver is hampered). The usual dose of vitamin K is 10 mg, I.M daily for consecutive 3 days.

MODALITIES ADOPTED IN TREATING PRURITUS IN CHOLESTASIS :

1. Cholestyramine (a bile salt sequestering agent)—12 g/day orally in divided doses, before as well as after meals.
2. Ursodeoxycholic acid (UDCA)—13-15 mg/kg/day orally.
3. Antihistaminics (e.g., tab cetrizine 10 mg daily).
4. Phenobarbitone—May be tried in resistant cases.
5. Ondansetron—this 5 HT type 3 receptor antagonist may be of some value; 4-8 mg, BID/TID.
6. Naloxone (opiate antagonist), naltrexone or propofol (hypnotic)—May be tried.
7. Methyl testosterone—25 mg daily sublingually. Anabolic steroid, i.e., stanazolol may be of some help.
8. Rifampicin 300-450 mg/day orally may relieve pruritus within one week. It is a hepatotoxic drug (recently introduced in the therapeutic armamentarium of pruritus in cholestasis).
9. Biliary drainage (internal or external).
10. Phototherapy—UV radiation for 9-12 minutes/day improves pruritus.
11. Plasmapheresis—rarely utilised in severe intractable itching.
12. Hepatic transplantation—Probably the only answer in chronic intractable pruritus.

CHRONIC HEPATITIS

Bilirubin	- 7.1 mg/dl
Conjugated	- 5.2 mg/dl
Unconjugated	- 1.9 mg/dl
SGPT (ALT)	- 360 IU/L
SGOT (AST)	- 324 IU/L
Alkaline phosphatase	- 142 IU/L
Total protein	- 5.9 g/dl
Albumin	- 2.9 g/dl
Globulin	- 3 g/dl
Prothrombin time	- 17 seconds
Australia antigen	- Positive
IgG anti-HBc	- Positive
HB_eAg	- Positive
Anti-HCV	- Negative
Antinuclear factor (ANF)	- Negative

Interpretation :

1. Serum bilirubin is moderately increased with predominant conjugated hyperbilirubinaemia. Both SGPT (ALT) and SGOT (AST) are raised but ALT level is > AST level. Serum alkaline phosphatase is also elevated.
2. Total protein is a bit subnormal as a result of hypoalbuminaemia. Serum globulin is within normal limit. Albumin : globulin ratio is approximately 1 : 1 ; prothrombin time is just elevated by 1 second over the highest limit of normal.
3. Australia antigen is found with evidence of (IgG anti-HBc) chronic infection by type B hepatitis virus. HB Ag is also positive. Marker of type C virus is not found. ANF is absent.

Inference :

There is conjugated hyperbilirubinaemia. Serum transaminases are 8-9 times more than normal. Serum alkaline phosphatase is slightly elevated. Hypoalbuminaemia with just raised prothrombin time indicates hepatocyte damage.

Positive HB_gAg and IgG anti-HBc indicate chronic HBV infection; Presence of HB_eAg indicates replication of HBV (i.e., highly infective). Markers of HCV and autoimmunity (ANF) are not found.

Thus, it seems that the patient is suffering from chronic hepatitis as a result of type B virus infection of high infectivity.

* If cirrhosis develops from chronic hepatitis, SGOT (AST) tends to exceed SGPT (ALT). Classically, in type B induced chronic hepatitis, SGPT (ALT) tends to be elevated more than SGOT (AST).

AETIOLOGY OF CHRONIC HEPATITIS :

1. Hepatitis B, C, and D.
2. Autoimmune hepatitis (lupoid hepatitis).
3. Wilson's disease.
4. Alcoholic liver disease, non-alcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH), cXj-antitrypsin deficiency, ulcerative colitis.
5. Drug e.g., methyl dopa, oxyphenisatin, INH, nitrofurantoin, ketoconazole.
6. Cryptogenic.

COMMON TYPES OF CHRONIC HEPATITIS :

Chronic hepatitis is the chronic inflammatory reaction in the liver continuing without improvement *Jor more than 6 months.* 'Liver biopsy' confirms the diagnosis. The types are :

1. Chronic lobular hepatitis—Histology resembles unresolved acute viral hepatitis.
2. Chronic persistent hepatitis—The limiting plate between hepatocytes and portal zones remain intact, and piecemeal necrosis is not seen. There is expansion of the portal zone by infiltration with mononuclear cells.

3. Chronic active hepatitis (severe form)—Prognostically grave. There is erosion of limiting plate, presence of piecemeal necrosis, formation of 'rosette" and bridging necrosis.

This classification is not helpful for prognostication. The new classification of chronic hepatitis is based on 1. Aetiology, 2. Clinical grade, 3. Histological grade, and 4. The stage (extent of fibrosis).

SIGNIFICANCE OF SEROLOGICAL MARKERS IN TYPE B INFECTION :

HB Ag -> Acute hepatitis B; persistence indicates infectivity and ongoing viral replication

IgG anti-HBc -» Past exposure to hepatitis B or chronic HBV infection

IgM anti-Hbc -> Acute HBV infection

DNA polymerase and HBV DNA -> Indicates ongoing viral replication

Anti-HBe -> late acute or chronic hepatitis B of low infectivity

Anti-HBs -> Immunity to HBV (i.e., vaccinated or previouus exposure)

AUTOIMMUNE HEPATITIS :

The aetiology is unknown but prominent immunological changes are noted in liver and blood. The patient is usually a female in the age group of 15-25 years or at menopause.

Serum transaminases are 10 times high with gamma globulin level 2 times more than normal. Serum ANF is positive; anti-smooth muscle and anti-LKM, antibody may be positive. The patient shows dramatic response to corticosteroid.

LINE OF TREATMENT IN HVB/HCV INDUCED CHRONIC HEPATITIS :

1. Treatment of hepato-cellular failure.
2. Pegylated a-interferon is used to prevent ongoing viral replication .
3. Other antiviral drugs like lamivudine, famciclovir, adefovir dipivoxil, entecavir, fialuridine, adenine arabinoside (a purine nucleoside) may be tried.
4. A patient of chronic hepatitis or cirrhosis of liver should be screened at 6-monthly interval for the development of hepato-cellular carcinoma by serial measurement of serum a,-fetoprotein.

FEW VALUABLE INFORMATIONS

Table 19 : Serum 'tumour markers'

	Carcinoma		Tumour markers
a)	Testicular (germ cell)	—»	a) Alpha-1 -fetoprotein (AFP), P-human chorionic gonado-trophin (P-HCG)
b)	Ovary	—>	b) CA-125
c)	Prostate		c) Prostate spicific antigen (PSA)
d)	Choriocarcinoma	-H.	d) p-HCG
e)	Hepato-cellular	->	e) AFP
f)	Colorectal		f) Carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA)
g)	Breast	—>	g) CA-15-3
h)	G.I. tract carcinoma, especially pancreas ->		h) CA-19-9
i)	Many cancers including mesothelioma		i) Osteopontin

* These are intracellular proteins or cell surface glycoproteins released into the circulation from internal malignancy, and detected by immunoassays.

Lipid profile :

Normal range :
Total cholesterol : < 200 mg/dl (desirable)
Low density lipoprotein (LDL) : < 100 mg/dl (optional)
High density lipoprotein (HDL) : 40-60 mg/dl
Very low density lipoprotein (VLDL) : 35-100 mg/dl
Triglycerides (TG) : < 165 mg/dl

Immunoglobulins :

Normal range of,
IgG : 700-1700 mg/dl
IgA : 70-350 mg/dl
IgM : 50-300 mg/dl
IgD : 0-14 mg/dl
IgE : 10-179 mg/dl

Lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) isoenzymes :

LDH_1 : 14-26% (cardiac, RBCs)
LDH_2 : 29-39% (cardiac, RBCs)
LDH_3 : 20-26% (pulmonary)
LDH_4 : 8-16% (striated muscle, liver)
LDH_5 : 6-16% (striated muscle, liver)

Arterial blood gases :

Po_2 : 95 ± 5 mm of Hg
Pco_2 : 40 ± 2 mm of Hg
Arterial 0_2 saturation 97 + 2%
HCo_3 : 22-26 meq/1
p^H : 7.38-7.44

Protein electrophoresis :

Albumin	normal range 3.5-5.5 g/dl
Globulin	normal range 2-3.5 g/dl
ft,	normal range 0.2-0.4 g/dl
	normal range 0.5-0.9 g/dl
p	normal range 0.6-1.1 g/dl
y	normal range 0.7-1.7 g/dl

Haemoglobin electrophoresis :

HbA_1 : 95-98% (97%)
HbA_2 : 1.5-3.5% (2.5%)
HbF : < 2%
HbC and HbS : absent

Creatine kinase (CK, CPKj isoenzymes :

a) CK-MB : Increased in AMI, myocarditis, pericarditis, cardiac defibrillation, cardiac surgery, cardiomyopathy, severe rhabdomyolysis, strenuous exercise (e.g., marathon runners).

CK-MB has two subforms : MB! and MB_2 (MB_2 is released from cardiac cells and converted in the blood to MB,). CK-MB_2 > 1.0 U/L, with a ratio of CK-MB_2/CK-MB, > 1.5 diagnoses AMI within 6 hours of onset of symptoms.

b) CK-MM : Increased in crush injury, convulsions, rhabdomyolysis, polymyositis and dermato-myositis, I.M injections, muscular dystrophy (myopathy), drugs (e.g., statins, colchicine).

c) CK-BB : Increased in CVA, meningitis; severe shock; neoplasm of breast, prostate and lung.

C-reactive protein (CRP):

Normal range : < 5 mg/L

It is a trace plasma protein which increases in response to infection, trauma, tissue necrosis and inflammation. The CRP level correlates better than the ESR with the changing disease activity in different rheumatic diseases.

It is elevated in :

Rheumatoid arthritis, rheumatic fever, bacterial infections, inflammatory bowel disease, third trimester of pregnancy, different inflammatory and neoplastic diseases, AMI. In SLE, the CRP is not elevated and thus the concentration of CRP is often used to distinguish infection in SLE (high) from disease activity (not high).

High sensitivity C-Reactive protein (hs-CRP or cardio-CRP) is a new test to diagnose pateint with silent atherosclerosis. The risk of cardiovascular event increases if it is > 1.1 mg/L.

Rheumatoid factor:

Normally : negative

Titres > 1:40 are considered significant and are found in (i.e., rheumatoid factor is elevated in) rheumatoid arthritis, SLE, vasculitis e.g., polyarteritis nodosa, old age, infections (e.g., SBE, syphilis, leprosy), chronic liver disease, sarcoidosis, Sjogren's syndrome, pulmonary fibrosis.

Antinuclear antibody (ANA):

Normal range : < 1:20 titre

ANA is positive in SLE (more significant if titre is > 1:160), drug-induced lupus, mixed connective tissue disease, scleroderma, rheumatoid arthritis, chronic autoimmune hepatitis, Sjogren's syndrome, necrotizing vasculitis, old age (> 80 yrs), HIV infection, bacterial endocarditis, interstitial pulmonary fibrosis.

International normalised ratio (INR) :

The INR is a comparative rating of prothrombin time (PT) ratios. The INR represents the observed PT ratio (i.e., patient's prothrombin time divided by normal pooled plasma prothrombin time) adjusted by the International Reference Thromboplastin. This method was adopted by WHO in 1982 and is used to standardize the reporting of PT. That means the INR is the PT ratio that would be obtained if the WHO reference thromboplastin, which by definition has an ISI (International Sensitivity Index) of 1.0 were used to assess PT.

Disorder	**Recommended INR range**
TLA	2-3
Atrial fibrillation	2-3
Pulmonary embolism	2-3
Deep vein thrombosis	2-3
Mechanical prosthetic valves	3-4.5
Recurrent venous thromboembolism	3-4.5

Leucocyte alkaline phosphotase (LAP) score :

Increased in : leukaemoid reaction, neutrophilic leucocytosis from infections, after steroid administration, Hodgkin's disease, polycythemia vera, myelosclerosis, hairy cell leukaemia.

Decreased in : Chronic myeloid leukaemia, paroxysmal nocturnal haemoglobinuria, thrombocytopenic purpura, hypophosphataemia.

Antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies (ANCAs):

p-ANCA or antimyeloperoxidase ('p' stands for perinuclear pattern): found in microscopic polyarteritis, crescentic glomerulonephritis, Churg-Strauss syndrome, inflammatory bowel disease, primary sclerosing cholangitis, primary biliary cirrhosis, autoimmune chronic active hepatitis.

c-ANCA or antiproteinase-3 ('c' stands for cytoplasmic pattern): found in Wegener's granulomatosis.

a,-fetoprotein :

Normal range : 0-15 ng/ml

Increased in : hepato-cellular carcinoma (usually with values > 1000 ng/ml), germinal neoplasia (ovary, testis, retroperitoneum), hepatic disorders (alcoholic cirrhosis, chronic active hepatitis), anencephaly of fetus, spina bifida, pancreatic carcinoma, retinoblastoma, atresia of oesophagus.

INCUBATION PERIOD OF SOME IMPORTANT INFECTIONS

AIDS	uncertain (few month to 6 years or more)
Amoebiasis	3-4 weeks
Bacillary dysentery (shigellosis)	1-7 days
Brucellosis	1-3 weeks
Chickenpox	12-21days
Cholera	few hours to 5 days
Dengue	2-7 days
Diphtheria	2-5 days
Encephalitis (Japanese)	9-12 days
Enteric fever	10-14 days
Gonorrhoea	2-10 days
Hepatitis A	2 to 6 weeks
Hepatitis B	6 weeks to 6 months
Influenza	2-3 days
Kala-azar	usually 3-6 months
Leprosy	3-5 years
Leptospirosis	4-20 days
Malaria	usually 8-14 days (rarely upto months)
Measles	7-14 days
Meningitis (meningococcal)	2-10 days
Mumps	2-3 weeks
Plague	1-7 days
Poliomyelitis	3-21 days
Rabies	usually 1-3 months
Rubella	2-3 weeks
Syphilis	9-90 days
Tetanus	3 days to 3 weeks
Tuberculosis	months to years
Whooping cough	7-14 days

THERAPEUTIC AND TOXIC BLOOD LEVELS OF COMMONLY USED DRUGS

	Therapeutic level	Toxic level
Amitriptyline	150-250 ng/ml	> 500 ng/ml
Carbamazepine	4-12 ng/ml	> 15 ng/ml
Chlordiazepoxide	700-1000 ng/ml	> 5000 ng/ml
Diazepam	100-1000 ng/ml	> 5000 ng/ml
Digoxin	0.8-2 ng/ml	> 2.5 ng/ml
Ethanol	—	> 300 mg/dl
Lithium	0.6-1.2 meq/1	> 2 meq/1
Phenobarbital	15-35 ng/ml	> 60 ng/ml
Phenytoin	10-20 ng/ml	> 20 ng/ml
Quinidine	2-5 fig/ml	> 6 ng/ml
Salicylate	150-300 |ig/ml	> 300 ng/ml
Theophylline	5-20 ng/ml	> 20 ng/ml
Valproic acid	50-150 ng/ml	> 150 ng/ml

IMPORTANT HAEMATOLOGICAL DATA

RBC count :	
Males	4.5-6.3 millions/mm^3
Females	4.2-5-4 millions/mm^3
Reticulocyte	0-2-2% of RBC
Red blood cell volume :	
Males	30 ml/kg of body weight
Females	25 ml/kg of body weight
Osmotic fragility of RBC :	
Slight haemolysis	0-45-0-39%
Complete haemolysis	0-33-0-30%
Haemoglobin :	
Males	14-6-15-5 g/dl
Females	13-3-14-6 g/dl
Haematocrit :	
Males	42-52%
Females	37-47%
MCH	29-5 ± 2.5 pg
MCHC	35 ± 3 g/dl
MCV	87 ± 7 cubic micron
WBC count (total)	4-3-10.8 x 10^9/L
Differential WBC count:	
Neutrophils	45-74% of total WBC
Lymphocytes	16-45% of total WBC
Monocytes	4-10% of total WBC
Eosinophils	0-7% of total WBC
Basophils	0-1% of total WBC
Platelet count	1-5-4 lacs/mm^3
Bleeding time (Ivy)	2-5-10 minutes
Coagulation time (glass tubes)	9-15 minutes
Prothrombin time	12-16 seconds
Partial thromboplastin time (activated)	32-46 seconds
Clot retraction time	onset-1 hour, completion-6 hours
ESR (Westergren):	
Males	0-15 mm/hour
Females	0-20 mm/hour
p^H (arterial blood)	7-38-7-44
Red cell life span	120 days
Red cell life span $T_{1/2}$ $t^{51}Cr$)	25-35 days

APPROXIMATE CONVERSION CHART

1 ounce (oz)	28 ml
1 gallon (gal)	4.5 litres
1 inch (in)	2.54 cm
1 foot (ft)	0.3 m
1 pound (lb)	0.45 kg
1 calorie (cal)	4.2 J

IMPORTANT SERUM BIOCHEMICAL VALUES

Albumin	3-5-5-5 g/dl
Aminotransferases :	
AST (SGOT)	0-40 U/L
ALT (SGPT)	0-40 U/L
Ammonia	10-80 mg/dl
Amylase	20-96 U/L (method-dependent)
Bicarbonate	22-26 meq/L
Bilirubin :	0-3-1-0 mg/dl
Conjugated	0-1-0-3 mg/dl
Unconjugated	0-2-0-7 mg/dl
Calcium (total)	9-11 mg/dl
Calcium (ionised)	4-5-5-6 mg/dl
Chloride	98-106 meq/L
Cholesterol (total)	upto 200 mg/dl
Copper	70-140 |ag/dl
Cortisol :	
8 A.M.	5-25 ng/dl
4 P.M.	2-15 ng/dl
Creatinine	0-6-1.2 mg/dl
Creatinine kinase (CK, CPK)	55-170 U/L
CK-MB	< 6% of total CK
Ferritin	30-300 ng/ml
Folate	5.4-18 ng/ml
Globulin	2-3-5 g/dl
Glucose (fasting)	75-100 mg/dl
Glucose (2 hour postprandial)	<140 mg/dl
Hb A_{1C} (glycated Hb)	4-6% of total Hb
Insulin	2-20 (xU/ml
Iron	70-140 ng/dl
Lipase	3-43 U/L (method-dependent)
Lactate dehydrogenase	100-190 U/L
Osmolality	280-300 mosmol/kg
Oxygen content:	
Arterial blood	17-21 volume %
Venous blood	10-16 volume%
Phosphatase:	
Acid	1-5 U/L
Alkaline	35-130 U/L
Phosphate	3-4-5 mg/dl
Potassium	3-5-5 meq/L
Prolactin	2-15 ng/ml
Protein (plasma)	5-5-8-0 g/dl
Sodium	136-145 meq/L
Triglyceride	< 165 mg/dl
TSH	0.3-5 nU/ml
T_3 (triiodothyronine)	80-150 ng/dl
T_4 (thyroxine)	4-12 |ig/dl
Urea	20-40 mg/dl
Uric acid	2-7 mg/dl
Vitamin B_{12}	200-600 pg/ml

YOUR ORAL TABLE

1. You should look smart and confident.
2. Always be well-dressed with a clean shave.
3. Have a clean apron with I.D card bearing university roll number.
4. Avoid all sorts of casual attitude. Maintain etiquettes of the examination hall.
5. Do not chew any type of masala or chewing gum. Switch off your mobile phone.
6. Listen the question carefully and then answer 'to the point'. Speak out clearly, slowly and precisely but always try to keep the flow.
7. Try to answer in the order of frequency i.e., from more common to less common causes, and avoid rare ones. Do not hurry, rather show patience.
8. It is better to say, 'I can not recollect' or 'I am no sure' instead of going on thinking indefinitely.
9. Never argue with your examiner.
10. Answering simple questions usually gives guarantee for 'passing'. So do not cheat, do not guess, do not be biased.

MODEL DISTRIBUTION OF MARKS FOLLOWING RECOMMENDATION OF MCI

General Medicine : Full marks 300

Theory : Paper I + Paper II = 60 + 60

Internal assessment : 60 (theory 30 + practical 30)

Oral (including X-ray and CT, ECG, instruments and specimens, charts, medical emergency) : 20

Clinical (bedside) : 100 (one long case 60 + one short case 30 + two spot cases 10)

* Marks distributed in the long case (60) as follows : History 15 + demonstration of signs 25 + discussion and crossing 20

** Internal assessment : Distribution of marks (60) will be as follows : Medicine 40 + dermatology (including STD) 10 + psychiatry 5 + chest and TB 5

*** Criteria to pass in the examination :

Aggregate 50% i.e., 150 marks

Theory and oral (including internal assessment) 50% i.e., 100 marks

Practical (bedside clinics) 50% i.e., 50 marks

N.B. : One should get 50% in internal assessment to pass in the examination

Theory part :

Paper I— CVS, respiratory system, haematology, neurology, endocrinology and rheumatology

Paper II— Tropical diseases, gastro-intestinal, and diseases of liver and biliary system, renal diseases, metabolic and nutritional diseases, poisoning and environmental diseases, psychiatry, dermatology including STD

****Each theory paper usually contains 4 short questions (4 x 10) and short notes (5 short notes x 4).. Short questions are short-structured essay type and problem-oriented type. There may be overlap in Paper I & II.

***** Acute cases (e.g., LVF, acute severe asthma) are usually not given in the examination.

Long case comprises of history writing + demonstration of signs + relevant discussion.

Short case means general survey and examination of one particular system (nothing to be written).

Spot case means spotting the diagnosis (with examiner observing) and mentioning its justification.

INDEX

A

ACE-inhibltors. 162, 165, 206
Achalasia cardia 104
Acidosis 26
Adenosine 133, 196, 213
Adenosine deaminase 274
Agranulocytosis 238
Air bronchogram 80
Airway tube 53
Alkalosis 26
a-fetoprotein 306-308
Alprazolam 218
Amantadine 220
Ambu bag 57
AMI 128-130, 164
Aminophylline 29, 159, 204
Amitriptyline 181, 217, 309
Amiloride 208
Amiodarone 196, 212
Amlodipine 206, 209
Amoebiasis 74, 185, 186, 253
Anaemia 191, 229, 231, 232, 237, 241, 265
Anaphylaxis 29, 157, 161, 192
ANCA 308
Angina pectoris
    stable 128, 164, 209
    unstable 167, 168
    prinzmetal 168
Anion gap 26
Antibiogram 258
Anticoagulants 230
Anti-5HT drugs 215
Antihistaminics 215
Antinuclear antibody (ANA) 308
Anuria 8, 258
Aplastic anaemia 237
Arteether 226
Artemether 226
Artesunate 226
Ascitic tapping 60
Aspirin 164, 166, 167, 179, 213
Asthma
    bronchial 157, 159, 204
    cardiac 94, 157, 158
Atherosclerosis 71
Atrial fibrillation 133, 165, 211-213
Atrial flutter 134, 165, 211-213
Atropinisation 198
Auscultation 40
Auscultatory gap 43
Axis deviation 116, 117

B

Basal ganglia calcification 114
Basophilia 236
Basophilic stippling 243
Bazett's formula 124
Bence Jones protein 107
Benedict's test 250, 260
Benzidine test 260
Beta-blockers 133, 162, 202, 206
Bifascicular block 137, 139
Biochemical values, serum 311
Blast crisis 234
Blood pressure 40-45, 168-170, 205
Blood transfusion 27, 191-193
Blood transfusion set 22
Bradycardia 131, 165, 170, 291
Bradycardia-tachycardia syndrome 144
Brain abscess 70, 150, 178
Brainstem functions 153
Bromocriptine 154, 220
Bronchiectasis 66, 84
Bronchogenic carcinoma 67, 92, 93, 95, 96
Blullae 67, 88, 295
Bullus lesion, skin 295

C

Calcification
    abdomen 101
    cheSt 92
Captopril 166, 206
Capture beats 136
Carbamazepine 167, 219, 309
Cardiac arrest 194
Cardiac asystole 194
Cardiac failure, congestive (CCF) 161, 213
Cardiac neurosis 163, 167
Cardiac silhouette 77, 78
Cardiogenic shock 165
Cardiomegaly 99, 126
Cardiomyopathy 99
Cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) 194
Cardiospasm 104
Cardiothoracic ratio 77
Casts 259, 264
Catheter, simple rubber 6
Cavity, pulmonary 66, 85-87
Cerebellar cone syndrome 16, 17
Cerebral embolsim 179
Cerebral haemorrhage 179
Cerebral malaria 174
Cerebral oedema 178
Cerebral thrombosis 179
Cerebrovascular accidents 149, 150, 179
Charts 229-306
Chickenpox 294, 295
Chloroquine 173, 186, 225
Cholera 189
Cholestasis 303, 304
Chvostek's sign 48
Ciprofloxacin 178, 186, 187, 222
Cirrhosis of liver 73, 302
CLO test 102
Clofazimine 223

Clopidogrel 167, 179
Coagulum
big 20, 270
cobweb 20, 270, 273
Cockcroft-Gault equation 261
Coin lesion 93
Collapse of the lung 88
Colloid 22
Colony count, urine 268
Coma
diabetic 150, 154
hepatic 150, 153
hypoglycaemic 155
management 151
myxoedema 171
psychogenic 153
Compensatory pause 132, 135
Complete heart block 142, 170, 171
Condom 52
Conducting system, heart 137
Consolidation of the lung 64, 80
Convulsions, febrile 180
Cor pulmonale 127, 128, 160
Cotton 49
CPR 194
C-reactive protein 308
Creatinine clearance 261
Creatine kinase 165, 307
Crystalloid 22
CSF 16-21, 270-280
CT scan 112
Cut-down 112
Cut-down 23, 30
CVA 149, 179
Cytokines 283

D

Dacca solution 189
Dapsone 223
Darrow's solution 23, 24
Deafness 47
Decannulation 6.
Dehydration 24, 36, 186, 189
Delta wave 143
Dengne 297, 298
Dextrocardia 76, 147
Diabetes mellitus 154, 155, 245, 251, 269
Diaphragm 76, 79, 93
Diarrhoea 36-38, 185, 189, 253, 255
Diazepam 180, 181, 216, 219
Digoxin 145, 162, 213, 309
Diltiazem 210, 212
Diphtheria 50
Disopyramide 211
Diuretics 161, 208
Dobutamine 202
Dock's sign 95
Dog bite 200
Doll's-eye movement 153
Dopamine 160, 165, 202
Drip tube 22
Drugs 202-228
Dry tap
humbar puncture 18
sternal puncture 11
Duodenal cap 102
Duodenal ulcer 102
Dumping syndrome 250
Dysentery
amoebic 37, 73, 185, 253, 255
bacillary 37, 73, 185, 254, 255

E

ECG 115-149
Einthoven triangle 116
Electrical alternans 145
Electrophoresis
haemoglobin 307
protein 107, 307
Emphysema 67, 83, 120
Endocarditis 71
Endotracheal tube 57
Enteric fever 73, 178, 187, 286-288, 290, 291
Eosinophilia 240
Epilepsy 180, 218
Escitalopram 217
Ethambutol 221
Extrasystoles 132, 134
Ezetimibe 228

F

Fab classification 234
Fasting test 302
Femoral tap 29
Fenofibrate 227
Ferrokinetics 232
Fibrosis of the lung 88
Fluoxetine 217
FNAC 15
Folic acid 233, 311
Froin's syndrome 280
Fusion beats 136

G

Gabapentin 219
Gastric outlet obstruction 105
Gastric ulcer 102
GFR 261
Giardiasis 256
Gilbert's syndrome 302
Glomerular functions 261
Glomerulonephritis
acute 67, 182, 260
chronic 68, 263
Glucose tolerance test
impaired 245, 247
normal 245, 246
Glycosuria
alimentary 249
pregnancy 250
renal 248, 250
Guaiac test 257
Gumma 72

H

Haematemesis 184
Haematocrit 229, 310
Haematological data 229, 230, 310
Haemoptysis 91, 190
Haemorrhagic fever 298
Halofantrine 226
Hammer 48
Hanging-drop preparation 253
Hay's surface tension test 260
Heart block
  atrioventricular 140, 143
  bifascicular 139
  complete 142
  first degree 140
  LBBB 138
  RBBB 138
  SA block 143
  second degree 141
  trifascicular 137, 140
Heart failure
  acute LVF 94, 158
  congestive cardiac failure 99, 161
  refractory 162
  RVF 161
Heart rate, ECG 118, 123
Heat coagulation test 260
Heatstroke 175
Heimlich's manoeuvre 194
Helicobacter pylori 100-102
Hepatisation 64
Hepatitis
  acute 187, 300
  autoimmune 305, 306
  chronic 305
Herpes zoster 167
Hiccough 183
Hilar enlargement 93
Hoi ter monitoring 116, 143, 144
Honeycomb lung 85
Hydralazine 169, 207
Hydropneumothorax 83
Hyperbilirubinaemia
  conjugated 301
  unconjugated 301
Hyperchlorhydria 3
Hyperdefecation 37
Hypereosinophilic syndrome 241
Hyperglobulinaemia 303
Hyperkalaemia 27, 32, 146
Hypernatraemia 27
Hypernephroma 69
Hyperpyrexia 152, 172, 175, 281, 284
Hypertension 40-45, 168, 205
Hypertensive emergency 168
Hypertensive encephalopathy 168, 169, 180
Hypertrophy
  atrial 78, 119, 126
  ventricular 78, 126, 127
Hyperventilation, hysterical 153, 157, 161
Hyperviscosity syndrome 107
Hypochlorhydria 3
Hypoglobulinaemia 303
Hypoglycaemia 150, 155
Hypoglycorrhachia 272
Hypokalaemia 27, 147
Hyponatraemia 24, 27
Hypothermia 144, 152, 172, 281, 284
Hypoventilation 153

I

Idioventricular rhythm 137, 142
Imipramine 217
Immunoglobulins 107, 307
Increased intracranial tension 178, 179
Incubation period 309
Infusion set 22
INH 177, 221
Inhalers 54, 55
INR 308
Instruments 1-63
Insulin 32-35, 311
Intracath 53
Intrinsicoid deflection 124
Isosthenuria 264
I.V fluid bottles 22

J

J-point 121
Jaundice 150, 153, 299, 300-306
Jerks 48
J wave 144

K

Kala-azar 10, 224, 289
Kartagener's syndrome 84
Katz-wachtel phenomenon 127
Kerley's lines 96
Ketoacidosis, diabetic 155, 269
Kidney
  flea bitten 69
  granular contracted 68
  large white 68
  polycystic 69
Koplik's spot 293
Korotkoff sounds 42

L

Labetalol 169, 207
Lactic acidosis 157
Lactulose 154
Lag storage, curve 249
LAP score 308
Laryngeal obstruction 5
Leprosy 223
Leukaemia
  acute 10, 234
  chronic 235
Leukaemoid reaction 234, 236, 308
Levodopa 154, 220
Lie, heart 118
Life support
  advanced 194
  basic 194

Lignocaine 195, 201, 211
Lipid profile 179, 307
Lithium 217, 309
Liver abscess
amoebic 28, 30, 74, 186
pyogenic 74
Liver biopsy 12-15
Liver function tests 299
Lock-jaw 50, 51
Loperamide 186
Losartan 207
L-thyroxine 171, 311
Lumbar puncture 15-21
Lung abscess, pyogenic 65, 85
LVF 94, 158
Lymphangitis carcinomatosa 92, 97
Lymphoblast 235
Lymphocytosis 239

M

Malaria
benign tertian 173, 282, 283
cerebral 174, 177
malignant 173, 283
Mannitol 154, 176, 178, 209
Mantoux test 32, 90, 91
Marble's criteria 248
M-band 107
Measles 292
Measuring tape 49
Mediastinal widening 92
Mediastinum 76, 78, 92
Medical emergencies 150-201
Mefloquine 173, 226
Melaena 184, 257
Melituria 250
Meninqism 20, 21, 178, 276
Meningitis
aseptic 272, 276
bacterial 20, 70, 176, 271
fungal 276
recurrent 272
tuberculous 20, 70, 177, 273
viral 21, 177, 275
Meningoencephalitis 177
Mentzer index 231
Meteorism 286
Metered dose inhaler 54
Metronidazole 154, 185, 186
Microalbuminuria 269
Micro-drip set 22
Migraine 181
Miliary mottlings 91
Miltefosine 224
Minnesota tube 185
Mitral stenosis 96, 119, 120
Mitralisation 96, 97
Mobitz block 140, 141
Monocytosis 239
Morphine 164, 166, 214
MRI scan 113
Mucus, stool 254, 255
Multiple myeloma 106
Murphy's chamber 22
Muscarinic effects 198
Myeloblast 235
Myeloproliferative diseases 236
Myocardial infarction, acute 128-130, 164
Myxoedema coma 171

N

Nebuliser 55
Neck, rigidity 20, 175
Needle 30
Ncomycin 154
Nephrotic syndrome 262
Neurosyphilis 276
Nicorandial 210
Nicotinic acid 228 •
Nicotinic effects 198
Nifedipine 164, 167, 169, 205, 209
Nimesulide 214
Nitroglycerine 164, 166, 169, 209
Nitroprusside, sodium 169, 207
Nodal rhythm 137
Norfloxacin 182

O

Occult blood, stool 256
Oculocephalic reflex 153
Oculovestibular reflex 153
Oesophageal carcinoma 103
Oesophageal varices 103, 184, 185
Olanzapine 217
Oligaemia, pulmonary 98
Oliguria 258
Oral rehydration salt 36
Organophosphorus poisoning 150, 198
Orthotoluidine test 252, 253, 254, 256, 260
Osborne wave 144
Osmolality 37, 259
Osteosclerosis 107
Oximes 198, 203

P

Pacemaker 137, 149
Pancarditis 71, 196
Pancreatitis, acute 188
Pancytopenia 237-239
Paracentesis abdominis 60
Paracetamol 173, 213
Paraneoplastic syndrome 95
Paraprotein 107
Parenteral nutrition 27
Paroxysmal atrial tachycardia (PAT) 132, 133, 146, 195
Patch tonsil 50
pemphigoid 295
Pemphigus 295
Pentazocine 214
Peptic ulcer disease 100-103, 184, 185
Pericardial effusion 62, 98, 99, 148

Download From: AghaLibrary.com

Pericardiocentesis 62
Pericarditis 71, 148, 167
Periodic fever 298
Peritoneal biopsy 61
pethidine 158, 215
petit heart 83
Phenobarbitone 180, 218, 309
Phenothiazines 216
Phenytoin sodium 181, 212, 218, 309
Philadelphia chromosome 236
Phosphate, alkaline 107, 111, 299
Pin 48
Plasmodium
falciparum 173, 174
ovale 173
vivax 173
Pleocytosis, CSF 271, 273
Plethora, pulmonary 98
Pleural biopsy 62
Pelural effusion 61, 80
Pleurisy 167
P-mitrale 119, 126
Pneumonia 64, 80, 296
Pneumothorax 82
Polyuria 258
Postural drop 44
P-pulmonale 119, 127, 128
PR interval 115, 123
Pre-diabetes 245, 247
Pre-excitation 143
Pregabalin 219
Premature beats
atrial 132
ventucular 134
Primaquine 173, 225
Procainamide 211
proctoscope 56
proteinuria 259, 260, 263
Prothrombin time 244, 299, 304, 308, 310
Pruritus 304
Pseudocavity 87
Pseudomonas aeruginosa 176, 177
Pulmonary hypertension 97, 120
Pulmonary nodule 93
Pulmonary oedema 94, 157, 158
Pulmonary thromboembolism 128, 157, 160
Pulmonary tuberculosis 65, 89-92, 190
Punctate basophilia 243
PVO 289
Pupils 150, 153
Purpura 243, 244
Pyelonephritis, acute 182, 267, 268
Pyloric stenosis 105
Pyrazinamide 177, 221
Pyrexia
intermittent 281-285
continued 285
remittent 288
unknown origin 289
Pyrogens 283
Pyuria 269

9

QRS interval 124
QT interval 115, 124
Queckenstedt's test 18, 21, 280
Quinidine 146, 211, 309
Quinine 173, 174, 225

R

Rabies 200
Radiology 75-114
Ranolazine 210
Record syringe 10, 29
Rectal biopsy 57
Renal biopsy 58
Renal failure
acute 261, 262, 265
chronic 107, 263-266
Renal functions, assessment 261
Renal pain 268
Renal threshold 246, 248
Retie index 229
Reticulocyte 229, 242, 310
Retinopathy, hypertensive 45
Rheumatic fever 196
Rhumatic heart disease 70, 196
Rheumatoid factor 308
Rhythm disturbances 125, 130-137
Rib erotion 95
Rib notching 95
Rickets 110
Rifampicin 177, 221
Ring lesion, CT brain 114
Ringer's lactate 23, 24
Rinne's test 47
Rose spots 287, 290
Rosuvastatin 227
Rotahaler 55
Rotation, heart 118
Rotch's sign 78, 98
Rothera's test 250, 260
RR interval 123
Ryle's tube 1-3

S

Saline, normal 23
Salt restriction 161, 163
Scalp vein set 31
Scorpion bite 200
Scurvy 109
Seizures 180
Selegiline 220
Sengs taken tube 185
Sertraline 217
Shigellosis 73, 185, 254, 255
SLADH 178, 272
Sick sinus syndrome 144, 171
Sideroblast 242
Silhouette sign 80
Sinus arrhythmia 131
Sinus bradycardia 131
Sinus rhythm 130, 137
Sinus tachycardia 131

Download From: AghaLibrary.com

Smallpox 295
Snake bite 198
Sodium antimony gluconate 224
Sodium bicarbonate 156, 157
Sodium valproate 219, 309
Spacehaler 55
Spatula 50.
Spatula test 51
Sphygmomanometer 40-45
Standardisation, ECG 125
Statins 166, 227
Status epilepticus 180
Sternal puncture 9-12
Stethoscope 39
Stokes-Adams syndrome 142, 149, 150, 152, 170
Strain pattern, ECG 122, 126, 127
Streptokinase 165, 166
Streptomycin 177, 221
Stress ulcer 103
Stroke 149, 179
Subarachnoid haemorrhage 21, 149, 180, 277
Supraventricular tachycardia 132
Syringe 28-31
$_{8,93}X_3$ pattern 128, 139
S,S_2S_3 syndrome 127

T

Tachyarrhythmias 132-137
Tachypnoea 296
Tape (measuring) 49
Target cell 242
Temperature 45, 46, 172, 175, 281-298
Terbutaline 159, 204
Test tube 51
Tetanus 51, 197
Thalassaemia 108, 241
Theophylline 30, 159, 204
Thermometer, clinical 45, 281
Thickened pleura 81
Thoracentesis 61
Three-way cannula 35
Throat swab 49, 52
Thrombasthenia 244
Thrombocytopenia 243
Thrombocytosis 243
Thrombophlebitis 193
Tinidazole 185, 186
Tongue depressor 50
Tonsillitis 50
Torch 51
Torsades de pointes 136
Total parenteral nutrition 27
Tourniquet test 243, 298
T-P segment, ECG 121
Tracheostomy 4-6
Transaminases 299
Treadmill test (TMT) 125
Trifascicular block 137, 140
Triidothyronine 171, 311
Trismus 50, 51, 197
Tropical eosinophilia 91, 240
Tubercle 66, 72
Tuberculin syringe 32
Tuberculosis, diagnosis 91
Tuberculous infiltrations 89
Tubular functions 261
Tumour markers 307
Tuning fork 46
Typhoid meningism 175, 178
Typhoid state 178, 287

U

U-wave 115, 121
Ulcer disease
  duodenal 102
  gastric 102
Urease test 102
Urinary pain 268
Urinary tract infection 182, 266
Urine tests (chemical) 260
Urokinase 165

V

Vaccination
  chickenpox 295
  measles 293
  typhoid 288
Vasopressin 184
VAT 124
Venesection 23, 30
Ventricular asystole 137, 194
Ventricular fibrillation 136, 194, 195
Ventricular flutter 136
Ventricular premature beats 134
Ventricular tachycardia 135
Verapramil 133, 196, 210
Vesicles, skin 295
Vibration sense 47
Vital signs 152
Vitamins
  B_{12} 233, 311
  C 109,110
  D 110, 111
Voltage, ECG 118, 120
Volumatic 55

W

Weber's test 47
Wenckebach block 140, 141
White cell count 229, 230, 310
Widal test 286, 287
W-P-W syndrome 143

X

Xanthochromia 21, 279
X-rays 75-114
Xylocaine 183, 195, 201, 211

Z

Zidovudine 177
Zolpidem 216
Zopiclone 216

Download From: AghaLibrary.com

Key Features of the Book

- A lucid, substantially revised and updated quick reference in medicine
- Common medical instrumental 'procedures'
- Key details of X-rays and CT scans
- Classic manual of electrocardiogram
- Major disease-oriented 'pathology specimens'
- Extensive discussion on emergency medical management
- Easy-to-use outline format of drugs
- Logical approach on data interpretations



About the Author

Professor Arup Kumar Kundu has been working as an internist for nearly 25 years and is renowned for his sharp clinical acumen, analytical approach and clarity of expression towards solving different problems in internal medicine. He is vibrant and innovative in his field, and has multifaceted personality. Dr. Kundu, an astute clinician and a dedicated teacher, has been teaching medicine to students, both undergraduates and postgraduates, and has been an examiner in different Indian Universities. He is well-known all over the country for his proficiency as an illustrious teacher in medicine. Dr. Kundu, a brilliant academician and an avid medical writer, has authored three other indispensable books entitled 'Bedside Clinics in Medicine, Part I', 'MCQs in Internal Medicine' and 'Pearls in Medicine for Students'. He is a gifted orator and has been invited as speaker / faculty in different State and National conferences. He has taken part in International symposia / seminars, and is credited with more than 80 publications in peer-reviewed journals. Dr. Kundu has contributed constructive articles in National daily / weekly, interviews in AIR / Doordarshan for common people. He has written sections on online appendix of Kumar and Clark's textbook 'Clinical Medicine', both in the 6th and the 7th edition, and is an Indian member, International Advisory Panel of the 7th edition of the book. He has also contributed chapter in API textbook of Medicine, the 8th edition. Dr. Kundu, known all over as 'clinical scientist', has been conferred the fellowship of the Indian College of Physicians (FICP) and the membership of prestigious New York Academy of Sciences (USA)

ISBN : 978-93-80599-22-9